

4Df

K

C. *Julius Cæsar's*
COMMENTARIES
OF HIS
WARS in Gaul,
AND
Civil War with POMPEY.

To which is added,

A Supplement to his Commentary of his Wars in *Gaul*; as also Commentaries of the *Alexandrian, African, and Spanish Wars*, by *Aulus Hirtius*, or *Oppius*, &c.

With the **AUTHOR's LIFE.**

Adorn'd with Sculptures from the Designs of the Famous **PALLADIO.**

Made *English* from the Original *Latin.*
By Coll. **MARTIN BLADEN.**

The **THIRD EDITION** Improv'd,
With Notes explaining the most difficult Places, the Ancient and Modern Geography exactly compar'd, and *Dionysius Vossius's* Supplement collected from *Plutarch, Appian, Dion*, &c. which makes a Connection between the Wars in *Gaul*, and Civil War with *Pompey*.

L O N D O N:

Printed for *J. Knapton* at the Crown, and *D. Midwinter* at the Three Crowns in *St. Paul's Church-Yard*; *J. Round* in *Exchange-Alley*; *R. Gosling* at the Mitre and Crown in *Fleet-street*, and *T. Ward* in the Inner *Temple-Lane.* 1719.

10



To his Excellency

J O H N,
Duke of Marlborough,

*Marquess of Blandford, Earl of Marlborough,
Baron Churchill of Sandrich and Aumouth;
Captain General of all Her Majesty's Forces,
one of the Lords of Her Majesty's most Ho-
nourable Privy Council, Knight of the most
Noble Order of the Garter, Ambassador extra-
ordinary and Plenipotentiary from Her Ma-
jesty to the United Provinces, Prince of the
Empire, and General of the Confederate Ar-
mies, &c.*

S I R,

I Persuade my self, Your GRACE will pardon this Presumption, when you shall consider, the same unavoidable Necessity that oblig'd the King of *Spain* to put his Sword into Your GRACE's Hands, forces me to lay *Cesar* at your Feet. For who should the greatest Hero of his Age have recourse to, but the Greatest of ours? Whose Protection should *Cesar* court, but the victorious Duke of MARLBOROUGH's.

Not that I wanted Inclination to prompt me to the Choice; but I resolv'd my officious Zeal should not offend Your GRACE, before I could bring an Offering that might atone for

The Dedication.

for the Intrusion : 'Till then, I was content, with the rest of Mankind, silently to adore Your GRACE's Virtues ; and return Heaven Thanks for blessing You with the Success, Your Royal Mistress's Cause, and Your own Merits deserv'd.

Often have I wish'd in vain, that Nature had bless'd me with a Genius, fit to record the Noble Actions Your GRACE has done in Defence of *Europe*; that I could oblige Posterity with so grateful a Character, to whom so many after Ages shall hold themselves indebted for Liberty ; that I could describe Your GRACE's Moderation, Wisdom, Generosity, Justice, Mercy, Your Conduct, and Your Courage; an equal Mixture of the Hero and the Christian. But alas! The Attempt were as vain as Glorious; *Phaeton*-like, I should tumble from the Heaven I soar'd to ; and convince Mankind, my Affection was greater than my Power, my Ambition than my Prudence. Here, would the Censorious say, lies the Man, who essay'd to draw the *Mighty Captain*, that he might set his own Name at the Bottom of the Picture, and erect an Eternal Monument for himself by being Attendant on so great a Person.

But as *Cæsar* thought no-body so proper to write his Actions as himself; so Your GRACE being best acquainted with your own wise Councils, deep Designs, and happy Executions, can best describe the Battels you have fought, the Victories you have gain'd, the Sieges you have form'd, and the Towns you have taken; nor were a less Person worthy of the Office.

And

The Dedication.

And certainly *Cæsar*, who writ as well as he fought, gave Proofs of his Wisdom in leaving these Commentaries, where his Pen has engraven the Conquests his Sword atchiev'd: A Truth the great *Henry* the Fourth of *France* was sensible of, when he translated this Book, and design'd to copy after it. Had *Alexander* taken the same Care, many of those Actions which now pass for Fables, might have met with Credit, when related with greater Modesty: But the present Accounts we have of his Exploits seem wholly Poetical, stuff'd with *Greek Hyperbole's*; and his Character, with that of *Cyrus*, appear Ideas for forming the Minds of young Princes, perfect *Telemachus's* to teach Monarchs what they should be, rather than what others really were. But *Cæsar*, who was not inferior to *Alexander* in Virtue, equall'd him in Success, and far excell'd him in Conduct.

From Your GRACE's Memoirs the World might expect an impartial Account of the three last Campaigns; the Sieges of *Bonn*, *Limburgh*, and *Liege*, of the Glorious and Successful Attempt at *Schellenberg*, and of that unparallel'd Action at *Blenheim*; where the *Bavarians* strove in vain to blast brave Prince *Eugene's* Italian Lawrels, whilst united Vigour forc'd 'em to retreat. The Engineers, aſham'd to see their Party fly, resolv'd richly to vindicate the Loss of Lives innumerable, by taking yours: But the Guardian Angel, whom Heaven appointed to protect Your Person, taught even Bullets to pay Your GRACE all awful Deference, and glide submissively between your Horse's Legs.

The Dedication.

Here the Eyes of all *Europe* were fix'd upon Your GRACE, for the Fate of the Empire depended on your Sword, which effected Wonders; yet nothing less would have answer'd the Expectations the World had from your Management. Reading therefore the Journals of this happy Day, when from your all-conquering Arm *France* receiv'd so fatal a Blow, and the *Danube* gain'd a more glorious Name than *Simois* or *Scamander*, from the Fate of many Thousands, whom Your GRACE dispatch'd to carry News of your Victory to the other World, future Ages shall break out into that Rapture, with the Polite and Judicious *Paterculus*; *Circa Bleinheim vero, tanta Res gesta, quantas audere vix hominis, perficere, Nul- lius certe nisi Dei.* Then comparing Your GRACE's Actions with those of *Cesar*, confess you wanted nothing but the same independent Command of an Army to have render'd you equal with him in Renown. For as *Alex- ander* fought with an Effeminate People, so *Ce- sar* encounter'd the *Gauls* when Unexperienc'd, tho' a Warlike Nation: But Your GRACE has Engag'd and Defeated 'em, with their best Allies; after they were grown old in Arms, had been inur'd to perpetual Camps and Sieges, and long renown'd for the most expert Soldiers in Christendom.

This Defeat then, the most intire one *France* has receiv'd, since our *Black Prince* led their *Flower-de-luce* Captive into *England*, his *Impe- rial Majesty* and all Mankind agree was as much owing to Your GRACE's Conduct as your Courage; a Virtue always preferr'd by *Cesar*

to

The Dedication.

to the latter, witness his Speech to his Soldiers in *Spain*, when he declin'd fighting *Afranius* upon Advantage, where his Mercy shin'd as conspicuously as Your GRACE's at *Liege*.

Yet thus far Success attended *Hannibal*, 'till the Rout of *Emilius*, and the dreadful Slaughter at *Canna* made the Capitol tremble: But here, for want of Conduct, she deserted him, leaving his Name a Proverb to Posterity. *Hannibal knew how to win, he knew not to improve a Victory*. Flush'd with the Pride of Conquest, he vainly thought he had already rais'd the Common-wealth of *Carthage* above that of *Rome*: Empty Applause, Trophies engross'd his every Thought; so intent was the *African* upon the Action past, he could not afford one Moment to reflect on Accidents that might hereafter happen.

Not so Your GRACE, whose Deeper Judgment, Loyal Zeal, and Charitable Care for *Europe* taught you to pursue your Fortune, whilst by your Composure, and wondrous Sedateness, a Stranger would have judg'd your GRACE had been the Conquer'd, not the Conqueror. From such Elevated, such more than Human Minds, the *Grecians* cull'd the choicest Attributes to deck their Heathen Deities: Hence they inform us, when their *Jove* had Thunderstruck the rebellious Sons of Earth, that aspir'd to Dethrone him; as much unmov'd with Victory as with their Insolence before, retiring to his Cabinet he meditated Good to this inferior Orb.

But whither will the delightful Subject hurry me? I forget, whilst I thus detain Your

The Dedication.

GRACE, I am sinning against the Publick; that whilst I attempt to do you Justice, I offend your Modesty; and that my utmost Endeavours cannot add a single Spark to Your GRACE's Lustre, whose surprising Virtues have plac'd you as far above the reach of Praise as Envy. Let me therefore, Sir, only beg you would graciously please to accept this Translation, as an Earnest of my most profound Respect.

So may those Powers that have already made your Name Immortal, long preserve Your GRACE's Life for the Universal good of Mankind: Long may the Queen be bless'd in such a Subject, *England* in such a General; may constant Success attend Your GRACE's Ensigns; still may you continue the Darling of *Europe*, and the Terror of *France*.

I am,

S I R,

Your GRACE's

Most Obedient, most Devoted,

A N D

Most humble Servant,

Martin Bladen.

TO THE
READER.

SO much of this Book as Cæsar writ himself, was Translated into English, and illustrated with Notes, by Mr. Edmunds, for the Use of Prince Henry, the Hopes of our Nation, in the Reign of King James the First: And whether the Difficulty of the Work, or the Disadvantage of coming after so great a Man, has prevented others from attempting a new Version, I know not; but no body hitherto has oblig'd the World with an Essay of this Nature.

These Reasons, I must confess, with the Trouble of the various Lessons, the Impossibility of expounding the Ancient Names in some places with Modern, and adjusting Military Terms to the Taste of such Readers as have not been vers'd in Roman History, almost discourag'd me from venturing upon a Task, wherein I had not the Vanity to expect Applause, whilst I run so apparent a Hazard of exposing my Weakness to an Age that never accepts the Intention for the Deed. But when I reflected how much more correct the Laborious Criticks have made our Author, and how many Improvements our Native Tongue has receiv'd since Mr. Edmunds's Time, I thought Cæsar in a Modern
Stile

To the Reader.

Stile might not be an ungrateful Present, to such as either do not understand, or are not willing to give themselves the Trouble of reading the Latin. Nor was this the only Cause that mov'd me to the Undertaking, for comparing the Old English with the Original, I found there were several gross Errors, such as applying the † Actions of one Side in a Battel to the contrary Party, with other trifling Mistakes, almost in every Page; which I rather attribute to the Printer, the Edition the Book was translated from, or the Defect of our Language in those Days, than Mr. Edmunds, whose Notes sufficiently prove he wanted neither Judgment nor Learning.

† Vid. Edmunds's

Translation, Book V. of the Wars in Gaul, Chap. 6. Line 13. of the first Column.

Ibid Civil Wars, Book III, Chap.

22. Col. 2. from Line 22, to 30, &c.

And indeed 'tis a melancholy Thought, to reflect, with Mr. Waller and Dryden, what strange Revolutions our Language has suffer'd; whilst a Modern Frenchman may yet understand the Barbarous Jargon our Law Reports are penn'd in, the lasting Remembrancers of our Norman Slavery; and Petrarch still speaks good Italian, tho' Chaucer, who dy'd Sixty Six Years after him, must have a Saxon or Scotch Commentator to make him intelligible. Yet, on the other Hand, when I consider to how vast a degree of Politeness, those two incomparable Masters, the present Bishop of Rochester and Sir Roger L'Estrange, have arriv'd; I cannot help thinking they have sav'd the Kingdom the Expence of an Academy, and brought us to that Perfection our Neighbours so much boast of. Our Language at present is Full, Elegant, and Expressive; our very News-mongers write better now, than the most renown'd Authors about a Century ago; and except one or two vulgar Errors, 'twill be difficult to instance any thing in familiar Discourse that clashes with Grammar. If we are not altogether so happy as other Nations in a Natural Turn and Cadence; One Advantage I am sure we have to value our selves upon, which will more than balance that Defect: That as the mild Punishments inflicted by the Laws are an Argument of our Native Honesty, our Language is no less:

To the Reader.

less: *We have no Ambiguous Words; nay, the marshalling of them does not admit of a double Meaning; thus the Traytor, who gave that Oraculous Advice about King Edward the Second, Edvardum occidere Noli Timere bonum est, was oblig'd to travel beyond the Limits of his Country for the Expression.*

Mr. Edmunds's Remarks on Cæsar's Commentaries, it must be confess'd, are very just; but every Age has the Advantage of the former, and the Ingenious Mr. Kennet has far out-done all that have gone before him on the Subject of Antiquities. His short, but comprehensive Chapter of the Roman Art of War, may make any Person a compleat Master of that Learning, and serve for a Comment to explain such Things in the following History, as to the English Reader appear not intelligible: For tho' Vegetius, Lipsius, and some others, are very voluminous upon this Point, yet our Countryman has omitted nothing necessary to be known.

'Tis fit I should acquaint you, I chiefly made use of Vossius's Edition, which the Learned take to be one of the most Correct. But I must own, for the Business of various Readings, I have generally follow'd my own Judgment, proceeding upon this Maxim, That Cæsar could not write Nonsense. Therefore where ever the Text was inconsistent with Reason or Connexion, tho' others have not, I have taken the Liberty to alter it. But on the other Hand, I did not think it worth my while to enter into Disputes about Derivations, whence Cæsar had his Name, whence the Ancient Druids theirs, from Hebrew, Greek, or Welch: nor yet, whether the Epistle Cæsar sent Quintus Tullius Cicero, when besieg'd by the Gauls, was writ in private Characters, or Græcian Letters: Enquiries of this Nature I refer to those Gentlemen, who have more Leisure and Curiosity than I. For in my Opinion, whoever makes a Progress

To the Reader.

gress in Speculations of this kind, when he appears in Publick, will convince the World he has mis-spent abundance of Time, and whilst he endeavours to shew his Reading, betray his want of Judgment.

Cæsar writ no more of these Commentaries than the Seven first Books of his Exploits in Gaul, with those other Three of the Civil Wars: For the Eighth Book of the Gallic, the Alexandrian, African and Spanish War were supply'd by other Hands; whether Aulus Hirtius Panfa, or Oppius, imports not the Reader much to know. All, except the Spanish Memoirs, are very well penn'd, tho' not comparable to Cæsar's Stile: But for the last, 'tis difficult to determine whether they were more barbarously written, or carelessly transcrib'd; any Man may soon discover, they owe their Original to a different Hand from the rest. Rhelicanus, who is as wretched a Commentator as the other a Writer, attributes this single Book to Oppius, the rest to Hirtius: But I am rather inclin'd to believe, it belong'd to some more modern Author, who had the Vanity to think Future Ages might mistake his spurious Issue for Cæsar's; for he awkwardly apes him, uses the Words Nos and Nostri upon all Occasions, to make himself a Party to the Action, which Hirtius seldom or never does, and in the Description of a Bridge cross the Guadalquivir, seems to refer to that of Cæsar's over the Rhine, by these Words, Ut supra scripsimus, as we have already taken Notice. All but this worthy Piece, have since been added at different times to Mr. Edmunds's Works: And indeed it has nothing to recommend it to the Publick, but that it contains Part of Cæsar's Actions: For the Text is so strangely mangled and corrupt, I was frequently oblig'd to make both the Original and the Version too.

'Tis the Duty of every Translator strictly to adhere at least to his Author's Meaning, if not his Words; for the latter of these the various Idiom of Languages

ges

To the Reader.

ges sometimes will not admit of, and he who endeavours to turn a Book verbatim, may be esteem'd an able Grammarian, but he will meet with very few Readers. On the other Hand, I am by no means for allowing so great a Liberty as Monsieur D'Ablancourt has taken; such as transposing whole Paragraphs, leaving out Sentences, inserting Periods, and (if I may be allow'd to say it of so Learned a Man) mistaking others. For tho' all Versions fall short of the Excellence of their Original, yet he who renders a Book into his Native Language, should consider he is only accountable for his own, not for his Author's Failings. To me it appears very strange, that French Gentleman, who has assum'd so great a Freedom in other Places, should be so extremely modest where Necessity, and even Cæsar's Meaning requir'd he should be otherwise.

Thus our Author, describing the Customs of the Germans, tells us, pag. 163, Qui diutissime Impuberes permanferunt, maximam inter suos ferunt Laudem: Hoc alii Staturam, alii Vires, Nervosque confirmari putant. Intra Annum vero XX Femi-næ notitiam habuisse, in turpissimis habent Rebus. Thus turn'd by Monsieur D'Ablancourt. C'est une honte parmi eux d'avoir la Compagnie des Femmes avant l'age de vingt Ans, & ils estiment beaucoup ceux qui sont long-temps sans avoir le barbe, parce qu'ils croient, que par ce moyen ils ont plus de Taille & plus de Force & de Vigueur. — Thus by Mr. Edmunds. Such as continue longest beardless are most commended amongst them: For this some think to be very available to their Stature, others to their Strength and Sinews. They hold it a most dishonest Part, for one to touch a Woman before he is Twenty Years of Age.

To the Reader.

Here the Reader may please to remark both these Gentlemen are strangely mistaken in the Meaning of the Word *Impuberes*, which in this place signifies not beardless, but Virgins; to render it otherwise were to make *Cæsar* contradict all other Naturalists, who esteem Hair an Argument of Strength, and inform us that too early a Knowledge of Women, relaxes the Nerves, and spoils our Growth, therefore I would translate it thus. They esteem those Men the most who have liv'd the longest Virgins, which they believe contributes to their Growth, Vigour, and the strengthening of their Nerves; but nothing is thought so ignominious amongst 'em, as to have known a Woman before they pass'd the Twentieth Year of their Age.

Next, for the Proper Names, I have consulted several Authors, as Cluver, Scaliger, Ortelius, but chiefly Monsieur Sanfon, Geographer to the present French King, whom one might reasonably expect to have found infallible in the Chart of his own Country: But the Towns have frequently changed not only their Names, but even their Situations; this therefore may excuse what Errors he has been guilty of, together with the Ambition of confuting an Opponent, which upon some Occasions would not allow him Leisure to reflect, before he resolv'd.

I will give you two Instances. *Uxellodunum*, say Ortelius and Scaliger, is *Usseldon* in *Quercy*; but Sanfon will have it to be *Cahors*, because, it seems there are several of the same distinguishing Marks to be met with there, which occur in *Cæsar's* Description of this Place, as the Mount, the Fountain, &c. But, so long as all Mankind agree, there are still exactly the same to be seen at *Usseldon*, methinks the Affinity of the Name might have decided the Question in Favour of the latter. Another of his Arguments seems to run thus; *Civitas Cadurcorum*, in *Cæsar's* Time, meant the Capital of *Quercy*, which is now call'd

To the Reader.

call'd Cahors, as appears by the Notice of the Provinces; whereas in *Faß*, Scaliger's *Notitia Galliarum* calls Cahors *Episcopatus Cadurcensis*, and *Divona Cadurcorum*. Besides, granting so large a Postulat-um, 'twere no difficult Matter to prove York and Aldborough to be the very same Place, for *Isum* or Aldborough was the Capital of that Part of England, before York was founded.

But the other is more palpable than this. Scaliger and Ortelius affirm *Metiosedum* to be the same with *Melodunum*, the more modern Name of the two for Melun; which lies upon the Banks of the *Sein*, between *Sens* and *Paris*. But *Sanfon* says this *Metiosedum* is another Town, which he calls *Meudon*, about Four Miles below *Paris*. The Reasons he gives are taken from *Chap. 27. Book 7. of the Wars in Gaul*, where you may observe *Labienus* designing to secure his Retreat from *Sens* and *Paris*, commanded the Roman Knights to fall about Four Miles down the River, with the Ships he brought from *Melun*, and expect him there: Five Cohorts he left in his Camp, Five more with the Baggage, he sent up the River; and order'd a parcel of Cock-boats to row the same way with as much Noise as possible, to alarm the Gauls. Who upon Advice of these Motions, likewise divided their Forces into Three Parts; One Body they left over-against the Roman Camp; *Et parva Manu Metiosedum versus Miffa, quæ tantum progredieretur quantum Naves processissent*, &c. And detaching a small Party towards *Metiosedum*, with Orders to advance as far as the Ships were gone before, &c. From hence, says he, it plainly appears *Metiosedum* cannot be *Melun*, because the Ships fell down the River, Four Miles lower than *Paris*, whereas *Melun* lies up the River.

So great a Veneration have I for *Monsieur Sanfon's* Character, had he positively affirm'd this, without giving his Reasons, in the Dissertation upon his Map
of

To the Reader.

of Old Gaul, I might have paid an implicit Faith to his Skill; for my Logick taught me so much Complaisance to every Artist in the way of his own Profession. But it happens very unfortunately, the next Sentence should confute him; Reliquas Copias contra Labienum duxerunt: They march'd with the rest of their Forces against Labienus; who was actually with the Ships in Person, before the Legions cross'd the River, therefore granting what he says, either the Gauls three Parties were dwindled into two, or he has divided Labienus and his Legions, after Cæsar join'd 'em.

The Stress of his Argument you may perceive, depends upon the Word Naves, which Cæsar has indifferently made use of in both Places, whereas he expressly calls the Vessels that row'd upwards Lintres, Cock-boats. But had Monsieur Sanson given himself the Trouble of looking a little further backward, I am persuaded he would have chang'd his Opinion; for Cæsar says expressly in the the Chapter before, Metiosedum is a Town in the Country of Sens; and then 'tis impossible Paris could lie between that and Sens; for tho' these two were once united, yet in Cæsar's Time they were different States. Besides, the same Chapter tells us, Labienus was then come immediately thither from Sens; but finding he could not get over the Morass about Paris, return'd the same way he came, and surpris'd Metiosedum upon his March; which plainly demonstrates that Town must lie between Paris and Sens.

Had he only consider'd the Propriety of that Phrase, where Cæsar says, after Labienus had rebuilt the Bridge at Metiosedum, he march'd from thence, secundo Flumine, or with the Stream towards Paris, he could not have been guilty of this Mistake. The very same Expression is made use of in the Directions given the Ships, secundo Flumine progredi, to fall down along with the Stream; whereas the Cock-boats were

to

To the Reader.

to row adverso Flumine, or against the Current. But no wonder Cæsar should make use of the Word Naves upon this Occasion, to express the Orders given by the Gauls; who might easily mistake the Cock-boats in the Dark for more considerable Vessels, by the Noise Labienus had commanded 'em to make.

So much for Monsieur Sanfon's Opinion, with whom his own Countryman D'Ablancourt likewise differs; for he translates this Place Corbeil, according to Marlianus; which I durst not for fear of offending Joseph Scaliger, who wishes those that mistake Melun for Corbeil, a Return of their Senses; but this Critick was no more burden'd with Ceremony than his Father. I might here take Notice, that Buno's Edition of Cluver, places Mediolanum about Four Miles below Paris; which Name, in my Opinion, is much nearer a-kin to the Dolphin's Palace at Meudon than Metiosedum: But I have already consum'd too much of your Time about Trifles; so we have but a perfect Account of the Action, the Place is not absolutely material. Besides, for my part, I do not pretend to be a Geographer, nor will I ever envy the Learned the Reputation they may acquire by that Study.

For one Particular I must not omit to apologize, because I perceive some Gentlemen, for whose Judgment I have no small Esteem, are displeased at it: I have in some Places made use of the French Terminations for Towns and Countries out of their Dominions, where we have no English, as Bavier instead of Bavaria. But if this be a Mistake, I shall freely confess, 'twas a wilful one, for I chose Bavier as the shorter Word; and since no body has hitherto naturaliz'd Bavaria, I thought the French came nearer our Language than the Latin. Our News Papers, I know, call it Bavaria, but by the same Reason they might still write Germania and Hollandia: Most Gentlemen that have been abroad, save
a them.

To the Reader.

themselves the Expence of such unnecessary Syllables, and the Borrowing a Word from France, falls not within the Lash of the Act for Prohibition of Commerce. I could heartily wish the following Sheets were subject to no greater Errors; for I have not taken Notice of those Failings, to make you fancy I have none my self: I am conscious of too many in every kind, which I intirely submit to your Mercy, in Hopes your good Nature will forgive 'em.

T H E

T H E
L I F E
O F
C Æ S A R.

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR, the Son of *Lucius Julius Caesar* and *Aurelia*, as he himself inform'd the *Romans*, in the Funeral Oration he made upon his Aunt, was descended on the Father's Side *Iulius* the Son of *Aeneas*; on the Mother's, from *Ancus Martius*. He was born at *Rome*, during the Consulat of *C. Marcius*, and *L. Valerius Flaccus*, on the Twelfth of *July*, *A. U. C.* 654. of the *Julian* Period 4615, and of the World 3851, about Ninety Nine Years before the Birth of our Saviour. His Genius prov'd him worthy the Descent; for notwithstanding the Difficulties of a narrow Fortune, his Virtue rais'd him to that stupendious Height, which few have attempted, none arriv'd at.

He was contract'd, whilst a Boy, to *Cossutia*, a Lady whose Family, tho' far from the meanest, was not comparable to her Riches: What Reasons induc'd him to put her away, and take *Cornelia*, the Daughter of *Cinna*, in her stead, I do not find: But this Action, *Suetonius* informs us, increas'd the Hatred *Sylla* bore him, on the Score of his Affinity to *Marius*, who marry'd his Aunt. At Sixteen Years of Age he lost his Father, and the next Consulat put up for the Office of *Flamen Dialis*, or High-Priest of *Jupiter*; whether he obtain'd it, or no, Authors differ, *Suetonius* affirms he did, *Plutarch* says otherwise, whose Opinion is much the more likely of the Two; for *Sylla*, having then the Supream Power in his Hands, might, with less Trouble, have prevented *Caesar's* being chosen, than turn him out of the Pontificat, after he had once gain'd it by the Suffrages of the

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

People. 'Tis agreed on all Hands, this Election had like to have prov'd fatal to him, for his early Ambition rous'd the Dictator's Jealousie: The Presages he made of him, are very remarkable: *You consider not*, said he to the Persons that were Suitors for *Cæsar's* Life, and urg'd the Innocence of his Youth, *that many Marius's are in that Boy*. He therefore was for practising the same sure, but bloody Policy with *Ulysses*, who after the taking of *Troy*, cast the young *Astyanax* headlong from a Tower. For Tyrants are never free, even from needless Apprehensions, tho' this, it must be confess'd, was a Judgment well grounded, as appear'd by the future Event.

Thus *Cæsar*, tho' labouring under the Misfortune of a Quartan Ague, was oblig'd to hide amongst the *Sabines*, and remove his Lodgings every Night: Yet his utmost Caution could not prevent his falling in sometimes with the Dictator's Parties; but *Cornelius's* good Nature was not proof against the Talents he offer'd for his Ransom. Such was the Course of *Cæsar's* Life, 'till at length *Sylla*, yielding to the repeated Instances of *Mamercus Emilius*, *Aurelius Cotta*, and the *Vestal Virgins*, vouchsafed him a Pardon, tho' not without the utmost Reluctancy; *Take*, said he, *the fatal Gift you so earnestly desire, but remember I have foretold you, he will one Day prove the Ruin of our Party*. So many Hardships did our Hero labour under, and so great Difficulty was there to preserve his Life, whom Fate had destin'd for Head of the Roman Empire, and Lord of many Kings.

This Concession in a manner extorted from *Sylla*, *Cæsar* judg'd no sufficient Security for his Person; wherefore so long as the other was in Power, he continu'd at as great a Distance from *Rome* as possible. He serv'd as Volunteer in *Asia*, under *Thermus* the Prætor, who sent him to *Bithynia* for the Fleet; where he contracted a Friendship with King *Nicomedes*. Returning from thence, he behav'd himself so well at the Siege of *Mytilene*, he obtain'd a *Civic Crown*; nor did he give less Proofs of his Courage, when under the Command of *Servilius Isauricus* in *Sicily*, the Time he remain'd there, which was only short. For on Advice that *Sylla's* Interest declin'd, he quitted the Camp, but instead of returning to *Rome*, as his Friends desir'd, took a Voyage for *Rhodes*, where with *Cicero* he became a Hearer of *Apollonius*, *Molon's* Son, a great Rhetorician; designing to render himself equally famous at the Bar, and in the Field. In this Study he made no indifferent Pro-

gress,

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

gress, and we may easily conclude, from the Masculine and Polite Stile of his Commentaries, with that admirable Speech on *Catiline's* Conspiracy, recorded by *Salust*, he might have rivall'd *Tully*; had not more important Reasons chang'd the Lawyer for the Statesman, the Orator for the General; Arts before as incompatible as Empire and Liberty, but reconcil'd in *Cæsar*.

In his Passage to *Rhodes*, he was taken by the Pirates that infested those Seas, who proffer'd him his Liberty for Twenty Talents; but he, thinking that Sum too small, of his own accord added Thirty more. Dispatching Messengers to raise the Money, he remain'd their Prisoner Forty Days, 'till it came, attended only by his Physician and two Servants. During his Stay amongst 'em, as an Argument of his Unconcern, he frequently employ'd his Time in making Verses and Orations, oblig'd them to be his Auditors, and if their Want of Judgment, or ill Nature, gave him not the Praises he deserv'd, would threaten, in jest, to crucify them, which he afterwards perform'd in Earnest; tho' then it only pass'd for Rallery, and the Effect of Juvenile Heat.

The first Proof he gave of his Excellence in speaking, was when he accus'd *Dolabella* of Male-administration in *Greece*; but lost more by the Enemies he made on that Occasion, than he gain'd by the Applause. His Second Attempt, indeed, against *Publius Antonius* for Bribery, was more successful: He engag'd in this Affair to oblige the *Grecians*, and urg'd the Matter so home before *M. Lucullus*, Prætor of *Macedonia*, the Defendant was glad to appeal to the Tribunes at *Rome*. Here, likewise, *Cæsar* acquir'd great Reputation by his Address, fluent Speech, and easy Converse; which did not a little engage the Common People in his Interest. Add to this, his Magnificent Treats, which so strongly confirm'd their Affections, their Votes always bore witness for their Gratitude.

Cæsar, all this while, liv'd far greater than his Patrimony could afford, contracted many Debts, owed 1300 Talents before he obtain'd any Publick Office; and his Enemies, who reflected not to how great Advantage he bestow'd his Money, did not descry the Politician thro' the Prodigal: Still in vain they expected when his Credit would sink, 'till he had discharg'd the most honourable Employments in the State, and effectually gain'd his Point, by settling a Character for the most Generous, best humour'd Nobleman in *Rome*.

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

The first Trial he made of his Interest was, when he stood with *C. Popilius* for a Tribunat of the Soldiers, and carry'd it. Sometime after he was chosen *Questor*, but that Year had the Misfortune to lose his Aunt *Julia* and Wife *Cornelia*. It had always been the Custom to make Orations on the Decease of grave Matrons, but never on young Women: *Cæsar*, however, took this Opportunity to shew the Affection he had for his departed Lady; and so well was he beloved by the People, they look'd upon the Innovation as the Effect of his Tenderneſs and good Nature. But making the Harangue in Honour of his Aunt's Memory, he produc'd the Images of her Husband *Marius*, which no body ever had the Hardineſs to do, ſince the Adminiſtration came into *Sylla's* Hands, who declar'd *Marius's* Party Enemies to the State, a Politick, bold and happy Attempt; for by this means he reviv'd their drooping Hopes, and made himſelf Head of that Faction. But *Cæſar* knew the Poſture of Affairs was ſomething changed, therefore thought he might ſafely venture to do his Uncle that Juſtice, which he afterwards did his Enemy: For when the Civil Wars were decided, thinking it ſufficient Revenge to have conquer'd, he was ſo far from Triumphing over the Miſfortunes of his Rival, he reſtored thoſe Trophies the People had demolish'd. Upon which Occaſion *Cicero* was heard to ſay, *Cæſar*, by ſetting up *Pompey's Statues*, had eſtabliſhed his own.

By this time we are to ſuppoſe he had arriv'd at the twenty fourth Year of his Life, for not before that Age, according to the Cuſtom of *Rome*, was any Perſon capable of diſcharging the Office of *Questor*, or *Treaſurer*: Now therefore he began to enter upon Action, the farther *Spain* was the Theatre, where he attended the *Prætor Fofus*, and acquitted himſelf with Succeſs; yet beholding the Statue of *Alexander* the Great, in the Temple of *Hercules* at *Cales*, (whither he went by the *Prætor's* Command, to hold a Convention of the States) he was ſeiz'd with an extraordinary Melancholy, reflecting what an unactive Life he had hitherto led; whereas that Noble *Grecian*, by his Age, had ſubdu'd many Nations. Thus at the Deſire of imitating *Hercules* made an *Alexander*, ſo that of following him produc'd a greater *Cæſar*, in whom concurr'd the Valour of *Alexander*, the Clemency of *Cyrus*, and the Conduct of *Fabius Maximus*.

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

Whilst his Head was fill'd with glorious Notions, and an ardent Desire of rendring his Name immortal; 'tis reported he had a Dream which shock'd him extreamly; he fancy'd he committed Incest with his Mother: The Construction the Southsayers made of this was, He should subdue his Mother Earth; an Interpretation very agreeable to the Temper of the Man. But the Oracles and Augurs of old seldom sent a Vorary away dissatisfy'd, provided he was able to pay for the Answer. Hence the Priests of *Jupiter Hammon* persuaded *Philip's* Son he was nearly related to the Skies; and from the same Fountain, no doubt, had many of those auspicious Omens rise, that attended *Cæsar's* Arms, when he defeated *Pompey*; little Crafts despis'd by the wiser sort, but of singular Use to hoodwink the Populace, who never fight so zealously, as when they fancy Religion and Heaven are on their side.

After his Return from *Spain*, he marry'd *Pompeia* less renowned for Virtue than Beauty; witness her Affair with *Clodius*: All *Cæsar's* Accomplishments which enslav'd the World, were not sufficient to fix the roving Inclinations of a Woman: Nay, so imprudent were her Desires, she must needs appoint the Gallant an Interview at her own Palace, (when *Cæsar* being Prætor) she and all the *Roman* Ladies were celebrating those Sacred Rites to the Goddess *Bona*, where Men were never permitted to be present. She hoped the Youngster's Beardless Age would have conceal'd him; a trusty Maid, which was privy to the Intrigue, introduc'd the Gentleman; but as her evil Stars would have it, the Impatience of a youthful Lover made *Clodius* quit the Place he had been posted in; another of her Maids accidentally met him, and discover'd, by his Voice, he had no Title to wear Petticoats. This immediately put the whole Palace in an Uproar, the *Orgia* ended very abruptly; *Clodius* was complain'd of, not only as an Adulterer, but a profaner of the holy Ceremonies; and *Cæsar* thought it high time, at once to be rid of his Wife and the Scandal: Yet being summon'd as a Witness against *Clodius*, he said he had nothing to alledge against him: *Why then*, answer'd the Prosecutors, *Have you dismiss'd Pompeia?* *Because*, reply'd he, *I would not have my Wife even suspected.* Thus *Cæsar* was divorc'd, *Clodius* acquitted.

Finding his Generosity turn'd to so good Account, he still continu'd to give Proofs of it on all Occasions. Be-

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

ing elected *Edile*, his Magnificence so far excell'd his Collegues, that the whole Honour redounded only] to *Cæsar*, whilst *Bibulus* shar'd the same Fate with *Pollux*, the other with *Castor*, by whose Name alone that Temple in the *Forum* was call'd, dedicated to both the Brother Twins.

Every Day increas'd the Affection of the People, and *Cæsar*, relying on their Favour, put up for the Extraordinary Government of *Egypt*, because the *Alexandrians* had expell'd their King. He wanted not Suffrages, but *Ptolemy* having formerly been honour'd by the Senate with the Name of Friend, now found Protection from his Allies. This was the first Disappointment he met with; nor did this discourage him from standing soon after for the Pontificate, which became void by the Death of *Metellus*. *Catulus* and *Isauricus*, both Persons of great Interest in the Senate, were his Competitors; the former, dreading the Loss of his Honour, privately sent *Cæsar* a considerable Offer to desist, for he had not much to apprehend from *Isauricus*: But he gave him to understand, he would himself expend a much larger Sum to carry the Day. When the time appointed for the Election was come, leaving the House, he told his Mother, *She would either see him High-Priest that Day, or banished*. Thus probably had he miss'd of the Office, his future Hopes had been for ever dashed; but Fortune had not a Mind to disoblige the Man, for whom she had already cut out so much Business; therefore decided the Cause in his Favour, by a vast Majority of Votes.

When *Catiline's* Conspiracy broke out, *Cæsar* was *Prætor*: The Question being put, What should be done with *Lentulus*, *Cethegus*, and the rest of their Faction; after many Senators had voted for putting them to Death, he stood up and made an Oration, wherein having urged the Illegality of executing Persons of their Rank before they had been duly try'd, he advis'd that *Cicero*, their Consul, might confine them in some of the Municipal Towns, 'till *Catiline* should be defeated, that the Senate might have leisure to deliberate on their Sentence. So strong were his Arguments, with so peculiar a Grace were they delivered, and so wondrous an Effect had they upon the Audience, that not only most who came after submitted to his Opinion, but even some that had voted before him recanted: 'Till the severe *Cato*, transported with Zeal for the Commonwealth,

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

wealth, made a virulent Speech, wherein, to diminish the Credit of *Cæsar's* Reasons, he insinuated him to be a Party to the Plot, which effectually turn'd the Scales. Whether *Cæsar* was really concern'd in this Affair, or *Cato's* Suspicions were false, has furnish'd the World with Matter of Dispute; *Salust* leaves his Reputation clear, and truly *Cæsar* had so many Enemies in the Senate at that Juncture, amongst which Number was the Consul himself; they would gladly have laid hold of so fair an Opportunity, to have deliver'd themselves from a Person whose Popularity gave them so many Fears. Besides, if *Cæsar*, as *Suetonius* informs us, declin'd embarking with *Lepidus*, much more would he have avoided an Intimacy with such shallow Plotters as these, who admitted Strumpets into their Councils: On the contrary it appears, they were so angry for want of a lawful Pretext to dispatch him, that *Cicero's* Guards, (by whose Instigation may be easily judg'd) had like to have sent him to the other World, without the Formality of a Sentence: But the Consul, it seems, thought better of it, cover'd *Cæsar* with his Gown, and so preserved his Life.

Thus finding himself as much hated by the Nobility, as beloved by the common People, his countenancing the Tribune *Metellus*, when he preferred Laws in Favour of the latter, may be easilier excus'd. Upon this, however the Senate deprived him of his Prætorship, but restored it again, and returned him Thanks, when they found he modestly declin'd doing himself Justice, by that Force the People proffer'd.

His Præture ended, which gave him more Trouble than any Office he ever discharged before or after; *Cæsar* was chosen Governor of the farther *Spain*. His Creditors, who were very numerous, grew mighty uneasie at the Thoughts of his leaving *Rome* before they were paid. Wherefore, to satisfy the most importunate, he got *Crassus* to be engag'd for him, as far as Eight Hundred and Thirty Talents, then pursued his intended Journey. Passing by a small Village on the *Alps*, inhabited by a few miserable Wretches, his Friends in jest demanded, *Whether he thought the People had any Disputes for Offices, or Feuds about Elections there? No, reply'd Cæsar; But I assure you sincerely, I would rather be the First amongst these, than the Second Man at Rome.* They tell you likewise, as a farther Instance of his Ambition,

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

bition, he us'd frequently to repeat two Verses of *Euripides*, which he thus inverted;

*Nam si violandum est Jus, Regnandi gratia
Violandum est; aliis rebus Pietatem Colas.*

*If Violation of the Laws admit
Of Reason, Empire must the Failing quit;
In other things to Piety submit.*

}
}

Yet even the sage *Plutarch* agrees, *Cæsar* would have been contented with an Equal, *Pompey* would not.

Arriving in *Spain*, he soon rais'd a considerable Army, reduc'd *Portugal* and *Gallicia*, then pushing his Success advanc'd higher, and carry'd his Arms as far that way as the Ocean would permit. Thus he prov'd himself an able General; nor had the World less reason to think him a wise Civil Magistrate, from the wholesom Laws he made for the Peace, and quiet Government of the Province. This Success, when the Year expir'd, entitl'd him to a Triumph; but that interfering with his Pretensions to the Consulate, since *Cato's* Management hinder'd his obtaining both, he wisely declin'd the former, enter'd *Rome* as a private Person, and with *Bibulus* was chosen Consul.

This was the second time *Bibulus* had the Misfortune of being join'd in publick Office with *Cæsar*, who as far eclips'd him now as when formerly *Ædile*. For whereas *Cæsar* only rely'd on the People's Favour before, now he had ingratiated himself with the Two most considerable Persons in *Rome*, by reconciling *Pompey* and *Crassus*, whilst each of 'em courted him to be of his Partry. By this Action he did not only gain both their Friendships, but was ador'd by all Men, except *Cato*, for a Peace-Maker, whose perpetual Jealousies foresaw fatal Events from that Triumvirate, tho' without any apparent Reasons. Which *Plutarch* observes, then acquir'd him the Title of a sullen busy Man, tho' afterwards of a wise and unfortunate Counsellor. For his Case was exactly the same with that Prophetess's, who always spoke Truth, but was never believed. And indeed his Opinion was more the Effect of Foresight than of any just Ground; for so long as that Alliance continu'd, *Rome* enjoyed her imaginary Freedom, for in Reality she had never been free since the Days of *Marius*. But to a People that had always been

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

been govern'd by Two, the Name of a single Magistrate, or King, was a dreadful Sound; a Magick Word, sufficient at any time to conjure up Civil Discord, and act the most solemn Murders under the specious Name of asserting Liberty. And this was the fatal Word which afterwards cost *Cæsar* his Life.

Thus having match'd his Daughter *Julia* to *Pompey*, being supported both by him and *Crassus*. *Cæsar* was equal to either of 'em: And had not the Latter's untimely Death in *Parthia*, left the other Two sole Disputants for the supream Power, those Wars, which cost *Rome* so much of her purest Blood, had never happen'd. For when there is only one Life between Ambition and a Crown, the Object appears so near and so lovely, few are able to withstand the Temptation, but in Despite of Laws Human and Divine, give a loose to their Desires. Thus, in all probability, *Cromwell* had not been instrumental in cutting off the *Royal Martyr's* Head, had not the Lord *Thomas Fairfax*, reflecting on the Cause his mistaken Zeal embark'd him in, laid down his Command: A second Error, more fatal than the former; for this put it out of his Power to preserve the King, and all he could do afterwards, was little more than sending his Wishes for the Restoration of the Royal Line.

Thus *Cæsar*, having by the Interest of *Crassus* and *Pompey*, notwithstanding *Bibulus* oppos'd 'em, pass'd such Edicts, as made him more popular than before, and discharg'd the Office of Consul much to his own Satisfaction, obtain'd the Government of *Illyricum*, and both the Provinces of *Gaul*; where *Plutarch* informs us, in nine Years time he took five hundred Towns by Storm, conquered three hundred States, engag'd three Millions of Men at several times, kill'd one Third, and took another. But for a farther Account of his Glorious Exploits in that Country, of his Actions in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Greece*, *Alexandria*, *Asia* and *Africk*, I refer you to the following Memoirs; having only thus far deduc'd his Life, in the Nature of a short Appendix to this Version. Let it suffice therefore to acquaint you, so long as *Crassus* and *Cæsar's* Daughter *Julia* liv'd, *Pompey* and he were in perfect Friendship with each other: The greatest Men at *Rome* made their Court to him, *Pompey*, *Crassus*, *Appius*, the Prætor of *Sardinia*, and *Nepos*, Proconsul of *Spain*, at once attended him at *Lucca*, where one hundred and twenty

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

Twenty Lictors, and above Two Hundred Senators were present. In short, the Management of Affairs at *Rome* was wholly decided by these Three powerful Men. But when *Crassus* died, *Cæsar* and *Pompey* fell out, so the Civil Wars began.

How much Industry, Conduct and Courage, how much Mercy he shewed to his Enemies, and how well he was belov'd by his own Soldiers, let every Page in the following History witness for him. Even *Cato* himself, had not Despair carry'd him out of the World, might have surviv'd the Loss of *Utica*. When *Cæsar* heard of it, he said, O *Cato*, *How much do I envy thee thy Death, since thou hast prevented me the Honour of pardoning thee?* But *Cato's* Sons lived to taste of his Mercy; *Cassius* and *Brutus*, who afterwards kill'd him, were receiv'd into Favour; and nobody ask'd Forgiveness in vain.

Thus giddy with the wondrous height Fortune had rais'd him to, he return'd to *Rome* after the Defeat of young *Cneius Pompey*; where he was allow'd Five several Triumphs, for *Egypt*, *Pontus*, *Africk*, *Gaul* and *Spain*. Being declar'd perpetual Dictator, he rewarded those who had well deserv'd from his Friendship, and promoted some of his Enemies. But the People enjoying Peace, and having Leisure to reflect how lavish they had been, were for reassuming their mighty Grant. This could not be done without an Assassination, but Instruments were quickly found, and the ungrateful *Brutus*, partly prompted by Ambition, partly by old Prophecies trump'd up to serve that particular Turn, and the Vanity of imitating his Ancestor that expell'd the *Tarquins*, became Leader of this Faction. Yet the Confusion *Rome* was in after the bloody Deed committed, is a shrewd Argument, Revenge had a greater Share in the Action than any other Design. But Divine Justice did not long permit such an inhuman Murder to go unreveng'd, for all the Assassins came to an untimely End; *Cassius* kill'd himself with the same Dagger that wounded *Cæsar*, and *Brutus's* ill Genius o'ertook him at *Philippi*.

The Senate-house was the Place where this Tragedy was acted; many were the Accomplices, when *Cæsar* having receiv'd Three and Twenty Wounds expir'd. If ever Man was predestin'd to die by a certain time, he surely was; for divers portentous Tokens warn'd him to beware the fatal Day; nay, he had actually a

Lift

The LIFE of CÆSAR.

Lift of the Conspirators Names, with an Account of their Design, given him as he was walking to the Place, from whence he never return'd alive : But Fortune in all Ages, has made the Catastrophe of Heroe's very remarkable ; having promoted *Cæsar* to the greatest Honours ever Man obtain'd, she shew'd him her latest Friendship in granting his Desire of a sudden Death, before she recall'd her uncertain Favours. Thus fell the Great *Julius Cæsar* on the Fifteen of *March*, in the Fifty Sixth Year of his Age, having only surviv'd his Rival Four, and founded the *Roman* Empire in his own Blood : For after his Decease the Common-wealth became an absolute Monarchy, the constant Fate of ill-govern'd Republicks. He had only the single Failing of Ambition to prove him Mortal, yet assuming Supream Authority, was no more than what the Safety of his Person requir'd, for otherwise it would have fallen into *Pompey's* Hands, and then the Consequence must have prov'd fatal to *Cæsar* : But the greatest Use he made of Power, was to pardon those that offended him : Many were the Honours decreed his Memory, and his Name was the Title of Eleven succeeding Emperors.

THE
CONTENTS
OF
C. J. Caesar's Commentaries.

Caesar's War with the Gauls.

BOOK I.

GAUL describ'd. Invaded by the Swiss; who are worsted by Caesar in Two Battels. His War with Ariovistus. The Germans driven out of Gaul. Page i

BOOK II.

His War with the Confederate Belgæ. His Success in Picardie and Hainault. p. 29

BOOK III.

The War with the People of Valais, Vannes, Eureux, Coutances, Gascoigne, Terouienne and Guelders. p. 45

BOOK IV.

The Inhabitants of Zurphen and Hesse, drive those of Guelders out of their Country; but are defeated by Caesar. His Expeditions into Germany and England. p. 60

BOOK V.

Caesar builds a considerable Navy. He goes to Illyricum. His Second Expedition into England. The Gauls revolt. Sabinus and Cotta defeated. Cicero besieg'd, but reliev'd. p. 78

BOOK VI.

Caesar having reduc'd the Hainaultois, and receiv'd the Submission of those of Sens and Chartres, defeats the People

The C O N T E N T S.

People of Guelders. Labienus has the like Success in Treves. Cæsar makes a Second Expedition into Germany. The Sicambri attack his Camp; which he defends with some Loss; and having laid waste the Country of Liege, returns to Italy. p. 107

B O O K VII.

A General Revolt of the Gauls; who chuse Vercingetorix for their Leader. Cæsar takes several Places. The Siege of Bourges. Divisions in Autun. The Siege of Clermont; where the Romans are repuls'd with Loss. Labienus's Success at Paris. Vercingetorix's Preparations; And the Siege of Alexia. p. 129

Aulus Hirtius Panfa, or Oppius's Supplement to the War in Gaul.

B O O K VIII.

A. Hirtius's Preface to his Book. New Commotions in Gaul. Berry and Chartres laid waste by Cæsar. Beauvois and several other States subdu'd. Rebellion in Poitou, Chartres, Normandy, and Britain; quell'd by C. Fabius. A Victory obtain'd by Caninius. Usseldon taken by Cæsar. Comius defeated and pardon'd. The following Year, the whole Kingdom of Gaul being quieted, Cæsar's Enemies at Rome conspire against him. p. 176

The Contents of the Civil War with Pompey.

B O O K I.

The Causes of the Civil War. Cæsar gains the Possession of intire Italy. Besieges Pompey in Brundisium. Takes the Town, but Pompey escapes. Cæsar's Party prevails against Cotta in Sardinia, and Caro in Sicily. Cæsar marches to Rome. Returns to Gaul. Then besieges Marseilles. His Success in Spain. p. 201

B O O K II.

Marseilles closely besieg'd. On Nasidius's Arrival a Second Sea-fight, with ill Success on the Side of the Besieged. Trebonius's wonderful Works. The Besieged demand a Truce, which they break themselves, but at last surrender. Varro deserted, he falls into Cæsar's Power. Curio at first has good Success in Africk, but engaging rashly, afterwards, is cut to Pieces with his whole Army. p. 247

B O O K

The CONTENTS. Book I.

BOOK III.

Cæsar and Pompey their Preparations. Cæsar goes into Greece. The Siege of Salona. Pompey retires to Durazzo. Bibulus dies. Propositions of Peace rejected. Tumults at Rome compos'd. Antony and Kalenus join Cæsar. Scipio's Tyranny in Asia. His Arrival in Macedonia. Pompey besieg'd by Cæsar at Durazzo. Skirmishes with various Success. Cæsar quits the Siege. Draws Pompey into Thessaly. Engages and Defeats him. Lælius besieges Brundisium. Cassius burns Cæsar's Ships in Sicily. Pompey kill'd in Egypt by Achillas and Septimius. Cæsar goes to Alexandria; where he is engag'd in another War. p. 272

The Contents of *Aulus Hirtius* or *Oppian's* Commentary of the *Alexandrian War*.

The War continu'd. Cæsar's Success at Sea. He narrowly escapes by swimming. The King set at Liberty, turns an Enemy. An End of the War. The Defeat of Domitius Calvinus. Cassius Longinus's Extortions in Spain, occasion an Insurrection. The Defeat of Pharnaces, and Cæsar's Return to Italy. p. 328

The Contents of the *African War*.

Cæsar, having compos'd the Troubles at Rome, sails for Africk. Gains Leptis. Has several Skirmishes with Labienus. Juba, going to join Scipio, is forced to return, on News that Bogud had enter'd his Country. The various Success of the War on both Sides, Towns lost and taken, Ships taken, but Fortune inclines to Cæsar. A set Battel, and Scipio defeated. The Death of Cato, and several other Persons of Note. Juba's Kingdom reduc'd into a Province. p. 365

The Contents of the *Spanish War*.

Cæsar's Arrival in Spain. The Occasion of the War. The Battel of Munda, the Taking of Cordova and Seville. The Death of Pompey's Eldest Son. The Taking of Munda. The Siege of Urfaon; and Cæsar's last Speech. p. 410

C. J. Cæ-

B
M
ito
u-
ed.
in
a-
ir-
ge.
irs
æ-
A-
a;
72
's

ly
ns
o-
in
r-
8

or
a-
e-
be
ad
A
o,
e-
5

be
e.
of
st
o
-



C. J. Caesar's
 COMMENTARY
 OF HIS
 WAR
 IN
 GAUL.

The First Book.

*Gaul describ'd : Invaded by the Swifs; Who are
 worsted by Cæsar in Two Battels : His War with
 Ariovistus : The Germans driven out of Gaul.*

CHAP. I.

GAUL is divided into Three Parts, each in-
 habited by People of different Language, Gaul divid-
 ed. En this
 relates only
 to the Gallia
 Laws, and Customs, the *Belgæ*, *Acquitains*, Comati.
 Garumna,
 Matrona,
 Sequana.
 and *Celtæ*, as they call themselves, but we
 the *Gauls*; the last of these are divided from the *Aqui-*
tains by the River *Garonne*, and by the *Maern* and *Seine*
 from the *Belgæ*, the most warlike People of the Three,
 because they are the gteatest Strangers to the Politeness
 of the Province, hold no Commerce with Merchants,
 who import such Wares as serve to nourish Luxury,
 and are situated next the *Germans* beyond the *Rhine*,
 with whom they wage perpetual War; for which Rea-
 son the *Swifs* likewise are more hardy than the *Gauls*, *Helvetij*.
 B because

because they and their *German* Neighbours are continually quarrelling, whilst each of them strives to encroach on the others Dominions. The Territories of the *Gauls* commence at the River *Rhosne*, are bounded by the *Garonne* and the Ocean, on that side next the *Belgæ*, stretching out Northward along the *Rhine*, which divides 'em from the *Swiss* and * *Franchecomtois*; *Belgia*; which lies North-east, joyning to the extremest Confines of *Gaul*, extends as far as to the lower *Rhine*; and Part of *Aquitania* or *Gascony*, spreading between the *Garonne* and the *Pyrenees*, bounds North-west upon the *Spanish* Ocean.

* Sequani;
but in Cæsar's time
only contained
Part of
Franchecomte, viz.
Besançon.

Orgetorix
perswades
the Swiss to
invade Gaul.

Mons Jura
Lacus Lemanus.

During the Consulat of *M. Messala* and *M. Piso*, *Orgetorix*, the most considerable Man among the *Swiss*, as well for Birth as Riches, being prompted by Ambition, engag'd the Nobility in his Interest, and perswaded the People to quit their Country in an entire Body; by assuring 'em, that they, who so far excell'd all other Nations in Valour, might without much Difficulty make themselves Masters of *Gaul*; which they were the easier induc'd to, by the closeness of their own Dominions, divided on one side by the *Rhine*, a broad and deep River, from the *Germans*, on another by the inaccessible Mountains of *St. Claud* from *Franchecomte*, and on the third by the Lake of *Geneva*, and the River *Rhosne* from our Province. Being thus enclos'd, they wanted Opportunities of enlarging their Territories, or invading their Neighbours; nor was it a little irksome to a numerous and warlike People, to see themselves confin'd within such narrow Limits, as those of a Country extending but 240 Miles in Length, and 180 in Breadth.

These Circumstances, so luckily concurring with the Authority of *Orgetorix*, had that effect, that the People unanimously resolv'd to prepare for the Expedition; whereupon they bought up considerable Numbers of Waggon and Beasts for Carriage, Till'd their Ground, that they might have Plenty of Corn in their Journey, and made a Peace with all their Neighbours: Two Years time they thought sufficient to compleat their Preparations, and oblig'd themselves, by a Law, to begin their March the Third.

CHAP. II.

Orgetorix
sent Embasador to the
neighbouring
States.

THE Management of this important Design was committed to the sole Conduct of *Orgetorix*, whom they depu-

deputed their Ambassador to the neighbouring States, where he persuaded *Casticus*, the Son of *Catamantaldes* of *Franchecomte*, where he had reign'd many Years, and been honour'd by the Senate and People of *Rome* with the Name of Friend, to take upon him the Sovereignty of that State, which his Father formerly enjoy'd: The same Advice he gave to *Dumnorix* of * *Autun*, a Man of the best Interest in that Province, to whom he married his Daughter: He demonstrated how easily they might compass their Design; and promis'd, so soon as he had conquer'd *Gaul* with his *Swiss*, whose Subjection he was already assur'd of, to settle each of 'em in a Kingdom there by the Assistance of his Forces; whereupon they enter'd into a League, promising themselves the entire Possession of *Gaul*, by the mutual Assistance of Three such Potent Nations.

* *Eduus*
the Brother
of *Divitiac-*
cus.

The *Swiss* having Notice of this Design, according to their usual Custom, arrested *Orgetorix* in order to bring him to his Trial, and had Sentence been pass'd upon him, he must have been Burnt alive; but he took care by the Day appointed to have all his Relations, Friends, Clients and Debtors, to the Number of 10000 Men, ready to rescue him from the Hands of Justice; which so incens'd the People, that they agreed the Magistrates should raise the Power of the Country, and execute the Laws by Force: But before they could do it, *Orgetorix* was found dead, not without strong Suspicion of having laid violent Hands on himself.

Orgetorix
to avoid
Judgment
kills himself.

The *Swiss*, nor altering their Resolution for his Death, pursu'd their intended Journey; and to take away all Hopes of Return, before they set forward, put Fire to their twelve Cities, four hundred Villages, several private Houses, and consum'd all the Corn, except what each Man was allow'd to carry out of the Country, which was only enough for three Months Provision.

The People of *Basil*, *Stulingen*, and *Lausane* resolv'd to follow their Neighbours Examples, and set Fire to their Houses, intending to share the same Fortune, carrying along with them the *Boii*, who having pass'd the *Rhine*, had taken the Capital of *Bavie*, and seated themselves there.

Rauraci,
Stulingi,
Lathbrigi.

Norica.

They had only two Ways to go out of their Country, one thro' *Franchecomte*, between the Mountain *Jura* and the River *Rhofne*, which was so very narrow and difficult, that in some Places a Cart could hardly pass, where

War with
the Swiss.

Allobroges.

their Journey might easily have been stopp'd by an inconsiderable Force, posted on the Top of the impending Mountains; the other lay thro' our Province, which was much the easier and shorter Cut, for the River *Rhofne* which runs between the *Swiss* and *Savoyards*, a People lately conquer'd by the *Romans*, was fordable in several Places; besides the Bridge at *Geneva* (which is the farthest Town the *Savoyards* have on that side) was theirs; and they doubted not but their Neighbours, who seem'd to submit with Reluctance to the *Roman* Yoke, would readily grant 'em the Liberry of passing thro' their Country; which, if deny'd, they could obtain by Force: Wherefore, having prepar'd all things for their Journey, they appointed the eight and twentieth Day of *March*, in the Consulat of *L. Piso* and *A. Gabinius*, for their general Rendezvous on the Banks of the River *Rhofne*.

CHAP. III.

Cæsar takes
Post for
Gaul.

The Swiss
demand a
Passage thro'
his Govern-
ment.

SO soon as *Cæsar* had notice of their Design to pass thro' his Government, he immediately left *Rome*, took Post for the further *Gaul*, and being arriv'd at *Geneva*, order'd the Bridge to be cut down, and rais'd a considerable Number of fresh Forces in all Parts of the Province, for he had but one Legion there. The *Swiss* being inform'd of his Arrival, sent *Numeius* and *Verdoctius*, with some other Noblemen of the first Rank, their Embassadors to desire he would permit 'em to pass peaceably thro' his Province, for they had no other Way to prosecute their Journey: But *Cæsar* remembring how the Consul *L. Cassius* lost his Life, how his Army was put to the Rout, and his Soldiers forc'd to pass under the Yoke, held it not consistent with the Honour of the Empire to grant their Request; nor did he think it possible for so barbarous a People to pass thro' the Country without committing some Outrages. However, to gain further time 'till his new Levies were compleated, he told the Embassadors he would consider of their Demand, and if they return'd on the thirtieth of *April* following they should have his Answer.

In the mean time *Cæsar*, with the Veteran Legion and the new Levies that came in from all Parts of the Province, cast up an Intrenchment, rais'd a Wall sixteen Foot high and nineteen Miles in Length, between the Lake of *Geneva* (which discharges it self into the *Rhofne*) and

and the Mountains of *Jura*, which divide the People of *War with the Swifs.*
Franchecomte from the *Swifs*, and built little Forts all along the Works in the most commodious Places, to prevent their Passage in case they should attempt it by Storm. At the Day appointed, when the Deputies return'd for their Answer, he positively deny'd their Request, saying, *He knew no Precedent of the like Nature amongst the Romans which could justify his Conduct, and therefore should they endeavour to force their Way he was oblig'd to oppose 'em.* *but are deny'd.*

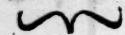
CHAP. IV.

MEETING so unexpected a Denial, some endeavour'd to ford the River where it was shallowest, whilst others attempted to make a Bridge of Boats, at which they labour'd with great Application in the Night, and sometimes by Day; but being warmly receiv'd by the Soldiers on the other side, and repuls'd with Darts from the Fortifications, finding their Design impracticable they at last desisted. *They endeavour to get over the River, but are disappointed.*

They had now no other Way left but that thro' *Franchecomte*, which was so narrow they could not pass without the Peoples Leave, which they could not obtain; wherefore they sent Embassadors to *Dumnorix* of *Autun*, to beg his Intercession in their behalf, *Dumnorix*, whose obliging Carriage and Generosity had gain'd him the Affection of the *Franchecomtois*, was inclinable enough to serve the *Swifs* on the score of his Marriage with the Daughter of *Orgetorix*; besides, intending to make himself absolute, he was glad of an Opportunity to oblige so potent a Nation, who might hereafter be serviceable to him in his Designs: He undertook the Business, and succeeded to their Satisfaction, for the *Franchecomtois* agreed to let the *Swifs* pass thro' their Country, upon Delivery of mutual Hostages, these for their peaceable Behaviour, and the other not to interrupt their Passage. *Dumaorix gets the Swifs's leave to pass thro' Franchecomte.*

Cesar hearing the *Swifs* design'd to march thro' *Franchecomte* and the Territories of *Autun* to the Confines of *Santonum*. *Tolosatum.*
Xantonze, which joyn to *Tholouse*, Part of the *Roman* Province, foresaw what would be the Consequence, if so troublesome Neighbours, mortal Enemies to the People of *Rome*, once possess'd themselves of so open and plentiful a Country: Wherefore committing the Charge of his new Works to his Lieutenant *T. Labienus*, he made the best of his Way to *Italy*, where he rais'd two Legions,

War with
the Swifs.



Centrones,
Garocellia,
Caturiges.

gions, and drew three more out of their Winter-Quarters about *Aquileia*; with which Forces he repass'd the *Alps*. In his way to the further *Gaul*, the Inhabitants of *Tarantaise*, of the Valley of *Morienne* and *Ambrun*, possess'd themselves of the Passes, designing to oppose his March; but having often repuls'd 'em, he at last arriv'd in seven Days time from *Ocello* to *Vocontium*, the two extreme Confines of the Province.

The Swifs
lay waste & ce
Country of
Autun.

In the mean time the *Swifs*, having pass'd the Streights of *Franchecomte*, and enter'd the Province of *Autun*, began to ravage the Country, which oblig'd the People, who were not in a Capacity to resist 'em, to send to *Cæsar* for Assistance, alledging they had never merited so ill from *Rome*, that she should suffer their Fields to be burnt, their Children to be made Captives, and their Towns taken, even in the View of her Army: At the same time arriv'd Messengers, from the People of *Charolais*, Allies and Friends to those of *Autun*, to complain, that their Country was laid waste, and that they were scarce able to defend their Towns against the *Swifs*; and those of *Dauphine* likewise, who dwelt on the other side of the *Rhosne*, fled to *Cæsar* for Protection, assuring him that all their Cities were laid even with the Ground; which mov'd his Compassion so much, that he resolv'd not to wait for the Enemy 'till his Allies should be ruined, and the *Swifs* arriv'd at *Xantonge*.

Ambarri.

Allobroges
trans Rhodanum.

The Waters of the River *Soan*, which washing the Confines of *Franchecomte* and *Autun*, disemboague themselves into the *Rhosne*, move so very slowly, that 'tis difficult to distinguish which way they glide. This River the *Swifs* pass'd on a Bridge of Boats, and *Cæsar's* Spies bringing him Intelligence when all their Forces, except a fourth Part, had cross'd the River, about Midnight he left his Camp, and fell upon the Remainder with three Legions, whilst they were unprepar'd and encumber'd with their Baggage, put a great Number of 'em to the Sword, and routed the rest, who fled for Shelter to the neighbouring Woods. The *Swifs* were divided into four Cantons, and the defeated were the Natives of * *Zurick*, who alone, leaving their Country, in the Memory of our Fathers, slew *L. Cassius* the Consul, and made his Army pass under the Yoke: So whether it were by Chance, or the peculiar Providence of Heaven, that very Canton which formerly gave the *Romans* so fatal a Stroke, was the first that felt the Weight of Vengeance: Nor did *Cæsar* less gratify his private than the

Arar.

Cæsar falls
upon the
Swifs when 3
Fourths had
pass'd the Ri-
ver.

* Pagus Ti-
gurinus.

the publick Revenge in this Affair, for *L. Piso*, Grand-father to *L. Piso*, whose Daughter he had marry'd, fell in the Battle fought with those of *Zurick*, when *Cassius* lost his Life.

War with
the Swiss.

C H A P. V.

AFTER this Defeat *Cæsar* cast the Bridge cross the *Soan*, that he might pursue the rest of the Enemy, who understanding he had cross'd the River in one Day, which they could hardly do in twenty, were so surpris'd and daunted at his Approach that they immediately sent Embassadors to his Camp; their Speaker was *Divicius*, who commanded in Chief at the Battle where *Cassius* was slain, and being brought to *Cæsar*, he spoke to this Effect; That if the Romans concluded a Peace with the Swiss, they would submit to march to any Place which *Cæsar* should think fit to assign em; but if he intended to carry on the War, he would do well to remember the Overthrow which the People of Rome formerly receiv'd from their Valour, and not be puff'd up with Success, for having surpris'd a small Party whilst the rest of the Army could not come to their Assistance: For their Parts, they had learnt from their Ancestors to contend by Force, but scorn'd Deceit; and therefore it import'd the Romans to beware, lest the Place where they pitch'd their Camp should obtain, to their infinite Sorrow, a memorable Name from the Destruction of their Army.

The Swiss
send Embas-
sadors to de-
clare a Peace.
Their Speech.

To this *Cæsar* answer'd, That he had less Reason to doubt of Success, because he well remember'd those Actions the Embassadors mention'd; which he more heinously resented, because they injur'd the Romans without the least Pretence to justify their Action; for had his Countrymen been conscious they had given Occasion, they might easily have been prepar'd to receive em, but knowing their Innocence they had no Apprehensions of that Nature, and therefore were surpris'd: That whilst he found himself inclinable to forget former Injuries, fresh Insolences recurr'd to his Mind, their attempting to force their Passage thro' his Province, their sacking *Autun*, *Charolais* and *Dauphine*, and boasting of that Victory which he wonder'd the immortal Gods had so long suffered to go unreverged; but they sometimes permitted Mankind to glory in Impunity for a while, that Vengeance, being less expected, might fall the heavier: However, if they would deliver Hostages for the performance of such Articles as should be agreed on, if they would make the Provinces of *Autun* and *Dauphine*, with their Allies, Restitution for the Damage

Cæsar's
Answer.

War with
the Swiss.



they had done 'em, he was contented there should be a Peace. But Divicius reply'd, The Romans knew very well, 'twas not the Custom of the Swiss to deliver, but receive Hostages ; and so departed.

The next Day they decamp'd, and so did Cæsar, sending all his Horse before (which he had levy'd in the Province and the Country of *Autun*, to the Number of 4000) to observe the Enemy's Motions, who following too close fell in with their Rere, and being oblig'd to engage 'em at a Disadvantage lost a few Men : The Swiss, encourag'd by their Success in this Rencounter, where they had maintain'd their Ground with five hundred Horse against so considerable a Number, were so bold sometimes to sally from their Rere, and skirmish with our Van-guard ; but Cæsar restrain'd his Men from fighting, being contented, for the present, to prevent the Enemy's plundering the Country, and so continu'd his March fifteen Days successively, keeping his Van-guard constantly within five or six Miles of the Enemy's Rere.

C H A P. VI.

CÆSAR in the mean time press'd the People of *Autun* for the Supplies of Corn which they had promis'd, for *Gaul* lying Northward in a very cold Climate, their Corn was not ripe, and their Pasture scarce afforded Forage enough for the Horses ; nor could the Romans receive any more Provisions by the way of the *Soan*, for the Enemy had march'd directly from the River, and they were resolv'd not to leave 'em. The *Autunois* still putting Cæsar off from time to time on pretence the Corn was coming, 'till the Day of delivering out Provisions to the Army was just arriv'd, he order'd *Divitiacus* and *Liscus*, the Chief Magistrate, (whom they stile *Vergobret*, and create yearly with Power of Life and Death) with the rest of the Noblemen of that Country, for he had many of 'em in his Camp, to attend him ; these he severely reprimanded, for disappointing him of their Contributions at so important a Conjunction, whilst the Enemy was so near, when there was no Corn in the Country, nor any to be procur'd for Money ; adding, he had Reason to take it very ill that they should desert him, when, at their Request, he engag'd in that War for their Defence.

Whereupon *Liscus*, being mov'd by Cæsar's Speech, ingenu-

ingenuously declar'd what he had so long kept secret ; *War with the Swiss.*
That there were some private Persons of greater Authority amongst the People, than they who bore the Title of Magistrates ; that these had seditiously dissuaded 'em from bringing in their Corn, insinuating, that since they could not obtain the Empire of Gaul themselves, 'twas better to be subject to the Gauls than the Romans, for they might depend upon it, so soon as the Romans had subdu'd the Swiss, they and their Neighbours would be bereft of their Liberty: That from these the Enemy receiv'd constant Intelligence of all that pass'd in the Camp ; and that he endanger'd the Loss of his Life by speaking freely, which was the Reason he had not inform'd him of it sooner, for the Persons he meant were grown too big to be restrain'd by the Laws.

Cæsar perceiv'd by *Liscus's* Speech that *Dumnorix*, *Divitiacus's* Brother, was point'd at, but thinking it improper to hold further Discourse about an Affair of that nature in publick, he immediately dismiss'd the Council, and retaining only *Liscus*, ask'd him several Questions about the Matter, which he answer'd with an honest Freedom ; and enquiring further he found it confirm'd from other Hands, *That Dumnorix was a Man of Spirit and Enterprize, a mighty Favourite of the common People because of his Liberality ; That he had for many Years farm'd the publick Taxes of Autun at an under Rate, no Man daring to interfere with his Interest, by which means he had considerably enrich'd his private Patrimony, found the Means to be Liberal, and was so rich that he constantly maintain'd a great Number of Horsemen, who waited on him wherever he went ; That he was not only powerful at home, but had a considerable Interest abroad amongst the neighbouring States, for he had marry'd his Mother to the richest Nobleman in Berry, had taken a Wife for himself from amongst the Swiss, and match'd his Sister by the Mother's Side, with the rest of his Kindred into other Countries : That for the sake of Affinity he was a Well-wisher to the Swiss, and hated the Romans, especially Cæsar, because by their Arrival in Gaul his Authority was eclips'd, and his Brother restor'd to his ancient Dignity : That he hop'd to obtain Sovereignty by the Assistance of the Swiss, in case the Romans should be defeated ; whereas their Success made him despair not only of a Crown, but of keeping the Authority he had left. And Cæsar was further inform'd, That when his Cavalry was routed, Dumnorix and his Party were the first that fled, for to his Charge were committed the Horse which the People of Autun had sent to Cæsar's Assistance, whose bad Example struck a Terror into the rest of the Soldiers.*

Liscus's Speech ; he discovers the Treachery of Dumnorix.

Dumnorix's Character.

These

War with
the Swiss.



These Suspicions were back'd by certain Proofs ; for *Dumnorix* was accus'd by the Magistrates, for having procur'd the *Swiss* a Passage thro' *Franchecomte*, on Delivery of mutual Hostages between them and the People of that Country, without the Privity or Consent either of *Cæsar* or those of his own Nation, wherefore he thought he had sufficient Reason either to punish him himself, or cause him to be try'd according to the Laws of his own Country ; which he had immediately done but for his Brother *Divitiacus*'s sake, a Man of singular Loyalty, Temperance and Justice, who had given constant Proofs of his Affection to *Cæsar* and the People of *Rome* ; for which reason, before he made any Progress in the Matter, he sent for *Divitiacus*, and making use of no other Interpreter but *C. Valerius Procillus*, a Prince of *Gaul*, his particular Acquaintance, in whom he repos'd great Confidence, acquainted him what he had heard of his Brother, at the general Council of the *Gauls*, and what private Confirmation he had of the Matter afterwards, desiring that he would either cause him to be try'd according to the Laws of *Autun*, or not to take it ill, if he himself should inflict that Punishment on his Crime which he deserv'd.

Cæsar is intreated by *Divitiacus* to pardon his Brother.

Whereupon *Divitiacus* embracing *Cæsar* with Tears in his Eyes, intreated him that he would not use his Brother severely, for tho' he knew him to be guilty of all that was laid to his Charge, and had more reason to be afflicted at it than any Man, because he had employ'd that Fortune which he was indebted to him for, in ruining his Credit both at home and abroad, yet he could not banish Natural Affection : Besides, the People knowing what a Favourite he was with *Cæsar*, would attribute *Dumnorix*'s Ruin to his Advice ; which would make him be detested throughout the whole Province. *Cæsar* seeing *Divitiacus* in so great a Concern, took him by the Hand, and order'd him to dry up his Tears, for he had so particular an Esteem for him, that for his sake he would forgive the Injury his Brother had done the Commonwealth, and the Affront he himself had receiv'd : Whereupon sending for *Dumnorix*, he reprimanded him for his Crimes, telling him how well he was acquainted with his Practices, and what Complaints his Countrymen had made of him, which, for once, at the Request of *Divitiacus*, he pardon'd ; but bid him take care how he behav'd himself for the future, for he had set such Spies upon him as would take notice of his Carriage, and whom he convers'd with.

which he does.

but reprimands him severely.

The same Day, having Intelligence that the Enemy had

Book I. Of his War in Gaul.

11

had lodg'd themselves under a Hill, about eight Miles distant from his Camp, *Cæsar* sent out a Party to take a View of the Ascent, which they reported to be very easy; whereupon he detach'd his Lieutenant *T. Labienus* about Midnight with two Legions and able Guides, ordering him to gain the Top of the Hill, and he himself about three Hours after, sending the Cavalry before, follow'd the same way with the rest of the Army. *P. Causidius*, an experienc'd Soldier, who had serv'd first under *L. Sylla*, and afterwards under *M. Crassus*, had the Command of a small Party, who were sent to discover what Posture the *Swiss* were in; but about the Dawning of the Day, when *Causidius* was arriv'd within a Mile and a half of the Enemy's Camp, when *Labienus* had actually posted himself on the Top of the Hill, unknown to the Enemy, who neither dreamt of his nor *Causidius*'s Approach, (as we were inform'd afterwards by the Prisoners) *Causidius* came riding back again, in Post-haste, to acquaint *Cæsar*, that the Enemy were Masters of the Place which he order'd *Labienus* to possess himself of, as he plainly discover'd by the *Swiss* Colours; whereupon *Cæsar* retiring to the next Hill, drew his Army up into Order of Battel: *Labienus* in the meantime, having gain'd the rising Ground, according to his Orders was not to engage the Enemy till he saw our Forces near their Camp, that they might be attack'd from all sides at once; wherefore keeping his Men within their Ranks, he said to expect the rest of the Army. But afterwards, when the Day was far spent, *Cæsar* was inform'd by his Spies, that our Soldiers possess'd the Hill, that the Enemy had decamp'd, and that *Causidius*'s Fear made him report what he never saw; so he follow'd the Enemy at the usual Distance the rest of that Day, and encamp'd within three Miles of 'em at Night.

Causidius's
Fear, and
false Report.

CHAP. VII.

THE next Day being within eighteen Miles of *Autun*, the Capital of that Province, because *Cæsar* was oblig'd to deliver out Provisions to the Army, within two Days after, he left following the Enemy, and march'd directly to the City, which the *Swiss* having notice of from some Deserters in *L. Emilius*'s Troop; whether they imagin'd the *Romans* retreated for Fear, (because they did not engage 'em the Day before, whilst they had the advantage of the Ground) or whether they design'd

War with
the Swiss.

The Swiss
attack the
Roman
Rere.

to cut off all Convoys of Provision, altering their Resolution, they immediately fac'd about, and attack'd our Army in the Rere; which *Cæsar* perceiving, sent the Horse to cover the Foot, and drew up his Forces on the next Hill: His four Veteran Legions he dispos'd into three Lines; on the Summit of the Hill he rang'd the two Legions of new Levies lately arriv'd from the hither *Gaul*, with the rest of his Auxiliary Troops, stretching out his Wings so as to cover the whole Front of the Mountain; and dispos'd the Carriages, which were committed to the Charge of the Battallions on the top of the Mount, into a particular Place by themselves: The *Swiss* did the like by their Baggage, and having repuls'd the *Roman* Cavalry with a numerous Squadron, cast themselves into a *Phalanx*, and attack'd our foremost Ranks.

C H A P. VIII.

The Armies
rang'd in or-
der of Battel
engage.

WHEREUPON *Cæsar*, to take away all hopes of Retreat, caus'd all the Led Horses to be sent away, setting the first Example by his own, then encouraging his Men began the Charge; the *Romans*, casting their Darts from the rising Ground, soon broke the Enemy's Ranks, and then enter'd with Sword in Hand.

C H A P. IX.

THE *Swiss*, in the mean time, were mightily incumber'd with their Targets that were pierc'd thro', and pinn'd together by the Darts, which, being forked, they could neither draw 'em out, nor make use of their left Arms to defend themselves; wherefore, after a long Fatigue, they flung 'em away, and fought unarm'd, 'till fainting with Loss of Blood, they began to give way, and retreated to a rising Ground about a Mile distant from the Place where the Fight commenc'd. Our Legions pursu'd 'em to the Hill, intending to force 'em from their Post, but 15000 *Boii* and *Stulingens*, the Rere and Reserve of their Army, attack'd the *Romans* in the Flank, and began to inclose 'em as they were in pursuit of the Enemy, which the *Swiss*, who had retir'd to the Hill, perceiving, renew'd the Fight; whereupon the *Romans* were oblig'd to face about, and whilst two Legions engag'd the *Swiss*, the Third maintain'd their Ground against the *Boii* and *Stulingens*; whereupon the Battel was hot and dubious for a while, 'till the Enemy no longer

able

able to sustain the furious Charge of the *Roman Legions*, ^{War with the Swiss.} one Part of 'em retir'd again to the Top of the Hill, whilst the rest retreated to their Baggage; for during the whole Battel, which continu'd from One a Clock 'till the Evening, no Man hitherto saw the Back of his Enemy.

C H A P. X.

THE Enemy maintain'd the Fight very obstinately at their Carriages 'till the Night was far spent, and, making use of their Carts for a Fortification, gaul'd our Forces with their Javelins from the rising Ground, and with their Pikes and Halberds thro' the Wheels of their Waggon; but, after a warm Dispute, our Soldiers took their Baggage, and forc'd their Camp, where a Son and Daughter of *Orgetorix* were taken Prisoners. About an hundred and thirty Thousand of the Enemy made their Escape, and marching Day and Night without intermission, arriv'd the fourth Day at the Confines of *Langres*; for the *Romans* being much wounded and fatigu'd, and three Days being spent in burying the Dead, there was no Pursuit.

But *Cæsar* took care to acquaint the People of *Langres*, ^{Lingones.} that if they offer'd to assist the *Swiss* with any kind of Provisions, he should esteem 'em his Enemies, and treat 'em as such within three Days; for by that time he design'd to be there with all his Forces.

C H A P. XI.

THE *Swiss* being thus reduc'd to the utmost Extremity, for want of all kind of Provisions, sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, who, meeting him on the Road, prostrated themselves at his Feet, and with Tears in their Eyes, most humbly besought him that he would vouchsafe to grant 'em Peace: He commanded 'em to bid their Countrymen expect his Arrival at the Place where they had taken up their Quarters; and as soon as he came to *Langres*, he demanded they should give Hostages for their Behaviour, deliver up their Arms, and return the Deserters.

Whilst this Treaty was in Agitation, about six Thousand of the Canton of *Verbigen*, ^{Verbigeni.} either fearing to be executed when they had parted with their Arms, or hoping to escape (thinking so small a Number could hardly be miss'd

mis'd out of so vast a Multitude, or at least that their Countrymen would conceal their Flight,) in the beginning of the Night left the *Swiss* Camp, making the best of their way to the River *Rhine* and *Germany*: But *Cæsar* being inform'd what Road they had taken, commanded their Companions to fetch 'em back again, unless they design'd to be accounted Parties to their Crime; and upon their Return he us'd 'em like Enemies: But all the rest, after Delivery of their Arms, Hostages, and Deserters, he receiv'd into Mercy, commanding the *Swiss*, *Stulingens*, and People of *Lausane*, to return again to their Country; and because they wanted Corn, he order'd the *Savoyards* to furnish 'em with what Provisions they had occasion for, desiring the *Swiss* to rebuild the Cities they had burnt, lest the *Germans* beyond the *Rhine*, should be tempted by the Richness of the Soil, to invade their Country, and make themselves Neighbours to the *Roman* Territories in *Gaul* and *Savoy*. But the *Boii*, upon the Intercession of the People of *Autun*, who knew 'em to be a Warlike Nation, were permitted to dwell in their Country, where they gave 'em Lands, and Naturaliz'd 'em.

The *Swiss*
War ended.

In the Enemy's Camp was found a *Greek* List, containing an exact Account of the Age and Sex of all that had left their Country, how many were able to bear Arms, how many Boys, how many old Men and Women, each in a separate Roll by themselves, by which it appear'd the whole Number of the *Swiss* amounted to 263000, of the *Stulingens* to 36000, of the People of *Lausane* to 14000, of *Basil* to 23000, and of the *Boii* to 32000, amounting in the whole to 368000, whereof 192000 bore Arms; and a Review being made, by *Cæsar's* Command, of those that return'd to their Country, there were but 11000 that had escap'd the Slaughter.

C H A P. XII.

THE War with the *Swiss* being thus happily concluded, all the States and Princes of *Gaul* sent Deputies to congratulate *Cæsar's* Success, being sensible that the *Romans* had not only quitted former Scores with the *Swiss* by this Victory, but obtain'd a glorious Peace, no less advantageous to *Gaul*, than their own Empire, because the *Swiss* had left their Country, where they wanted nothing necessary for the Support of Life, with a Design to possess themselves of some plentiful Part of the

Con-

Continent, whence they might have an Opportunity of making the other States of *Gaul* their Tributaries.

They likewise desir'd that *Caesar* would permit 'em, at a certain Day prefix'd, to summon a General Assembly of all the States, for they had Matters of the highest Importance to discuss, which they would unanimously submit to his Decision; having obtain'd their Desire, and the Day appointed being come, they all oblig'd themselves by Oath, not to reveal the Cause of their Meeting to any Persons, but such as should be deputed by the general Vote of the whole Diet.

The Assembly breaking up, the same Deputies return'd to *Caesar*, and demanded a private Audience, that they might discourse him about an Affair that concern'd their common Safety, which he readily granted; whereupon casting themselves at his Feet, *They besought him with Tears as much to conceal what they communicated, as to grant their Petition, for should the Affair be divulged, which they laid before him, it would certainly plunge 'em into the last Degree of Misery and Affliction.*

Divitiacus, who carry'd the Address, acquainted him, *Their Address to Caesar. Averni.* That *Gaul* was divided into two potent Factions, one headed by the *Autunois*, the other by those of *Auverne*. These having long contended for the Superiority, at last the People of *Auverne* and *Franchecomte* pray'd Assistance of the Germans, and receiv'd about 15000 of their Troops into Pay, who pass'd the Rhine at their Desire, and having tasted the Plenty of the Soil, and Civility of the Gauls, invited more of their Countrymen over, till they were increas'd to the Number of 120000. With these the *Autunois* had more than once disputed, to their infinite Damage, for they had lost their Cavalry, Nobility and Senate, by which Misfortunes they were reduc'd so low, that whereas in former Days by their own Interest, and the Favour of the Romans, they bore a considerable Sway in most Parts of *Gaul*, they were now forc'd to deliver the Persons of best Quality in their Country, as Hostages for their peaceable Behaviour to those of *Franchecomte*, to oblige themselves by Oath never to demand their Restitution, nor to pray Assistance from the Romans to deliver 'em from the Subjection to these Tyrants, himself the only Man of the whole Province excepted, who could never be perswaded either to take the Oath, or deliver his Children for Hostages, and for that reason had been oblig'd to abandon his Country, and implore Assistance from the Roman Senate. Yet the Conquerors were in a worse Condition than the conquer'd, for *Ariovistus*, King of the Germans, had seated

Harudi.

seated himself in their Country, and already possess'd a full Third of the choicest Land in Gaul ; yet, not content with that, demanded of the Franchecomtois that they should deliver him up another Third, to be distributed amongst 24000 Natives of Constance, arriv'd some few Months before ; wherefore, if speedy Remedies were not apply'd, all the Germans would in a few Years cross the Rhine, and drive the Gauls out of their Country, allur'd by the Richness of their Soil, and manner of Living, which so far excell'd that of Germany.

Amagitoria.

That their King Ariovistus was so elevated with his Success at the Battel of Magstar, that he behav'd himself with unheard-of Insolence and Tyranny, demanding the Children of the Nobility for Hostages, whom he us'd very Barbarously, if the Gauls did not readily submit to whatever he commanded 'em ; and, in fine, that he was a Man of a most passionate and inhumane Temper, whose Yoke they could no longer endure ; therefore, unless Cæsar and the Romans would assist 'em, they must of necessity be oblig'd to follow the Example of the Swiss, leave their Country that they might be free from the Germans, and seek their Fortune in another Land ; but should their Design come to the Knowledge of Ariovistus, he would infallibly revenge himself severely on the Hostages in his Custody : Yet they hop'd, if Cæsar would please to interpose in the Matter, his Credit, the Fame of his Army, the Reputation acquir'd by his late Victory, and the Name of the Romans might prevent the Germans transporting any more Colonies into Gaul, and defend them from the Tyranny of Ariovistus.

Divitiacus having ended his Speech, Cæsar observ'd that all who were present, except the Franchecomtois, with weeping Eyes besought his Assistance, but these only fix'd their Eyes upon the Ground, with mournful Countenances, which made him enquire the Reason, but they continuing silent in the same Posture, made him no Answer ; this he wonder'd at extreamly, till Divitiacus inform'd him, That the People of Franche-comte were infinitely more wretched than their Neighbours, for they neither durst desire Assistance, nor even whisper their Grievances, standing as much in awe of Ariovistus's Cruelty when absent as present ; for whereas the rest might hope to escape by forsaking their Country, these having admitted the Tyrant into the Heart of their Province, having deliver'd the Keys of all their Cities into his Hands, were oblig'd to submit to whatever Hardships he should please to impose upon 'em.

C H A P. XIII.

CÆSAR, having heard their Complaints, bid 'em shake Hands with Despair, for he would do 'em what Service he could ; and hop'd his Authority and Intercession with *Ariovistus* might oblige him to use 'em better for the future ; so dismiss'd the Council. Many were the Inducements which mov'd *Cæsar* to undertake this Affair : First, because the *Autunais*, who had often been honour'd by the Senate of *Rome* with the Titles of Brethren, Cousins and Allies, were enslav'd by the *German*, and oblig'd to deliver Hostages to *Ariovistus*, at a time when the *Roman* Empire was in a flourishing Condition, which he thought much to the Discredit of the Commonwealth : Secondly, he foresaw it might be of dangerous Consequence hereafter to the *Romans*, if the *German*s, transporting themselves by degrees cross the *Rhine*, should make themselves Masters of the whole Continent of *Gaul*, for he doubted so fierce and barbarous a People would hardly be content with that only, but as the *Cimbri* and *Teutons* had done formerly, forcing their Way thro' the Province, make an Inroad into *Italy*, especially since *Franchecomte* was only divided from the *Roman* Territories by the River *Rhosne*. Wherefore thinking it high time to provide speedy Methods for obviating these Evils, (because *Ariovistus* was grown so insufferably Proud and Arrogant) he sent Embassadors to him, desiring he would appoint a Place for an Interview, that they might discourse about some publick Affairs of equal Importance to 'em both.

Cæsar promises to assist 'em.

Cæsar sends an Embassy to Ariovistus.

C H A P. XIV.

TO this Embassy *Ariovistus* reply'd, That if he had occasion for *Cæsar*'s Assistance, he would have waited on him, and if *Cæsar* had any Business with *Ariovistus*, he might give himself the same Trouble : For his part he would not venture his Person in the *Roman* Dominions without an Army, nor did he design to put himself to the Trouble and Expence of Raising one for that Purpose. And he wonder'd extremely that *Cæsar*, or the *Romans*, should concern themselves with those Parts of *Gaul*, which the Right of Conquest had made his Inheritance.

His Answer.

Cæsar, having receiv'd this Answer, sent a second Embassy to acquaint him, That since he had so ill return'd

A second Embassy.

Cæsar's
Demands.

the Honour the People of Rome had done him, (who by their Consul Cæsar, had vouchsafed him the Title of King and Ally) as to refuse a Parley for the Publick Good, he had sent him his Demands, which were ; First, That he should permit no more Troops to be transported from Germany into Gaul. Secondly, That he should return the Hostages receiv'd from the People of Autun, that he should permit the Franche-comtois to do the like, and cease all further Acts of Injustice or Hostility against both of 'em and their Allies ; which Conditions once perform'd, Cæsar would engage, in behalf of the Romans, that they should receive him into Favour, and maintain a perpetual Friendship with him : But, if he would not comply with the Terms propounded, Cæsar was oblig'd, by a Decree of the Senate made during the Consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso, to revenge the Injuries done to those of Autun ; for by that Decree it was enacted, That all Governors of the Province should, for the future, as far as might be consistent with the Interest of the Commonwealth, endeavour to defend their Friends and Allies.

Ariovistus's
Reply.

To which Ariovistus made Answer, That, according to the Law of Arms, the Conqueror might govern those he had subdu'd as he thought fit, that the Romans did the same, and if he had not taken upon him to prescribe them Methods for the Government of their Subjects, he knew no Reason why they should not allow him the same Liberty : That the Autunois had pass'd the Decision of War, were lawfully become his Tributaries, and that the Romans had done him Injustice, for since their Arrival his Tribute had been diminish'd : That he would not return their Hostages, but he neither design'd to make War upon the Autunois nor their Allies, provided they observ'd their Agreement, and paid the yearly Tribute, which, if neglected, they should find the Friendship of the Romans should stand 'em but in little stead : And as for Cæsar, he would have him take Notice, since he design'd to espouse their Quarrel, no Man ever yet contended with Ariovistus, but to his own Destruction ; therefore, let him begin as soon as he pleas'd, the Germans were ready to receive him, and would let him see what it was to dispute with a Warlike Nation, who had not for fourteen Years lain under any other Canopy but that of Heaven.

CHAP. XV.

Trevir.

AT the same time Cæsar receiv'd this Answer, there arriv'd Embassadors from Autun and Treves ; the first to complain, that the new Colony from Constance had enter'd

ter'd their Country with Fire and Sword, and that they could not purchase their Peace from *Ariovistus* by Delivery of Hostages; the other to acquaint him, that an hundred Cantons of the *Suabians* were arriv'd at the River *Rhine*, in order to pass into *Gaul*, under the Command of two Brothers, *Nasua* and *Cimber*. *Cesar* was much concern'd at this News, and thinking it the wisest way to engage *Ariovistus* before the *Suabians* had joyn'd him, he provided his Army with Corn, and follow'd the *Germans* with all Expedition; but after three Days March, had Intelligence that *Ariovistus* was gone about three Days before, to invest *Besancon*, the Capital of *Franchecomte*.

War with
Ariovistus.
Suevi.

Vesontio.

Besancon was well stored with all sorts of Provisions; and so conveniently situated, that he who commanded it might prolong the War at his Pleasure, for it was encompass'd by the River *Doux*, except about six hundred Foot of Land, which Nature had fortify'd with a mighty steep Mountain, whose Roots on both sides were wash'd by the River. This Mountain was surrounded by a Wall, which forming a Cittadel join'd it to the Town. *Cesar* therefore considering how nearly it concern'd him to prevent a Place of that Importance from falling into the Hands of the Enemy, march'd with great Diligence directly to the City, and plac'd a strong Garrison in it: Here he resolv'd to take up his Quarters a few Days, 'till the Army was refresh'd, and furnish'd with necessary Provisions; during which Time the *Romans* enquiring of the Natives and Merchants of the Country what sort of People the *Germans* were, they reported 'em to be Men of prodigious Stature, invincible Courage, and extraordinary Knowledge in the Art of War, which the *Gauls* had often experienc'd to their Sorrow, for whenever they engag'd 'em they had scarce the Courage to withstand their Looks, so dreadful and stern were their Countenances. The whole Army were strangely surpriz'd and frighted at this Report; but especially the Tribunes, the chief Officers, and such raw Soldiers as had follow'd *Cesar* from *Rome* to make a Campaign out of a Compliment: These were the first that began to deplore their Danger, and some of 'em pretending extraordinary Business, desir'd he would please to give 'em their Discharge; even those whom Shame restrain'd, betray'd their Fear by their Countenances, sometimes by their Tears, and retiring to their Tents, bewail'd their Destiny alone, whilst others did the like with their Com-

Besancon
describ'd.

The Roman
Army fright-
ed at the
report of the
Germans
Stature and
Courage.

War with
Ariovistus.

rades; nay so far did these terrible Apprehensions prevail, that the whole Army made their Wills. The Cowardice of these Men by degrees began to infect the Veteran Soldiers, the Centurions, and Horse-Commanders, and they who scorn'd to discover their Apprehensions, declar'd they were not afraid of the Enemy, but of the narrow Passes and thick Woods which lay between our Camp and *Ariovistus*, whilst others pretend to despair of the Possibility of receiving Provisions; and some were so free to declare, that whenever *Cæsar* should command the Soldiers to handle their Arms and march, they would certainly disobey his Orders.

C H A P. XVI.

*Cæsar calls
a Council of
War; his
Speech.*

CÆSAR, observing so great a Consternation, call'd a Council of War, to which he summon'd even the Centurions of the lowest Rank; and so soon as the Assembly was met, having first severely reprimanded 'em, for presuming to enquire or conjecture whither, and upon what Expedition they were going, he told 'em, That *Ariovistus*, during his Consulat, earnestly courted the Friendship of the Roman People, and he knew no Reason any Man had to suspect that he should, in so short a time, have forgot his Duty: As for his Particular, he was persuaded, that if *Ariovistus* did but know what reasonable Proposals he design'd to offer him, he would not refuse his Friendship, and the Favour of the Commonwealth: But supposing he should be so much his own Enemy as to make War upon the Romans, what Occasion had they to be afraid of him? What Reason had they to suspect their own Virtue, or their General's Diligence? For, should it come to a Battel, the Enemy they were to engage with, had twice been try'd before, first, in the Memory of their Fathers, when the Teutons, and Cimbbers were defeated by *C. Marius*, in which Battel the Army obtain'd as much Honour as their General: And since that, in Italy, during the Rebellion of the Slaves, who had the Advantage of being skill'd in the Roman Discipline; from whence might be inferr'd what noble Actions Resolution could accomplish; for that every Enemy they were afraid of whilst unarm'd, they afterwards subdu'd when flush'd with Victory. In fine, that these Germans were the same the Swiss had worsted in several Rencounters, as well in Germany as Swisserland, and yet the Swiss were not able to maintain their Ground against the Romans.

But if any Man drew Conclusions from the Defeat of the Gauls,

Gauls, upon further Enquiry he might be satisfy'd, that these for many Months besieg'd Ariovistus in his Camp, pitch'd in a Fenny-Country; but at length despairing of a general Battel, and being weary'd with a tedious War, dispers'd themselves, so Ariovistus laying hold of that Opportunity subdu'd 'em, more by Policy, than Courage: But he would find himself in a great Error, if he expected to trap the Romans, as he had a barbarous and unskilful People. As for those who pretended the Cause of their Fear was the Difficulty of being supply'd with Provisions, and the Danger of the Passes; they betray'd extraordinary Insolence, in assuming the Liberty to direct their General, as if he himself was ignorant of his Duty; but they might lay aside their Apprehensions, for he had taken care Lorrain and Franche-comte should furnish 'em with what they wanted; besides the Corn was almost ripe in all the Fields they were to pass thro'; and as for the Ways, themselves should quickly be Judges of their Error.

Nor did the Report, that the Soldiers would refuse to march, disturb him in the least, for he was satisfy'd no Army ever slighted their General's Commands, but on the score of his bad Success, or notorious Avarice; and neither of these could affect him, witness his constant Integrity, and his late Victory over the Swiss: Wherefore he was resolv'd immediately to execute that, which he once design'd to have deferr'd to a longer time; for the next Morning early he would decamp, and try whether Shame, and Duty, or Cowardice should get the Victory: That he would make the tenth Legion his Life-Guard, whose Readiness he did not doubt of; and if no Body else would follow him, with them alone he would go in search of the Enemy. For Caesar had a particular Esteem for this Legion, in whose Courage he plac'd a mighty Confidence.

This Speech wrought so wonderful an Alteration on the Minds of the whole Army, that every Man seem'd brisk, and desirous to engage the Enemy; nor did the tenth Legion forget to return him Thanks, by their Tribunes, for the good Opinion he had of 'em, assuring him how industrious they would be to deserve it: The rest following their Example, by their Tribunes and Centurions took care to inform him, that they never doubted or pretended to form a Judgment of the Success of that Expedition; for they always submitted those things to his Wisdom: Whereupon Caesar, having learn'd from Divitiacus (whom he confided more in, than in any of the Gauls, and whom he had sent out to discover the Way).

Caesar begins his March.

War with
Ariovistus.

that, taking a Circuit of forty Miles, he might lead his Army thro' an open Champaign Country; according to his former Resolution, early in the Morning he began his March.

C H A P. XVII.

THE seventh Day after his Departure from *Besaucon*, he had Intelligence that *Ariovistus* was about four Miles off; who being inform'd of *Cæsar*'s Arrival, sent Embassadors to let him know, since Fortune had brought 'em so near, provided it might be done without Danger, he was willing to accept of an Interview. *Cæsar* readily comply'd with the Offer, hoping *Ariovistus* was at last return'd to himself, since he now desir'd that of his own accord which he refus'd before; and that, considering the Proposals he design'd to make him, he would at length reflect on the many Favours he had receiv'd from *Cæsar* and the People of *Rome*; and no longer so obstinately oppose an Accommodation.

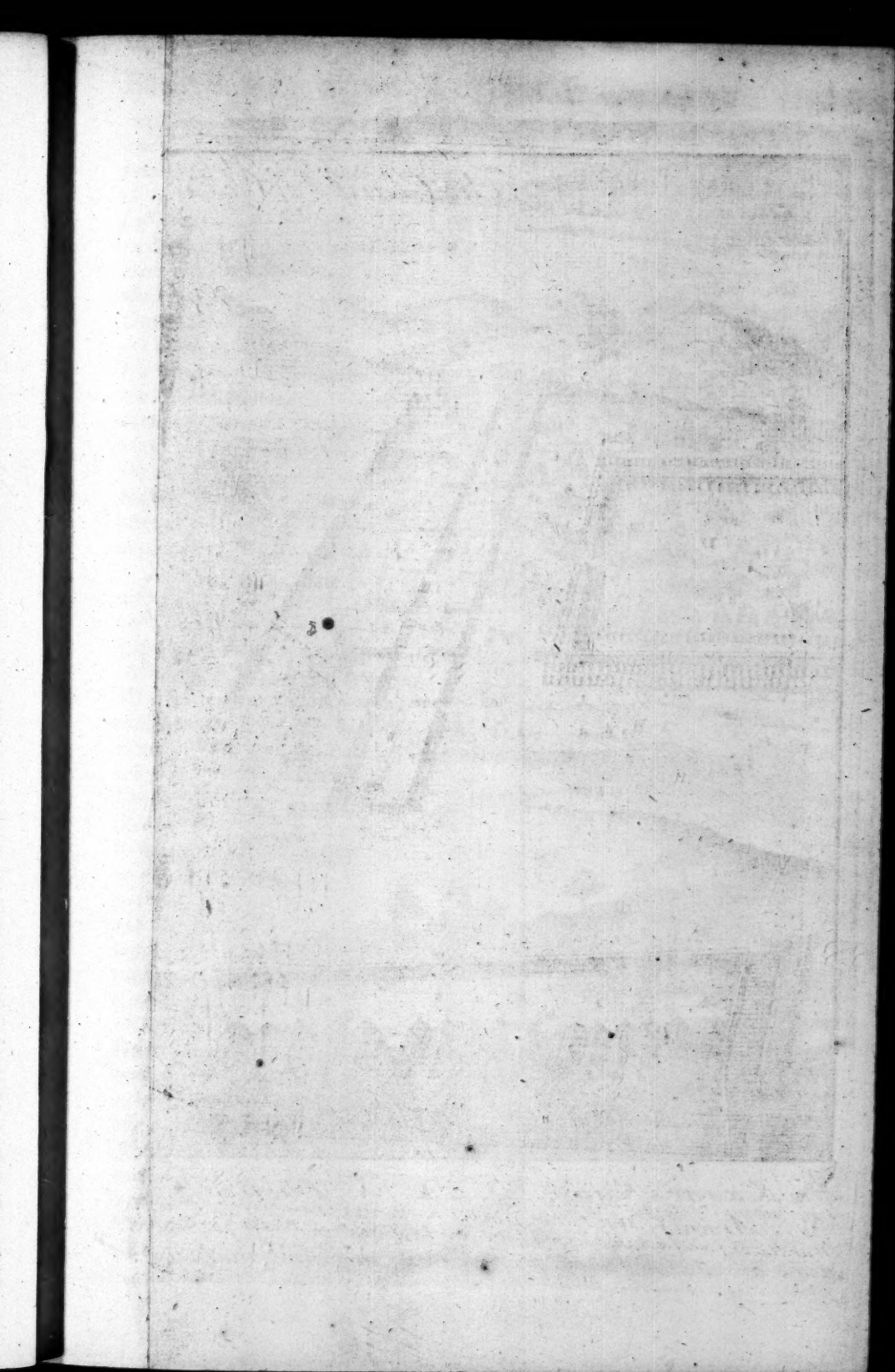
The fifth Day was appointed for the Interview, and in the mean time there pass'd several Messages between 'em. *Ariovistus* desir'd *Cæsar* would bring no Infantry along with him to the Treaty, and that each of 'em should come attended only by their Cavalry, to avoid Surprise, for otherwise he would not agree to a Meeting. *Cæsar* being unwilling the Interview should be put off, and at the same time not daring to confide in the French Cavalry, dismounted the Gauls, and gave their Horses to his faithful tenth Legion, that he might have a Guard, if Occasion were, on which he could rely: Whereupon one of the Soldiers of that Legion wittily said, *That Cæsar had been better than his Word, for he only promis'd they should be his Guard, but now he had made 'em Horse.*

The Interview
between
Cæsar and
Ariovistus.

In the midst of a spacious and open Plain, between the two Armies, there was a rising Ground, and there, according to Agreement, was the Interview held: The Legion which *Cæsar* had brought with him he posted two hundred Paces short of the Mount, the like did *Ariovistus* by his Cavalry, desiring they might discourse on Horseback, each bringing only ten Persons to the Conference. So soon as they met, *Cæsar* began to remind him of the Favours and Advantages he had formerly receiv'd from him and the Senate of *Rome*; who had given him the Title of King and Friend, sending him at the same time

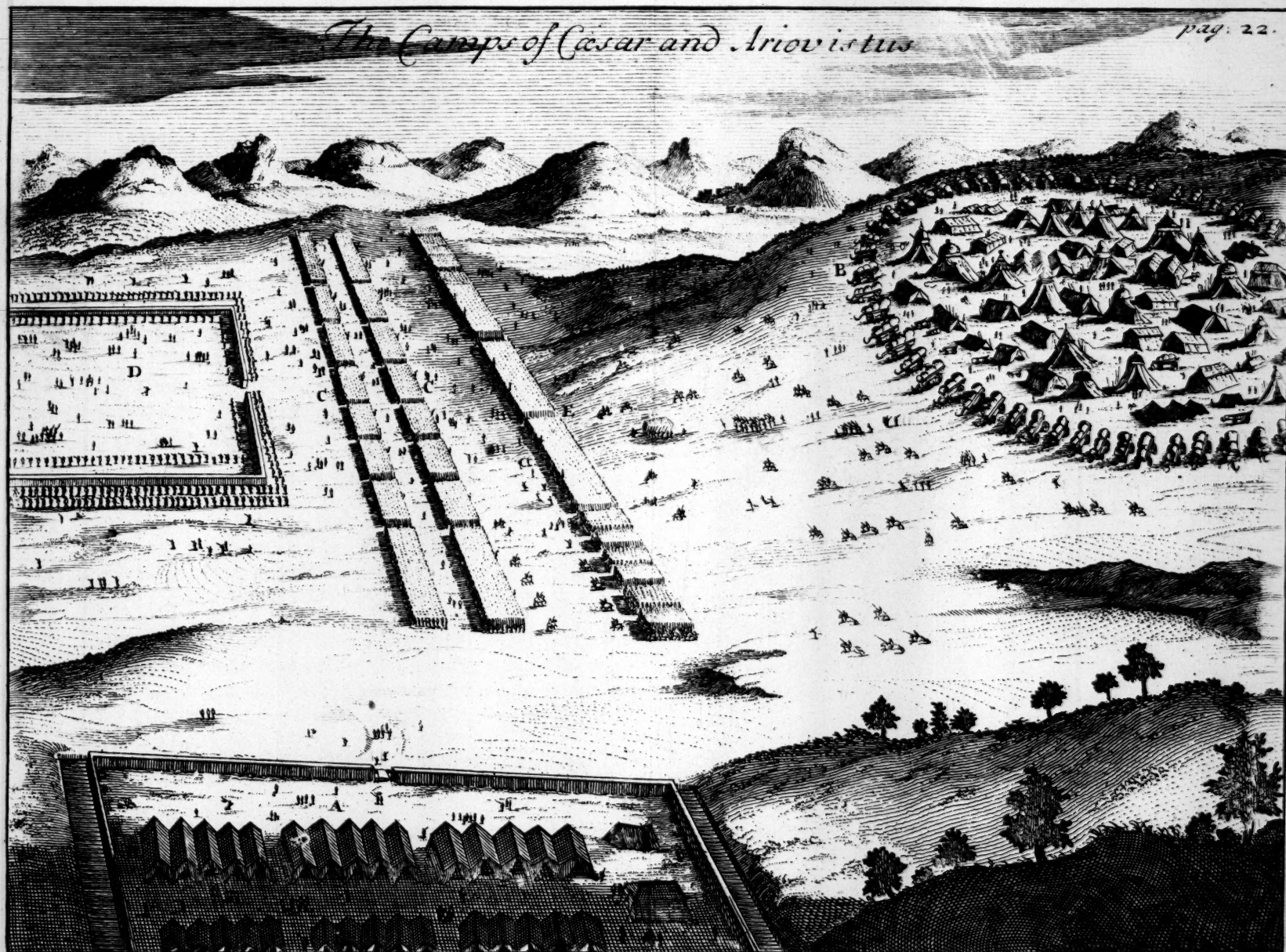
Cæsar's
Speech.

con-



The Camps of Cæsar and Ariovistus

pag. 22.



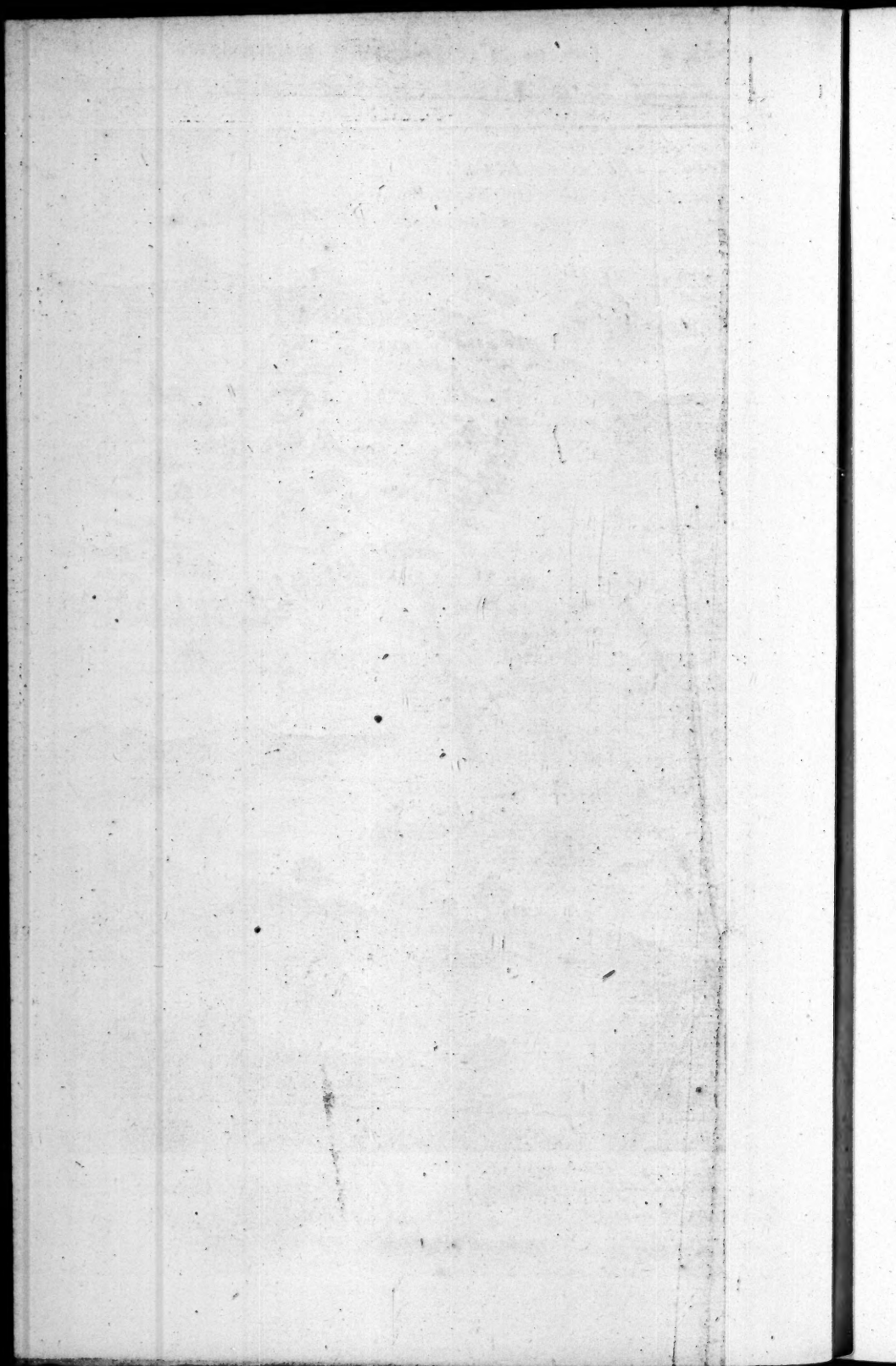
A. Cæsar's Camp

B. Ariovistus's Camp.

C. The first & second line of
Cæsar's forces in Arms.

D. The 3. making of lesser Camp.

E. All Ariovistus's
Army.



considerable Presents: Honours the Romans conferr'd on few, and upon those for signal Desert, which had notwithstanding been bestow'd on him by the sole Favour of Cæsar, and Bounty of the Senate. He also laid before him the ancient and just Alliance which had been so sacred between the Romans and People of Autun, and the frequent and honourable Decrees which had been made by the Senate in their Favour; that they had from all Antiquity held the Principality of Gaul, even before their Alliance with Rome, nor was it usual with the Romans to suffer the Authority of their Friends to be diminished; but on the contrary to endeavour the Encrease of their Honour and Reputation. In fine, he demanded the same Conditions which he had formerly offer'd him by his Embassadors; that he should never make War on the Autunois nor their Allies: That he should return the Hostages; and if he could not oblige some of his Germans to repass the Rhine, at least he should not permit any more to come into Gaul.

War with
Ariovistus.



Ariovistus made little Answer to Cæsar's Demands, but enlarg'd extravagantly on his own Virtues; saying, That he had not cross'd the Rhine of his own accord, but on the Invitation of the Gauls; nor deserted his Country and Relations but in Hopes of a considerable Reward for his Trouble: That the Natives had voluntarily allotted him a Portion of Land, deliver'd Hostages, and that Tribute was his Due by the Right of Conquest: Nor did he make War upon the Gauls before they had given the first Occasion; whose Confederate Force he defeated in one single Battel; and if they desir'd a second Trial, he was ready to engage 'em again; but if they expected Peace, 'twas unreasonable they should refuse the Payment of that Tribute which they had so long willingly submitted to: That he expected the Friendship of the Romans would have prov'd both honourable and advantageous to him, for which Reason he courted it; but if he must purchase it, at so dear a Rate as the Loss of his Tribute; he should as readily renounce, as ever he accepted it.

Ariovistus's
Answer.

That as he had not transported so many Germans into Gaul with a Design to subdue the Country, but only for his own Protection, (for he came thither at their Request) so neither had he engag'd in any War with the Natives, but in his own Defence: That he was seated in Gaul before the Romans came there; nor had they ever march'd their Armies beyond the Bounds of their Province before that time, and he did not understand what they meant by invading his Territories; for he had as good a Title to that Part of Gaul, as the Romans had to their Province; who ought not to en-

croach

War with
Ariovistus.

croach upon his Dominions any more than he upon theirs. As for the Pretence that the Autunois were by the Senate decreed Allies of Rome, he would have Cæsar know, he was not so barbarous and ignorant of the Affairs of the World, but he could remark that during the last War with the Savoyards, the Autunois assisted the Romans, who in Return help'd them against the Franche-comtois; and he had too sufficient Reason to suspect, that, under a Pretence of an Alliance with these, the Romans maintain'd an Army in Gaul, with a Design to ruin him: Therefore if they did not immediately quit his Dominions, he should no longer esteem 'em his Friends, but his Enemies: That he was well assur'd by Letters from Rome, if he had the good Fortune to kill Cæsar, he should do several Noblemen there a very acceptable Piece of Service, which they would think themselves infinitely oblig'd to him for: However, if he would depart without disturbing his peaceable Possession, he would not only gratefully reward him for it, but be oblig'd at his own proper Hazard and Expence, to undertake any War which Cæsar should desire.

Cæsar's Re-
ply.

Cæsar, on the other hand, urg'd several Reasons why he could not desist from his former Resolution, first, his own Honour, then the Custom of the Republick, which never desert-ed her well-deserving Allies; nor could he be persuaded that Ariovistus had a better Title to Gaul than the Romans; for Fabius Maximus fairly conquer'd the People of Auvergne and Rouërgue, whom he might have reduc'd into a Province, and made Tributaries to the Empire, but he forgave 'em; nor did he doubt but it might easily be prov'd, upon further Search into Antiquity, that the Romans had a very good Title to that Country; but since it was the Pleasure of the Senate they shou'd remain a free People, they were permitted the Use of their own Laws, Government and Customs, notwithstanding the Right of Conquest.

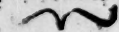
Rpteni.

The Ger-
mans Treachery.

During this Dispute, Cæsar was inform'd that Ariovistus's Cavalry came nearer the Mount, and had assaulted our Men with a Volley of Stones and Darts; where-upon he immediately broke off the Treaty, and retiring to his Party commanded 'em not to return the Enemy's Treachery; for, tho' he might safely have-engaged 'em with that select Legion, he wav'd it, because the Germans should not pretend he had drawn 'em into an Ambush on Pretence of a Treaty, contrary to his Oath and Agreement. So soon as the common Soldiers were inform'd how insolently Ariovistus had behav'd himself at the Interview; how he had commanded the Romans

to be gone out of *Gaul* ; how his Cavalry had assaulted the tenth Legion, and that thereupon the Treaty broke off, Rage and Contempt inspir'd every Man with a greater Desire to fight than ever.

War with Ariovistus.



About two Days after *Ariovistus* sent Deputies again to *Cæsar* to desire a second Interview, that they might finish their imperfect Treaty ; or if he did not approve of that, to send Plenipotentiaries to conclude such Agreement as they should think fit to consent to : But *Cæsar* was not inclinable to grant a second Meeting, because the *Germans* had not kept their Agreement the Time before ; nor did he think it convenient to expose the Persons of any of his Followers to the Infidelity of so inhumane and barbarous a People : Wherefore he sent *M. Valerius Procillus* (the Son of *C. Valerius Caburius*, whom *C. Valerius Flaccus* had made a Freeman of *Rome*) a polite and honourable Youth, whom he pitch'd upon for his extraordinary Integrity, and Expertness in the Language of the *Gauls*, which *Ariovistus* had learn'd by living so long amongst 'em ; thinking him a Person against whom the *Germans* could take no Exception ; and join'd *M. Titius*, who was particularly well acquainted with *Ariovistus*, in Commission with him, giving them Orders to hear what Proposals the *Germans* would offer, and then make their Report to *Cæsar* : But so soon as *Ariovistus* saw them arriv'd at his Camp, in the Presence of his Army, he demanded their Business, whether they came thither as Spies ? And, before they could answer him, commanded 'em to be clapt in Irons.

Ariovistus desires a second Interview, which Cæsar denies.

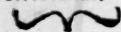
Ariovistus puts the Roman Plenipotentiaries in Irons.

The same Day he decamp'd, and lodg'd himself under a Hill, about six Miles from *Cæsar* : The Day after, marching by our Army, he encamp'd about two Miles beyond us ; designing to cut off our Convoys from *Autun* and *Franchecomte* : Five Days successively, after this, *Cæsar* drew his Army out of their Trenches, in order to give the Enemy Battel, which *Ariovistus* declin'd, keeping within his Camp ; but we had frequent Skirmishes with Parties of the Enemy's Horse.

Now the *Germans* way of Fighting was this : they had 6000 Horse, and as many Foot, chosen out of the whole Army, by the Horse, for their extraordinary Strength and Activity ; each Horseman had one for his Guard ; these perpetually attended 'em in the Battel, and assisted 'em in time of Necessity ; for if a Horseman was not a sufficient Match for his Enemy, if he was wounded or unhors'd, one of these immediately came in

The German way of fighting.

War with
Ariovistus.



in to his Relief ; and if there was occasion either for a quick Pursuit or Retreat, continual Exercise had made 'em so nimble, that, holding by the Main, they could run as swift as the Horses.

C H A P. XVIII.

Cæsar's two
camps.

CÆSAR perceiving that *Ariovistus* still kept within his Camp, not daring to give him Battel, lest the *Germans* should intercept his Convoys from *Franchecomte*, chose a convenient Place for a new Camp, about 600 Paces beyond that of the Enemy ; and marching thither in three Battalions, he commanded two of 'em to defend the rest, whilst they intrench'd themselves. *Ariovistus* sent 6000 Foot and all his Cavalry to interrupt this Design ; but *Cæsar* commanded the two Battalions, according to his former Orders, to oppose the Enemy, and the third to go forward with their Works ; which being compleated, he left two Legions there, with Part of the Auxiliary Forces, and retir'd with the other four to the larger Camp.

According to his Custom, the next Day *Cæsar* drawing his whole Army out of both their Camps, proffer'd the Enemy Battel, and perceiving they did not stir out of their Trenches, about Noon he return'd again : But at length *Ariovistus* sent a Detachment to attack the lesser Camp ; whereupon there began a hot Dispute on both Sides, which continued 'till Sun-set, when *Ariovistus*, after many Wounds given and receiv'd, founded a Retreat. *Cæsar*, enquiring of the Prisoners why the *Germans* declin'd fighting, was inform'd, that, according to the Custom of their Country, the Women were always to decide by Lot and Augury the proper Times for Fighting, and that they declar'd the *Germans* should not be victorious, if they engag'd before the New-Moon.

C H A P. XIX.

THE next Day after, *Cæsar*, leaving sufficient Parties to secure his Camps, rang'd all his Auxiliary Troops to make a Shew, before the lesser Camp, because the Number of his Legionary Soldiers was very inconsiderable in respect of the Enemy ; and, disposing these into three Lines, march'd directly towards *Ariovistus's* Camp ; whereupon the *Germans* being compell'd, at last drew out their Forces, ranging each different Canton at an

an equal Distance in the same Order of Battel, viz. *War with Ariovistus.*
those of *Constance, Maibern, Strasburg, Worms, Spire, Franconia* and *Suabia*; and then surrounded the Army with their Carriages, to take away all Hopes of Security by Flight: In these they plac'd their Women, who weeping, and tearing their Hair, besought their Husbands, as they went to the Battel, to fight like Men of Courage, to preserve 'em from falling into the Hands of the *Romans*.

Harudes, Marcomani, Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Seducii, Sac-
vi.

C H A P. XX.

CÆSAR having assign'd each Legion a Lieutenant *The Armies engage.* and a Questor, that every Man might have a Witness of his Courage, began the Fight himself at the Head of the right Wing, because he perceiv'd the Enemy to be weakest in that Part. So soon as the Sign of Battel was given, our Soldiers charg'd the Enemy very briskly, and they receiv'd 'em so warmly that they did not allow our Legions time to cast their Darts, which oblig'd 'em to have immediate Recourse to their Swords; but the *Germans* casting themselves into a Phalanx, according to the Custom of their Country, receiv'd the Charge with little Loss, which several of the Legionary Soldiers perceiving, leap'd upon the Phalanx, pull'd away the Targets with their Hands, and slew those that lurk'd under 'em; by which means the Enemy's Left Wing was routed. In the mean time young *P. Crassus*, General of the Horse, perceiving that our Left began to give way, being over-power'd by unequal Numbers of the *Germans* (which he could easilier observe than those who were already engag'd in the Fight) immediately dispatch'd the third Line of Battel to sustain 'em; whereupon the Fight was renew'd with fresh Vigour, and the Enemy's Army entirely put to the Rout; nor did they ever look back 'till they were arriv'd at the *Rhine*, about fifty Miles distance from the Place where the Fight began: Here some few escap'd by swimming the River, whilst others got over in little Boats, and *Ariovistus* embarking in a small Vessel, recover'd the other Side; but his two Wives had not the same Fortune, for neither of 'em surviv'd the Battel; one of these was a *Suabian*, whom he brought with him from his own Country, the other a *Bavarian*, Sister to King *Vocion*, sent him by her Brother into *Gaul*, and marry'd there; nor did his two Daughters escape, for one was slain, and the other taken Prisoner.

Cæsar

War with
Ariovistus,

The Ger-
mans routed,
Procillus re-
taken.

Cæsar, pursuing the German Cavalry, by Chance overtook *Valerius Procillus*, as his Keepers, who had bound him with three Chains, were dragging him along: This Accident was as grateful to him as the Victory itself, that he should be so fortunate to rescue his particular Friend, a Person mightily belov'd throughout the whole Province, whom the barbarous Germans had; contrary to the Law of Nations, depriv'd of his Liberty: Fortune seem'd to take unusual Care, to prevent any Allay of Cæsar's Joy by the Loss of a Man, whom he esteem'd so much as *Procillus*; for he had three several times preserv'd his Life, as often reprieving him by a favourable Lot from being burnt alive; and at the same time *M. Mettius* likewise recover'd his Liberty. The Fame of this Victory, spreading beyond the *Rhine*, put a Stop to the *Suabians* Journey, who were arriv'd there, designing to pass into *Gaul*; and the Inhabitants on the Banks of that River, taking the Opportunity, pursu'd 'em whilst confus'd, and slew considerable Numbers of 'em in their Retreat.

Gallia Cite-
rior,

Cæsar, having thus successively ended two such important Wars in one Campaign, put his Troops into Winter-quarters in *Franchecomte*, something sooner than the Season of the Year requir'd; and, committing 'em to the Care of *Labienus*, return'd into *Lombardy*, to preside at the General Diet.

C. J. Cæsar's

COMMENTARY

OF HIS

WAR

IN

GAUL.

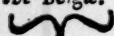
The Second Book.

*His War with the Confederate Belgæ; His
Success in Picardie and Hainault.*

CHAP. I.

IN the Winter-time, whilst Cæsar was in Lombardy, The Belgæ enter into a Confederacy against the Romans. he had several Reports, which were afterwards confirm'd by Letters, from Labienus, that all the States of the Belgæ, who, as we have already said, possess'd a third Part of Gaul, had given Hostages to each other, and enter'd into a mutual League against the Romans: The Occasion of this Confederacy was their Apprehension, that when Cæsar had subdu'd their Neighbours, he would turn his Forces upon them; besides they were sollicit'd to it by such Gauls as began to think the Roman Army, which had taken Winter-quarters in their Country, as troublesome Guests as the Germans; by such as were of an unconstant Temper, who lov'd

War with
the Belgæ.



lov'd fishing in troubled Waters ; and lastly, by those who perceiv'd 'twas an easy Matter for him, who had most Money and Men at Command, to make himself Master of all the Provinces of *Gaul*, provided the *Romans* were once expell'd.

Senones.

Whereupon *Cæsar* levy'd two new Legions in *Lombardy*, and sent them under the Command of his Lieutenant *Q. Pedius* into the farther *Gaul*, himself following after early in the Spring, so soon as there was Forage for his Horses. Upon his Arrival at the Army, he wrote to the Inhabitants of *Sens*, and the other *Gauls* that border'd on the *Belgæ*, to observe the Enemy's Motions, and send him daily Intelligence what they were doing : From these he had Notice that the *Belgæ* were very busy in raising an Army, and drawing their Forces to a general Rendezvous : Wherefore thinking it convenient to lose no further Time, he immediately drew the Army out of their Winter-quarters, and resolv'd to begin his March within twelve Days ; which he did, and arriv'd, within fifteen more, on the Confines of the *Belgæ*. His coming was so sudden and unexpected, that the People of *Rheims*, whose Country lay nearest the *Gauls*, being surpris'd at it, dispatch'd away *Iccius* and *Antebrogius*, Persons of the greatest Quality in their Province, as Embassadors, to assure *Cæsar* they had not concern'd themselves in the Confederacy, with the rest of the *Belgæ*, against the *Romans*, but were ready to submit to the Empire ; and, as a Proof of their Innocence, offer'd to deliver Hostages, to receive him into their Towns, and furnish the Army with what Provisions they had Occasion for. They own'd that the rest of the *Belgæ* were all in Arms ; that the *Germans* on the other Side the River *Rhine* had promis'd 'em Assistance ; and that their Countrymen were so hotly bent upon the Expedition, that all they could do to restrain 'em, was not sufficient to prevent those of *Soissons* from entering into the same Alliance, tho' they were their Brethren, and observ'd so strict a Friendship on all other Occasions, that they were govern'd by the same Laws, Customs, and Magistrates, being almost incorporated under one Government.

Rhemi.

Suessones.

Cæsar having receiv'd the People of Rheims into Protection, they give him Intelligence,

CHAP. II.

CÆSAR inquiring of the Embassadors what People, and how powerful they were that had taken up Arms, was



was inform'd that the *Belgæ* were originally descended from the *Germans*, who, tempted by the Plenty of the Land, had cross'd the *Rhine*, expell'd the Natives, and taken Possession of their Country : That these were the only People who, during the dreadful Inundation of the *Teutons* and *Cimbers*, had maintain'd their Ground, whilst the other Provinces of *Gaul* were over-run by those Barbarians ; the Memory of which Success inspir'd 'em with extraordinary Courage. They likewise told him, that by reason of their Alliance and Neighbourhood to 'em, they had Opportunities of informing themselves, what Quota of Men each particular Province had promis'd, in the General Assembly, to provide for carrying on the War : That those of *Beavois*, who were more numerous, warlike and potent than the rest of the *Belgæ*, were able to raise 100000 Men, out of which Number they oblig'd themselves to bring 60000 into the Field, in consideration whereof they expected to have the Management of the War committed to their Charge : That next to these, in a spacious and fertile Country, lay the People of *Soissons*, lately subject to *Divitiacus*, once the most potent Man in *Gaul*, who was not only Master of a considerable Part of that Country, but had some Footing likewise in *Britain* ; but *Galba* was their present King ; who, by the general Consent of the Confederates, was, for the sake of his singular Conduct and Justice, made *Generalissimo* ; these had twelve fortify'd Towns, and promis'd to furnish 50000 Men : Next those of *Hainault*, who are the most bar-

Bellovac.

Nervi.

Atrebrates,
Ambiani,
Morini, Me-
napii, Cale-
tes, Velocasi-
ses, Vero-
mandui, A-
duaticci Con-
drusi, Eburo-
nes, Carassi,
Pæmani.

Cæsar, to encourage the People of *Rheims* to continue faithful to the *Romans*, promis'd to reward 'em liberally, if they observ'd their Alliance, commanding them to deliver him their Senate and the best of their Noblemen for Hostages ; which they readily perform'd by the Day prefix'd ; then sending for *Divitiacus*, he inform'd him how necessary it was, for the publick Safety, to make a Diversion, that the Enemy might be oblig'd to separate their Forces ; and therefore commanded him to return to *Autun*, and enter the Territories of the *Belgæ* on that side with Fire and Sword.

War with
the Belgæ.



C H A P. III.

Axona.

BEING inform'd afterwards by his Scouts and the People of *Rheims*, that the Confederate Armies of the *Belgæ*, being joyn'd, march'd directly towards him, and were already within a few Miles of his Camp, he immediately pass'd the *Aisne*, which divides *Rheims* from the rest of the *Belgæ*, and encamp'd on the Banks of the River, whereby he prevented any Surprise from the Enemy, and secur'd a Communication with *Rheims* and those other Cities whence he expected Provisions: To secure his Retreat cross the River; he posted a strong Party on the Bridge, leaving *Titurius Sabinus*, one of his Lieutenants, on the other Side with six Cohorts, who had orders to fortify their Camp with a Trench eighteen Foot broad, and a Rampart twelve Foot high.

C H A P. IV.

Bibrax.

Their man-
ner of As-
saulting a
Town.

THE *Belgæ* were in hopes to have surpris'd *Brienne*, a Town about eight Miles distance from *Cæsar's* Camp; and storm'd it so furiously, that it was scarce able to hold out one Day. The *Celtæ* and *Belgæ* use the same Method in Assaults; for having surrounded the Walls, they never cease flinging of Stones, till they have swept the besieged off the Battlements, then casting themselves into a *Testudo*, they approach the Gate, and undermine the Walls; which they might do with great Ease at *Brienne*, for so numerous were the Slingers and those that cast Darts, that it was impossible for the Garrison to stand their Shot. So soon as Night had ended the Assault, *Iccius*, a Man of the greatest Quality and Interest in *Rheims*, who had not long before been sent Embassador to *Cæsar*, dispatch'd away a Courier to our Camp, to inform us, unless he was quickly reliev'd, he must be oblig'd to surrender the Town: *Cæsar* soon answer'd his Demands; for, making use of the Courier for a Guide, he detach'd a Party of *Candian* and *Numidian* Archers, with a Number of *Balearian* Slingers, whom he immediately sent to their Assistance; which infus'd fresh Courage into the Besieged, and put the Enemy out of Hopes; who having laid the Country waste, and burnt the Villages round about, left the Siege, and marching in one Body towards us, lodg'd themselves within two Miles of our Army; enclosing

The Siege of
Brienne rais-
ed by the
Romans.

above

above eight Miles for their Camp, as near as could be computed by their Fires in the Night, and Smoak in the Day. *War with the Belgæ.*

C H A P. V.

CÆSAR at first did not design to give 'em Battel, because they were reported to be as valiant as numerous; but having try'd their Courage in small Skirmishes, he perceiv'd his Soldiers were able to cope with 'em; so making choice of a convenient Place before his Camp, he drew up his Army in order of Battel. The little Hill whereon we had entrench'd ourselves, rising with an easy Ascent from the Plain below, was but just of a sufficient Breadth to contain the Front of our Army, where the Legions were drawn up, descending somewhat steeper on both Sides: Here to prevent the Enemy's surrounding our Men, or charging 'em in the Flank, *Cæsar* took care to make a Trench from one Side of the Hill to the other, containing six hundred Paces in Length, and built little Bulwarks at each End, which were well provided with Engines to repulse the Enemy. So leaving the two Legions lately list'd in *Lombardy*, in his Camp for a Reserve, he drew up the other Six on the Front of the Hill before his Camp; the *Belgæ* did the like, and fac'd our Army. Between us and the Enemy there lay a Marsh, which they believ'd we would have pass'd, and we on the other hand expected the like from them, designing to attack 'em whilst they were endeavouring to get over so troublesome a Place: In the mean time the Cavalry on both Sides engag'd, but neither Army attempting to cross the Marsh, *Cæsar*, who had got the better of the Skirmish, thought he had done enough at present to encourage his Men, and brave so numerous an Army, for which Reason he return'd to his Camp. *The two Armies drawn up.*

Not long after the Enemy decamp'd, marching towards the River *Aisne*, which lay behind us, and attempted to cross the Water where it was fordable, designing to make themselves Masters of the Fort which *Q. Titurius* commanded, to break down the Bridge, or at least to harra'ss the Country of *Rheims*, and intercept our Convoys; which *Cæsar* having notice of from *Titurius*, cross'd the Bridge, and march'd to his Relief at the Head of his Cavalry, light-arm'd *Numidians*, Slingers and Archers; where he had a sharp Dispute with the

War with the
Belgæ.

the Belgæ. The Romans, charging the Enemy as they were crossing the River, slew great Numbers of 'em; and those who were so desperate to endeavour to make a Bridge of the Carcasses of their dead Countrymen, spight of their utmost Efforts, were repuls'd by the Soldiers from the Shore, whilst they who had safely arriv'd on the other Side were encompass'd by our Cavalry, and every Man of 'em put to the Sword.

The Belgæ finding themselves thus disappointed of their Hopes, that they could neither gain *Brienne*, pass the River, nor draw the Romans out of their Camp to some disadvantageous Post, and considering their Provisions were almost spent, call'd a Council of War, wherein they resolv'd to break up, and return each Man to his own Country; obliging themselves, in case the Romans invaded any of their Confines, that all the rest should immediately come thither to give 'em Battel; for they judg'd it much safer to fight at home, where they might always be secure of Provisions, than to dispute the Matter in a foreign Country; nor was it the smallest Inducement to this Resolution, that they were inform'd *Divitiacus*, with a strong Party of *Autunois*, was already on his March to the Confines of *Beauvois*, which oblig'd 'em to make a speedy Retreat to defend their Country.

C H A P. VI.

The Belgæ
decamp, and
return home.

THIS Resolution being agreed to by the whole Army, about the second Watch of the Night they began to leave their Camp with extraordinary Noise and Confusion, each Man contending for the foremost Rank, that he might be soonest at home, marching in as disorderly a manner, as if they had been put to the Rout. Cæsar, who had notice of this from his Scouts, being jealous of some Design, because he could not conceive the Reason of their Departure, did not stir out of his Trenches; but the next Morning early, upon further Intelligence, he first detach'd *Quintus Pedius* and *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, two of his Lieutenants, with the Cavalry, and after them *T. Labienus* at the Head of three Legions, with Command to attack the Enemy's Rere: These overtaking the Belgæ pursu'd 'em several Miles, and put great Numbers to the Sword; whilst their Rere fac'd about to receive our Charge, the Van-guard, who were out of Danger, paying no manner of Obedience

The Romans
attack their
Rere.

dience to their Officers, broke their Ranks, ran away, and deserted their Companions, of whom the Romans made a dreadful Slaughter, 'till Night and their General's Commands oblig'd 'em to return to their Camp.

War with
the Belgæ.

C H A P. VII.

THE next Day, before the Enemy were recover'd from their Consternation, *Cæsar* march'd his Army to *Soissons*, which joyns to the Country of *Rheims*, and after a tedious Journey arriv'd at *Noion*, which he hop'd to have surpris'd, because he was inform'd it wanted Provisions, and a Garrison to defend it; but he was disappointed by the Breadth of a Ditch, and extraordinary Height of the Wall that surrounded it; wherefore, having fortify'd his Camp, he began to prepare for a formal Siege.

Noviodu-
num

The Night after, all the *Soissonois* who had escap'd the Slaughter threw themselves into the Town; but being surpris'd at the Mounts and Batteries he had rais'd in so short a time, Works which the *Gauls* had never seen before nor heard of, bear a Parley, sent Deputies to treat about a Surrender; and, by the Intercessions of their Neighbours of *Rheims*, obtain'd their Conditions; for, having deliver'd their Arms, and the chief Persons of their Country as Hostages, amongst whom were *Galba's* two Sons, *Cæsar* receiv'd 'em into Favour.

Noion be-
sieged and
taken.

C H A P. VIII.

FROM thence he march'd against those of *Beauvois*, who having retir'd with all their Moveables into the Capital of the same Name, had Intelligence that *Cæsar* was arriv'd within five Miles of the Town; whereupon they sent all the Reverend old Men to meet him, who in a submissive Posture said, That they came to surrender themselves to his Discretion, and would no longer presume to bear Arms against the People of *Rome*; so when he had encamp'd by his Army nearer the Town, the Boys and Women from the Walls, with stretched out Arms, according to the Custom of their Country, humbly besought him that he would vouchsafe to grant 'em Peace.

Cæsar
marches to
Beauvois,
which sub-
mits.

For these *Divitiacus* (who had dismiss'd his Army in *Autun*, and return'd to *Cæsar*, so soon as he heard the

War with
the Belgæ.

Enemy had broken up) interceeded, alledging that the People of *Beauvois* had always been faithful Friends to those of *Autun*, and were ready to assist 'em upon all Occasions; nor had they enter'd into this Confederacy against the *Romans*, forsaking their old Allies, unless they had been persuaded to it by their Nobility, who made 'em believe that the *Autunois* were enslav'd by the *Romans*, and labour'd under the vilest Oppressions: That the Authors of this Conspiracy, finding into how miserable a Condition they had plung'd their Country, were fled into *England*; wherefore they join'd with the Petitioners in their Request, and hop'd *Cæsar* would please to be merciful to 'em, for by granting their Desire, he would raise the Credit and Authority of the *Autunois* amongst the *Belgæ*, to whom they had formerly been oblig'd for Assistance in their Necessity. *Cæsar*, being mov'd by the Mediation of *Divitiacus* and the *Autunois*, promis'd to forgive 'em; but, because their Dominions were larger, more populous and powerful than the rest of the *Belgæ*, he demanded 600 Hostages, which being deliver'd, together with their Arms, he left their City, and march'd directly to *Amiens*, which surrender'd at Discretion without any Trouble.

Amiens sur-
renders.

The Customs
of the Hai-
naultois.

Next to *Amiens* liv'd the People of *Hainault*; who, as *Cæsar* was inform'd, held no Commerce with other Countries, never suffer'd Wine, or any other luxurious Merchandize, as might enervate their Bodies, or debase their Minds, to be imported amongst 'em; a Warlike, Savage People, who always condemn'd the rest of the *Belgæ* for submitting to the Roman Yoke; declaring they would neither send Embassadors, nor accept of Peace on any Terms.

Sabin.

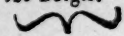
Cæsar, having made three Days March in their Country, receiv'd Information from some Prisoners, that the Enemy were posted on the other side the *Sambre*, a River about ten Miles distance from his Camp, where they waited for the *Romans*: That they were already join'd by those of *Arras* and *Vermandois*, whom they had persuaded to share their Fortune, and daily expected a further Supply from *Liege*: That they had dispos'd of their Women, and such whose Age made 'em unfit for War, in a Place by themselves, render'd inaccessible by the Marshes that surrounded it: Whereupon *Cæsar* dispatch'd his Scouts and Centurions, to provide a convenient Place to encamp in.

Deserters
carry Intelli-
gence to the
Enemy.

Some of the *Belgæ* who had surrender'd themselves, and were in *Cæsar's* Camp, (as we afterwards learn'd from

from the Prisoners) observing the particular Order of the *Romans* March, deserted in the Night to the Enemy, and inform'd 'em, that between each Legion march'd a Part of the heavy Baggage; and that they might easily defeat the first Legion, so soon as they were arriv'd in the Camp, whilst they were incumber'd by their Carriages, and the rest at so great a Distance, that they could not readily come to their Relief; which Success would put the other Legions into such a Consternation, that they would not have the Courage to maintain their Ground. This Advice made the greater Impression, because the People of *Hainault* (who were always more expert at Fighting on Foot than Horseback) us'd formerly to prevent their Neighbours from making Inroads into their Country, by a Fortification of young Trees, which they Split in the Middle, and bending down the Boughs on either Side, fill'd up the Vacancies so close with Thorns, that it serv'd 'em instead of a Wall, which could neither be pass'd nor seen thro': Whilst therefore, the Progress of our Army was stopp'd by this Bulwark, they thought it convenient to put the Advice in Practice.

*War with
the Belgæ.*



The Place which the *Romans* made choice of to encamp in, was a Hill, from whence there was an even Descent to the *Sambre*; and on the farther Side of the River, directly opposite to us, about two hundred Paces distance, was another Hill, plain and open at the Foot, but so thick and woody in the upper Part that it concluded our Prospect: The Enemy had cover'd themselves in these Woods, and in the open Ground, by the River side, which was but three Foot deep thereabouts, appear'd only some few Troops of Horse.

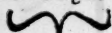
Cæsar, sending his Cavalry before, follow'd close after with the rest of the Army, but had alter'd the Disposition of his March, since the Intelligence convey'd to the Enemy; for, knowing he was near the *Hainaultois*, according to his usual Custom, he had plac'd six Legions in the Front, who had nothing to carry but their Arms; leaving the Charge of the whole Baggage to the two new Legions, which march'd in the Rere.

C H A P. IX.

THE *Roman* Cavalry, with the Slingers and Archers, having pass'd the River, engag'd the Enemy's Horse, who at first retir'd to their Companions in the Wood,

*The Battel
with the Hai-
naultois.*

War with
the Belgæ.



Wood, then sally'd out again ; but the *Romans* did not think fit to pursue 'em, further than the open Ground. The six Legions in the Front, according to the General's Orders, had already began to intrench themselves, when the Enemy seeing our foremost Carriages arriv'd, which was the Sign appointed for making their Sally, rush'd from behind the Thickets in order of Battel with all their Forces ; and having easily broke their Way thro' our Cavalry, ran with such incredible Swiftneſs down the Banks of the *Sambre*, that they seem'd at the same Instant to be in the Woods, at the River, and charging our Legions on the other Side; for mounting the Hill with the same Fury they had descended from the Banks, they fell upon our Soldiers in the Works, before they had time to perceive their Danger. Now had *Cæsar*, at the same Instant, all these several things upon his Hands ; hanging out the Flag to give the Soldiers warning to repair to their Arms, proclaiming the Fight by Sound of Trumper, drawing off the Soldiers from the Works, recalling those who were gone to fetch Materials for the Rampart, ranging the Army in Order of Battel, encouraging the Men, and giving the Sign to engage ; most of which the unexpected Attack of the Enemy prevented, by not allowing us time.

C H A P. X.

The Experience of the
Roman Soldiers.

IN the midst of all these Difficulties, two things fell out to the Advantage of the *Romans* ; one was, each private Soldier had so much Experience that he knew his Duty, and what was proper to be done upon such an Emergency, as well as his Officer ; the other, that the Legions who were employ'd about the Works, and had been commanded by *Cæsar* not to leave off 'till his further Orders, respecting more the Necessity of assisting their Fellows, than their General's Commands, follow'd the Dictates of their own Discretion.

Cæsar having distributed the necessary Orders, made haste to encourage the first Body of his Soldiers he could meet, which happen'd to be the tenth Legion, to whom he said no more, but that he hop'd they would remember their ancient Virtue ; and, notwithstanding the Surprize, manfully sustain the Assault ; and being at no further Distance from the Enemy, than was just sufficient for casting their Darts, he gave 'em the Sign of Battel ; then going to another Part of the Army he found

found it already engag'd. So short was the Time which the Fury of the Enemy allow'd us, that our Men had not Leisure to repair to their respective Ensigns, to put on their Head-Pieces, or lay hold of their Targets; but each Soldier joyn'd himself to the first Standard he met with there, stood to his Arms, that he might not throw away that Time in seeking for his own Company, which was to be spent in Fighting.

The Army being drawn up, rather according to the Nature of the Place, the Declivity of the Hill, and particular Necessity of the Time, than as Art Military and Order requir'd, the Legions engag'd with the Enemy in several Places at once; but the perfect View of the Fight was hinder'd by the Thickets that we spoke of before, which made it impossible for the General to dispatch away Succours where necessity requir'd 'em; an Inconvenience that render'd the Battel dubious, and occasion'd various Events.

The Soldiers of the ninth and tenth Legions, who were posted in the Left, having cast their Darts, soon forc'd those of *Arras*, who were weary and wounded, to retire from the Hill into the Water, and put great Numbers of 'em to the Sword, as they endeavour'd to pass the River; pursuing the rest to the other Side, till they had drawn 'em into a disadvantageous Place, where the Enemy again fac'd about and renew'd the Fight, but were oblig'd a second Time to fly. So likewise, in another Part of the Battel, the eighth and eleventh Legions, having broken the *Vermandois*, whom they were engag'd with, had forc'd 'em from the Top of the Hill to the Banks of the River. But in the mean time the Front and Left Side of our Camp were left almost naked; (for in the Right Wing were plac'd the Twelfth, and not far from that the seventh Legion) which the *Hainaulois* perceiving, attack'd us there with their entire Force, under the Command of *Boduognatus*; one Party of 'em endeavouring to flank the Legions where they lay most open, and the other to lodge themselves in the highest part of the Camp.

About the same time the Cavalry and light-arm'd Footmen, who at the beginning of the Battel had been broken, just as they were retiring into the Camp, met the Enemy in the Front, which oblig'd 'em to fly again; whilst the Servants of the Army, who from the Top of the Mountain, through the *Decuman* Port, had seen our Men pursue the Enemy cross the River, were going to follow

War with
the Belgæ.

follow 'em for the sake of Plunder, but seeing the *Hainaultois* had enter'd our Camp, ran away. This Confusion was increas'd by the Clamour of those that attended the Carriages, who being frighted, endeavour'd to provide for their Safety by Flight, each Man taking a different way; which so terrify'd the Cavalry of *Treves*, reputed Men of great Courage amongst the *Gauls*, who had been sent by their Country to our Assistance, that perceiving the Enemy were possess'd of our Camp, that the Legions were over-charg'd and almost surrounded, that our Horse, Slingers and *Numidians* were broken and routed, not staying to expect the Event of the Battel, they immediately return'd home, reporting that the *Romans* were entirely defeated, and their Baggage taken.

The Romans
give ground;

Cæsar
snatches a
Shield and
places him-
self in the
Front of the
Battel to en-
courage 'em.

Cæsar, having encourag'd the tenth Legion, went up to the Right Wing of the Army, and found 'em over-charged by the Enemy; the Standards of the twelfth Legion all crowd'd up in a Place together; their Ranks so close, the Soldiers had not room to fight; all the Centurions of the fourth Cohort kill'd, a Standard-bearer depriv'd of his Life and Colours together; all the rest of the Centurions either kill'd or dangerously wounded, amongst which Number was *P. Sextus Baculus*, the Primiple, a Man of extraordinary Courage, who had receiv'd so many Wounds, he was not able to stand; the Front beginning to give ground, whilst some in the Rere were running away; the Enemy on the other Hand pushing on briskly in the Front, notwithstanding the Disadvantage of the Rising-Ground, and flanking our Men with equal Fury at the same time on either Side. Finding things in this desperate Condition, and knowing it impossible to send 'em Relief, *Cæsar* snatch'd a Shield from one of the new Levies, for 'till that instant he had been without one, and, putting himself in the Front of the Battel, encourag'd the Soldiers, then calling the Centurions by their Names, command'd 'em to advance the Ensigns, and widen the Ranks of the *Maniples*, that they might have more Liberty to use their Swords. His Presence infus'd fresh Courage into the Soldiers, and each of 'em strove, even in the greatest Extremity, to give Proofs of his Valour, whilst the Emperor was there to be a Witness of it, which put a stop to the Career of the Enemy.

CHAR.

C H A P. XI.

PERCEIVING likewise that the seventh Legion, which stood next him, was over-power'd by the Enemy, he commanded the Tribunes to close the two Legions together by degrees, and joining back to back, face about to the right and left, whereby having made a double Front, they were secure from being surronded; whereupon they began to defend themselves, and attack the Enemy with fresh Vigour. In the mean time, the two Legions which had been left behind to guard the Baggage, hearing the Armies were engag'd, made what Haste they could to our Assistance, and were discern'd by the *Hainaultois* from the Top of the Hill. *Titus Labienus*, who by this time had made himself Master of the Enemy's Camp, perceiving from the rising Ground how Matters went on our side the River, detach'd the tenth Legion to our Relief, who having Intelligence from the Cavalry and Servants that fled away, what Danger the General, his Legions and the Camp were in, redoubled their Pace.

Labienus
gains the E-
nemy's
Camp; and
sends As-
sistance to
Cæsar.

Their Arrival made so strange an Alteration for the better on our side, that they who before were faint with Bleeding, and forc'd to rest themselves upon their Shields, began the Fight afresh; nay, the Servants, seeing how great a Consternation the Enemy were in, fell upon 'em unarm'd; whereupon the Horse, to wipe away the Ignominy of their former Flight, by giving fresh Proofs of their Courage where e'er there was a Vacancy between the legionary Soldiers, rush'd boldly into the Fight. But the Enemy, even in their last Extremity, shew'd themselves to be Men; for no sooner were their foremost Ranks swept off, but the next succeeding in their Place fought upon their Bodies, and when Death had rais'd a Mountain of their Carcasses, the small Remainder, ascending to the Top of it, cast their Darts from thence, and taking up ours return'd 'em back again: Fame therefore did 'em Justice, in reporting 'em to be Men of such prodigious Courage; since they durst attempt to cross a broad River, and ascend the steep Banks on the other Side, to engage an Enemy at so great a Disadvantage, which Dangers their Grandeur of Mind had taught 'em to despise.

The Enemy
entirely de-
feated.

The Battel being thus decided, and almost the Name and People of *Hainault* extinguish'd, the Old Men,
Women

War with
the Belgæ.

The mighty
Slaughter of
the Hainaul-
tois.

Women and Children, who, as we have already said, before the Fight had been convey'd into Boggs and Marshes, hearing of the Defeat, and seeing no way left to put a Stop to the Conqueror's Success, nor any Hopes of Safety for the vanquish'd, unanimously resolv'd to send Embassadors to *Cæsar*, and surrender themselves: When these were arriv'd at the Camp, they laid before him the deplorable Condition of their Country; that out of six hundred Senators only Three remain'd alive; and that out of 60000 Soldiers they had not now 500 that were able to bear Arms; whom *Cæsar*, to give a Proof of his Compassion to the afflicted, carefully preserv'd, allowing 'em the free Possession of their Towns and Country, and commanded their Neighbours round about to do 'em no Injury.

C H A P. XII.

Atuatici.
The People
of Douay re-
turn home,
and fortify
their princi-
pal Town.

The Descent
of the People
of Douay.

Cæsar be-
sieg'es 'em.

THE People of *Douay*, who, as we said before, were marching to the Assistance of the *Hainaultois*, having Intelligence of their Defeat, return'd home again; and, deserting all the rest of their Towns and Castles, convey'd themselves and their Riches into a well fortify'd Place, which was surrounded by inaccessible Rocks and steep Precipices, except in one Place about 200 Foot broad, where there was an easy Ascent to the Town, which they had fortify'd with a double Wall of a prodigious Height; whereon they laid Stones and sharp Pieces of Timber, ready to cast down upon Occasion.

These People were descended from the *Cimbri* and *Teutons*, who, when they took their Journey to *Italy*, had left six thousand Men on the other Side the *Rhine*, with such Carriages as they could not conveniently get over: These, after the Defeat of their Countrymen, having been long persecuted by their Neighbours, one while invading others, and at another defending themselves, at last obtain'd a Peace, and settled in that Country.

On the first Arrival of our Army they made several Sallies out of the Town, and encounter'd our Men in small Skirmishes; but after we had drawn our Line of Circumvallation, twelve Foot high, and fifteen Miles in Length, and fortify'd it with little Turrets, the besieged kept themselves within their Walls. At first when they saw us raising a Mount, fitting up the Vines, and building a large Turret at some Distance from the Town,

Town, making a Jest of us, by way of Ridicule they demanded, with what Hands or Strength such little Men as we (for the Romans are but of small Stature in respect of the Gauls) should be able to bring a Tower of that prodigious Weight to their Walls? But when they saw it remov'd, and approaching near the Town, astonish'd at so strange a Sight, they immediately sent Deputies to Caesar to desire a Peace; saying, *They believ'd the Romans made War by the peculiar Assistance of the Gods, who were able in so minute a Space of Time to convey Engines of that prodigious Bulk to their Walls; wherefore they willingly submitted themselves and all they had to Caesar's Mercy, only entreating him, for the sake of his wonted Goodness and Compassion, (that if he thought fitting not to take away their Lives) as they had always been envy'd and hated by their Neighbours for their Valour, that he would not deprive 'em of their Arms, and leave 'em without the Means to defend themselves; for they would rather submit to any Punishment from the Romans, than be inhumanly murder'd by those whom they had formerly commanded.*

War with the Belgæ.

They send a deceitful Embassy to Caesar,

To this, Caesar answer'd, That, provided they surrender'd themselves before his Battering-Ram touch'd their Walls, he would save the City, more for his own Compassion sake than their Merit: Nor would he accept of a Surrender on any other Terms but the Delivery of their Arms; but he would give the same Orders to their Neighbours not to injure 'em, as he had done for those of Hainault.

Caesar's Answer.

The Deputies return'd with this Answer, which the besieg'd seem'd readily to submit to, by casting such plenty of Arms over the Walls, as almost fill'd the Ditch up to the Top of the Rampart; (but, as we afterwards found, reserv'd a third Part, which they hid;) then, opening their Gates, enjoy'd a Peace for the rest of that Day.

The besieg'd surrender.

In the Evening Caesar caus'd the Soldiers to return to their Camp, and the Gates of the Town to be shut, that the Citizens might not be plunder'd. But the besieg'd, who had already concert'd their Design, believing that after their Surrender the Romans would set no Guard upon 'em, or at least an inconsiderable one, arm'd with such Weapons as they had reserv'd, and Targets made of Wicker, cover'd o'er with Hides, about three a Clock in the Morning made a furious Sally with all their Force upon our Fortifications, where the Ascent was easiest; which the Romans having immediate Intelligence

They sally out of the Town early in the Morning.

telligence of, by the Beacons, (as *Cæsar* had before commanded) made haste to relieve the Place, where the Enemy, embolden'd by Despair, fought bravely, tho' the *Romans* had the Advantage of the Ground; but 4000 being slain on the Spot, the rest retreated into the Town. The next Day, without the least Opposition, *Cæsar* forc'd the Gates, and having caus'd his Army to enter, he plunder'd the Town, and sold the People, whose Number amounted to 53000, for Bond-slaves.

C H A P. XIII.

Veneti,
Unelli, Osif-
mii, Curio-
solitæ, Sefu-
vii, Aulerici,
Rhedones.

ABOUT the same time *P. Crassus*, (whom *Cæsar* had sent with a Legion to take in *Vennes*, *Coutances*, *Landreguet*, *Cornovalle*, *Bretaigne*, *Eureux* and *Renes*, their Maritime Towns) sent him Word that those Places had all submitted to the *Roman Empire*.

Carnutes,
Andes, Tu-
rones.

The Wars being thus successively ended, and all the Provinces of *Gaul* in Peace, so great a Terror did *Cæsar*'s Victories strike into the Barbarians round about, that the Nations beyond the *Rhine* sent Embassadors to offer him Hostages, and Obedience to whatever he pleas'd to command 'em; but he being in haste to return to *Lombardy*, commanded 'em to come again the next Spring. Having dispos'd his Army into Winter-Quarters in *Chartrain*, *Anjou*, and *Tours*, which lay nearest the Country he had last subdu'd, he took his Journey to *Italy*; and having sent the Senate an Account of his Success, they caus'd a General Thanksgiving to be proclaim'd, which lasted fifteen Days, an Honour which no Man, before that Time, had ever obtain'd.

C. J. Caesar's

COMMENTARY

OF HIS

WAR

IN

GAUL.

The Third Book.

The War with the People of Valais, Vannes, Eureux, Coutances, Galcoigne, Teroüenne, and Guelders.

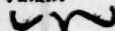
CHAP. I.

WHEN Caesar return'd to Italy, he sent *Sergius Galba*, with the twelfth Legion, and a Party of Horse, against the People of *Elen, Valan, and Sion*, (whose Territories, beginning at the Confines of *Savoy*, the Lake of *Geneva*, and the River *Rhofne*, extend themselves to the Top of the *Alps*;) his Business was to clear the *Alps* of High-way-men, that liv'd by robbing the Merchants and Passengers who travell'd between *Italy* and *Gaul*, with Orders, if he should think convenient, to take up his Winter-quarters there.

Galba,

Mantuates
Veragri, Se-
duni.

War in
Valais.



Galba, after some successful Rencounters, having made himself Master of several Forts, receiv'd Embassadors from all the Country round, who came to offer him Hostages ; whereupon he concluded a Peace, resolving to quarter two Cohorts of his Legion in the Country of *Elen*, and to lodge himself with the rest in *Martenac*, the Capital of *Valais*.

Odorous.

This Town is situated in a little Valley divided by the River, and surrounded by steep Mountains on every side ; of which having given one half to the *Gauls*, he took Possession of the other with his Cohorts, which they fortify'd with a Ditch and a Rampier.

*Galba be-
sieged by the
Valais.*

After he had continued at this Place several Days, and given Orders to the Country to bring in what Corn he had Occasion for, he receiv'd very unexpected News, That the *Gauls* had forsaken their Part of the City, and that the Hills around were cover'd with Multitudes of the People of *Valais* and *Sion*. The Occasion of this Revolt was, the small Number of the *Roman* Troops, which did not amount to one Legion ; for two Cohorts had been quarter'd in *Elen*, besides, several of those who staid with *Galba*, were gone out a Foraging : To the Contempt of their Number may be added the Situation of the Place, which was so advantageous to the Besiegers, that they persuaded themselves the *Romans* would not stand the first Assault. The Natives thought it a great Hardship to be robb'd of their Children under the Name of Hostages, and that the *Romans*, not contented with a thorough Passage, should deprive 'em of the Possession of the highest *Alps* for ever, and unite 'em to their Province.

Upon this Intelligence *Galba*, who had neither finish'd his Fortifications, nor stor'd himself with sufficient Provisions, (because he little dream'd of an Insurrection, after the People had surrender'd themselves, and deliver'd Hostages ;) immediately summon'd a Council of War, to consult what was proper to be done : All the Officers were strangely surpris'd at so unexpected a Revolution, and some of 'em seeing the Mountains round about possess'd with Soldiers, (who had so posted themselves that there was no Hopes of receiving Provisions or Relief) could find out no other Expedient for their Safety, but leaving the heavy Baggage behind, and sallying out, to force their Passage thro' the Enemy at the same Place where they enter'd ; but the Majority were of a different Opinion, holding it more convenient

to reserve that, as their last Refuge, and in the mean time, fortifying their Camp, to attend the Decision of Fortune,

War in
Valais.

C H A P. II.

BUT before the *Romans* had time to execute such Orders as were resolv'd on for their Defence, the Enemy, upon a Sign given, furiously assaulted our Camp on all sides with Stones and Darts; which our Men at first courageously return'd, not casting one Dart from the Ramparts in vain; and wherever they saw the Enemy make the strongest Efforts, thither they flock'd to oppose 'em. But we labour'd under a mighty Disadvantage, for the Rebels being so much superior to us in Number, whenever their foremost Ranks began to faint, fresh Men supply'd their Places; which we, having so small a Body of Troops, were not able to do: So that, with us, neither the weary nor the wounded were permitted to quit their Posts.

The Romans
assaulted in
their Camp.

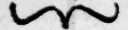
After the Conflict had endur'd for the space of six Hours, our Men being weak, and wanting Weapons, whilst the Enemy's Vigour encreas'd as we grew faint, finding things reduc'd to the last Extremity, (for they had already fill'd great part of our Ditch, and began to demolish our Rampart) *P. Sextus Baculus*, a Primiple, who receiv'd many Wounds in the War with the *Hainaultois*, and *Caius Volusenus*, a Tribune of the Soldiers, a Man of great Courage and Conduct, came to *Galba*, and inform'd him, that there was no Expedient left but sallying out, and putting their Fortune upon one brisk Attempt: Wherefore *Galba*, having summon'd all the Centurions, caus'd 'em to give the Soldiers immediate Orders to retire a while from the Rampart, and only receiving the Enemy's Shot to refresh themselves, 'till a Sign should be given for sallying out of the Camp, when they must rely only on their Courage for the Preservation of their Lives.

These Orders were so well executed by the Soldiers, that, issuing out of the Camp from all Sides at the same Instant, they neither allow'd the Enemy time to rally their Forces, nor to know what was the Matter: Which gave so sudden a Turn of Fortune, that they, who but the Moment before promis'd themselves the Possession of our Camp and Baggage, were now surrounded on all Sides, and out of 30000, for so many came to attack us, one Third lost their Lives, whilst the Remainder

Galba and his Romans sally out of their Camp, put the Enemy to flight, and entirely desert 'em.

were

War with
Vannes and
the Sea-ports.



Galba re-
turns into
Savoy.

were oblig'd to procure their Safety by Flight, being driven off the Mountains round about. Thus having entirely defeated the Enemy, and taken their Arms, we return'd again to our Quarters.

But *Galba* was not willing, after this Battel, to try Fortune's good Nature a second Time ; for considering he had met with such a troublesome Business, as he little expected when first he came thither, and finding Provisions began to grow scarce, having set Fire to the Town, he return'd the next Day towards the Province, march'd his Legion without Opposition thro' the Country of *Elen*, and from thence arriv'd safe in *Savoy*, where he took up his Quarters the rest of the Winter.

C H A P. III.

Cæsar goes
to Illyricum,
the Gauls re-
volt.

Andes.

Curiosolite.
Veneti.

The Gauls
imprison the
Roman Com-
missaries.

CÆSAR, having many Reasons to believe that all things in *Gaul* were quiet, that there was no probability of new Insurrections, (because the *Belgæ* had been defeated, the *Germans* expell'd, and the People of *Valais* subdu'd ;) at the beginning of the Winter took a Progress to *Illyricum*, being desirous to see that Country : But most unexpectedly there arose new Troubles in *Gaul* upon this Occasion ; young *P. Crassus*, who was quarter'd with the seventh Legion near the Sea-side in *Anjou*, finding Provisions very scarce in that Country, sent out the Horse-Officers and Tribunes, to demand Corn for his Legion in the Cities round about : *T. Terrasidius* he sent to the *Eufubii*, *Trebius Gallus* to *Cornuaille*, *Quintus Vellanius* and *Titus Silius* to *Vannes*, one of the most potent Districts on the Sea-coast of those Nations ; for being well stor'd with Shipping, with which they trade to *England*, they are better Mariners than any of their Neighbours, are Masters of those few Sea-ports which lie on the Coast of so tempestuous a Sea as theirs, and exact Tribute from most Merchants that sail on that Ocean.

These set the first Example, by detaining *Silius* and *Vellanius* ; by which means they hop'd to recover the Hostages they had deliver'd *Crassus* : The next Country imitating them, did the like by *Trebius* and *Terrasidius* ; and sending immediate Embassadors to each other (for the *Gauls* are very speedy in their Resolves) they oblig'd themselves by their Noblemen to enter into a strict Alliance, nor to make the least Motion without the publick and mutual Consent, to expect and share the same

For-

Fortune. Nor did they leave any thing unessay'd, to incite the rest of the Provinces thereabout, to assert that Liberty which they had receiv'd from their Ancestors, not to stoop to the Dominion of a Stranger ; and having drawn all the Sea-port Towns into the same Conspiracy with themselves, sent Deputies to *Crassus*, to let him know, *If he expected his Officers Liberty, he must return their Hostages.*

War with Vannes and the Sea-ports.

C H A P. IV.

CÆSAR, having Intelligence from *Crassus* how Affairs went, being then at a great Distance from the Army, commanded several Gallies and Ships to be built on the River *Loire*, which runs into the Ocean, and list'd great Numbers of Pilots and Mariners in the Province ; which being accomplish'd with wondrous Expedition, so soon as the Season permitted, he arriv'd in *Gaul*. The People of *Vannes* in the mean time, and the rest of their Confederates, who had Intelligence of *Cæsar's* Arrival, (considering how horrid a Crime they had been guilty of, in violating the Law of Nations, by putting the Embassadors in Chains ;) were not idle, but prepar'd all things necessary to defend 'em from the impending Danger, especially a considerable Navy.

Cæsar builds a Navy, and marches into Gaul.

C H A P. V.

THEY flatter'd themselves with Success in this Enterprize, by reason of their strong Situation, for there was no coming at 'em by Land, because the Passes were stopp'd up by several Arms of the Ocean ; nor were they worse fortify'd on the other Side, the Entrance by way of the Sea being very difficult and dangerous, for they had but few Ports, and the *Romans* were altogether Strangers to their Coast. Besides they were in Hopes the *Roman* Army would not be able to subsist there long without Provisions, which were not to be had in the Country : But the Event decided Affairs much contrary to their Expectations, notwithstanding they were more powerful at Sea than the *Romans*, who were not acquainted with the Flats, Shallows, Ports and Islands of the Place where they were to engage, and found the Practice of Navigation in those narrow Seas far different from that on the wider Ocean.

War with
Vannes, and
the Sea-
ports.

The Gauls
Preparations
and Allian-
ces,

Osismii,
Lexovii,
Nannetes,
Ambialites,
Diablintes,
Morini, Me-
napii.

Cæsar
sends several
Parties to
different
Places in
Gaul, to cut
off all Suc-
cours from
the Enemy.

Big with these Expectations they began to fortify their Towns, to carry all their Corn out of the Fields into their Arsenals, and convey their Shipping to *Vannes*, the Place they were inform'd *Cæsar* design'd first to attack, having beforehand engag'd the People of *Landreguet*, *Leisieux*, *Nants*, *Lendoul*, *Terouienne* and *Guelders* in their Interest, and sent Embassadors to *England*, which lies over against 'em, to pray Assistance from thence.

All these Difficulties concurr'd to dissuade *Cæsar* from engaging in the War; but on the other hand many Reasons made it absolutely necessary, first the Detaining of the *Roman* Knights, then their Rebellion after they had surrender'd themselves and given Hostages for their good Behaviour, and lastly, the Revolt of so many Cities, which being neglected, might prove of bad Example to the rest. Considering therefore that all the *Gauls* were prone to Novelty, easily induc'd to undertake a War, that it was natural to all Mankind to love Liberty and detest Servitude, he thought it the most convenient way to divide his Army, and distribute it into several Places: *Titus Labienus* he sent with the Cavalry to *Treves*, that borders on the *Rhine*, commanding him to have an Eye over the People of *Rheims*, to keep the rest of the *Belgæ* thereabouts in Obedience, and to prevent the *Germans* from transporting any Troops over the *Rhine* to foment and assist this Rebellion: *Pubius Crassus*, with twelve Legionary Cohorts and a Party of Horse, he detach'd to *Gascoigne*, to cut off all Assistance from those Parts: *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, with three Legions, he order'd to *Leseux*, *Landreguet*, and * *Constance*, to disappoint the Rebels Hopes in those Countries; and having made *D. Brutus* Admiral of the Navy, and of the *French* Vessels he had receiv'd from those of *Poitou*, *Xantonge*, and the other Provinces which continu'd firm in their Obedience, he order'd him to sail with all Expedition to *Vannes*, himself following after by Land with the Foot.

* Unelli.

Pictones.

C H A P. VI.

Cæsar takes
several
Towns, but
the Besieg'd
always es-
cape.

THE Confederate Cities, being most of 'em situated upon Promontories, could not be attack'd by Land at High-Water, which always happen'd once in six Hours; nor yet by Sea, for upon the Ebb of the Tide the Ships were left upon the Sands as a Prey to the Enemy; and whenever the *Romans* endeavour'd to exclude the

the Ocean by artificial Mounts, which they rais'd to an equal Height with the Walls of the Town, the Enemy, so soon as we were prepar'd to enter, having plenty of Shipping, quickly convey'd themselves and their Effects away by Sea to the next Port, where they enjoy'd the same Advantages as before. Thus they disappointed us for most part of the Summer, for the Roman Fleet durst not venture out of the Loire into so vast and tempestuous an Ocean, where the Tides were strong, the Roads and Havens but few, and at a considerable Distance from one another.

War with
Vannes and
the Sea-
ports.

Description
of the Gauls
Shipping.

The Enemy had great Advantage over us in their Shipping, which was thus built and rigg'd: Their Keels were flatter than ours, consequently more convenient for the Shallows and low Tides; their Fore-castles were very high, their Poops contriv'd to endure the Roughness of the Sea; the Body of their Vessels built of impenetrable Oak; the Banks for the Oars were Beams a Foot square, fasten'd at each End with Iron Pins an Inch thick: Instead of Cables for their Anchors they made use of Iron Chains, and had Hides for their Sails, either because they wanted Linnen, and were ignorant of its Use, or what's more likely, thought Linnen Sails not strong enough to endure their boisterous Seas, their impetuous Winds, and carry Vessels of so considerable Burthen: So that whenever our Ships encounter'd 'em, we only had the Advantage in tacking about by the Management of our Oars; but in all other Things they had much the better of us, being built more convenient for the Nature of the Place, and more able to endure a Storm; their Shells were so extraordinary hard, our Beaks could not enter 'em, and their Decks so high, we could do but little Execution with our Darts; besides, whenever a Storm arose which oblig'd 'em to submit to the Pleasure of the Winds, being strong built, they were better able to weather it out, and could shelter themselves with Safety amongst the Flats without Fear of the Rocks, or those other Inconveniencies which the Romans were subject to.

C H A P. VII.

CÆSAR having taken in one Town after another, the Enemy still convey'd themselves to the next; wherefore perceiving he spent his Time to no Purpose, for he could neither prevent their Escape, nor do 'em any considerable Damage, he resolv'd to attend the Arrival of his Navy; which was no sooner come, but the Enemy

War with
Vannes and
the Sea-
ports.

The Roman
Navy ar-
rives: The
two Fleets
drawn up,
they engage.

immediately, having rigg'd out 220 Sail of tall Vessels; and equipp'd 'em with all things necessary, stood out to Sea just over against us. The Admiral *Brutus*, the Tribunes and Centurions who commanded the Roman Fleet, were so surpriz'd at this unexpected Sight, that they knew not what Method to take, or what Order to draw up their Gallies in; for the Enemy's Shipping was so strong, our Beaks could do 'em no Prejudice, and had we built Turrets on the Decks, as usual, yet we could not have mounted 'em to a sufficient Height to equal that of their Poops; in which particular they had a mighty Advantage over us; for as we could not do 'em much Prejudice by our Weapons, because we lay so much lower than they; so on the contrary their Darts descended on us with a much greater Force: But we happen'd to have one sort of Instrument amongst our Stores which prov'd extremly to our Advantage, we had provided a great Number of sharp crooked Sythes, like those that are us'd in Sieges, which we affixed to the End of long Poles, and laying hold of their Tackle, tow'd the Vessels away by the Help of our Oars, then, cutting their Cables, the Main-yard fell down, whereby the Enemy, who rely'd on their Sails and Rigging, were at once depriv'd of their Sails and the Use of their Vessels: And now the Dispute depending entirely upon Courage, the Romans easily got the better, because fighting in the View of *Cæsar* and all the Romans, they were assur'd of so many Witnesses of their Valour; for all the Hills and rising Grounds, which look'd upon the Sea, were cover'd with our Soldiers.

The Romans
take and
sink almost
all their
ships.

The Enemy's Main-yards being thus cut down, the Romans endeavour'd to board 'em, tho' each Vessel of ours was surrounded by two or three of theirs; which the Gauls perceiving, after they had lost several of their Ships, finding no other way for Safety, began to tack about before the Wind, but were of a sudden so becalm'd, that their Flight was prevented; which fell out very opportunely for the Romans, who, grappling with 'em, boarded so many, that after the Battel had continu'd from between eight and nine in the Morning 'till Sun-set, few of their Number had the Fortune to save themselves, and get to Land by the Assistance of the Night.

The End of
the War.

This Battel put an End to the War with *Vannes* and the rest of the Maritime Towns, for at this Dispute were present, not only all the Youth of their Country, but

Book III. Of his War in Gaul.

53

but even those of maturer Years, who might assist the labouring Fate of their Country, either by Authority or Advice ; and hither had they brought all the Vessels they were able to rig out ; which being lost, they who escap'd the Slaughter, not knowing whither to fly, nor how to defend their Towns against *Cæsar*, deliver'd rhemselves up to his Mercy ; who treated 'em with unusual Severity, to teach such Barbarians for the future to observe the Law of Nations, whereby the Persons of Embassadors are protected ; for he put all their Senators to the Sword, and sold the People for Slaves.

War with
Constance.



C H A P. VIII.

I N the mean time *L. Titurius Sabinus* was marching with his Forces to the Confines of *Constance*, a People subject to *Viridovix*, then Generalissimo for the revolted Towns, who had furnish'd him with a numerous and potent Army : The Senators of *Eureux*, *Rohan* and *Le-seux* could not be drawn into this Confederacy ; but the common People, having murder'd 'em, shut up their City-Gates, and join'd with *Viridovix* ; to whom likewise flock'd great Numbers from *Gaul*, Men of desperate Fortunes, and Thieves, whom the Hopes of Plunder induc'd to prefer the Study of War before that of Husbandry and daily Labour.

Sabinus's
Expedition
to Constance.

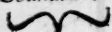
Aulerci
Eburvices.

Sabinus, having encamp'd himself in a convenient Place, permitted not his Men to stir out of their Trenches ; whilst *Viridovix*, who lodg'd within two Miles of him, drew his Forces out every Day to offer him Battel, which the other so often refus'd, that at last he was not only suspected by the Enemy, but even by his own Soldiers of Cowardice ; and so craftily did he act his Part, that the Enemy had the Assurance to come even to our very Trenches : The Reason he gave for his Conduct was, that he did not think it justifiable for a Lieutenant to engage an Army so much more numerous than his own, during the Absence of the General, but upon Advantage of Time or Place.

Sabinus's
Stratagem
and Success.

Thus having confirm'd the Enemy in their Opinion, he made choice of a subtle *Gaul*, amongst the Auxiliary Troops, whom he persuaded, by considerable Presents and greater Promises, to go over to the Enemy, and there act according to such Instructions as he should give him : This Instrument being arriv'd at their Camp, and receiv'd as a Defetter, inform'd 'em how much the

War is
Counselance.



Romans were afraid of 'em, what Extremities *Cæsar* was driven to by the People of *Vannes*, and that *Sabinus* design'd the next Night privately to decamp, and make what haste he could to his Assistance. No sooner had they heard this News but they unanimously cry'd out, that so lucky an Opportunity was not to be slipp'd, and that they would attack the *Romans* in their Intrenchments. Many Circumstances concurr'd which induc'd the *Gauls* to embrace this Resolution, *Sabinus's* declining Battel so often, the Intelligence from the Deserter, Want of Provisions, which they had not taken sufficient Care for, their Hopes in their Confederates of *Vannes*, and that credulous Humour which always inclines Men to believe what they wish : Spurr'd on by these Motives, the Soldiers would not permit *Viridovix* and the rest of the General Officers to break up the Council, before they had resolv'd upon forcing the *Roman* Camp ; which being agreed on, they went as chearfully to work as if they had already obtain'd the Victory ; and having provided plenty of Fascines, to fill up the Ditches, made the best of their Way to attack us.

The Gauls
come to at-
tack the Ro-
man Camp,
but are re-
puls'd and
routed.

The *Romans* were encamp'd on the Top of a rising Ground, which mounted with an easy Ascent from the Level ; and the Enemy made so much haste to prevent our having Notice of their Design, that they ran themselves out of Breath before they came at us. *Sabinus*, who was better prepar'd to receive 'em than they imagin'd, having encourag'd his Soldiers, gave 'em the Sign of Battel ; then sallying out of two several Gates of the Camp at once upon the Enemy, (whilst they were laden with those Materials they design'd to fill up our Trenches with) the Advantage of the Ground, their Faintness and Want of Experience, our Courage and Conduct, soon decided the Matter in Favour of the *Romans* ; for the Enemy, not being able to stand the first Onset, chose rather to depend on their Heels than their Hands, whilst our Troops being fresh and vigorous pursu'd and slew great Numbers of 'em ; nor were their Horse able to preserve themselves from the same Fate, for our Cavalry follow'd 'em so close that few escap'd : So at the same time *Sabinus* heard of the Defeat at Sea, *Cæsar* was inform'd of *Sabinus's* Success at Land.

Upon the News of these Victories all the Provinces which *Titurius* was sent against, surrender'd themselves ; for as the *Gauls* readily enter into a War, so upon the smallest Turn they relent, being impatient of Afflictions.

CHAP.

C H A P. IX.

Crassus's
Expedition
against the
Gascoigns

MUCH about the same time P. *Crassus* arriv'd at *Gascoigne*, which, as we have already taken notice, as well for the Number of its Inhabitants as its Extent of Land, deserves to be esteem'd a third Part of *Gaul*; and considering he was to manage a War in the same Country where Lieutenant-General *L. Valerius Preconius* formerly was defeated and lost his Life, where *Lucius Manilius* was glad to purchase his Escape at the Expence of his Baggage, he thought it behov'd him to take more than ordinary Care: Wherefore having provided his Army with Corn, having rais'd some Cavalry, levy'd Troops in the Auxiliary Countries, and sent for several brave Volunteers from *Tholouse* and *Narbonne*, Cities next adjoyning to the *Roman* Province, he march'd his Army into the Confines of *Sots*. The Natives were no sooner acquainted with his Arrival, but they immediately levy'd a considerable Army of Horse and Foot, and with their Cavalry (whom they most rely'd on) engag'd the *Romans* whilst they were upon their March: We easily put 'em to the Rout, but when we were pursuing 'em, their Infantry appear'd in a Valley where they had watch'd for us in Ambuscade, and, setting upon our Men whilst they were disorder'd with the Pursuit, began the Fight afresh.

Tolosa,
Narbona,
Soriates.The Gauls
Ambuscade.

The Dispute was long and doubtful, for the Enemy, grown proud with the Memory of their former Victories, thought the Fate of *Gascoigne* depended on their single Virtue; whilst the *Romans*, on the other hand, were glad of an Opportunity to shew what they were able to do under the Command of so young a Soldier, without the Directions of their General: But at last, having receiv'd many Wounds, the *Gauls* began to fly, and *Crassus* having slain great Numbers of 'em, march'd directly to their Capital which he invested. The besieged maintain'd their Possession with great Bravery, notwithstanding we approach'd their Walls with Vines, Mounts and Turrets, sometimes sallying, and sometimes undermining our Works; but at last perceiving the Industry of the *Romans* frustrated their Endeavours, they sent Deputies to *Crassus* to desire he would please to accept of a Surrender; which they obtain'd, on Delivery of their Arms. But whilst the whole Army expected the Performance of this Article, *Adcantuanus*,

The Gauls
routed, they
retire to their
Capital.Crassus in-
vests it, and
they agree to
surrender.

War with
Gascoigne,

Adcantua-
nus and his
Soldurii or
sworn
Friends.

who commanded the Town, endeavour'd to make his Escape out of one of the Postern Gates, with six hundred sworn Friends, whom the Natives call Soldurii, whose Custom is, to enjoy all Things in common with those to whom they have vow'd a Friendship, to share the same Fortune, and kill themselves rather than survive the Death of their Comrades. But the Alarm from that Part of the Works soon summon'd our Men thither, where after a warm Conflict the Enemy were drove back again into the Town, but notwithstanding obtain'd the Favour of being comprehended within the same Treaty: And Crassus, having receiv'd Hostages from 'em, left their Country, to march against the Vocates and Tarusates.

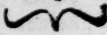
C H A P. X.

The Gauls
rally again,
send for fo-
reign Suc-
cours and
Captains
from Spain.

THE Gauls being much disturb'd that a Place so well fortify'd both by Art and Nature should fall in so small a time into the Romans Hands, began to enter into mutual Alliances with one another in all Parts, sending Embassadors, and exchanging Hostages for that Purpose; and having first levy'd what Forces they could in their own Country, sent Deputies to Spain and the other Countries that border'd on Gascoigne, whence they receiv'd Supplies, with several experienc'd Officers, upon whose Arrival they began the War very briskly with a numerous Army; having made choice of such for their Commanders, who, having serv'd under Sertorius, were reputed to be Men of Conduct and Experience in the Military Art: These, according to the Custom of the Romans, began to pitch upon convenient Places to encamp in, to intrench themselves, and intercept our Convoys; which Crassus perceiving thought it the safest way to give the Enemy Battel immediately, because his Army was so small he could not detach Parties like the Gauls, to possess themselves of particular Passes, and yet leave a sufficient Number to secure his Camp; which would of Necessity, in time, make Provisions grow scarce with the Romans, whilst the Enemy's Power encreas'd: Wherefore, having summon'd a Council of War, finding all the Officers of his Opinion, he appointed the Day after to give 'em Battel.

The Romans
offer 'em
Battel.

Accordingly the next Morning by Dawn of Day he drew out all his Forces, and, having rang'd 'em in a double

double Line, dispos'd the Auxiliaries in the midst, expecting what Motions the Enemy would make: But the *Gauls*, tho' they fancy'd they might safely venture an Engagement, as well on the Score of their Number as of their ancient Prowess, yet thought it the better way to block up all the Passes, intercept the *Roman* Convoys, and obtain a Victory without the Expence of Blood; resolving when the *Romans* should be reduc'd to quit their Camp for Want of Provisions, to attack their Rere, whilst they were faint with Hunger, weary with Travel, and incumber'd with their Baggage: This Advice seem'd most agreeable to the whole Council of the *Gauls*; and therefore when the *Romans* propos'd them Battel they kept within their Camp and declin'd it. *War in Gascoigne.*


C H A P. XI.

CRASSUS, perceiving their Design, and finding his Men more eager for the Engagement, because they thought the Enemy were afraid of 'em, whilst they all exclaim'd against Delay, desiring they might immediately attack the *Gauls* in their Camp, encourag'd their Desire, and to their infinite Satisfaction, led 'em to the Place where the Enemy was lodg'd. Whilst some were busie in filling the Ditch, and others endeavouring to force the *Gauls* from their Trenches with their Darts, the Auxiliaries, on whom *Crassus* had no great Dependance, were employ'd in bringing Darts and Stones to the Soldiers, and Turf to the Mount, that they might appear to be engag'd as well as the rest. The *Gauls* in the mean time maintain'd their Ground obstinately, doing great Execution with their Darts from the higher Ground; which the Horsemen perceiving, took a Compass about to view their Camp, and brought *Crassus* Word, that the Rampart of the *Decuman* Port was not so strongly fortify'd as other Places, and they believ'd it might easily be forc'd; whereupon *Crassus*, having desir'd the Horse Officers to encourage their Men by considerable Rewards and Promises, gave them Instructions what he thought fit to have done. According to their Orders, marching with four fresh Cohorts that had been left in the Camp, and no ways concern'd in the Fatigue of the Day, they took a Circuit to prevent being observ'd; and, whilst the *Gauls* were intent on the Engagement, arriv'd at the Place appointed, which they *The Romans attack their Camp.*

War in
Gascogne.

The Roman
Cavalry enter the De-
cuman Port
of the Gauls
Camp.

The Gauls
entirely
routed.

they easily forc'd, and enter'd the Enemy's Camp before the *Gauls* could perceive who they were, or what they were doing; then giving us Notice by a loud Acclamation, our Soldiers in the Front, as they always do, when there is hope of Victory, renew'd the Battel with fresh Vigour. The Enemy being thus surrounded, jump'd over the Rampier in Despair, endeavouring to save themselves by Flight; but being an open Country, our Cavalry pursu'd and kill'd such Numbers of 'em, that out of 50000 which came from *Spain* and *Gascoigne*, there hardly escap'd a fourth Part.

All Gas-
coigne sub-
mits.
Tarbelli, Bi-
gerriones,
Preciani,
Vocates, Ta-
rusates, Elu-
lates, Gari-
res, Ausci,
Garumni,
Sibulzates,
Cocolates.

Upon the News of this Victory, the greatest Part of *Gascoigne* voluntarily submitted to *Cæsar*, and sent him Hostages, viz. the People of *Pais de Labard*, *Bigorre*, *Precins*, *de Buch*, *Tursan*, *Euse*, *Pais de Gavre*, *Auch*, *Garonne*, *Sibutz*, and *Bazadois*; only some few Districts that lay at a greater Distance, depending on the Approach of Winter, held out.

C H A P. XII.

Cæsar's Ex-
pedition to
Terouenne
and Guel-
ders.

MUCH about the same time, *Cæsar*, tho' the Summer was almost spent, made an Expedition against *Terouenne* and *Guelders*, because they were the only Provinces that had not laid down their Arms, nor sent Embassadors to treat of Peace, whilst all the other Countries of *Gaul* had submitted to the *Roman* Empire, thinking he might dispatch this Expedition in a very short time, he march'd his Army into their Country, but, contrary to his Expectation, found they had a Method of making War much different from the rest of the *Gauls*; for, understanding that the most potent Provinces in their Continent that had engag'd with the *Romans* were defeated, they thought it the wisest way to convey themselves and their Effects into the Woods and Boggs, whereof they had plenty in their Country.

Cæsar, so soon as he was come near the Woods, began to intrench himself, but on a sudden the Enemy, whom he could not discover to be there, sall'y'd out of the Thickets, whilst his Men were dispers'd, and employ'd about different Charges; but they were easily repuls'd to the Woods, where the *Romans* following 'em
unad-

unadvisedly lost some of their Men; whereupon *Caesar* resolv'd to spend the Remainder of the Summer in clearing the Ground; and that his Army might be no more surpris'd whilst they were at Work, he caus'd all the Timber they cut down to be laid on each Side for a Fortification, and in a few Days made so extraordinary a Progress, that all the Enemy's Cattle were taken, tho' they themselves had the Fortune to escape into the thicker Woods.

War in
Tetouenne
and Guel-
ders.

The Rains
put a stop to
Caesar's
Progress.

The continual Rains which fell soon after, put a Stop to the Undertaking, for the Soldiers could no longer endure to lie in their Tents: Wherefore *Caesar*, having laid their Country waste, burnt their Towns and Houses, return'd back again, and quarter'd his Army at *Eureux*, *Leisieux*, and those other Places which he had last subdu'd.

C. J. Ca-

C. J. Caesar's

COMMENTARY

OF HIS

WAR

IN

GAUL.

The Fourth Book.

The Inhabitants of Zutphen and Hesse drive those of Guelders out of their Country; but are defeated by Cæsar: His Expeditions into Germany and England.

CHAP. I.

*The German cross
of the Rhine.
Ulpiæres,
Tenchtheri.*

*The customs
of the Suabians.*

THE next Winter, during the Consulat of Cn. Pompeius and M. Crassus, the Inhabitants of Hesse and Zutphen, two German Nations, cross'd the Rhine in great Numbers towards that End where it discharges it self into the Sea: The Reason why they left their Country was, because they had been so long oppress'd by the Suabians, the most potent and warlike Nation amongst the Germans. The Suabians are divided into an hundred Cantons, each of these yearly bring a thousand Men into the Field, still retaining the same Number

Number at home, to provide for themselves and the Army ; who the Year following go abroad and relieve their Countrymen, by which means they all obtain Experience in Husbandry and Military Affairs at once : They have no Inclosure, no Man has an Acre of Land which he can properly term his own, nor are they suffer'd to continue above one Year in the same Part of the Country : Their chief Diet is Milk and Flesh-Meat, and their Diversion Hunting. The Quality of their Food, their perpetual Exercise and way of Living, (being educated to no Callings, oblig'd to no Discipline, nor restrain'd from any thing their Inclinations prompt 'em to) make 'em very Robust and of an extraordinary Stature ; Custom has render'd 'em so hardy that they wash themselves in their Rivers, and wear no Cloaths even in the coldest Weather, except small Skins, which hardly cover one half of their Bodies, whilst the rest is expos'd to the Weather. Merchants frequent their Coasts, not to import foreign Goods, but to purchase the Booties they obtain in War ; for so averse are they to any thing which is not the natural Product of their Country, that they make use of their own ugly distorted Cattle, which by daily Exercise they inure to all kinds of Services, whilst the Gauls take so much Delight in Cattle, they never think they can pay too dear for a beautiful Ox. Their Horsemen frequently forsake their Horses in the Battel to fight on Foot, having manag'd 'em so well, that they stand still to expect their Riders in the same Place where they left 'em ; nor do they esteem any thing more useless and ignominious than Furniture for Horses, and therefore often venture to charge an unequal Number of such as they see make use of it. They allow no Wine to be imported into their Country, lest it should make 'em lazy and Effeminate ; and the greatest Honour to their Nation in their Opinion, is, to have their Territories round about lie desolate ; from whence they would have you infer, that the united Force of several Kingdoms is not sufficient to oppose their single Valour ; for which reason the Country on one Side it lies waste for the Space of 600 Miles together. The other Part is bounded by the Ubii, who enjoy a large and flourishing Country, a People much politer than their German Neighbours, because, lying nearer the Rhine, they have more Commerce with Merchants, and Conversation with the Gauls : With these, the Suabians had many Disputes, and tho' they were so experienc'd Soldiers, so potent and numerous a People that they could not expel 'em the Country, yet they made 'em their Tributaries, and reduc'd 'em to a very low Condition.

CHAP.

War with
the Germans.

The Ger-
mans invade
Guelders.

The Scal-
iger seems
rather to
think the
Menapii are
those that
now inhabit
the Sea-
coasts of
Brabant.

C H A P. II.

THE inhabitants of *Hesse* and *Zutphen*, whom we mention'd before, were engag'd in the same Quarrel, and having long maintain'd their Ground against the *Suabians*, were at last oblig'd to quit their Country: Being thus compell'd to seek their Fortune, after three Years wandring thro' the Continent of *Germany*, they arriv'd at the Territories of the People of *Guelders*, who inhabit the Banks on both Sides the River *Rhine*. The Natives being affrighted at the unexpected Arrival of so many Foreigners, deserting their Houses on the other Side, cross'd the *Rhine*, and planted themselves so as to prevent the *Germans* further Progress; who having try'd all ways, finding they had not Shipping enough to force their Passage, and that they could not get over by Stealth, because the Natives kept so strict a Watch, at last feign'd a Retreat into their own Country; but after three Days Journey, return'd again to the same Place with their Cavalry, in one Night's March, and surpris'd the Natives, who being assur'd by their Scouts of the Enemy's Retreat had forgot their Fears, and transported themselves to their former Habitations: Having put these to the Sword and seiz'd their Vessels, before the People on the other Side knew any thing of the Matter, they cross'd the *Rhine*, possess'd themselves of their Towns and Houses, and took up their Quarters there for the rest of the Winter.

Cæsar having Intelligence of this Matter, was jealous of the Levity of the *Gauls*, who are so fickle in their Counsels, and such passionate Lovers of Novelty, that they stop Passengers upon the Road, and oblige 'em to declare all the News they have heard, before they let 'em proceed on their Journey: The Mob likewise flock about foreign Merchants, to enquire what Country they came from, and how Affairs went when they came from home: By which Reports they often govern themselves in the Management of their most important Affairs; and consequently being sway'd by such uncertain Accounts, calculated for the most part by the Traveller for their Satisfaction, they must often repent of the Resolutions they have taken.

C H A P. III.

CÆSAR therefore, being so well acquainted with their Temper, made more haste than usual to put himself at the Head of his Army, where he was no sooner arriv'd, but he found his Suspicions true, that some Provinces of *Gaul* had already sent Embassadors to invite the *Germans* from the Banks of the *Rhine* farther into the Continent, where they should meet with friendly Entertainment; whereupon the *Germans* had began to make Inroads, and lay the Country waste, as far as the Confines of *Leige*, *Cologne* and *Treves*: For which reason *Cæsar*, having summon'd all the Princes of *Gaul*, took no Notice of the Revolt he had been inform'd of, but, confirming 'em in their Allegiance by a seeming Approbation of their Loyalty, commanded 'em to furnish him with a certain Number of Cavalry; for he was resolv'd to make War on the *Germans*.

So soon as he had provided his Army with Corn, having sent his Cavalry before, he march'd after 'em to the Place where he understood the *Germans* were; who, when he was arriv'd within a few Days Journey of 'em, sent Embassadors to acquaint him, That as the *Germans* were not desirous of giving the Romans the first Occasion for a War, so neither should they avoid engaging with 'em, if provok'd to it; for it had always been the Custom of the *Germans* to answer an Enemy at his own Weapons, not by Treaty; tho' they must confess they came thither against their Wills, being expell'd their own Country: And if the Romans would accept of their Friendship, if they would allot 'em Land to live in, or permit 'em to keep that which they had obtain'd by the Law of Arms, they might find 'em necessary Allies; for they only submitted to the *Suabians*, to whom even the immortal Gods were not a sufficient Match, but there was not another People under the Sun they were not able to conquer.

To this *Cæsar* answer'd what he thought most convenient, and the Substance of his Speech was to this Effect; That he could not enter into an Alliance with 'em whilst they continu'd in *Gaul*; nor did he think it probable that they, who were not able to maintain their own, should gain Countries by Force from others; that there was not sufficient waste Ground in *Gaul* to contain so numerous a People; but, if they pleas'd, they might find a Welcome amongst the *Ubii*, who would receive 'em into their Country upon his

Cæsar
marches to
find out the
Germans.

The Ger-
man Em-
bassage.

Cæsar's
Answer.

War with
the Ger-
mans.

his Intercession, for they had Deputies at that Instant in his Camp, that came to complain of the Injuries they had receiv'd from the Suabians, and intreat his Assistance against them.

The Embassadors return'd with this Answer to their Countrymen, promising to wait upon Cæsar again in three Days time ; desiring that in the mean while he would not approach with his Army nearer their Confines ; which he refus'd, being inform'd that a considerable Party of their Cavalry but two Days before had pass'd the *Mose*, in order to Forage the Country of the *Ambivariti*, and he suspected their Design was only to gain time 'till their Party return'd.

Description of the Mose. The Mose rises from the Mountains of Vause in the Country of Langres, and after a long Course, receiving the River Vahal, a small Branch of the Rhine ; within its Banks, it forms the Isle of Holland, and about eighteen Miles below that, discharges it self into the Sea. But the

Mons Vog-
sius.

Description of the Rhine.

Mediom-
atrici, Triboc-
ci.

Rhine has its Rise in the Territories of the Lepontii, who inhabit the Alps, and after a long Journey thro' Constance, Switzerland, Franche-comte, the Country of Metz, Strasburg and Treves, coming near the Sea, is divided into several Branches, which form as many considerable Islands, most of 'em inhabited by a barbarous and Savage People, who are reported to feed only on Fish, and wild Fowls Eggs, from whence by divers Channels it discharges it self into the Ocean.

A second
Embassage
from the
Germans.

By the Time the Embassadors had appointed for their Return, Cæsar being arriv'd within twelve Miles of the Enemy, they press'd him very earnestly to march no farther, or at least to send his Cavalry Orders, who were gone before the rest of the Army, not to engage the Germans ; and that he would agree to a Truce, 'till they could send Deputies to the *Ubi*, whose entertainment they would gladly accept of, provided their Noblemen and Senators would oblige themselves by Oath, to let 'em live peaceably amongst 'em ; nor would they desire above three Days time to compleat the Negotiation in.

Cæsar believ'd this was only an Artifice to procrastinate the Matter for three Days longer, 'till the Return of their Cavalry ; however he promis'd not to come nearer than within four Miles of their Camp, to a convenient Place for Water, and order'd a considerable Number of 'em to attend him the Day after, that he might know their Demands ; in the mean time he sent Orders

Orders to the Officers of the Horse not to provoke the Enemy; and in case they should be attack'd themselves, only to maintain their Ground 'till he came up to their Assistance.

War with the Germans.


CHAP. IV.

SO soon as the *Germans* saw our Horse, tho' we had 5000 and they not above 800, (the Party which had cross'd the *Mose* to forage not being yet return'd) they fell upon our Men, who expected no Acts of Hostility from 'em, because the Embassadors who agreed on a Truce for a Day, had not long before left our Camp; their Attack was so violent, that they put our Troops in Disorder, and when they perceiv'd we began to rally, dismounting according to the Custom of the *Germans*, they wounded our Horses in the Belly, threw down several of their Riders, and put the rest to Flight; who were so dreadfully frightened, that they never look'd behind 'em 'till they were come within view of our Army. In this Skirmish we lost 74 Men, among which Number fell *Piso* the *Gascoign*, a Man of Courage equal to his noble Birth, whose Grandfather had formerly been a King in his own Country, and honour'd by the Senate and People of Rome with the Title of Friend: Endeavouring to rescue his Brother, he lost his Horse, and defended himself bravely on Foot, 'till being surrounded by the Enemy, and spent with many Wounds he at last expir'd; which his Brother perceiving, who was then out of Danger, return'd to the Fight, spur'd his Horse in amongst the *Germans*, and follow'd him to the other World, without being able to revenge his Death.

The Germans after a Truce attack the Roman Cavalry.

The Death of Piso and his Brother.

After this Battel, *Caesar* judg'd it not convenient either to give their Embassadors Audience, or accept of any Conditions from a People who had demanded a Truce with a Design to break it; and thinking it Madness to be delay'd 'till their Cavalry return'd, (especially since the *Gauls* were of so fickle a Temper; that the *Germans* had already gain'd a considerable Reputation amongst 'em by this small Success;) he resolv'd not to allow 'em time to reflect on it; and therefore having sent for the General Officers, acquainted 'em that he design'd to engage the Enemy without further Delay.

War with
the Ger-
mans.

C H A P. V.

T H E next Day there fell out a very lucky Accident for the *Romans* ; all the *German* Princes and Nobility, making use of their former Diffimulation, came to our Camp, under Pretence of excusing themselves for what had happen'd the Day before, in relation to the Engagement with our Cavalry, contrary to the Truce granted at their Request, and withal to desire the same might be continu'd : *Cæsar*, being mightily pleas'd with this Opportunity, gave Orders they should all be secur'd, and at the same time resolv'd to march directly to their Camp ; he commanded the Cavalry, who were daunted with the Defeat they receiv'd the Day before, to follow after the Legions ; then having drawn the Army up into three Lines, he quickly pass'd the eight Miles which were betwixt us and the *Germans*, and fell upon 'em before they dream'd of his coming. The Enemy were so surpris'd at our sudden Arrival, so confus'd for want of their Officers, that they knew not whether they had better draw out their Forces, defend their Camp, or endeavour to save themselves by Flight. Their Fear and Disorder was no sooner perceiv'd by the *Roman* Soldiers, but remembering their former Treachery, they forc'd their Camp, where at first they met with some small Resistance from such as had time to repair to their Arms, who engag'd 'em at their Carriages, whilst the Women and Children from all Sides (for the *Germans* had brought their whole Families and Effects cross the *Rhine* with 'em) endeavour'd to make their Escape, but *Cæsar* lent the Horse to pursue 'em.

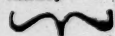
Cæsar at-
tacks the
German
Camp.

The Ger-
mans routed.

The *Germans*, hearing a Noise behind 'em, turn'd about, and saw their Wives and Children put to the Sword ; whereupon throwing down their Arms, and deserting their Colours, they ran away from the Camp, and arriving at the River side where the *Mose* and *Rhine* begin to flow in one Channel, they who had escap'd the Fury of the Battel, flung themselves into the Water, where all of 'em were drown'd, either by their own Fear, Weariness, or the Strength of the Stream. After this Dispute, the *Romans* return'd to their Camp without the Loss of a Man, and with very few wounded, tho' the Number of the *Germans*, computing their Women and Children, amounted to 430000. The Battel being over, *Cæsar* gave those whom he had detain'd in
his

his Camp free Leave to depart ; but being apprehensive of the Natives Revenge for the Injuries they had done 'em, they desir'd rather to stay in our Army, than fall into the Hands of the Gauls, which they did by Cæsar's Permission.

War with
the Ger-
mans.



C H A P. VI.

THE War with the Natives of *Zutphen* and *Hesse* being thus concluded, *Cæsar* resolv'd for several Reasons to cross the *Rhine* ; one of the chief Motives that induc'd him to it was, his observing how ready the *Germans* were on every Occasion to come into *Gaul* ; wherefore he hop'd when they perceiv'd the *Romans* were able to transport an Army cross that River as well as themselves, they would be more cautious how they left their own Country expos'd for the future ; another thing was, the Enemy's Cavalry, who having cross'd the *Mose* to forage, were absent when their Countrymen were defeated, and upon Intelligence of the Victory had retir'd into the Confines of the *Sicambri*, where they found a Reception ; and when *Cæsar* sent to demand 'em, because they had been in Arms against him and the Gauls, the People made Answer, *That the Rhine bounded the Extent of the Roman Empire, and if he thought it unjust for the Germans to pass into Gaul, they knew no Reason that he should assume an Authority on their side the River.* Besides the *Ubii*, who were the only People cross the *Rhine*, that had sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, enter'd into an Alliance, and deliver'd Hostages, earnestly desir'd him to assist 'em against the Oppressions of the *Suabians* ; and if the publick Affairs would not permit him to go in Person, that he would only send his Army into *Germany*, they would desire no greater Assistance or Encouragement ; for so considerable was the Reputation which the *Romans* had acquir'd by defeating *Ariovistus*, and their late Succets, that if they appear'd in Defence of the *Ubii*, if they own'd 'em for their Allies, their Name alone would be sufficient to defend 'em from the Insults of the remotest *Germans* ; and they oblig'd themselves to furnish him with a sufficient Quantity of Transport-Vessels.

The Answer
of the *Sicam-
bri* to *Cæ-
sar's* De-
mand.

For these Reasons *Cæsar* resolv'd to cross the *Rhine*, but he thought it neither safe to transport his Army in Ships, nor agreeable to his Character and the Dignity of the *Roman Empire* ; wherefore tho' he found it very

War with
the Ger-
mans.

The Descrip-
tion of Cæ-
sar's Bridge
cross the
Rhine.

difficult to lay a Bridge cros so broad, so deep and rapid a River, yet he resolv'd not to go into Germany any other way, and thus he contriv'd to do it.

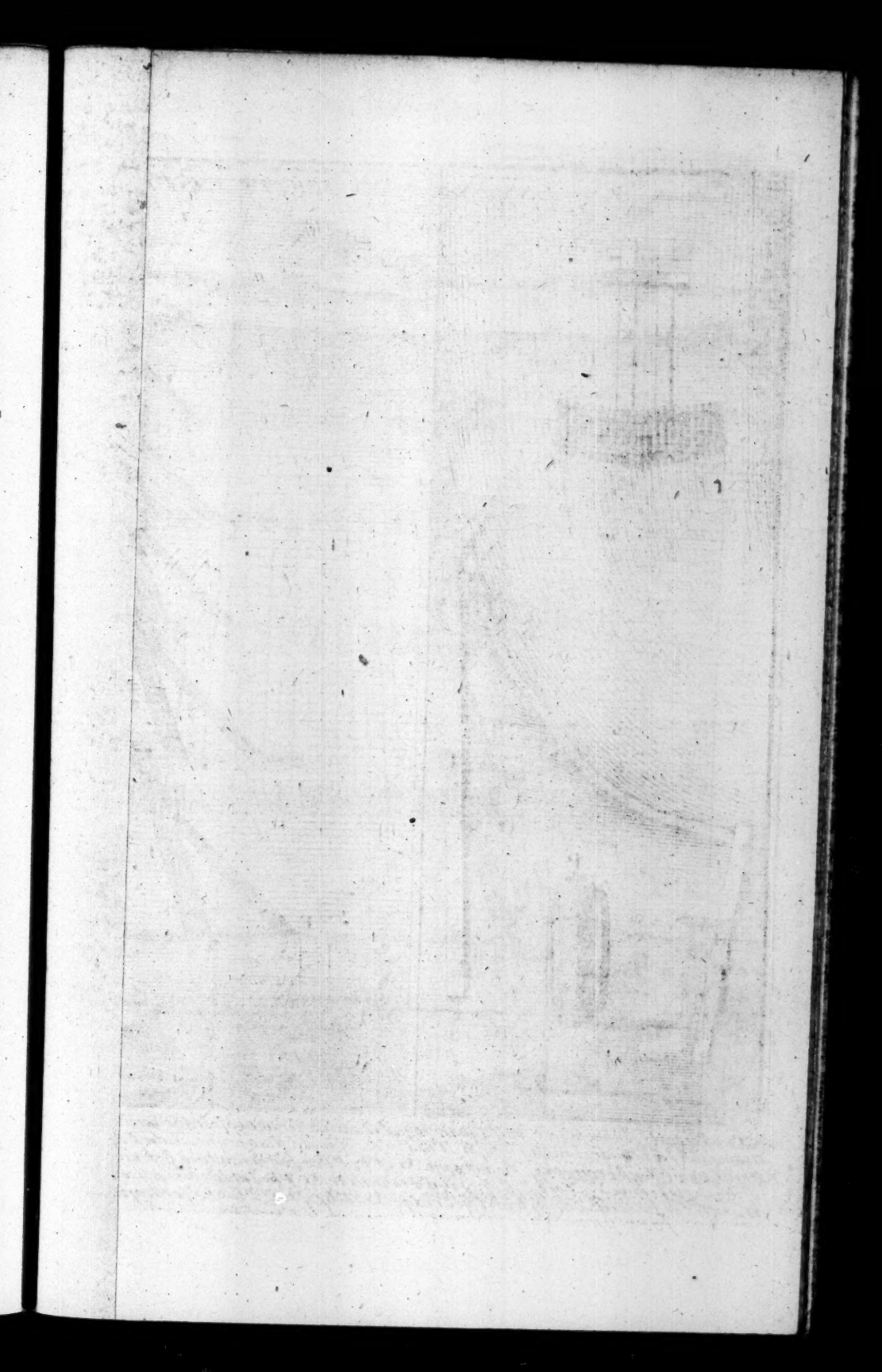
Having joyn'd two Pieces of Timber, a Foot and a half Square, by Mortices that kept 'em at two Foot distance from each other, he cut 'em to a convenient Length for that part of the River he design'd 'em for; then making 'em sharp at the End caus'd 'em to be let down into the Water by Engines, and driven into the Bottom with wooden Mallets, not perpendicularly, but sloping, in compliance with the Stream: Directly opposite to these, he plac'd two other Stakes, join'd just after the same manner, and drove 'em into the Ground forty Foot distant from the other at the Bottom, causing their Tops to incline towards the Stream, as the others had declin'd from it. These double Stakes, thus fix'd, he jointed at the Top by a cross Beam of two Foot square, fasten'd by two Pegs, and ty'd with Cords at either End, which prevented 'em from bending nearer one another, and made the Work of so secure a Nature, that the Fierceness of the Stream encreas'd the Firmness of the Bridge: Having observ'd the same Method quite over the River, he cover'd the cross Beams with Planks and Hurdles; then, having supported the Arches of his Bridge below with Buttresses driven obliquely into the Water, and fix'd at Top to the main Pillars, so as to sustain 'em against the Force of the Current; he likewise drove in other Piles at a moderate Distance above the Bridge, to save off Trunks of Trees, and such Vessels as the Enemy should send down the River to destroy the Work.

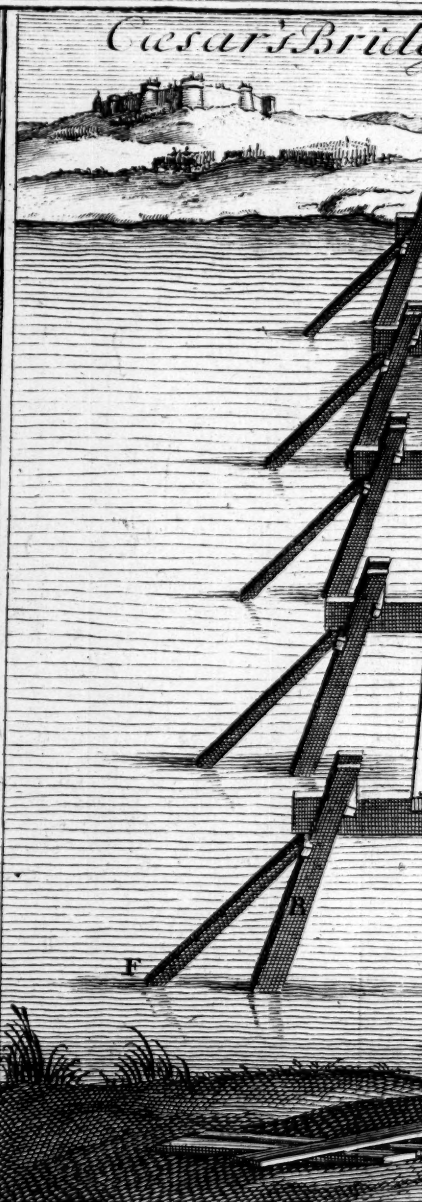
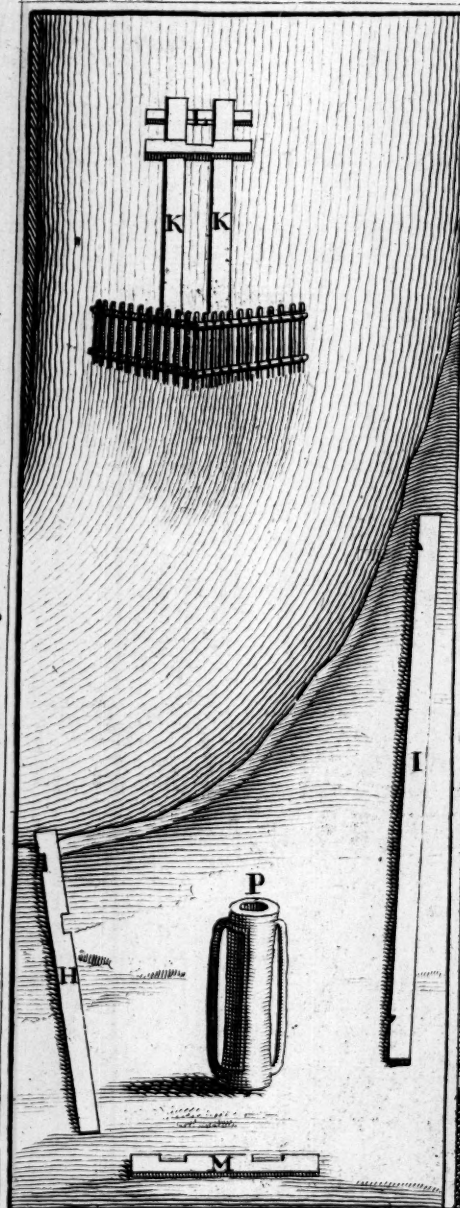
Cæsar crosses
the Rhine.

From the time that Materials began to be brought for the Work, 'till the entire Bridge was finish'd, was no more than ten Days; when Cæsar having left a strong Garrison on both sides the River, march'd into the Confines of the *Sicambri*: During this Expedition Embassadors came to him from most Places thereabouts, to desire a Peace, and court the Alliance of the Romans, to whom he return'd civil Answers, demanding Hostages for their Fidelity.

CHAP. VI.

THE Moment the *Sicambri* were inform'd that the Romans were building a Bridge, by Advice of those of *Zutphen* and *Hesse*, who had taken Shelter amongst 'em, they prepar'd for Flight, and forsaking their Country, convey'd themselves with their Effects into the Neighbouring

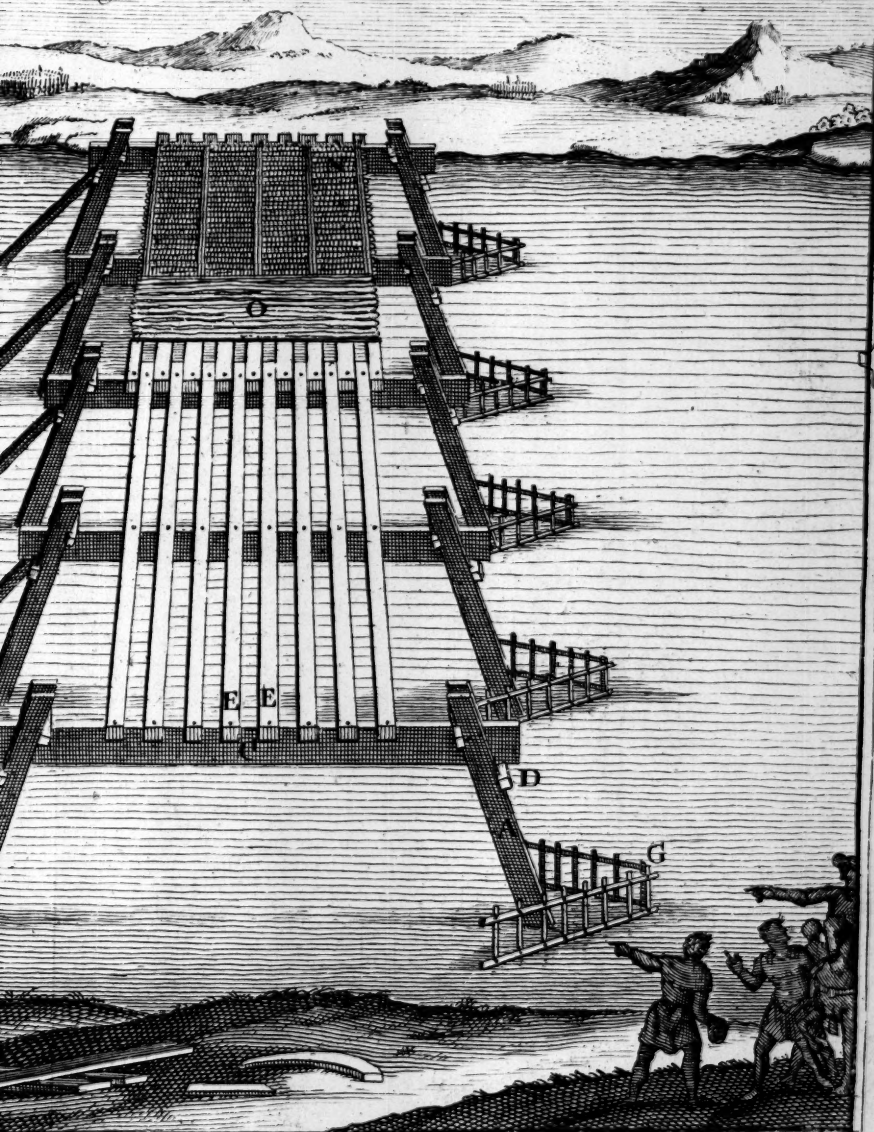




A. Two Peices of timber a foot & half square, joynd to each other at two foot distance. B. Two Beams two foot square laid over em. D. The Peices of wood that joynted the Pillars. E. Piles against y^e strength of the stream. G. The Piles for defending y^e Bridge against the Cross beams. K. Two Pillars joynd together. L. The little cross peices of wood. M. Hurdles or jaccines that floord y^e bridge. O. The Cross Planks for laying the

Bridge cross the Rhine.

pag 58



ance. B. Two others opposite to them at forty foot distance inclining at the Top. C. The
 the Pillars E. The joynes for laying of floor on. F. The Buttrices to support of main
 Bridge ag^t Ships and logs. H. The forme of a single Pillar. I. The forme of one
 peices of wood that joyne dem two foot long. M. One of of same kind single. N. The
 laying the hurdles on. P. The forme of one of of wooden Mallets or drivers.

various

bouring Woods: Wherefore *Cæsar*, having made a short Stay in their Country, burnt their Towns and Buildings, and cut down their Corn, march'd to the Territories of the *Ubi*, having promis'd to assist 'em against the *Suabians*: So loon as he arriv'd in their Country they inform'd him, that when the *Suabians* heard he was building a Bridge, having call'd a Council, according to the Custom of their Country, they dispatch'd Orders to all Parts of their Nation, commanding the Natives to forsake their Towns, to convey their Wives, Children and Effects into the Woods, and that all who were able to bear Arms should meet at the general Rendezvous in the midst of their Country, where they resolv'd to expect the *Romans*, and give 'em Battel; which *Cæsar* understanding, after he had accomplish'd those Designs that led him into *Germany*, when he had aw'd the Natives, taken Vengeance on the *Sicambri*, and set the *Ubi* at Liberty, having only spent eighteen Days beyond the *Rhine*, perform'd enough for his own Credit, and the Service of the Republick, he return'd again to *Gaul*, and broke down his Bridge.

War with
the Germans.

Cæsar re-
turns to
Gaul.

C H A P. VIII.

T H O' the Summer was now almost spent, (for the whole Continent of *Gaul* lying Northward, Winter begins there very early,) yet *Cæsar* resolv'd to make a Voyage to *England*, because he had been inform'd, in all the Wars of *Gaul*, the Enemy had receiv'd considerable Supplies from thence; nor that he expected the time of Year would permit him to finish the War, but he thought 'twould be worth his while to make an Expedition thither only to view the Island, to learn the Nature of the Inhabitants, to be acquainted with their Coasts, their Ports and Creeks, which the *Gauls* were almost intire Strangers to; for they were seldom visited by any but Merchants, who were unacquainted with all the Country except their Coasts, and those Parts which were opposite to *Gaul*: Wherefore he summon'd a Council of Merchants from all Parts, who could neither inform him what Extent the Island was of, what Nations, and how powerful the Inhabitants were, how well they understood the Art of War, what Customs they were govern'd by, nor how considerable a Navy their Ports were capable of receiving.

Cæsar's Ex-
pedition into
England.

War with
the English.

C H A P. IX.

Some of the
English send
Embassadors
to Cæsar in
Gaul,

FOR this Reason he thought it convenient to send out *C. Volusenus* with a Gally, to discover what he could, and immediately return with Intelligence before he embark'd himself: He in the mean time march'd to *Teroüenne*, from whence lay the shortest Cut to *England*; and there he order'd several Vessels from the neighbouring Ports, together with the Navy he had built the Year before for his Expedition against the *Vannes*, to attend him. Whilst these Preparations were going forward, several Provinces in *England*, who had Intelligence of the Matter from Merchants that frequented their Coasts, sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, to let him know how willing they were to submit to the *Roman* Empire, and deliver Hostages for their Fidelity: To these he gave a favourable Audience; and, having encourag'd 'em to adhere to their Agreement by Promises of considerable Rewards, sent 'em back again to their own Country; ordering *Comius* to go along with 'em, a Man of considerable Interest in *England*, whom he formerly made King of *Arras*, for his extraordinary Wisdom, Virtue and Fidelity: To him he gave Instructions to visit as many States as he could, and persuade 'em to accept of an Alliance with the *Romans*, for *Cæsar* himself would, in a short time, land in their Country.

Volusenus, in the mean time, having made what Discoveries he could of the Country, for he durst not venture himself ashore with so barbarous an Enemy, after five Days Cruising, return'd, and acquainted *Cæsar*, with all he had seen. *Cæsar* stay'd in these Parts 'till his Navy was fitted out, during which time the *Teroüennois* sent Embassadors to him, desiring he would please to pardon their former Transgressions, for they were a Savage unpolish'd People, and wholly unacquainted with the *Roman* Customs, otherwise they had not made War upon 'em; but for the future they would demonstrate how ready they were to obey his Commands: *Cæsar*, being desirous to leave no Enemies behind him, to avoid entring into a new War so late in the Season, and unwilling to neglect his *English* Expedition for such Trifles, having first receiv'd Hostages for 'em, took 'em into his Favour. He had prepar'd eighty Transport Vessels, which he thought sufficient

cient to carry over his Legions, he distributed his Gallies to the Questor, Lieutenant-Generals and Commanders of the Horse, and eighteen Transports which were Wind-bound at a certain Port about eight Miles off, he appointed for the Service of his Cavalry; then committed those Forces which he left behind, to the Care of *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, and *L. Arunculeius Cotta*, whom he order'd to visit the Confines of *Guelders*, and reduce those Parts of *Terouenne* which had not yet submitted; to Lieutenant-General *P. Sulp. Rufus* he gave the Charge of the Port where he embark'd, with a strong Garrison to maintain it.

War with
the English.

C H A P. X.

THUS having dispatch'd the necessary Orders, the Wind offering fair, he hoisted Sail about One in the Morning, commanding the Cavalry to embark at that Port where the Vessels lay ready to receive them, and follow him; which Orders were not executed so readily as they ought to have been; but he himself arriv'd on the *English* Coasts with his Squadron by ten of the Clock the same Morning, where he saw all the Cliffs cover'd by the Enemy in Arms: Such was the Nature of the Place, that the *English* might cast their Darts with great Advantage from the impending Hills; wherefore not thinking it convenient to land there, he cast Anchor, and waited for the coming up of the rest of his Fleet 'till three in the Afternoon. In the mean time having call'd the Lieutenants and Tribunes to a Council of War, he acquainted 'em with the Intelligence he had receiv'd from *Volusenus*, and gave 'em such Orders as he thought proper for the Occasion, putting 'em in mind how necessary it was in Military Discipline that the Army should move at the General's Nod to a Minute, especially in Sea Affairs which were so quick and unstable: Then breaking up the Council, whilst the Wind and Tide stood fair, he gave 'em the Sign for weighing Anchor, and having sail'd about eight Miles farther, arriv'd at a Plain and open Shore.

Caesar em-
barks for
England.

The *English* being appriz'd of *Caesar's* Design, sent their Cavalry and Chariots before, which they frequently make use of on such Occasions; and follow'd after with the rest of their Army, in order to oppose our Landing: We found it very difficult to get to Land for many Reasons, for our Ships being tall, requir'd a considerable

War with
the English.

Depth of Water ; and our Soldiers, whilst their Hands were employ'd and loaden with heavy Armour, were at the same time to encounter the Waves and the Enemy, in a Place they were not acquainted with : Whereas the *English*, either standing upon dry Land, or wading a little Way in the Water in those Places they knew to be shallow, having the free Use of all their Limbs, could boldly cast their Darts, and spur their Horses forward, who were inur'd to that kind of Combat ; which Disadvantage so discourag'd the *Romans*, who were Strangers at this way of Fighting, they did not appear so chearful, so eager to engage the Enemy, as in their former Conflicts on dry Land.

The Standard-bearer
of the tenth
Legion leads
into the Water,
the rest
follow his
Example.

Which *Cæsar* perceiving, gave Orders the Gallies (a nimble sort of Shipping the Enemy had never seen) should advance a little before the rest of the Navy, and row along with their Broad-sides towards the Shore, that they might more conveniently force the *English* to retire from the Water side, by their Slings, Engines and Arrows, which did the *Romans* considerable Service ; for the *English* being surpris'd at the Make of our Gallies, the Motion of our Oars and Engines, began to give Ground. But the Standard-bearer of the tenth Legion, perceiving our Men were so unwilling to venture into the Sea, having first invok'd the Gods for Success, cry'd out aloud, *My Fellow-Soldiers, unless you will forsake your Eagle, and suffer it to fall into the Hands of the Enemy. Advance ; for my part, I am resolv'd to perform my Duty to the Commonwealth and my Emperor :* Which being said, he immediately leap'd over Board, and advanc'd the Eagle towards the *English* ; whereupon the Soldiers, encouraging each other, to prevent so signal a Disgrace, follow'd his Example ; which those in the next Ships perceiving, did the like, and press'd forward to engage the Enemy.

The Romans
at first lea-
ten back
from the
shore.

The Conflict was sharply maintain'd on both Sides, tho' the *Romans*, not being able either to keep their Ranks, obtain firm footing, or follow their particular Standards, leaping out of several Ships, and joining the first Ensign they met with, were in mighty Confusion : But the *English*, who were well acquainted with the Shallows, when they saw us descend in small Numbers from our Ships, spurring their Horses into the Water, set upon our Men incumber'd and unprepar'd to receive 'em ; and some surrounded us with their Numbers in one Place, whilst others flank'd us where we lay most open

open in another. Which *Cæsar* observing, he caus'd the long Boats and smaller Vessels to be mann'd, and, where Occasion requir'd, sent 'em to assist their Fellows. Thus our foremost Ranks, having gain'd dry Footing, were follow'd by the rest of the Army, and charging the Enemy briskly put 'em to Flight, but were not able to pursue, or take the Island that time, because we had no Cavalry, which was the only thing wanting to compleat *Cæsar's* wonted Success.

War with the English.

The Romans gain the Shore, and rout the English.

The Enemy being defeated, so soon as they had escap'd beyond the Reach of Danger, sent Embassadors to *Cæsar* to desire a Peace, promising to deliver Hostages for their entire Submission: And with these Embassadors came *Comius* of *Arras*, whom *Cæsar* formerly sent into *Britain*, where he had been imprison'd so soon as he landed with the Emperor's Commands, but set at Liberty again after the Battel: They endeavour'd to excuse what they had done, by laying the Blame upon the Mob; and entreating him to forgive a Fault of Ignorance, but not of Malice. *Cæsar* at first reprimanded 'em for their Breach of Faith, that after they had voluntarily sent Embassadors to him into *Gaul*, to desire a Peace, and deliver'd Hostages of their own Accord, they should without any Reason make War upon him; which they excus'd by their Ignorance, and he forgave, then demanded Hostages for their future Carriage, part whereof they deliver'd immediately, and with the rest, who liv'd at some Distance, they promis'd to return in a few Days after: In the mean time, having disbanded their Men, and dispers'd 'em into their several Countries, the Princes from all Parts came to deliver up themselves and their Estates to *Cæsar's* Disposal.

The English send Embassadors to desire a Peace,

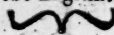
which they obtain'd an delivery of Hostages.

C H A P. XI.

A P E A C E being thus concluded, within four Days after *Cæsar's* Arrival in *England*, the eighteen Transports appointed for the Cavalry, put out to Sea with a gentle Gale, but when they were already arriv'd within View of the *Roman* Camp, so sudden a Storm arose that they were all dispers'd; some return'd to the Port from whence they came, whilst others were thrown up on the lower End of the Island towards the West, where they endeavour'd to cast Anchor, but so much Water came into 'em, that they were oblig'd a second time to com-

A violent Storm disperses the Ships that brought the Cavalry, and the other Roman Vessels on the Coasts of Britain.

War with
the English.



commit themselves to the Mercy of the Waves, and make the best of their Way for *Gaul*.

The same Night it being full Moon, at which time the Tides are highest, an Observation our Mariners were Strangers to, the Gallies, that after the Men were landed, had been haul'd up toward the Shore, were fill'd with the Waves, and the Vessels of Burthen which rid at Anchor at the same Instant, toss'd by the Tempest, nor was it possible for us to attempt their Preservation; thus several of our Ships were destroy'd, and the rest having lost their Cables, Anchors and Tackle, were render'd wholly useless, which was a great Affliction to the whole Army; for they had no other Vessels to carry 'em back again, had no Materials to mend their own with, and they knew very well they must of necessity take up their Winter-quarters in *Gaul*, because there was no Corn nor Provision to be had in *England*.

Upon this
News the
English
break the
Peace.

The Princes of *England*, who were assembled to perform their Agreement with *Cæsar*, having Notice of this, understanding the *Romans* had neither Cavalry, Ships nor Provision, and computing the Number of our Men from the Smalness of our Camp, which was then narrower than usual, because *Cæsar* had made the Legions leave their heavy Baggage behind 'em, resolv'd to rebel, to intercept our Convoys, and delay us 'till Winter; then having either defeated us, or prevented our Return, they hop'd to deter others, by our Example, from invading *England* for the future: Wherefore, having enter'd into a new Conspiracy, they began by Degrees to quit our Camp, and privately to lift their disbanded Troops again.

C H A P. XII.

Cæsar visits
his Navy.

BUT *Cæsar*, tho' he knew nothing of their Design, yet suspecting an Alteration upon the Loss of his Shipping, by their Delay in the Delivery of their Hostages, prepar'd for all Events; causing Provisions to be brought into his Camp every Day from the Country round about, and giving Order, that those Ships which had receiv'd the least Damage by the Tempest, should be refitted and mended with the Beaks and Timber, the Remainder of those that had been shatter'd to pieces; he sent likewise to *Gaul* for such Materials as he had Occasion for, which were so well apply'd by the Industry of his Soldiers, that he only lost twelve Ships, and made the rest fit for Service again.

In

In the mean time the seventh Legion, whose Turn it was, went out to forage; as part were employ'd in the Field, and the rest in carrying Corn between them and the Army, not in the least suspecting any Acts of Hostility, the Out-guards gave *Cæsar* Notice, that they observ'd a greater Dust than usual that way which the Legions went: Whereupon, suspecting the *English* had revolted, as he had afterwards found they had, taking along with him the Cohorts that were plac'd for an advanc'd Guard, he commanded two others to supply their Room, all the rest to repair to their Arms, and follow him as fast as they could. He had not march'd many Paces from his Camp, before he saw his Foragers over-charg'd by the Enemy, drove into a small Compass, and expos'd to the *English* Darts on every Side: For the Enemy, knowing there was only one Field left which had not been foraged, concluded we must of necessity come thither; wherefore having hid themselves the Night before in the Woods there, they staid to expect us; and setting upon our Men whilst they were busie in Reaping, and had laid down their Arms, kill'd some of 'em, put the rest in Disorder, and then surrounded 'em with their Horse and Chariots.

War with the English.

The English set upon the Roman Foragers.

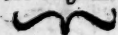
This was the Custom the *English* us'd in fighting with their Chariots; Having driven to all Parts of the Enemy's Army, and distributed their Darts to the best Advantage, they frequently put the foremost Ranks in Disorder only with the Noise of their Wheels and Horses; then forcing their Way into the midst of the Cavalry, forsook their Chariots and fought on Foot, performing at the same Instant, the part of nimble Horsemen, and that of stable Foot: Their Drivers in the mean while, riding a little way out of the Battel, plac'd themselves so conveniently, that if their Party were too much oppress'd by the Enemy, they might safely retreat to them again. So expert were they at this Exercise by perpetual Practice, that they could stay their Horses upon a full Stretch, even in the midst of a Descent, stop short and turn, run upon the Pole, rest on the Harness, and throw themselves with great Dexterity into their Chariots.

The English manner of fighting in their Chariots.

The Romans being disorder'd by this new kind of Fight, *Cæsar* came very opportunely to their Aid; for upon his Arrival the *English* made a Stand, and our Men began to forget their Fears; however not thinking it convenient to engage the Enemy at that time, he maintain'd his Ground for a while, then retreated with the

Cæsar comes to the Assistance of his Foragers.

War with
the English.



the Legions to his Camp; and the Enemy likewise whilst we were otherwise employ'd, made their Escape. The continual Rains and Tempests, which follow'd after, several Days successively, kept the *Romans* in their Camp, and the *English* from Fighting.

C H A P. XIII.

BUT the Enemy were not idle in the mean while, for they dispatch'd Couriers to all Parts of the Island, to inform the People how small an Army the *Romans* had, how considerable a Booty they might obtain, and how glorious an Opportunity offer'd, to make themselves free for ever, if they would but force the *Roman* Camp; by which means having immediately rais'd great Numbers of Horse and Foot, they came to force our Trenches.

The English
came to at-
tack the Ro-
man Camp;
a second
Battel, are
routed.

Now tho' *Cæsar* foresaw the Enemy, in case they were routed, would escape the Danger by Flight, yet having got thirty Horse, part of *Comius's* Retinue, he drew his Legions up in Order of Battel before the Camp; and having engag'd the *English*, who were not able to sustain the Fury of our Soldiers, he immediately put 'em to Flight, pursu'd 'till his Soldiers were out of Breath, and having made a considerable Slaughter, burnt their Towns and Buildings for many Miles about, then return'd to his Camp again, where he receiv'd Embassadors the same Day from the Enemy, to desire a Peace.

They sue
again for
Peace, which
is granted.

Cæsar re-
turns to
Gaul.

Whereupon he commanded 'em to send him double the Number of Hostages he formerly requir'd, into *Gaul*; and because the Autumnal Equinox approach'd, not thinking it safe to take a Winter Voyage in his crazy Vessels, so soon as the Wind stood fair for *Gaul*, which was about Midnight, he weigh'd Anchor, and arriv'd safe at the Port where he embark'd with all his Fleet, except two Transports, which could not keep up with the rest, and were driven into a Haven something lower in the Country.

In these two Vessels were about 300 Soldiers, who so soon as they landed endeavour'd to reach their Camp; but the *Teroüennois*, whom *Cæsar* had left in a peaceable Condition before he sail'd for *England*, spurr'd on by the Hopes of Plunder, at first surrounded our Men in small Numbers, and commanded 'em on pain of Death to deliver their Arms; but the *Romans* casting themselves into an Orb, instead of surrendering, bravely maintain'd

maintain'd their Ground, whereupon about 6000 of the Enemy, hearing the Noise, came in to the Assistance of their Countrymen. *Cæsar*, having Intelligence of this, detach'd all the Cavalry in his Army to their Assistance: In the mean time the *Romans* manfully sustain'd the Enemy's Charge, fought with their unequal Numbers four Hours together, and having receiv'd but few Wounds themselves, had made a considerable Slaughter amongst the Assailants: But the Moment our Horse appear'd in view, the *Teroüennois* threw down their Arms, and betook themselves to Flight, yet notwithstanding many of 'em lost their Lives.

C H A P. XIV.

T H E next Day *Cæsar* dispatch'd Lieutenant *T. Labienus*, with the Legions he brought back from *England*, against the Rebels, who being depriv'd by the Drought of the Benefit of those Marshes, where they had the Year before absconded, almost all of 'em fell into his Power. But the Lieutenant *Q. Titurius* and *L. Cotta*, who had been sent into the Country of *Guelders*, return'd without doing any other Execution but cutting up their Corn, laying their Fields waste, and burning their Towns; for the Enemy had secur'd their Persons in the Woods. *Cæsar* took up his Quarters this Winter in *Belgium*, where he receiv'd Hostages only from two of the Provinces in *England*, the rest neglecting their Promise. So soon as the Senate were inform'd by *Cæsar's* Letters of his Exploits, they decreed a general Thanksgiving for twenty Days successively.

Labienus marches against the Teroüennois; lays their Country waste.

C. J. Cæsar's

COMMENTARY

OF HIS

W A R

I N

G A U L.

The Fifth Book.

Cæsar builds a considerable Navy; He goes to Illyricum; His second Expedition into England; The Gauls revolt; Sabinus and Cotta defeated; Cicero besieged, but reliev'd.

C H A P. I.

Cæsar gives Orders for building of a Navy.

DURING the Consulat of *L. Domitius* and *Ap. Claudius*, *Cæsar* leaving his Winter-quarters to go into *Italy*, according to his usual Custom, gave Orders to his Lieutenants, to whom he had committed the Charge of his Legions, that they should build as many Ships against his Return as they could, and refit the old Vessels; commanding them to make the Decks something lower than usual in the Mediterranean, that the Soldiers might embark or get on Shore with greater Ease; because he knew the Ebbing of the Tide in the

Bri-

British Seas sometimes left but a very inconsiderable Depth of Water near the Land : That there might be convenience for his Horses, he order'd they should build 'em broader than ordinary, and contrive 'em all for Oars, to which the Lowness of the Decks contributed : He sent for such Materials as were necessary to equip 'em from *Spain* ; and having held the Diet of *Lombardy*, went immediately to *Illyricum*, because he had Intelligence that the *Pirustæ* had made several Inroads into the Frontiers. So soon as he arriv'd there, he began to levy an Army, and appointed the Soldiers a general Rendezvous ; which the *Pirustæ* being inform'd of immediately sent Embassadors, to assure him what had been done was contrary to the publick Consent, and that they were ready to make him such Satisfaction as he should require. *Cæsar* having given 'em Audience, demanded Hostages to be deliver'd by a certain Day, or War and Ruin should ensue : They obey'd his Commands ; whereupon he appointed Arbitrators to determine the Differences between the two Countries, and set a Value on the Damage.

Preparations for a second Expedition into England.

He goes to Illyricum ; the Pirustæ submit.

This Affair being dispatch'd, and Agreement made between the injur'd and the Offenders, he return'd again to *Lombardy*, and from thence to his Army : He made a Review of all their Quarters, and, notwithstanding the Scarcity of Materials, found the Industry of his Soldiers had already built about six hundred such Ships as he had order'd, and twenty eight Gallies, which were ready to launch within a few Days : Having applauded the Application of his Soldiers and their Supervisors, he gave 'em such Orders as he thought convenient, and commanded they should all meet him at * *Boloign*, from whence he thought lay the shortest Cut to *England*, it being but about thirty Miles there from Land to Land.

* Portus Itinus according to Lloyd and Ortelinus, is Calais ; but Scaliger and Sanson prove to be Boloign, with whom agree Cluver and Euno.

CHAP. II.

HE left as many Soldiers as he thought necessary for this Purpose ; then took his March with four Legions and 800 Horse into the Country of *Treves*, because they had neither appear'd at the General Convocation of the States, nor submitted to the Commonwealth, and were reported to solicit Assistance from the *Germans* beyond the *Rhine*.

Cæsar marches into the Country of *Treves*, to prevent a Rebellion.

This

Preparati-
ons for a se-
cond Expedi-
tion into
England.

Cingetorix
and Indutio-
marus.

This Country is very powerful in infantry ; but the best stor'd with Cavalry of any in *Gaul* ; and, as we have already shewn, joins to the River *Rhine* : It happen'd that *Indutiomarus* and *Cingetorix* were disputing about this time for the Superiority ; the latter being inform'd of *Cæsar's* Approach, came over to him, promising that neither he nor any of his Party would ever be deficient in the Performance of their Duty or Alliance with the People of *Rome* ; and discover'd the Practices of his Countrymen.

Indutioma-
rus's politick
Embassy.

Indutiomarus, on the other hand, began to levy what Numbers of Horse and Foot he could, and having secur'd such Persons, whose Age made them incapable of bearing Arms, in the large Forest of *Arden*, (which, beginning at the River *Rhine*, extends thro' the midst of the Country of *Treves*, as far as the Borders of *Rheims*) resolv'd to engage in a War : But finding himself deserted by several of the Nobility, who out of Affection to *Cingetorix*, or Fear of our approaching Army, had come over to *Cæsar*, (each to solicit his own Pardon, since they were not able to do it for their Country) apprehending he should shortly be forsaken by all, sent an Embassy to *Cæsar*, to acquaint him, *That he had been one of the foremost to pay his Duty, but that he thought himself oblig'd to stay at home, lest the giddy Mob, in the Absence of the Nobility, should have revolted from their Duty ; but the whole Country was now at his Command ; and if Cæsar pleas'd, he would wait upon him at his Camp, to lay his own and Country's Fortune at his Feet.*

Tho' *Cæsar* knew the Occasion of this Speech, and what Reasons had induc'd him to change his former Resolution ; yet that he might not be oblig'd to spend the whole Summer in *Treves*, after he had prepar'd all things for his *English* Expedition ; he commanded *Indutiomarus* to bring 200 Hostages along with him, which he perform'd, bringing his own Son and nearest Relations, who had been demanded, amongst the Number : Whereupon *Cæsar* encourag'd him to continue firm in his Duty to the *Romans* ; not forgetting to send for all the Noblemen of *Treves*, and reconcile 'em one after another, to *Cingetorix* ; which he did as well on the account of his Deserts, as for his own Sake, because he knew the Man, who had given such signal Proofs of his Affection, would employ his Interest at home to *Cæsar's* Advantage : *Indutiomarus* was not a little disturb'd to find his Authority thus diminish'd among his Countrymen,

men, and if he was our Enemy before, this Occasion increas'd his ancient Malice.

Having settled Affairs in *Treves*, he march'd his Legions to *Boloign*, where he was inform'd, that the forty Ships which had been built amongst the *Meldæ*, were driven back again by a Storm to the Port from whence they set out; but all the rest he found ready for Sailing, well rigg'd and fitted out. Thither likewise came all the Cavalry of *Gaul* to meet him, about 4000, with the Noblemen of every Province; of these he design'd to leave but few behind him, whose Fidelity he could depend upon; and take the rest as Hostages along with him to *England*, apprehending some Commotions in *Gaul*, during his Absence.

*Preparations
for a second
Expedition
into England.*

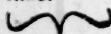
Caesar marches to Boloign, where he had order'd all the Princes of Gaul to meet him.

Amongst the rest was *Dumnorix* of *Autun*, of whom we have formerly spoken; him of all Mankind he resolv'd to carry, because he knew his fickle, proud and aspiring Temper, which join'd with the Authority he had amongst his Countrymen, might have prov'd of fatal Consequence: Besides, *Caesar* had been inform'd by some of the neighbouring Province, (for none of the *Autunois* durst send Embassadors to him, either to oppose or get his Resolution revok'd) that he had conferr'd the Government of *Autun* upon *Dumnorix*. He was the first that desir'd Leave to stay at home, pretending that not being us'd to Sailing he was afraid of the Sea, and that he had a religious Vow to perform, which would oblige him not to leave the Continent: But when he found himself positively deny'd, having no Hopes of obtaining his Demands, he began to solicit each Nobleman of *Gaul* apart, not to leave the Continent; instilling Jealousies into 'em, by insinuating, that *Caesar*, no doubt, had some deep Design in carrying all the Nobility of *Gaul* beyond Sea with him, that because he durst not put 'em to Death in the View of their Countrymen, he would do it when he had transported 'em to *England*: So far did his Arrifice prevail, that he persuaded 'em to enter into a mutual Alliance, and oblige themselves by Oath to consult and act by the General Consent, what conduc'd to the Good of their Country.

Dumnorix persuades the Noblemen of Gaul not to go with Caesar into Britain.

Caesar was inform'd of this Conspiracy from several Hands, yet having a particular Respect for the Country of *Autun*, he resolv'd to try all Methods to restrain and frighten *Dumnorix* from proceeding in his Designs; but finding his Madness continu'd, he thought it high time to provide for the Safety of his own Person, and the Re-

Preparations
for a second
Expedition
into Eng-
land.



Dumnorix
deserts.

Dumnorix's
Obstinacy;
he is kill'd.

publick; wherefore having staid about five and twenty Days in the same Place, for so long did the North-west Wind put a Stop to his Voyage, the Wind coming fair about, he commanded his Horse and Foot to embark: But whilst all People were busie in performing these Orders, *Dumnorix*, without *Cæsar's* Knowledge or Consent, left the Camp with the *Autun* Cavalry, and took his March homeward; which *Cæsar* being inform'd of, immediately put a stop to his Voyage: Laying aside all other Affairs, he detach'd a strong Party of Horse to pursue and bring him back again, with Orders to kill *Dumnorix* if he offer'd to make the least Opposition to his Commands; for he had reason to think the Man, who durst disobey his Orders when present, would not be very loyal in his Absence. The Horse having overtaken him, commanded him to return, which he refus'd, endeavouring to defend himself by Force of Arms, often imploring the Assistance of his Countrymen, crying out that he was a Free Man born in a Free Country; but the *Romans* perform'd their Orders, surrounded and put him to the Sword, whereupon all his Cavalry return'd to *Cæsar*.

C H A P. III.

Cæsar sets
Sail for Eng-
land.

T H I S Affair determin'd, leaving *Labienus* in *Gaul* with three Legions and 2000 Horse, to secure the Port, to provide Corn, and send him Intelligence from time to time how Affairs went in the Continent, that he might know how to accommodate his Counsels to the particular Time and Circumstance; with five Legions, and the same Number of Horse he had left with *Labienus*, about Sun-set *Cæsar* hoisted Sail for *England*, with a gentle South-Wind: About Midnight he was becalm'd, and being driven by the Tide 'till Morning, found the Island on his Left; Then following the Return of the Tide, he row'd 'till he came to the Landing-place which he found so convenient the Year before; and upon this Occasion the Soldiers deserv'd Applause, who labouring without Intermission at the Oar, made their heavy Transports and Tenders keep Pace with the Gallies: About Noon we arriv'd with our whole Fleet on the Coasts, where no Enemy was to be seen, tho' as *Cæsar* afterwards understood from the Prisoners, the Islanders had been there in vast Multitudes, but being frighted to behold so numerous a Navy, (which, together with the Ships

Ships of that Year's Building, and private Vessels which several Persons had provided for their own Use, amounted to above 800) they had left the Shore, and hid themselves in the Mountains.

War with
the English.



Cæsar, having landed his Army, and chose a convenient Place to encamp in, enquir'd of the Prisoners, where the Enemy was lodg'd; and between three and four in the Morning, having left ten Cohorts and 300 Horse, under the Command of *Q. Atrius*, to secure the Navy, he march'd towards the *English*; being the less uneasy for his Fleet, because he left 'em at Anchor on a smooth and open Shore: He had not march'd above twelve Miles, before he saw the Enemy, who having posted their Horse and Chariots on the Banks of the River, gave us Battel, and endeavour'd to oppose our Passage, but were repuls'd by our Cavalry, and oblig'd to retire to the Woods, notwithstanding the Advantage of the Ground. Here they had a Post well fortify'd, where Art and Nature had equally play'd their Parts, a Barricado which they had formerly built during the Times of their Civil Wars; all the Passages to it were block'd up by Heaps of Trees, which were cut down for that Purpose; they never ventur'd out of this Place but in small Parties, and prevented the *Romans* from entering it: But the Soldiers of the seventh Legion having cast themselves into a *Testudo*, and thrown up a Mount against their Works, took the Place, and expell'd 'em the Woods, without receiving many Wounds: But *Cæsar* would not permit 'em to follow the Pursuit, because he knew not the Country; and the Day being already far spent, he resolv'd to bestow the rest of it in fortifying his Camp.

The Romans
land.

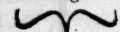
They rout
the English.

C H A P. IV.

THE next Morning early, *Cæsar*, having divided his Army into three Battalions, sent both his Horse and Foot to pursue the Enemy: They had not travell'd far before they came within Sight of the *English* Rere; at which Instant there arriv'd a Party of Horse from *Q. Atrius*, to acquaint *Cæsar* that the Night before there had happen'd a dreadful Storm, which shatter'd almost all the Navy, and cast the Ships upon the Shore, spight of their Anchors and Cables; nor was all the Mariners and Pilots were able to do, sufficient to oppose the Fury of the Wind, which had done the Fleet a considerable Damage.

A Storm
which shat-
ters the Ro-
man Fleet.

War with
the English.



Cæsar refits
his Navy,
and causes it
to be haul'd
up to dry
Land.

Upon this Intelligence, *Cæsar*, recalling his Legions and Cavalry from their intended Journey, return'd to his Fleet, where he was an Eye-witness of the Misfortunes the Couriers and Packets had brought him an Account of; for forty Ships were entirely lost, and he saw the rest could not be refitted without infinite Trouble: Wherefore having chosen some Carpenters from amongst the Legions, and writ for others to *Gaul*, he sent *Labienus* Orders to build as many Ships as he could, with those Legions he had there. And tho' he found 'twould be a very troublesome Business, yet he thought it most convenient to have the Fleet haul'd up to Land, and inclos'd within the Fortifications of his Camp: To effect this Design the Soldiers labour'd ten Days and Nights without Intermission, when having drawn his Shipping to Shore, and strongly fortify'd his Camp, leaving the same Guard as formerly, he return'd to the Place where he had desisted from pursuing the Enemy.

CHAP. V.

Cassivellaunus made
Generaliss-
imo of the
English.

HERE he found far greater Numbers of the *English* assembled, than he left at his Return to the Fleet: By general Consent the whole Management of this War was committed to the Care of *Cassivellaunus*, whose Territories were divided by the River *Thames* from the Sea-Coasts, and extended fourscore Miles into the Island; for tho' he had formerly made War on the rest of his Countrymen, yet upon our Arrival they all united, and pitch'd upon him as the fittest Person to direct 'em at so important a Conjunction.

Description
of England,
and the Cu-
stom of the
English.

The Inland Parts of England are inhabited by those that call themselves Natives of the Country; but the Sea-Coast by the Belgic Gauls, that came thither either to plunder or invade the Island; who having ended their Wars, settled there, began to cultivate the Earth, and for the generality retain their ancient Names: The Country is well peopled, and has plenty of Buildings, much after the same Fashion with the Gauls; they have infinite Store of Cattle, and make use of Brass Money, and Iron Rings, which pass by Weight: The Midland Countries produce some Tin, and those nearer the Sea Iron, tho' not much of the latter, but their Brass is imported; they have all kinds of Wood to be met with in Gaul, except the Fig and Beach Tree; they are not allow'd to eat either Hare, Hen or Goose;

Goose ; yet they breed all these for their Fancy and Diversion : The Climate is more temperate here than in Gaul, and the Frosts less violent: The Island is Triangular, one Side situate over-against Gaul, and at the East Corner of this Part, where the County of Kent lies, is the usual Landing-place from thence ; the other extends towards the South, and from one End to the other extends about 500 Miles ; the West Angle lies towards Spain and Ireland, an Island generally esteem'd to be half as large as the other, and about the same Distance from England as England is from Gaul ; in the Middle between these two lies the Isle of Man, besides several other smaller Islands scatter'd up and down, of which some affirm, that for thirty Days successively in Winter they are depriv'd of Light : But we receiv'd no such Information during our Stay, only observ'd by the running of Water out of our Hour-Pots, that the Nights were shorter than in Gaul : The Length of this Side, according to their Computation, is about 700 Miles : The third Angle lies Northward, and fronts the open Sea, except in one Corner, which points towards Germany, and the Extent of this is generally computed to be 800 Miles ; so the Circumference of the whole Island is 2000 Miles. The most civiliz'd People among 'em are the Kentish Men, whose Country lies altogether upon the Sea-Coasts ; and their Customs are much the same with those of the Gauls : The Inland People seldom trouble themselves with Agriculture, living on Milk and Flesh-Meat, and are clad with Skins ; but all of 'em paint themselves blue with Wood, that they may look the more dreadful to their Enemies in Battel : The Hair of their Heads they wear very long, but shave all the rest of their Bodies, except the upper Lip : Ten or a Dozen have one Wife in common amongst 'em, especially if they are Brothers, and the Parents often lie with their own Issue ; but he who first marry'd the Woman, whilst she was a Maid, fathers all the Children.

War with
the English.

Cantium.

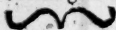
Mona.

CHAP. VI.

THE Enemy's Horse and Chariots had a sharp Skirmish with our Men during their March ; but the Romans repulsing 'em from all Sides, drove 'em into the Woods, and having slain a great many, pursu'd the rest so far, 'till they lost some of their own Party : The English not long after returning, whilst the Romans who little expected 'em, were fortifying their Camp, made a sudden Sally out of the Woods, and fell upon our ad-

The English
attack the
Romans
whilst on
their March,
but are re-
puls'd. They
return a-
gain.

War with
the English.



and are a-
gain re-
puls'd.

The Advan-
tages the
English had
over the Ro-
mans in
their way of
fighting.

vanc'd Guard : Whereupon Cæsar detach'd the two first Cohorts of his Legions to their Assistance : These Cohorts were drawn up very near each other ; but the Enemy, whilst our Men were surpriz'd with their new way of Fighting, boldly broke thro' the Midst of 'em, and return'd again without receiving any Loss : Q. Labe-rius Durus lost his Life in this Action ; but at last some fresh Cohorts coming up to their Relief, the Eng-lish were repuls'd.

This Engagement happening in the View of the whole Army, every one perceiv'd that the legionary Soldiers were not a fit Match for such an Enemy, because the Weight of their Armour would not permit 'em to pursue, nor durst they go too far from their Colours ; neither could the Cavalry encounter 'em, because the English, often counterfeited a Retreat, and having drawn 'em from the Legions, would forsake their Chariots, and fight on Foot, to a vast Advantage, tho' our Cavalry on both sides were equally match'd : Besides they never fought in close Battalions, but in small Parties, at a great Distance from one another, each of 'em having their particular Post allotted, from whence they receiv'd Supplies, and the weary were reliev'd by the fresh.

C H A P. VII.

The English
attack the
Roman Fo-
ragers,

but are rout-
ed with con-
siderable
Loss.

T H E Day after the Enemy lodg'd themselves in the Hills, at a considerable Distance from our Camp, but seldom appear'd, not being so eager at Skirmishing with our Cavalry as formerly ; but about Noon, when Cæsar had detach'd three Legions and all the Cavalry under the Command of C. Trebonius to forage, on a sudden they assaulted our Foragers from all sides, falling in with the Legions and their Standards ; but the Romans returning their Charge very briskly, beat 'em back again, nor did our Cavalry desist from the Pursuit 'till they had intirely routed 'em ; depending on the Legions, who follow'd close after, to sustain 'em in case of Necessity : They put a great many of the Enemy to the Sword, and pursu'd 'em so close, that they neither allow'd 'em time to rally, to make a Stand, or forsake their Chariots : Upon this Rout the Auxiliary Troops that had come from all Parts deserted 'em, nor were they ever able after this to make any considerable Head against us.

Cæsar fords
the Thames. Cæsar, being appriz'd of their Intention, march'd his Army into the Confines of Cassivellaunus, towards the Thames,

Thames, which River is only fordable in one Place, and that with great Difficulty : So soon as he came thither, he saw the Enemy's Forces drawn up in a considerable Body on the opposite Bank, which was fortify'd with sharp Stakes ; the *English* had likewise driven many Piles of the same kind into the Bottom of the River, whose Tops were cover'd by the Water : *Cæsar*, having Intelligence of this from the Prisoners and Deferters, sent his Cavalry before, commanding the Legions to follow close after 'em ; and with such Expedition did they perform his Orders, tho' the Water took 'em up to the Neck, that the Enemy, not being able to sustain their Assault, forsook the Banks and fled.

War with
the English.

and puts
Cassivellaunus
again to
Flight ;

C H A P. VIII.

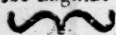
T H U S *Cassivellaunus*, having lost all Hopes of Success by a Battel, disbanded the greatest Part of his Forces, and retaining only about 4000 Chariots, observ'd our Motions from time to time, keeping himself at some distance in the Woods, or such Places where the *Romans* had no Access ; from those Countries he knew we design'd to march to, he took care to carry off the Cattle and Natives before-hand into the Woods ; and whenever our Cavalry ventur'd a little too far to lay the Country waste, being well acquainted with all the Roads and By-ways, he would detach a Party of his Chariots out of the Woods to attack us, nor could our Horse engage 'em without great Danger ; which prevented our making such Excursions as we would have done otherwise, and oblig'd *Cæsar* not to permit his Horse to go further to burn and destroy the Country, than the Legions were able to attend 'em ; nor was there any Execution done after this, but when the Legionary Soldiers were present.

who dis-
bands part
of his Army,
and retires
to the
Woods,

In the mean time the *Trinobantes*, who possess one of the most considerable Provinces in the Island, sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, promising to deliver themselves up to his Disposal, and submit to his Commands, desiring withal that he would please to defend *Mandubratius* from the Oppression of *Cassivellaunus*, and send him to them for their King and Governor : This *Mandubratius* was the Son of *Imanuentius*, that formerly possessing that Kingdom, was slain by *Cassivellaunus*, and to avoid his Father's Fate had fled to *Cæsar*, who promis'd him Protection : *Cæsar* granted their Request, but dem-

The People
of Essex and
Middlesex.

War with
the English.



What the
English
call'd a
Town.

The English
Fortifications
taken.

The four
Kings of
Kent attack
the Roman
Camp, but
are repuls'd
with Loss.

Cassivellaunus
surrenders, and
Cæsar impos-
es a yearly
tribute on
the English.

manded forty Hostages from 'em, and Corn for his Army; which Conditions they readily perform'd.

The *Trinobantes* thus protected from their Enemies, and secur'd by his Orders from being plunder'd by his Soldiers, the * *Cenimagni*, *Segontiaci*, *Ancalites*, *Bibroci*, and *Cassi*, submitted themselves likewise by their Embassadors to *Cæsar*. From these he had Intelligence that *Cassivellaunus's* Town, which was fortify'd with Woods and Marshes, and stor'd with plenty of Men and Cattle, was but a small Distance from his Camp; for the *English* call a thick Wood, surrounded with a Ditch and fortify'd with a Rampier, a Town, which they retire to when they are apprehensive of Incurfions from their Neighbours: Thither he march'd with his Legions, and found the Place well secur'd both by Art and Nature, however he endeavour'd to storm it in two several Places, and the Enemy being no longer able to sustain the Fury of the Assault, fled out of another part of the Wood: Here we found vast Quantities of Cattle, and many of the *English*, who endeavour'd to make their Escape, being overtaken, lost their Lives.

Cassivellaunus in the mean time sent Embassadors to *Kent*, which, as we have already taken Notice, lies towards the Sea-Coast, and is govern'd by four Kings, *Cingetorix*, *Carnilius*, *Taximagulus* and *Segonax*; whom he commanded to attack our Camp, where the Navy was laid up, with the Forces they could raise: But, so soon as they arriv'd there, our Men made a Sally, kill'd several of 'em, took *Lugotorix*, one of their chief Commanders, Prisoner, and return'd safe again into their Trenches. *Cassivellaunus*, upon the News of this Defeat, reflecting on the many Losses he had receiv'd, how his Country was laid waste, but above all, that several Provinces had already forsaken the General Alliance, sent Embassadors to treat of a Surrender, who were introduc'd by *Comius* of *Arras*: *Cæsar* designing to quarter that Winter in *Gaul*, to prevent sudden Insurrections there, because the Summer was already spent, and the Remainder might easily have been spun out with Delays, demanded Hostages, and appointed the yearly Tribute which the *English* should pay to the Peo-

* Camden says the *Cenimagni* were the same with the *Iceni*, whose Province contain'd Suffolk, Norfolk, Cambridgeshire, and Huntingdonshire. *Segontiaci*, he thinks, were originally Inhabitants of Belgia, and places 'em at Holeshot; the *Bibroci* he calls those that inhabit the Hundred of Bray; the *Ancalites* those of Henley; and the *Cassi* those of Caithow.

People of *Rome*; not forgetting strictly to prohibit him from injuring *Mandubratius*, or the *Trinobantes*.

War with
the English.

Having receiv'd the Hostages, he march'd his Army back again to the Sea-Shore, where he found his Fleet refitted, and caus'd it to be launch'd; but considering the Number of the Captives was so great, and that some of our Ships had perish'd in the Storm, he resolv'd to transport his Army at two Voyages; whereby it so fell out, that there was not one Vessel lost which carry'd over the Soldiers, either this, or the foregoing Year, for all the Ships were so numerous, and the Voyages so frequent.

But very few of those which were sent back again from *Gaul*, after they had landed the Soldiers that were first carry'd over, nor of the sixty Ships which *Labienus* had taken care to build, arriv'd safe at *England*; the rest being driven back again by contrary Winds: Wherefore *Cæsar*, having long expected 'em in vain, lest the Winter should prevent his Voyage, the *Equinox* being near at hand, dispos'd his Soldiers closer than he design'd, and taking the Opportunity of an extraordinary Calm, set Sail about ten a Clock at Night, and arriv'd safe with his whole Fleet at the Continent by Break of Day.

Cæsar arrives safe
with the rest
of his Army in
Gaul.

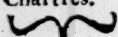
CH A P. IX.

HAVING laid up his Fleet in the Docks, and held an Assembly of the *Gauls* at * *Amiens*, because the Summers Drought had made a Scarcity of Corn that Year, he was oblig'd to quarter his Legions otherwise than he had done in former Winters, and to distribute 'em into several Countries; one Legion, under the Command of Lieutenant *C. Fabius*, he sent to *Teroienne*; another, under *Q. Cicero*, to *Hainault*; a Third under *L. Roscius*, to † *Seez*; a Fourth under *Titus Labienus*, who had Orders to quarter in *Rheims* on the Borders of *Treves*; three others he quarter'd in *Belgium*, under the Command of *M. Crassus* the Questor, *Lu. Manutius* for *Briva* or *Briga* is an old Celtick Word for a Bridge, so govern'd

* *Samarobrina*, Scaliger calls *Amiens*, others *Cambray*, or *St. Quintin*; but *Sanfon* says positively 'tis the Town of *Amiens*, and that it should be read *Samarobri-va* for *Briva* or *Briga* is an old Celtick Word for a Bridge, so

the *Samara* or *Soam*, where *Amiens* now stands. † *Esliu*, says *Baudrand*, are Inhabitants of *Normandy*, and their Capital the Town now call'd *Seez*; but *Vossius* thinks this a Corruption of the Text, and that it should have been *Ædvi*, the People of *Autun*, *Sanfon* thinks *Esliu* and *Sesliu* or *Sesliuvii* the same People.

Rebellion in
Chartres.



govern'd by *Ambiorix* and *Cativolcus*, the greatest Part of whose Territories lie between the *Mose* and the *Rhine*, these he committed to the Charge of the Lieutenants *Q. Titurius Sabinus* and *L. Arunculeius Cotta*. By this Distribution of his Legions, *Cæsar* thought he might easily redress the Want of Provisions; yet all the Legions lay within the Compass of one hundred Miles, except those whom he had sent under the Command of *Roscius*, into a most quiet and peaceable Country; and he resolv'd to stay himself in *Gaul*, 'till the whole Army had possess'd themselves of, and fortify'd their Winter-quarters.

Tasgetius
murder'd by
his Subjects
of Chartres;
Carnutes.

In the Country of *Chartres* liv'd *Tasgetius*, a Man of the best Family there, whose Ancestors had formerly been Kings of the Place; and *Cæsar*, to reward that constant Virtue and Affection which he had given Proofs of, in all the Wars, had restor'd him to the Dignity of his Forefathers: But in the third Year of his Reign, his Enemies by the Assistance of several of his Subjects, who were in the Conspiracy, publicly murder'd him. *Cæsar* had Intelligence of this Matter, and being apprehensive that since so many were concern'd in the Treason, the Country might revolt, he commanded *L. Plancus* to march immediately with his Legion out of *Belgium* into *Chartres*, to apprehend all such as had been concern'd in the Murther of *Tasgetius*, and send 'em Prisoners to him: In the mean time he had Advice from all the Questors and Lieutenants, to whose Charge he had committed the Legions, that they had fortify'd their Winter-quarters.

CHAP. X.

The People
of Liege re-
bel, and as-
sault the Ro-
man Camp;

OUR Legions had not been settled above fifteen Days before *Ambiorix* and *Cativolcus*, at the Instigation of *Indutiomarus* of *Treves*, made a sudden Insurrection, stirring up the People to rebel, after they had carry'd *Sabinus* and *Cotta* into their Quarters, which were in their Confines: Having surpris'd the Soldiers that were gone to fetch in Wood, they came in a strong Body to storm our Camp; but the *Romans* immediately repair'd to their Arms, and ascended the Rampart, whilst the *Spanish* Cavalry issuing out from one Side, got the better of their Horse; whereupon despairing of Success the Enemy retreated; and, according to their Custom, demanded a Conference, pretending they had something

but are re-
puls'd, desire
a Treaty.

thing to say which imported the publick Good, and might conduce towards the making a Peace. Rebellion in Liege.

Whereupon C. Carpineus a Roman Knight, one of Titurius's particular Friends, and Q. Junius a Spaniard, who had frequently been sent before by Cæsar to Ambiorix were deputed to treat with 'em: To whom Ambiorix spoke to this Effect; *That he thought himself infinitely indebted to Cæsar, for the many Benefits he had formerly receiv'd from him; for having freed him from that Tribute which he us'd to pay his Neighbours of Namur; and for setting his Son and Nephew at Liberty, who had been detain'd amongst the other Hostages sent to that Country: Wherefore he had not assaulted the Roman Camp out of Inclination, but Necessity; for such was the Constitution of his Government, that the People had not less Power over him, than he over them: That his Country had undertaken this War, in Compliance with the sudden, and general Insurrection of all the Provinces of Gaul: That he was not so vain and unexperienc'd, to imagine it possible for him with so insignificant a Force to overcome the Romans; but by general Consent, the Natives had pitch'd on that Day for attacking the Romans in their several Winter-Quarters, to prevent one Legion from coming to the Assistance of another; nor was it possible for the People of Liege to deny their Countrymen any thing, especially where the Recovery of their publick Liberty was concern'd: But having now discharg'd the Duty owing to his Country, Gratitude oblig'd him to admonish Cæsar, and Friendship to intreat Titurius, to consult the Preservation of themselves and Soldiers; for a great Number of German Troops, whom the Gauls had hir'd, had pass'd the Rhine two Days before; therefore they might consider whether 'twere not better for 'em to leave their Quarters and march to Cicero, or Labienus, the first not being above fifty Miles Distance from 'em, and the other a little further: For his part, he promis'd and oblig'd himself by Oath, to grant 'em a safe Passage thro' his Country, by which means he should at the same Instant oblige his Countrymen, by freeing 'em from the Burthen of Winter-quarters, and make a grateful Return for the Favours he had receiv'd from Cæsar.* Ambiorix's Speech to the Roman Deputies.

C H A P. XI.

THUS ending his Speech, he departed; C. Arpinus and Junius gave the Lieutenants an Account of what they heard, who being much surpris'd, thought the

Rebellion in
Liege.

The Romans
call'd a Coun-
cil of War.

Cotta's Opi-
nion.

Sabinus's O-
pinion.

the Advice not to be neglected, tho' it came from an Enemy ; and that which weigh'd most with 'em was, they could not believe so mean and obscure a People as those of *Chartres*, would, of their own accord, presume to make War on the *Romans* : Wherefore, having summon'd a Council of War, they had long Disputes about the Matter. *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*, and several Tribunes and Centurions of the first Order, were of Opinion, *They ought to do nothing rashly, and that it was not proper to quit their Quarters before they receiv'd Orders from Cæsar to that purpose, because they were so well fortify'd, they were able to defend themselves against any Number of Germans whatever, witness the brave Repulse and many Wounds the Enemy had receiv'd the first Attack ; nor did they want Provisions to subsist on, 'till they could receive Relief from Cæsar and the neighbouring Garrisons ; and, in fine, that nothing could be a greater Argument of Levity or Cowardice, than to follow an Enemy's Advice, in Affairs of the greatest Importance.*

But on the other hand, *Sabinus* exclaim'd, *They had but a very short Time to consult in, for it would be too late to do any thing, when the Enemy was grown more Powerful by Conjunction with the Germans, or the neighbouring Garrisons distress'd : That he believ'd Cæsar was already gone into Italy ; for the People of Chartres would not have presum'd to murder Tasgetius, nor those of Liege so impudently have attempted to force our Camp, if he had not been absent : That an Enemy's Advice weigh'd not with him, but Matter of Fact did ; for the Rhine was not far off, the Germans were much afflicted for the Loss of Ariovistus, disturb'd at the Memory of our late Victories ; the Gauls no less inrag'd, to reflect on the Loss of their former Military Glory, and the many Injuries they had receiv'd after they were reduc'd to the Obedience of Rome ; and lastly, who could believe that Ambiorix would have engag'd in such a Design without certain Grounds ? That his Opinion was safe on all Sides ; for, if the Gauls had no further Design, they might without Danger march to the next Legion ; but, if the whole Country had combin'd with the Germans, the only means of Safety consisted in Dispatch : Whereas no other Event could be expected from the Advice of Cotta, and those that differ'd in Opinion from him, except Starving by a long Siege, if they could avoid the present Danger.*

The Dispute was warmly maintain'd on both Sides, and *Sabinus's* Opinion strongly oppos'd by *Cotta* and the chief Officers of the Legion ; whereupon *Sabinus*, that the

the greatest Part of the Soldiers might hear him, cry'd out aloud, *Do as you please, I am not more afraid to meet Death than any of you ; but let these take Notice, that whatever Misfortunes befall 'em, you are the Person they must thank for 'em ; for, did you not prevent 'em, they might in three Days time arrive at the next Garrison, share the same Fate with their Fellow-Soldiers, and not perish by Sword or Famine, like an abject and abandoned People.*

Rebellion in Liege.

Sabinus's

Reply.

Upon this they were going to break up the Council ; but the Officers having embrac'd 'em both, intreated they would not by their Obstinacy plunge their Affairs into so desperate a Condition : That, provided they were but of one Opinion, there could be no Difficulty either in staying or going ; but their Dissention was the ready Way to Ruin. The Dispute continu'd till Midnight, at length *Cotta* submitted to *Sabinus's* Opinion, and Orders were deliver'd out for Marching by Break of Day. The rest of the Night was consum'd in Watching, each Soldier being employ'd to consider what he could carry, and what Part of his Winter Provisions he must be oblig'd to leave behind him ; all things were contriv'd to make the Soldiers believe there was Danger in staying, and to increase that Apprehension by their Watching and Faintness.

The Council about to break up, the Officers desire an Union.

Cotta submits.

C H A P. XII.

E A R L Y in the Morning they began their March, and the Army being drawn up into narrow Ranks, extended a considerable Length : They carried a great deal of Baggage along with 'em, persuading themselves that *Ambiorix* was their particular Friend, and that they did not follow an Enemy's Advice : But the *Gauls* perceiving, by our Watching and the Noise we made all Night, that we design'd to decamp the next Morning, possess'd themselves of two convenient and private Places in the Woods, about two Miles distance from our Camp, where they waited for us in Ambuscade ; and when the greatest part of our Army had enter'd the Valley, the Enemy appearing on the rising Ground on both Sides, at the same Instant attack'd our Rere, and oppos'd the Ascent of our Van-guard, engaging us in a Place of prodigious Advantage.

Sabinus and Cotta begin their March;

are attack'd by an Ambuscade.

Then *Titurius* at last perceiv'd his Error, and being surpris'd, began to tremble, run up and down, and drew his Cohorts up after so awkward a manner, as if he

Sabinus's Cowardice.

Rebellion in
Liege.

he despair'd of the Matter, as generally happens to those who are consulting when they should execute.

C H A P. XIII.

The Romans
cast them-
selves into
an Orb;
their Confu-
sion.

BUT *Cotta*, who foresaw this would be the Consequence of their March, and therefore had oppos'd it, neglected nothing which might be of Advantage to the publick Safety, for he perform'd the Part of an able General in Drawing up, and Encouraging his Men, and that of a Soldier in Fighting. And because the Length of the Army render'd it difficult for the Lieutenants to visit all Parts, and give the necessary Orders for Relief, they commanded the Soldiers to quit their Baggage, and cast themselves into an Orb; which tho' proper at such a Conjunction, yet at this time the Success did not answer the Design, for it daunted our Soldiers and encourag'd the Enemy, because they look'd upon it as the Effect of Despair in us; besides, as it always happens upon such Occasions, the Soldiers, forsaking their Ensigns, ran to the Carriages, to rescue from thence what they set the greatest Value on, and the whole Army was fill'd with Clamour and Weeping.

But the *Gauls* understood their Business better; their Officers gave Orders that not a Man of 'em should leave their Ranks, since the Baggage was theirs, and whatever the *Romans* had taken such Care to lay up, would certainly fall into their Hands, for all depended on the Victory.

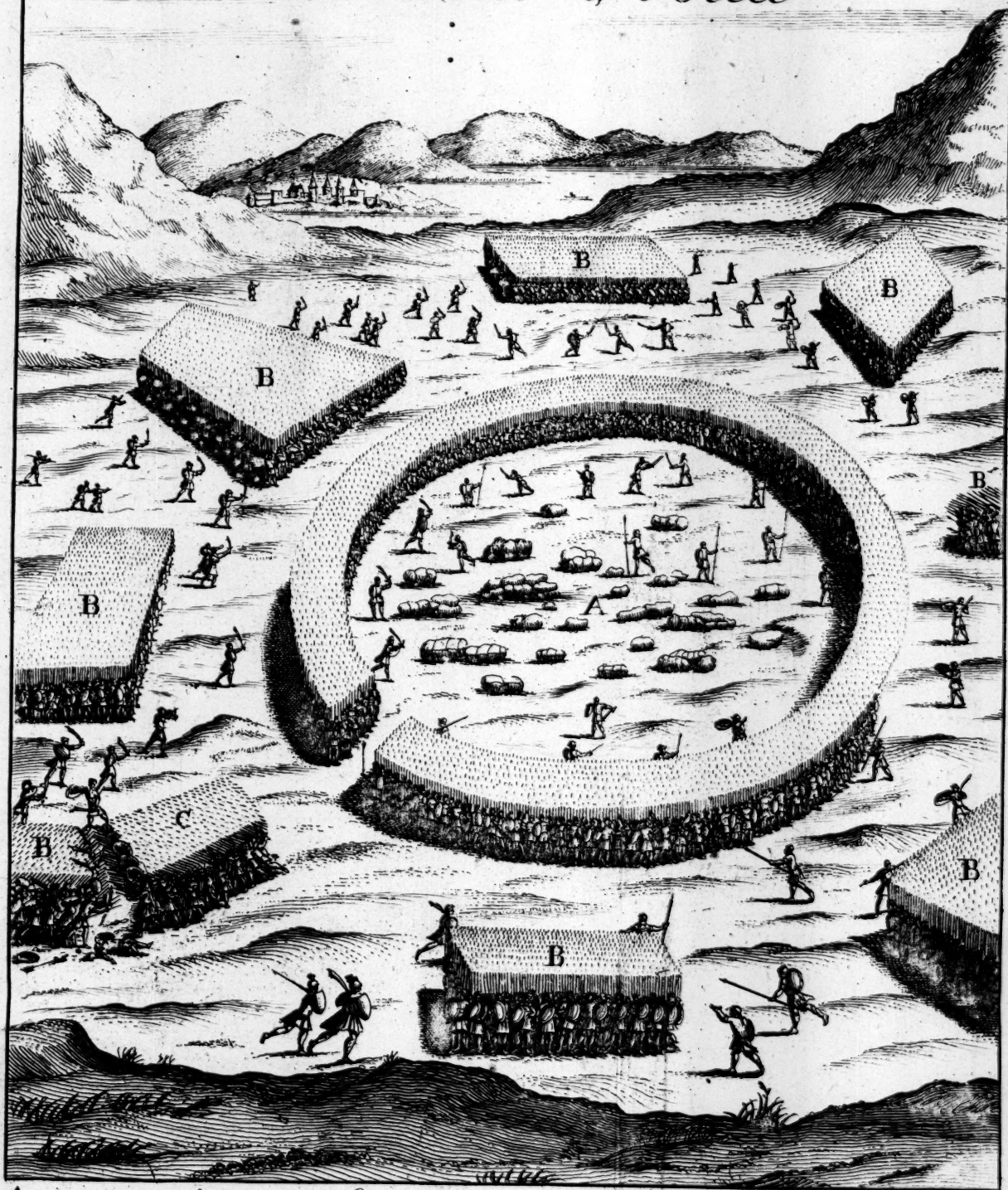
The *Romans* were equal to the *Gauls* both in Courage and Number, tho' they were deserted by Fortune and the General; however, they plac'd all their Hopes of Preservation in their Valour; and whenever a Cohort sally'd out, they made a considerable Slaughter of the Enemy on that Side.

C H A P. XIV.

Ambiorix's
Management

WHICH *Ambiorix* observing, gave Orders they should cast their Darts at a Distance, not approaching too near the *Romans*, give way wherever we made a Sally, and pursue us when we return'd again to the Army; for the Lightness of their Arms, and daily Exercise had made 'em so nimble, that they might easily avoid the Fury of our Assault: These Directions they observ'd so diligently, that whenever a Cohort left the Orb

Sabinus & Cotta



A. Sabinus & Cotta's forces in an Orb. B. The Gauls Surrounding em. C. a Cohort Sallying out of the Orb.

Orb to attack 'em, they fled away ; in the mean time, the Place from whence we sall'y'd was left expos'd to the Enemy's Darts, and when we endeavour'd to retreat again to our Post, we were surrounded by those we had put to Flight, and the Parties that stood next 'em ; wherefore, to pretend to maintain our Ground had been in vain, for we could neither have an Opportunity of shewing our Courage, nor was it possible for us, tho' we stood never so close together, to avoid the Darts of so numerous an Enemy. But notwithstanding we had so many Inconveniencies, for all the Romans had receiv'd so many Wounds, having fought from Break of Day 'till two a Clock in the Afternoon, during all that time, they committed nothing unworthy their Pristine Courage : The brave *Titus Balventius*, who the Year before was Primiple of the Legion, a Man of great Authority, had both his Thighs struck thro' with a Javelin ; *Q. Lucanius*, an Officer of the same Rank, fighting courageously to relieve his Son, who was hemm'd in by the Enemy, lost his Life ; and Lieutenant-General *L. Cotta*, whilst he was encouraging the Soldiers, receiv'd a Wound in his Mouth from a Sling.

Rebellion in Liege.

C H A P. XV.

Q. TITURIUS, being disturb'd at this ill Success, as he saw *Ambiorix* encouraging his Men at a Distance, sent his Interpreter *C. Pompeius*, to demand Quarter for him and his Soldiers ; to which *Ambiorix* made Answer, That he was ready to give him a Conference if he desir'd it, and hop'd he should be able so far to prevail with his Countrymen, to grant the Romans Quarter ; but as for *Titurius*, he would give him his Oath, no hurt should befall him. Having receiv'd this Answer, he ask'd *Cotta* (who before had been wounded) whether he would leave the Battel, and go along with him to confer with *Ambiorix* ; *Cotta* told him he thought it not proper to consult with an armed Enemy, and therefore resolv'd not to go.

Sabinus sends to demand Quarter.

Ambiorix's Answer.

Whereupon *Sabinus* commanded the Tribunes and Centurions of the first Order, that were present, to follow him ; being come near *Ambiorix* he was order'd to lay down his Arms, which he did, bidding those who were with him to follow his Example : But, whilst they were treating about the Conditions, *Ambiorix* began to make a long Speech, during which time the Romans

Cotta refuses to go to the Conference.

Sabinus goes with his Party.

They are commanded to lay down their Arms, and then put to the Sword.

Rebellion in
Liege.

Cotta kill'd,
and the
whole Army
intirely de-
feated.
L. Petrosi-
dius the
Standard-
bearer.

The Romans
that retreat-
ed to their
Camp kill
themselves.

mans by degrees were furrounded and put to the Sword; whereupon the Enemy according to their Custom, cry'd out Victory, making a dreadful Noise, charg'd our Army, and broke our Ranks; at which time *L. Cotta* fighting bravely, lost his Life, with the greatest Part of the Army; the rest retreated to the Camp they had left in the Morning, amongst which Number *L. Petrosidius*, the Eagle-bearer, finding himself oppress'd by the Enemy, cast the Standard within the Rampart, and manfully sustain'd their Fury before the Camp, 'till he expir'd; the rest with much to do maintain'd their Ground 'till Night, at which time every Man of 'em, despairing of Preservation, fell upon his own Sword: Some few who had escap'd out of the Battel, travell'd thro' By-ways in the Woods to *Labienus*, and gave him an Account of the Action.

CHAP. XVI.

Ambiorix
goes to Na-
mur and
Hainault,
moves the
Natives to
Rebel.

AMBIORIX was so puff'd up with this Success, that he immediately went with his Cavalry to *Namur*, the Province which lay next to his Country, travelling Day and Night without intermission, having left Orders for the Infantry to follow him: He gave the People an Account of what he had done, and, having stirr'd 'em up to Rebellion, arriv'd the Day after in the Confines of the *Hainaults*, whom he persuaded not to omit so glorious an Opportunity of freeing themselves for ever, and revenging the Injuries they had receiv'd from the *Romans*: He acquainted 'em that he had already slain two of the Lieutenant-Generals, and put a considerable Part of their Army to the Sword; that it would be no difficult Matter for 'em suddenly to attack, and cut off the Legion in Winter-quarters under the Command of *Cicero*; and that he was ready to assist 'em in the Enterprize.

* Scaliger
and Ortelius
say the
Centrones
were the
People of
Tarantaise
in Savoy;
but Cæsar
mentions two
Countries of
the same

Whereupon having immediately dispatch'd Embassadors to the * *Centrones*, *Grudii*, *Levacii*, *Pleumossii* and *Gorduni*, who are all their Tributaries, and having rais'd what Forces they could, they march'd with great Expedition to *Cicero's* Quarters, and arriv'd there before he had heard the News of *Titurius's* Death.

CHAP.

Name, and these we are now speaking of, liv'd amongst the Belgæ; some Criticsks suspect this to be a Corruption of the Text, but Sanson takes 'em for those that now live about Ghent; the *Grudii* be places at Bruges, the *Levacii* in the County of Waes in Flanders, the *Pleumossii* in the Diocess of Tournay, and the *Gorduni* in the Bailiwick of Courtray; probable Conjectures taken from the Situation of the Place, and far fetch'd Etymologies.

C H A P. XVII.

Rebellion in
Namur &
Hainault.

HERE likewise it fell out (as of Necessity it must) that some of the *Romans*, who were gone to fetch Wood and other Provisions, were surpris'd by the Enemy's Horse; having secur'd these, the People of *Chartrain*, *Namur* and *Hainault*, with all their Confederates and Tributaries, amounting to a vast Number, began to storm the *Roman Camp*: Whereupon our Men immediately repair'd to their Arms, ascended the Rampier, and with great Difficulty sustain'd the Enemy's Charge, for the *Gauls* had plac'd all their Hopes in Dispatch, and promis'd themselves perpetual Success, if they could but obtain the Victory that Day.

The Enemy
endeavour to
storm the
Roman Camp
under Cice-
ro's Com-
mand; but
are repuls'd.

In the mean time *Cicero* dispatch'd Couriers with all Expedition to *Cæsar*, promising them considerable Rewards; in Case they had the Fortune to arrive safe with his Pacquets; but the ways round about were so block'd up, that they were all intercepted: However, in one Night with incredible Celerity, he built 120 Towers, (of the Wood which the Soldiers brought into the Camp for the Fortifications) to compleat his Works where they seem'd imperfect. The next Day the Enemy, with a much greater Force than before, storm'd our Camp a second time, fill'd the Ditch, but were again repuls'd; and the same thing they attempted several Days together, with the like Success. The *Romans* in the mean while labour'd incessantly at their Works in the Night, nor were either the Sick or Wounded permitted to rest; whatever was necessary to defeat the next Day's Assault was provided in the Night, several Stakes were harden'd in the Fire, plenty of Piles driven into the Ground; the Towers were boarded, the Battlements and Parapets fortify'd with Breast-works of Hurdles: And *Cicero*, tho' he was much out of Order, did not allow himself time to rest even in the Night, till the Soldiers unanimously oblig'd him to consult his Health.

The Gauls
attempt a se-
cond storm;
but are re-
puls'd.

Cicero's
Diligence.

C H A P. XVIII.

THE *Hainaultois* finding themselves thus disappoint- ed, their Noblemen, who had formerly any Acquain- tance or Friendship with *Cicero*, desir'd a Conference; which being granted, they us'd the same Artifice as *Ambiorix* had formerly done with *Sabinus*: They told

The Hai-
naultois use
the same
Stratagem
with Cicero,
as Ambiorix
had with Sa-
binus and
Cotta.

Rebellion in him all the Kingdoms of Gaul were in Arms; that the Namur & Germans had pass'd the Rhine; that Cæsar's, and the rest of the Winter-quarters were besieg'd; that Sabinus was kill'd, and to prove what they said, produc'd Ambiorix: Wherefore Cicero would be much in the wrong, to flatter himself with hopes of Relief from those that were not able to maintain their own Ground: Yet they had so particular an Esteem for him, and the People of Rome, that they could deny 'em nothing except Winter-quarters, which they could not by any means permit to grow customary; but if they had a mind to quit their Garrison, the Gauls would allow 'em safe Passage thro' their Country, to such Place as they design'd to march to.

Cicero's
Answer.

To this Cicero only answer'd, That it was not usual with the Romans to accept Conditions from an armed Enemy; but if they would lay down their Arms, and make use of his Intercession, they might send Embassadors to Cæsar, from whose Justice he believ'd they would obtain such Redress as they desir'd.

C H A P. XIX.

The Hainaultois surrounded the Roman Camp with a Ditch and a Rampier.

* But the Roman Miles only consisted of 1000 Paces, which is 56 Paces less than ours.

The Gauls last Effort to storm Cicero's Camp.

THIS Stratagem failing, the Hainaultois surrounded our Camp with a Rampier Eleven Foot high, and a Ditch Fifteen Foot deep; this piece of Fortification they had learn'd some Years before, partly from the Romans, and partly from the Prisoners they had taken; but wanting Instruments proper for the Occasion, they were forc'd to cut up Turf with their Swords, to dig Mould with their Hands, and carry it in their Cloaks; from whence we may form a Judgment how numerous they were; for in less than the Space of Three Hours they had compleated a Circumvallation * Fifteen Miles in Length: The following Days they rais'd Turrets in Proportion to the Heighth of the Rampier, and prepar'd Scythes and Penthouses according to the Instruction of the Captives.

The Seventh Day of the Siege, the Wind being high, they began to sling hot Bullets made of Clay, and cast heated Darts upon the Roman Barracks, that after the manner of the Gauls were thatch'd with Straw, which immediately took Fire, and the Sparks were in an Instant distributed by the Wind all over the Camp; whereupon the Enemy, as if already secure of Victory, with great Clamour approach'd our Rampier with their Turrets, Mounts, Penthouses, and endeavour'd to scale it; but

but so great was the Soldiers Courage and Presence of Mind, that tho' they were surrounded by the Flames, and oppress'd with an infinite Number of Darts; tho' they were sensible their Fortunes were burning, yet not a Man forsook the Rampier, or cast an Eye upon his departing Baggage, each bravely maintaining his Ground against the Attempt of the Enemy: This was the bloodiest Day our Men endur'd since the beginning of the Siege; but they had the good Fortune to Kill and Wound considerable Numbers of the *Gauls*, who croud-ed so close to the Rampier, that the hindmost prevented the retiring of the Front: By that time the Fire was a little abated, the Enemy had join'd one of the Turrets to our Rampier; whereupon the Centurions of the Third Cohort retir'd from their Post, and having drawn off their Men becken'd to the *Gauls*, desiring 'em to enter if they pleas'd; but observing that not a Man of 'em durst move, having assaulted 'em from all Sides with Stones, they set their Turret on Fire.

*Rebellion in
Namur &
Hainault.*

C H A P. XX.

THERE were in this Legion two Centurions, both Men of extraordinary Courage, that stood fair for Preferment, T. Pulpio, and L. Varenus; these two were continually disputing for the Preference, each striving to be advanc'd above other at every Years Promotion: Pulpio in the heat of the Attack, cry'd out, Varenus! What now detains you? What more glorious Opportunity would you desire to signalize yourself? This Day shall decide the Dispute between us, and put an End to our Emulation: Then leaving the Camp, he threw himself in amongst the thickest of the Gauls, being follow'd by his Rival, whom Honour would not permit to stay behind: Pulpio cast his Pile at the Enemy, and gave one of them who was hastning to engage him, such a Wound, that he immediately dropp'd; but his Countrymen soon cover'd him with their Shields, and all slung their Darts at Pulpio, without giving him leisure to retire; a Javelin pierc'd his Shield, and stuck fast in his Belt, which prevented him drawing his Sword 'till he was surrounded: Whereupon Varenus came in to his Assistance, and the Enemy, fancying the Dart had already done his Business, left Pulpio to attack the other; Varenus, having drawn his Sword, kill'd the first that came near him, and oblig'd the rest to retreat, but being too eager in the Pursuit, slipping into a Hole, he fell down: Pulpio in the mean time

*Pulpio and
Varenus,
their gene-
rous Emula-
tion.*

Rebell'on in having recover'd himself, rescu'd Varenus from the Gauls, Namur & and both together, having slain several of the Gauls; and Hainault. acquir'd infinite Applause, return'd safe again to their Trenches: Thus Fortune equally divided her Favours between 'em both, contriving that each should come to the Assistance of his Rival, yet left it undecided, whether deserv'd the greater Honour.

C H A P. XXI.

Cicero sends Cæsar word of his being besie'd, by the Assistance of Vortico.

G R E A T Part of our Soldiers being wounded, we had very few left that were fit for Service; wherefore, the hotter the Siege grew, the more Couriers did *Cicero* dispatch to *Cæsar*, tho' several of 'em were taken, and wreck'd to Death within View of our Soldiers: But there happen'd to be one *Vortico*, a Gentleman of *Hainault*, in our Camp, who came over to the *Romans* at the beginning of the Siege, and had given sufficient Proofs of his Fidelity: This Gentleman, with Promises of Liberty and considerable Rewards, persuaded one of his Slaves to carry a Pacquet to *Cæsar*, which he ty'd to his Javelin: Being a Native of the Country, he pass'd without the least Suspicion thro' the *Hainaultois*, and arriv'd safe at *Cæsar's* Quarters, who was inform'd by this means, of the danger *Cicero* and his Legion were in.

Cæsar receives the Letters, and immediately prepares to relieve him.

Immediately on Receipt of this Pacquet, about Five a Clock in the Afternoon, he sent Orders to *M. Crassus*, Pay-master of the Army, whose Quarters were in *Beauvois*, about Twenty Five Miles off, that he should draw out his Legion at Midnight, and march with all the Expedition he could to join him: *Crassus*, according to his Orders, came along with the Courier: Another Messenger he dispatch'd to Lieutenant *C. Fabius*, whom he commanded to meet him on the Borders of *Arras*, thro' which he design'd to march: He writ likewise to *Labienus* to meet him on the Confines of *Hainault*, if he could do it with Safety; for he thought it not convenient to expect the rest of his Army, which lay at a greater Distance; only staid for the Arrival of about 400 Horse from the nearest Garrisons.

At Nine in the Morning he had Notice from his Scouts of *Crassus's* Approach, and having march'd that Day about Twenty Miles, he made him Governor of *Amiens*, and left him with a Legion to take care of the Baggage of the Army, the Hostages, publick Papers, and all the Provisions which had been laid up there for the Winter: *Fabius*, according to his Orders, met *Cæsar* at the Time
and

and Place appointed ; but *Labienus*, having Notice of *Rebellion in Sabinus's* Death, the Loss of his Cohorts, and under-
standing that all the Forces of *Treves* were marching to-
wards him, was apprehensive, in case he should quit
his Quarters, the Enemy might misconstrue it for a
Flight, and that it would be impossible for him to sus-
tain their Assault, who were flush'd with the Success of
their late Victory ; wherefore he sent *Caesar* Word
what dangerous Consequence it might be of, to leave
his Garrison, after what had happen'd in *Liege*, especi-
ally since all the Horse and Foot of the People of *Treves*
lay not above three Miles Distance from his Camp.

Caesar approv'd of his Reasons, and tho' the Expecta-
tion of his three Legions was now reduc'd only to
two, yet placing all his Hopes of the publick Safety in
Dispatch, arriv'd by long Marches on the Confines of
Hainault, where he was inform'd from some Prisoners,
of *Cicero's* Condition, and what Danger he was in :
Then having perswaded a Trooper of *Gaul* by consid-
erable Rewards to carry a Letter to *Cicero*, he writ it in
private Characters, that if it happen'd to fall into the
Enemy's Hands, they might not be able to understand
it ; and if the Messenger had not an Opportunity of
getting into the Camp, he had Instructions to fasten
the Pacquet to the String of his Javelin, and cast it
within the Trenches : In this Letter *Caesar* sent *Cicero*
Word, that he would very shortly come with his Legi-
ons to his Assistance, and therefore encourag'd him to
persevere in his wonted Constancy. The *Gaul* being
apprehensive of Danger, according to Orders cast his
Javelin within the Fortifications, which by Accident
light upon a Tower, where it stuck two Days before it
was observ'd by the *Romans* ; but the third Day one
of our Soldiers found the Letter, and brought it to *Ci-*
cero, who read it publickly to the Besieged, which gave
'em no small Satisfaction ; and not long after, by the
Smoke of the Fires at some Distance, they were tho-
roughly convinc'd of *Caesar's* Approach.

Caesar ar-
rives on the
Confines of
Hainault.

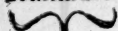
sends Cicero
word of his
March to his
Relief.

Cicero finds
Caesar's
Letter.

The *Gauls* having Notice of this by their Scouts,
immediately quitted the Siege, and march'd with all
their Forces towards *Caesar*, which amounted to 50000
Men ; whereupon *Cicero*, having taken care to find out
the same *Gaul* whom *Vortico* had sent before with the
Letters, and having given him Directions to travel with
all the Caution and Diligence possible, sent him with a
Pacquet to inform *Caesar*, that the Enemy, having
broken

The Gauls
quit the
Siege, Cice-
ro sends Ca-
sar word of
it.

Rebellion in broken up the Siege, were marching with all their Forces to find him out.
 Namur & Hainault.



Cæsar encamps.

* Then we must suppose his Legions were not compleat.

Cæsar receiv'd this Pacquet about Midnight, whereupon he communicated the Contents to his Army, and encourag'd 'em to fight: The next Day early he decamp'd, and having march'd about four Miles, cross'd a spacious Vale, thro' which there ran a River, he deserv'd the Enemy; but thinking it dangerous to engage so numerous an Army in a Place of Disadvantage, and considering that since he had already rais'd the Siege, there was no necessity for such violent Expedition, he chose as convenient a Place as he could to encamp in, which he fortify'd; he had hardly * 7000 Men in his Army, who having no Baggage, could not require much Ground to lodge themselves in; yet, to increase the Pride of the Enemy, he contracted the Spaces between the Tents narrower than usual, and in the mean time dispatch'd his Scouts to discover which was the most convenient Way to pass the Valley.

The Gauls attack Cæsar's Camp.

Cæsar's Stratagem.

There happen'd the same Day several Skirmishes between the Enemy's Cavalry and ours, on the Banks of the River; but neither the Gauls nor the Romans left their Camp, for they expected the Arrival of fresh Recruits; and Cæsar endeavour'd by a counterfeit Fear to draw 'em out of the Valley, that he might have the Opportunity of engaging 'em before his Camp; or at least, if he could not effect that Design, that having discover'd the safest Ways, he might cross the River, and pass the Valley with less Danger. The next Morning by Break of Day, the Enemy's Cavalry, marching up to our Camp, engag'd our Horse, who, by Cæsar's Command, gave Ground, and retreated into the Camp; he likewise caus'd the Rampier on all sides to be built higher, the Gates to be stopp'd up, and that the Soldiers, in the Execution of their Orders, should give all the Demonstrations of Fear and Confusion imaginable.

The Enemy, entic'd by these Artifices, cross'd the River with all their Forces, and drew up their Army in a very disadvantageous Place; our Men having retir'd from the Rampier, they approach'd our Camp, cast their Darts within the Trenches from all sides, and sent Heralds round about to proclaim, that if any Gaul or Roman would come over to 'em before nine of the Clock, they would grant him Quarter; but that time once expir'd, 'twould be too late to expect it: Nay, so contemptible were we in their Opinion, that because they

they fancy'd they could not enter the Ports of our Camp, which we had stopp'd up with a single Row of Turves, to make a seeming Opposition, some endeavour'd to scale the Rampier, whilst others began to fill the Ditch; Whereupon *Cæsar*, causing his Horse to fall out from all the Ports at the same Instant, put the Enemy immediately to Flight, not a Man of 'em daring to make the least Opposition; several of 'em he put to the Sword, and others were glad to surrender their Arms.

Rebellion in Namur & Hainault.

Cæsar routs the Hainaultois.

Cæsar thought it not convenient to pursue, because of the intervening Woods and Marshes; wherefore being satisfy'd with the Execution he had already done upon the Enemy in that Place, he arriv'd safe the same Day with all his Forces at *Cicero's* Camp, where he was amaz'd to behold the Turrets, Penthouses and Fortifications of the *Gauls*: Having drawn out the Legion, he perceiv'd not the tenth Man had escap'd without Wounds, from whence he computed with how much Valour and Danger they had defended their Camp; wherefore having applauded *Cicero* and the Legion for their Courage, he call'd for every Centurion and Tribune by Name, who, as *Cicero* inform'd him, had signaliz'd themselves in the Siege. Having a particular Account by the Captives of the Fate of *Sabinus* and *Cotta*, the next Day, in the publick Oration, he inform'd the Soldiers of the Matter, and comforted 'em upon the Receipt of so melancholy a Relation, saying, *They should be the less disturb'd at the Loss occasion'd by the Rashness of a Lieutenant, since the immortal Gods had taken care to expiate the Shame by their Virtue, not allowing the Enemy a considerable time to glory in their Success, nor them to deplore their Misfortune.*

Marches to Cicero.

Cæsar's Speech on Sabinus's Defeat.

C H A P. XXII.

THE Fame of *Cæsar's* Victory was carry'd with incredible Speed thro' the Country of *Rheims* to *Labienus*; for tho' his Quarters lay fifty Miles Distance from the Place of Action, which was not ended before three a Clock in the Afternoon, yet before Midnight there were Aclamations heard at the Ports of his Camp, whereby the People of *Rheims* congratulated *Labienus* on *Cæsar's* Success: Upon this News, *Indutiomarus* with his Countrymen, who design'd to have attack'd *Labienus's* Quarters the next Day, decamp'd in the Night, and return'd to *Treves*. *Cæsar* sent *Fabius* back again, with the Legion under his Command, to his Winter-quarters, designing

Labienus bears of Cæsar's Success.

Whereupon Indutiomarus returns home.

Commo-
tions in Gaul.



* *Aymoric, Civitates, or the People of Normandy and Britain design to besiege Roscius; but on the News of Cæsar's Victory return.*

The People of Sens conspire against Cavarinus: Ex- pel him the Kingdom.

signing to stay himself with three other Legions, to be lodg'd in several Places about *Amiens*; and since *Gaul* was so full of Commo-
tions, he resolv'd to stay there the rest of the Winter: For such was the Effect of *Sabinus's* Death, that every Province of *Gaul* sent mutual Embassies to inform each other of their Designs, and where they would begin the War; so great was their Diligence, they met in private Places in the Night, to consult of their Affairs, which allow'd not *Cæsar* a Moment's Rest all the Winter; for there never pass'd a Day, but he had Intelligence of some new Resolves or Insurrections in the Country. Amongst the rest, he was inform'd by *L. Roscius*, to whom he had given the Command of the thirteenth Legion, that a considerable Number of *Gauls* from * *Normandy* and *Britain* had march'd within eight Miles of his Quarters, designing to besiege him, but having Intelligence of *Cæsar's* Victory, return'd with as much Precipitation to their own Country, as if they had been put to Flight: Whereupon *Cæsar*, having summon'd the chief Noblemen of every State, frighten'd some by telling 'em he was acquainted with their Designs, and encourag'd others to continue loyal; by which means he preserv'd great part of the Country in Obedience. But the People of *Sens*, the most puissant and considerable Province in *Gaul*, by general Consent endeavour'd to murder *Cavarinus* that had been constituted their King by *Cæsar*; upon whose Arrival in *Gaul*, his Brother *Moritasgus* was Sovereign of that Country, which had formerly been subject to his Ancestors: The poor Prince having notice of their Design, prepar'd for his Safety by Flight, but they pursu'd him to the Confines of their Country, and depriv'd him as well of his private Patrimony, as his Kingdom. Having sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, to satisfy him about the Matter, he commanded 'em to send their whole Senate, but they refus'd to obey his Orders: And so far did this Example prevail amongst the Barbarians, that some were so hardy to declare open War; and so wonderful an Alteration did it work thro' the whole Country, that there was not a Province which was not suspected, except *Autun* and *Rheims*, two Countries always esteem'd by *Cæsar*, the first for its ancient and constant Fidelity to the People of *Rome*, the other for the late Services it had done in the *Gallic* Wars. Which is not to be wonder'd at for several Reasons, but especially for the Disturbance it was to 'em, to see them-
selves

themselves so much fall'n from their ancient Glory, that they who were formerly preferable to all other Nations in War, should now be Vassals to the People of Rome.

But *Indutiomarus* and his Countrymen of *Treves* were very busie all the Winter, in sending Embassadors cross the *Rhine*, to solicit the *Germans* by Promises of Money to come to their Assistance; assuring 'em, for their Encouragement, that the greatest Part of the *Roman Army* was already cut off: But not one Province of *Germany* could they bring over to their Party, for they all sent 'em word, they had twice experienc'd the Courage of the *Romans* to their Sorrow, in the Defeat of *Ariovistus*, and the People of *Hesse* and *Zutphen*; nor would they venture to try their Fortunes again. *Indutiomarus*, being disappointed of this Expectation, was nevertheless diligent in raising Forces at home, and in the neighbouring Provinces; in providing Horses, and encouraging Out-laws to repair to his Standard by considerable Rewards: So great was the Credit and Authority he acquir'd by this means throughout the whole Continent, that there came Embassadors to him from every Part of *Gaul*, as well in publick as privately, to solicit his Alliance.

Understanding that the People of *Sens* and *Chartres* of one side, push'd on by the Remembrance of their late Revolt, were marching to join him; that those of *Hainault* and *Namur*, on the other side, were preparing to make War against the *Romans*; and that he should not want Volunteers, whenever he march'd out of his Country, he call'd a Council of War. The Custom of the

Gauls, before they proclaim War is this; They summon all the Youth of the Country that are able to bear Arms to a general Place of Rendezvous, and he that has the Misfortune to come last, in the Presence of the rest, is put to Death with the cruellest Torments they can inflict upon him: At this Council *Indutiomarus* took care that his Son in-Law *Cingetorix*, Head of the opposite Faction, who, as we have already taken notice, behav'd himself faithfully to *Cesar*, should be proclaim'd a Rebel, and his Goods confiscated: Then he acquainted his Countrymen that he was call'd upon for his Assistance by the People of *Sens*, *Chartres*, and several other Provinces of *Gaul*; wherefore he design'd to march thro' the Confinnes of *Rheims*, and lay their Country waste; but first he would besiege *Labienui*, and accordingly dispatch'd such Orders as he thought most convenient.

Indutiomarus of Treves rebels.

Indutiomarus sends to Germany for Assistance, but is refus'd.

Howe'er he raises an Army at home.

Indutiomarus calls a Council of War. The custom of the Gauls before they declare War. He proclaims Cingetorix a Rebel.

Indutio-
marus of
Treves re-
bels.


Labiennus
besieg'd.

Labiennus's Quarters being equally fortify'd both by Art and Nature, he was not in the least uneasy for himself or his Legion; but thinking it convenient to lay hold of every advantageous Opportunity, upon the Intelligence he receiv'd of *Indutiomarus's* Designs, from *Cingetorix* and some of his Relations, who were present at the Council, he sent Commissaries to bring him Cavalry from all the Countries round about, to whom he appointed a certain Day of Rendezvous: In the mean while *Indutiomarus* with all his Horse rid about the Roman Camp, one while to discover our Situation, and at another to confer with, or threaten us, and generally they cast their Darts within our Rampier; but *Labiennus* suffer'd not his Men to move out of their Trenches, and contriv'd all the means he could to convince the Enemy of his Fear.

Labiennus
defeats In-
dutiomarus.

Whose Head
is cut off and
brought to
the Roman
camp.

Indutiomarus visited our Trenches each Day with more Contempt than before, 'till *Labiennus* had, by the favour of the Night, receiv'd the Cavalry from the neighbouring Countries which he had sent for; upon whose Arrival he kept so strict a Guard upon his Camp, that it was impossible for the Enemy to get Intelligence of the Matter: Wherefore *Indutiomarus*, according to his usual Custom, came the next Morning to our Camp, where he consum'd great part of the Day, whilst his Cavalry cast their Darts, and endeavour'd by opprobrious Language to provoke our Men to an Engagement: But the Romans made no Return 'till the Evening, when the Enemy were dispers'd and returning to their Camp; which *Labiennus* perceiving, caus'd his Cavalry to make an unexpected Sally upon 'em from two several Ports, having first given 'em particular Orders, that when they should have routed the Enemy, which happen'd according to his Expectation, they should all aim at *Indutiomarus*, and not wound any Man whatever, before they had kill'd him, lest the Delay might give him an Opportunity to escape: He promis'd considerable Rewards to the Man that should kill him; and sent the Cohorts after to sustain 'em, if there should be Occasion: Fortune prosper'd his Advice, for all the Roman Cavalry aiming only at *Indutiomarus*, he was overtaken and slain, as he endeavour'd to ford the River; his Head was brought to the Camp, and then the Horse returning, pursu'd and slew as many of the Enemy as they could: Upon the News of this Defeat the Forces of *Liege* and *Hainault* return'd again to their Country, and *Cæsar* enjoy'd more Peace in *Gaul* than before. C. J. Cæ-

C. J. Cæsar's

COMMENTARY

OF HIS

WAR

IN

GAUL.

The Sixth Book.

Cæsar having reduc'd the Hainaultois, and receiv'd Submission of those of Sens and Chartres, defeats the People of Guelders. Labienus has the like Success in Treves. Cæsar makes a second Expedition into Germany. The Sicambri attack his Camp; which he defends with some Loss; and having laid waste the Country of Liege, returns to Italy.

CHAP. I.

CÆSAR having many Reasons to expect farther Cæsar levies new Forces, Commotions in Gaul, commanded his Lieutenants sends to Pompey for more. M. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus, and T. Sextius, to raise Recruits; and writ to Cn. Pompey, then Proconsul, to desire, that since Publick Affairs detain'd him at Rome, he would list again the disbanded Legions which he formerly levy'd in Lombardy, and send

Commotions 'em to him : For he thought it of great Importance to *in Gaul.* his future Affairs, that the *Gauls* should perceive *Italy* was so puissant, she could not only immediately repair any Damage she receiv'd, but even send more Recruits than she lost. *Pompey*, mov'd by the publick Advice, and the Friendship he bore *Cæsar*, readily comply'd with his Demands, and, before the Winter expir'd, sent him three Legions: Thus having doubled the Number of the Cohorts which were lost with *Q. Titurius*, by his Forces and Dispatch, he gave the *Gauls* an Example of what the Riches and Discipline of the *Roman People* were able to effect.

C H A P. II.

*The People
of Treves
send to Ger-
many again
for Assis-
tance, and
obtain it.*

AFTER the Death of *Indutiomarus*, the People of *Treves* conferr'd the Kingdom on his next Relations, who lost no time in persuading the neighbouring *Germans*, by Promises of Money, to undertake the Assistance; but finding their Endeavours in vain, they made their Application to those that liv'd farther from 'em: At length they got some Provinces in the Humour to make a League with 'em, upon Delivery of Hostages as a Security for the Pay they were to receive for their Services; and the next Step they made was to enter into an Alliance with *Ambiorix*. *Cæsar* being inform'd how Matters went, and perceiving what Preparations were carrying on for War on all sides; that the People of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Guelthers*, and *Germans* cross the *Rhine* were already up in Arms; that the Natives of *Sens*, instead of appearing according to his Orders, were in Consultation with those of *Chartres*; and that the *Germans* were solicited by daily Embassies from the People of *Treves* to come into *Gaul*; thought it necessary to prepare for War earlier than usual.

Senones.

*Cæsar marches
into
Hainault;*

Wherefore having drawn out the four Legions which lay next his Quarters, e'er the Winter was over, he made so sudden and unexpected a March into *Hainault*, that before the Natives could either rally their Forces to oppose him, or save themselves by Flight, he had taken great Numbers of Cattle and Prisoners; he gave the Plunder to his Soldiers, and having laid the Country waste, the People were oblig'd to submit, and deliver Hostages for their future Fidelity: This Affair thus nimbly dispatch'd, he sent his Legions back into their Winter-quarters.

*which sub-
mits.*

C H A P. III.

Commotions
in Gaul.

HE had before appointed the States of *Gaul* to assemble at the Beginning of the Spring ; but the People of *Sens*, *Chartres* and *Treves*, did not make their Appearance there ; which *Cæsar* esteeming as a Revolt and Declaration of War, for the quicker Dispatch adjourn'd the Diet to *Paris*, which borders on the Country of *Sens*, and was within the Memory of Man united with it, yet not suspected to be concern'd in the Rebellion ; wherefore having pronounc'd from his Chair the Translation of the Diet to that Place, he began his Journey the same Day towards *Sens*, and arriv'd there in a short time by long Marches.

Cæsar translates the Diet to Paris.

Marches to Sens ;

Acco, the chief Author of that Rebellion, having Notice of *Cæsar's* Approach, commanded the People to retire into their Towns, but the Execution of his Orders was prevented by *Cæsar's* Dispatch : Wherefore finding it in vain to resist, they sent Embassadors to beg Pardon for what they had done, and prevail'd with the faithful *Autunois* to intercede for 'em : *Cæsar*, mov'd by so powerful a Mediation, accepted of their Excuse, because he doubted not but the following Summer would afford him Opportunities enough to exercise his Arms ; wherefore having demanded an Hundred Hostages, he committed 'em to the Custody of the *Autunois*. Those of *Chartres* did the like, and by the Intercession of the People of *Rheims*, whose Tributaries they were, on Delivery of Hostages obtain'd the same Favour. After this he return'd to the Diet, and commanded each Province to furnish him with their usual Quota of Cavalry.

They submit, and are pardon'd, at the Intercession of the Autunois.

Those of Chartres do the like, and the People of Rheims procure their Pardon.

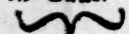
C H A P. IV.

HAVING quieted this Part of *Gaul*, *Cæsar* employ'd all his Thoughts upon the War with *Treves* and *Ambiorix* ; wherefore to prevent any new Commotions in *Sens*, which might arise either from *Cavarinus's* Desire of Revenge, or the People's ancient Malice, he commanded him to go along with him, at the Head of his Country's Cavalry.

And having thus settled these Affairs, because he was assur'd *Ambiorix* would not give him Battel, he began to provide against all his Designs. *Gelders* joins to the

Con-

Commotions
in Gaul.



Cæsar marches with
Five Legions
into Guelders.

That Province
submits.

The People
of Treves
march to be-
siege Labie-
nus.

Confines of *Liege*, is fortify'd with plenty of Woods and Marshes on every side, and this was the only Province of *Gaul* that had not sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, to desire a Peace; he was likewise inform'd that they entertain'd *Ambiorix*, and by the means of the People of *Treves* had enter'd into an Alliance with the *Germans*: But thinking it the wisest way, first to deprive *Ambiorix* of these Assistances, before he attack'd him; that he might not have an Opportunity of retiring to *Guelders*, or joining the *Germans* cross the *Rhine*; he sent the Baggage of his whole Army before to *Labienus* under the Convoy of two Legions, who was then in the Confines of *Treves*, himself marching in the mean time with the other Five against the People of *Guelders*; who, relying on the natural Fortifications of their Country, had rais'd no Forces, but upon his Arrival convey'd themselves and their Effects into the Woods and Marshes: Wherefore *Cæsar*, dividing all his Forces into three Battalions, committed one to the Care of Lieutenant *C. Fabius*, another to *M. Crassus* the Pay-master, and having in an Instant finish'd his Bridges, attack'd 'em in three places at once, and set Fire to their Towns and Buildings; he obtain'd a considerable Booty of Cattle and Prisoners, which oblig'd the Rebels to send Embassadors to sue for Peace: *Cæsar*, on Delivery of Hostages, accepted their Submission, telling 'em he should esteem 'em his Enemies, if they either receiv'd *Ambiorix* into their Country, or held any manner of Correspondence with him. This Affair dispatch'd, he left *Comius* of *Aras* there, with a Party of Horse, to keep the Country in Obedience, and march'd himself towards *Treves*.

CHAP. V.

WHILST *Cæsar* was thus employ'd, the People of *Treves*, having levy'd considerable Numbers of Horse and Foot, were marching to besiege *Labienus* with his single Legion, which was quarter'd in their Confines; and were already arriv'd within two Days March of his Camp, when they had Intelligence that he had receiv'd two Legions from *Cæsar*: Wherefore they encamp'd themselves about Fifteen Miles Distance from the *Romans*, designing to expect the Arrival of their *German* Auxiliaries. *Labienus*, understanding their Resolution, left only Five Cohorts to secure the Baggage, marching towards the Enemy with the other Twenty Five, and a

con-

considerable Number of Horse ; for he hop'd their Rashness might afford him an Opportunity to engage 'em ; and therefore encamp'd within a Mile of the Place where the *Gauls* were lodg'd. Between *Labienus* and the *Gauls* ran a River, which was difficult to ford, because the Banks were very rough and steep ; wherefore he believ'd the Enemy no more design'd to pass it than himself : The *Gauls* were daily in Expectation of fresh Supplies, for which Reason he declar'd in open Council, *Since the Germans were so near, he would neither venture the Loss of his Person, nor Army, but decamp the next Morning early.* 'Twas not very long e'er the Enemy had Notice of what pass'd in the Council, for having so many *Gauls* in our Army, 'twas natural for 'em to favour their Countrymen : But *Labienus* at Midnight call'd a Council of the Tribunes and Centurions of the first Order, whom he acquainted with his Design ; and that the Enemy might be more strongly confirm'd in their Opinion of the *Romans* Fear, he commanded the Soldiers to remove with more Noise and Confusion than usual, as if they were flying rather than decamping ; which the Enemy, not lying far off, were inform'd of by their Scouts before break of Day.

Commotions in Gaul.

He marches to meet, and encamps within a Mile of 'em.

Labienus's Artifice.

He counterfeits a Retreat.

Our Rere had hardly left their Trenches, before the *Gauls* began to encourage each other to the Pursuit ; saying, *So happy an Opportunity was not to be omitted ; that the Romans being in so great Confusion, 'twere Folly to stay in Expectation of the Germans ; nor was it suitable to the Honour of their Country, to permit so small a Party, already put to flight, and encumber'd by their Baggage, to escape, without daring to attack 'em : Wherefore they resolv'd to pass the River, and engage the Romans, notwithstanding the Disadvantage of the Ground.* *Labienus* imagining this would be the Effect of his Retreat, to carry on the Artifice 'till he had entic'd 'em all cross the River, march'd slowly on ; and sending his Baggage before, order'd it to be plac'd upon a little Hill ; then turning to his Soldiers he said, *Now Fortune has bless'd you with the Opportunity you have so long desir'd ; for now you have drawn the Enemy into a disadvantageous Place ; let me therefore desire you to behave yourselves with the same Courage under our Command, as you have done formerly when led by your Emperor ; believe him to be present, believe that he beholds, and will reward your Virtue.* Then commanding 'em to face about, he drew up the Legions in Order of Battel, and having detach'd

The Gauls cross the River.

Labienus's Speech to his Soldiers.

Commotions in Gaul. a small Party of Horse for a Guard to his Carriages, dispos'd the rest in the two Wings of his Army : Our

He engages,

and defeats the People of Treves.

Whereupon the Germans, who were marching to their assistance, return.

Men, setting up a Shout, immediately cast their Piles at the Enemy, who were so surpris'd to see the *Romans*, who they fancy'd but the Moment before had fled, now come with their Eagles display'd to attack 'em, that they had not the Courage to sustain the first Onset, but fled for Safety to the neighbouring Woods : *Labienus* pursu'd with his Cavalry, slew great Numbers of 'em, took as many Prisoners, and in a few Days after subdu'd the whole Country : For the *Germans* who were marching to their Assistance, having Notice of this Defeat, return'd home again, taking *Indutiomarus's* Kinsmen along with 'em, who having been the Occasion of this Revolt, were forc'd to fly their Country ; and *Cingetorix*, who had always given Proofs of his Fidelity to the *Romans*, was constituted King of *Treves*.

C H A P. VI.

Cæsar resolves to go into Germany.

Cæsar casts a Bridge across the Rhine, and marches over it.

The Ubii send Embassadors to him.

He marches against the Suebians.

CÆSAR, having left *Guelders*, was now arriv'd in *Treves*, where he resolv'd to pass the *Rhine*, to chastise the *Germans*, for having sent Supplies to the People of that Country, and prevent *Ambiorix's* being protected amongst 'em : For these Reasons he began to build a Bridge, a little above the Place where he had cross'd the River before ; it was contriv'd after the same Fashion with the former, and compleated in a few Days by the constant Industry of the Soldiers. Having left a strong Garrison on the other side the Bridge, to suppress all Insurrections in *Treves*, he cross'd the River with the rest of his Army : So soon as he arriv'd in *Germany*, the *Ubii*, who had formerly deliver'd Hostages, and were receiv'd into the *Romans* Protection, sent Embassadors to inform him, that they had given no Assistance to *Treves*, nor done any thing to forfeit their Fidelity ; but if he requir'd it, they were ready to send more Hostages ; wherefore they humbly besought him, that he would distinguish them from the rest of the *Germans*, and not punish the Innocent with the Guilty : *Cæsar*, upon further Examination, found the *Ubii* were not concern'd in the Matter, and that the Supplies were sent by the *Suebians* ; wherefore he enquir'd the Accesses to their Country.

Some few Days after he was inform'd by the *Ubii*, that the *Suebians* had drawn up all their Forces in one Place,

Place, from whence they sent Orders to their Tributaries, to furnish 'em with Supplies of Horse and Foot; *Second Expedition in- whereupon having chose a convenient Place to encamp to Germania* in, he order'd the *Ubii* to drive all their Cattle out of ny. the Fields into their Towns; hoping that so barbarous and unexperienc'd an Enemy, being streighen'd for want of Provisions, might easily be drawn to engage in a Place of Disadvantage; commanding 'em, in the mean while, to send frequent Scouts into *Suabia*, to discover the Enemy's Motions: They obey'd his Orders, and soon inform'd him, that the *Suabians*, upon notice of his Arrival, had retir'd to a prodigious Forest call'd *Bacenûs*, at the extreamest Part of their Confines, which serv'd for a mutual Frontier between them and the *Cherusci*, where they design'd to attend the Roman Army.

C H A P. VII.

BEING arriv'd at this Place, it may not be impertinent to give an Account of the Customs of Gaul and Germany, and the different Factions that reign amongst 'em: *The Gauls are so addicted to Faction, that they have not only Divisions among their several Provinces, Cantons, and Districts, but even in every Family; the Heads of these Parties are Persons of greatest Interest amongst 'em, to whose Judgment and Command they submit the Direction of all their Affairs: This Custom seems to have been instituted by Antiquity, to the Intent that the most obscure Person in the Common-wealth might be able to contend with his richer Adversary; for each of these Heads is oblig'd to protect his Party, otherwise he would soon be stripp'd of his Authority.* The same Custom is observ'd throughout the whole Continent of Gaul, which is divided into two Factions.

On *Cæsar's* first Arrival in the Country, those of *Autun* were the Chief of one, the *Franchecomtois* of the other Party; but finding themselves no equal Match for the *Autunois*, (who from all Antiquity bore the greatest Sway in Gaul, and had many Tributary States dependent on 'em,) pray'd Assistance of *Ariovistus* and the *Germans*; whom by considerable Presents, and great Promises, they drew cross the *Rhinè* to their Aid. After the Arrival of their new Allies, having fought many successful Battels, the Scales were so turn'd, that those of *Franchecomte* made themselves Masters of several Fiefs

What Possure the Affairs of Gaul were in on Cæsar's Arrival.

Second Expedition into Germany.



belonging to the *Autunois*, oblig'd 'em to send the Sons of their Nobility for Hostages, to take an Oath of Allegiance to 'em; usurp'd part of their Territories, and soon obtain'd the Sovereignty of the whole Continent. Whereupon *Divitiacus* took a Journey to *Rome*, to implore Assistance from the Senate, which he could not obtain; but on *Cæsar's* Arrival the Posture of Affairs was chang'd again, for the *Autunois* recover'd their Hostages, their Fiefs, and by *Cæsar's* Favour, acquir'd more Tributaries than they had before; for such as put themselves under their Protection were better us'd, and met with more Justice, than when they were Dependants on the *Franchecomtois*; whereby their Power and Reputation were soon so much encreas'd, that their Rivals were stripp'd of their Sovereignty: Those of *Franchecomte* thus depress'd, the People of *Rheims*, who were favour'd likewise by *Cæsar*, succeeded to their Authority; for they, whose ancient Enmity, would not permit 'em to be Vassals to the *Autunois*, became Clients to those of *Rheims*, who carefully protected 'em; by which means they immediately grew a Potent People. By this Turn of Affairs, the *Autunois* once more became Head of one of the most powerful Parties in *Gaul*, and the People of *Rheims* of the other.

C H A P. VIII.

The Government of Gaul.
* Equites.

THERE are only two Degrees of Men in *Gaul* that have any Stroke in the Administration of Publick Affairs, the Druids or Clergy, and the * Nobility; for the Commons are esteem'd no more than Servants, have no manner of Interest, and are never admitted to sit in Parliament: but being oppress'd either by their own Debts, the Imposition of Tributes, or the Injustice of the Powerful, are oblig'd to become Vassals to the Nobility; who have the same Power over 'em, that Lords usually exercise on their Villains. To the Druids belongs the Care of Divine Things, of private and publick Sacrifices, with the Interpretation of their Religion: Great Numbers of Youth come to be instructed by 'em, and they are held in mighty Veneration amongst their Countrymen, who submit all Difference to their Arbitration:

The Druids Office.

They are supreme Judges of all Controversies.

Let the Offence be of what nature soever, if any Person be kill'd, if the Controversie relates to Titles of Land, or the Extent of Confines, these are the Judges, whose Sentence must decide the Matter: These are they that must pronounce Rewards and Punishments: And whoever refuses

to abide their Decree, either Lord or Vassal, they excommunicate him, which is the greatest Penalty that can be inflicted amongst 'em; * For they who lie under the Condemnation of this Sentence, are reckon'd in the Number of the wicked, all the Natives shun 'em, and avoid their Company as contagious; they are not permitted to commence a Suit, have no Respect paid 'em, nor are suffer'd to discharge any Office in the Common-wealth. Those Druids have a Superintendent, to whom they are all subject, upon whose Decease the most worthy succeeds him; but if there happen to be several Candidates, the Election is decided by Majority of Votes, and sometimes by the Sword. Once a Year they have a general Rendezvous at a consecrated Place set apart for that purpose, in the Confiners of Chartres, which lies in the midst of Gaul; hither flock all such as have any Controversies to decide, and submit to their Decrees: 'Tis thought this Discipline was first instituted in England, and from thence transferr'd to Gaul; for even at this Day, those who desire to be perfect Masters of their Art take a Voyage thither to learn it.

Second Ex-
pedition in-
to Germa-
ny.
From this
Custom no
doubt we de-
rive our Out-
lawries; for
by the ancient
Laws of Eng-
land, before
Men were
Outlaw'd for
Debt, he who
lay under
that Sentence
was reckon'd
a more hide-
ous Monster
than an Ex-
communicate
in a Roman
Catholick
Country; Ca-
put gerebat

Lupinum, and it was lawful for any Man to kill him.

The Druids seldom attend the Army, for they are exempt from that Duty, from Taxes, and enjoy all manner of Immunities: The Encouragement they have is so great, that many chuse to be of their Profession, and others are sent to their College by their Parents; their first Lesson is to learn a considerable Number of Verses by rote, which some have spent Twenty Years about, for they never commit 'em to Writings, not that they are ignorant of Letters, for on all other Occasions they make use of Greek Characters; but I suppose they observe this Custom, to lock up their Learning from the Vulgar, and exercise the Memory of their Scholars. Their chief Principle is, that the Soul never dies, but transmigrates, after the Decease of one Body, to another, which Doctrine is of great use to inspire 'em with Courage and a Contempt of Death; but they have many other Traditions they instruct their Youth in, concerning the Stars, and their Motion, the Extent of the World, the Nature of Things, and the Power of the Immortal Gods.

The Pri-
leges and Im-
munities th.y
enjoy.

Their De-
votions.

CHAP. IX.

NEXT in Degree to these are the Nobility, who when any War, breaks out, as there did almost every Year before

The Office of
the Nobility.

Second Ex-before Cæsar's Arrival, either Offensive or Defensive, have petition in the Direction of all Affairs; each being attended by a to Germa- Number of Vassals in Proportion to his Estate and Quality. ny. lity, the only Mark of Grandeur amongst them.

Their Hu- The whole Country of Gaul is much addicted to Super- mane Sacri- stition: Wherefore they who are dangerously ill, or daily fices. conversant in the Dangers of Battel, either offer humane Sacrifices, or devote themselves to the Altar; because they think the Gods are never appeas'd, but by the Death of one Man for another: Wherefore they have publick Offerings of this kind, which are committed to the Care of the Druids, who have large hollow Images, bound about with Osiers, into which they put Men alive, and setting fire to the Case suffocate 'em. They believe Thieves, High-way-men and other Offenders, to be the most grateful Offerings to the Gods, but when Honesty has made those scarce, the Innocent are forc'd to supply their Places.

Their Gods. Mercury is their Tutelary God, to whose Honour they Mercury their Tutelary God. have many Images erected; him they esteem as the Inventor of Arts, and apply themselves to him for Protection in their Journies and Undertakings, believing him to have a particular Influence over Merchandise, and all manner of Gain: Next in Esteem to Mercury is Apollo, then Mars, Apollo. Jupiter and Minerva, of whom they have the same Notions with other Countries; that Apollo can cure their Diseases, that Minerva first taught Mankind Works and Manufactures, that Jupiter is the Supream Deity, and that Mars presides over War: Wherefore before they commence a War, they devote great part of the Spoils they shall obtain to this Deity; and, when they obtain the Victory, offer up all the Cattle they have taken, on his Altars; the rest of the Prey they dispose into a Place set apart for that purpose; and in several Countries may be seen Monuments compil'd of Offerings of this Nature: They seldom neglect the Performance of their Vows, conceal any Part of their Plunder, or presume to carry it away; for the Penalties inflicted for Crimes of this nature are the most cruel that can be devis'd.

Their De- The Gauls believe themselves to be descended from * Plu- fcent from to, because their Druids have so inform'd 'em; wherefore * Dis or Plu- they do not count the Time as other Nations do, by the Days, to. They count the Time by but Nights, and in the Annual Remembrance of their Births, the Beginning of their Months and Years, they always prefer the Night before the Day. Another Custom they have, which seems very particular, they never permit their Children to appear in Publick before 'em, 'till they are

They count
the Time by
Nights, as we
our seven-
night, Fort-
night, &c.

are of sufficient Age to bear Arms, for the contrary they Second Expedition in-
esteem dishonourable.

Whatever Fortune the Wife brings, the Husband is ob- to Germa-
lig'd to equal it, and both the Sums together, with their ny.
Annual Product, are laid up for the Benefit of the Survi- The Disposal
vour : The Men have Power of Life and Death over their of the Wife's
Wives and Children ; and when any Man of Quality dies, Fortune.
his next Relations assemble to enquire into the Occasion of The Men
his Death ; upon the least Suspicion they have Power to give have Power
his Widow the Question, with as little Ceremony as if she of Life and
had been one of his Servants ; and if they find her guilty, Death over
to burn her alive. Their Funerals are very sumptuous and th ir Wives
magnificent, in proportion to their Quality ; every thing the and Children.
deceas'd Party set the greatest Value on is cast into the Their Fune-
Pile, even Animals ; and formerly, these Vassals and Cli-
ents whom they held the dearest, were oblig'd to attend 'em
to the other World.

Those Provinces which are esteem'd for prudent Admini-
stration, have ordain'd by Law, That he who receives News
from the neighbouring States, of Importance to the Common-
wealth, shall immediately make his Application to the Ma-
gistrate, without declaring it to any other Person : Because
they have experienc'd the Nature of their Subjects to be
such, that being frighted by false Reports, they are apt to
raise Commotions, and put the State in disorder by their
rash Resolves ; wherefore the Magistrates only trust 'em
with such Informations as they think convenient, stifling
the rest ; nor do they permit 'em to discourse concerning
State-Affairs any where but in the Council.

CHAP. X.

BUT the Germans differ mightily from the Gauls in The Customs
their Constitution ; for they have neither Druids to direct of the Ger-
'em in Sacred Rites, nor trouble themselves with Sacrifices : mans.
They acknowledge no Gods but those they behold, and whose Their Goods.
Influence they are apparently oblig'd to, as the Sun, * Fire,
and the Moon, for they have not so much as heard of any
other : They are perpetual Huntsmen and Warriours ; in-
ure themselves to Labour and Hardship from their Child-
hood ; and esteem those Men the most, who have liv'd the Their chast
longest Virgins, which they believe contributes to their
Growth, Vigour, and the strengthening of their Nerves :
But nothing is esteem'd so ignominious amongst 'em, as to
have known a Woman before they pass'd the twentieth
Year of their Age ; which cannot be conceal'd, because they
Sol, * Vul-
canus, Luna
was

Second Ex- wash promiscuously in their Rivers, and only make use of
pedition in- Skins and small Mantles of Fur instead of Cloaths, leaving
to Germa- the greatest Part of their Bodies naked.

ny.

Cloathing.
Their Diet.

Way of
Living.

They mind not Agriculture, for the greatest Part of 'em live upon Milk, Cheese, and Flesh-Meat; nor has any Man Fields of his own, distinguish'd from the Common by Boundaries; for their Magistrates and Princes yearly distribute to every Canton such a Portion of Land as they think sufficient, in some Part of the Country; where they send 'em to continue only for one Year, and oblige 'em to remove the next: Which Custom they observe, lest the Love of the Place they have long inhabited, having changed the Peoples Genius from the Study of War, to that of Tillage, they should endeavour to extend their Confines, and the weaker be oppress'd by the more powerful; lest they should become curious in their Buildings, to defend 'em from the Summer's Heat and Winter's Cold; but chiefly to prevent Covetousness, the Root of all Factions and Discord, and preserve that Equality of Riches in the Commonwealth, which produces Peace and Content.

Their Con-
fines lie waste
for a great
way round.

Every Country thinks it honourable to have their Con- fines round about lie waste; for they esteem it an Argu- ment of their Courage, to have expell'd their Neighbours, and struck so great a Terror into 'em, that they dare not venture to approach their Territories; besides, they think this the way to secure 'em from the Danger of sudden In- cursions. Whenever a State wages War, either Offensive or Defensive, they make choice of an Officer for that Occa- sion, whom they invest with Power of Life and Death; but they have no such Magistrate in time of Peace, for the chief of every Canton distributes Justice, and decides all Controversies amongst his own People. They don't esteem it infamous to steal out of their own Confines, but rather a laudable Exercise to preserve their Youth from Idleness; therefore when any Nobleman declares in Council he designs to make an Expedition, they who approve the Leader and the Cause, rise up to proffer their Service; for which they are applauded by their Countrymen; but they who stay be- hind, after they have once offer'd to go, are look'd upon as Traytors or Deserters, and never trusted after: They are strict Observers of Hospitality, and all their Doors are open to such as fly to 'em for Refuge on any Occasion; whom they carefully protect.

Fabbing out
of their Con-
fines no Dis-
grace.

There was once a time, when the Gauls were supe- rior to the Germans in Virtue, and made War upon 'em; when Scarcity of Land, and fruitful Loins, oblig'd 'em

to send Colonies cross the *Rhine*: Wherefore the most *Second Ex-*
 fertile Parts of *Germany* about the *Hercynian Forest*, *pedition in-*
 which I find *Eratoſthenes* and some other *Grecians* have to *Germa-*
 mention'd by the Name of *Orcinia*, were inhabited by *ny.*
 the Natives of Upper *Languedoc*, who having formerly
 possess'd themselves of that Part of the Country, con-
 tinue there to this Day; are much esteem'd for their
 Courage and Justice, and are in all things conformable
 to the *Germans* way of Living, as well in Diet as
 Cloathing; but the Neighbourhood and Commerce
 which the *Gauls* have since held with the *Roman Pro-*
 vince has taught 'em to live more luxuriously; by which
 means growing insensibly weaker, they have been over-
 come in several Battels, and reduc'd to such a Degree,
 that they no longer pretend to compare themselves with
 the *Germans*.

*Volæ Te-
stolages.*

The *Hercynian Forest* is nine Days Journey over in
 Breadth, for I cannot compute it any other way, because
 the *Germans* are ignorant of the use of Measure: It
 commences in the Confines of *Switzerland*, *Basil* and
Spires, and extends along the River *Danube* as far as
Transylvania: then turning from the River to the left,
 it runs thro' an infinite number of Countries; nor is
 there any *German* that has travell'd thro' it, or knows
 its utmost Extent, tho' several have have gone fifty Days
 Journey in it.

*Nemetes,
Rauraci.*

In this Wood are several Kinds of wild Beasts, which
 are not to be met with elsewhere; but these are the
 most remarkable of 'em: A Bull, whose Shape re-
 sembles that of a Stag; with one Horn only, planted
 directly in the midst of his Forehead, much longer and
 freighter than those of our Cattel; this Horn is divid-
 ed at the Top into several Branches; the Males and
 Females are both shap'd alike, and their Horns of the
 same Size: They have likewise another kind of Ani-
 mals, whom they call * *Alces*, these much resemble the
 † *Roe-Buck* in their Shape, and various Colour of their
 Skins, but are something of a larger Size, have no
 Horns, nor Joints in their Legs, never lie down to
 sleep, nor, if they chance to fall, are able to get up
 again; wherefore, when they are weary, they lean a-
 gainst the next Tree, which serves 'em for a Resting-
 Place: For this Reason, when the Huntsmen have

*Strange
Beasts in the
Hercynian
Forest.
Bull with one
Horn.*

*Alces. * Vol-
sius fancies
the Singular
Termination
of this Word
should be
Alx, from the
German
Elch; Mon-
sieur D' Ab-
lancourt
translates it
wild Asses.*

I 4

found

† The Original is not *Capreis* but *Capris*, tho' in *Salmasius's* Opinion it ought to be so,
 with whom *Vollius* likewise agrees.

*War with
Ambiorix
and the
People of
Liege.*

Uri or Eulalos.

found out their Haunts, they either loosen the Roots of all the Trees thereabout, or Saw 'em almost quite off, to deceive the Animal, who coming to the usual Leaning Place, the Prop fails, and both fall down together.

The third Species are those Creatures they call *Uri*, very little less than Elephants; in Colour, Shape and Kind resembling much our Bulls: They are prodigious strong, wonderfully nimble, and spare neither Man nor Beast that has the Misfortune to come in their Way; wherefore the Natives are very industrious in digging Pits to catch 'em; the Youth inure themselves to this Exercise, and particular kind of Hunting; for he who has kill'd the greatest Numbers of 'em, brings the Horns to witness for his Courage, and is highly applauded by his Countrymen. So Savage is the Nature of these Beasts, tho' taken never so young, they cannot be tam'd; the Largeness, Shape and Species of their Horns differ much from our Bulls, the Natives preserve 'em carefully, tip the Edges with Silver, and drink out of 'em on Festival Days.

CHAP. XI.

*Cæsar re-
passes the
Rhine,
breaks down
half his
Bridge, and
leaves a Gar-
rison there.*

*He detaches
Basilus a-
gainst Am-
biorix;*

CÆSAR had notice from his *Ubian* Scouts, that the *Suabians* were retir'd into their Woods; wherefore apprehending Want of Provisions, (because, as we have already taken Notice, the *Germans* are but little addicted to Agriculture) he resolv'd to march no further; but that the Enemy might not be intirely deliver'd from their Fears by his Retreat, and that he might prevent their sending Assistance to the *Gauls*, having repass'd the *Rhine*, he only broke up about two hundred Foot of his Bridge, on that Side next *Germany*, leaving the rest standing; and at the Foot built a wooden Tower four Stories high, with other Fortifications, where he left a Garrison of twelve Cohorts, under the Command of young *C. Volcatius Tullus*, to defend it. When Harvest approach'd, he detach'd *L. Minutius Basilus*, with all his Cavalry, against *Ambiorix*; whom he order'd to march thro' the Forest of *Arden*, which is the largest in *Gaul*, for it extends above five hundred Miles in Length, from the Banks of the *Rhine* and the Confines of *Treves* and *Hainault*. He commanded him to keep no Fires in his Camp, that the Enemy might not have Notice of his Approach, hoping that Secrecy and Dispatch might give him an Opportunity of doing some

some considerable Exploit ; and he himself design'd to follow immediately after.

War with
Ambiorix
and the
People of
Liege.

Basilus perform'd his Orders beyond Expectation, for he arriv'd so quickly upon the Enemy's Territories, that he surpris'd great Numbers of 'em in the Field ; and by their Instruction march'd directly to *Ambiorix*, who had only a slender Guard of Cavalry about him : But as Fortune has an Influence over all Affairs, so she assumes a peculiar Power in those of War ; for as 'twas a most extraordinary Chance, that *Basilus* should fall upon *Ambiorix*'s Quarters, before he was prepar'd to receive him, and be seen, e'er his Arrival was heard of ; so must it be acknowledg'd as strange an Accident, that *Ambiorix* should escape after the Loss of his Arms, Horses and Chariots. But he was oblig'd to the Situation of his House, which was surrounded by a Wood, for his Escape ; for the *Gauls* generally build near a Wood or a River, for Coolness ; and his Men, possessing themselves of a narrow Passage, sustain'd the Attack of our Cavalry 'till their Master had an Opportunity of mounting his Horse, and securing himself in the Thickets : Thus Fortune freed him from the Danger herself had plung'd him into,

who narrowly
escapes being
taken.

C H A P. XII.

AMBIORIX, having secur'd his Person, did not endeavour to assemble any Forces, but sent Messengers privately thro'out the Country, to command every Man to provide for his own Safety ; thinking it either dangerous to venture an Engagement, or wanting Time, by the sudden Arrival of the *Roman* Cavalry, to put his Designs in Execution : Wherefore one part of 'em fled for Shelter to the Forest of *Arden*, whilst the rest endeavour'd to secure themselves in the neighbouring Marshes. Whereupon *Cativulcus*, who shar'd one half of the Kingdom of *Liege* with *Ambiorix*, and was now grown too old to endure the Fatigues of War or Flight, having bestow'd many Imprecations on his Partner, for being the Cause of that unhappy Revolt, sought Refuge for his Cares from a poysonous Draught, extracted from the Yew Tree, (whereof they have Plenty in *Gaul* and *Germany*,) and so expir'd.

Cativulcus
poisons him-
self.

In the mean while the People of * *Cologn* and *Zul-pich*, two *German* Colonies that lie between *Liege* and *Treves*, sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, to desire he would

* *Condrusi*,
Segni, send
Embassadors
to *Cæsar* to
declare their
Innocence.
But *Orteli-*
us thinks the
Condrusi are
those of
Condrotz.

not

War with not count them amongst the Number of his Enemies; *Ambiorix* or believe that all the *Germans* on their side the *Rhine* had a hand in the same Conspiracy; for they assur'd him they never design'd to make War upon the *Romans*, or sent *Ambiorix* any Supplies; which *Cæsar* being satisfy'd in from the Examination of the Captives, promis'd 'em, on Condition they sent all the Natives of *Liege*, that should fly for Shelter to their Country, to him, he would not commit any Acts of Hostility in their Confines; then having divided his Army into three Parts, he sent all the Baggage of his Legions to *Tongre*, which is the Name of a Castle almost in the midst of *Liege*, where *Titurius* and *Arunculeius* had formerly their Winter-Quarters. The last Year's Fortifications were yet intire; wherefore *Cæsar*, designing to save his Soldiers as much Labour as he could, made choice of this Place, where he left the fourteenth Legion, which was one of the Three he had lately receiv'd from *Italy*, and two hundred Horse, under the Command of *Q. Tullius Cicero*, for a Guard.

Cæsar leaves his Baggage at Tongre, Attuatica. Divides his Army into three Parts.

Detaches Labienus towards, Guel-ders, Trebo-nius towards Namur, and marches himself to-wards the Forest of Arden.
* *Scaldus.*

Titus Labienus he detach'd with three Legions to-wards the Sea-Coasts, and the Borders of *Guel-ders*; *C. Trebonius*, with the like Number, he sent to lay the Country waste, on that Side next *Namur*; resolving to march himself, with the Remainder of the Army, to-wards the River * *Scheld*, which flows into the *Mose*, and to the Forest of *Arden*, whither he was inform'd *Ambiorix* was gone, with a small Party of Horse. When he first began his March, he design'd to return again in seven Days, for he had left the Legion in Garrison Provisions for no longer Time; wherefore he likewise order'd *Labienus* and *Trebonius*, if they could conveniently, to return within the same Time, that upon further Consultation they might know what new Methods were properest to be taken for defeating the Enemy's Designs.

C H A P. XIII.

The Rebels hide them-selves in the Woods and Marshes.

THE Rebels, as we have already taken notice, had no Army, Town, or Garrison for us to attack, but were all dispers'd amongst the Vallies, Woods, Marshes, and such other Places, where they hop'd to find Shelter; the Natives were all well acquainted with these lurking Holes, which oblig'd *Cæsar* to take extraordinary Care to prevent his Men from Straggling, for the

the Safety of each individual Soldier in some measure imported the whole Army, which united, had nothing to fear from a dispers'd and frighten'd People; lest the Desire of Plunder should tempt 'em to ramble thro' those unknown and private Ways, where the Thickness of the Woods would not permit 'em to march in Bodies: Wherefore, to compleat the Business, and extirpate the Race of so wicked a People, he found it necessary to send an infinite Number of small Parties against 'em; for so long as he oblig'd the Soldiers to maintain their Ranks, according to the *Roman* Discipline, the very Situation of the Place serv'd the Rebels for a Fortress, who had Courage enough to lay Ambuscades, and attack us on Advantage when dispers'd. In the midst of these Difficulties, *Cæsar* took all the Care imaginable, and tho' the Soldiers were inflam'd with Revenge, yet he rather chose to omit an Opportunity of injuring the Enemy, than do it to the Detriment of his Army: Wherefore he invited the Countries round about, who being attracted by the Hopes of Plunder, soon flock'd from all sides to destroy the People of *Liege*; by this means he only hazarded the *Gauls* in the Woods, preserv'd his own Legions safe, and had the Rebels surrounded, whose Race and Memory he resolv'd to extinguish, to revenge the Crimes they had been guilty of.

*War with
Ambiorix
and the
People of
Liege.*

*Cæsar pro-
claims it
lawful for all
the Countries
round to
harass Liege*

C H A P. XIV.

THUS their Destruction went forward in all Places 'till the seventh Day was arriv'd, the Time appointed for *Cæsar's* Return to *Tongre*; but hence may be learn'd what influence Chance has over the Affairs of War: The Rebels, as we have already remark'd, being frighten'd and dispers'd, had not any Body of Forces to give us the least Apprehensions; whereupon the *Germans* cross the *Rhine*, having notice that the People of *Liege* were destin'd to Destruction, and that all Mankind were welcome to partake of the Plunder; the *Sicambri* that lie next the River, who formerly entertain'd the People of *Hesse* and *Zurphen*, when they fled from *Cæsar*, resolving to come in for a Snack, levy'd two thousand Horse, and crossing the River about thirty Miles below the broken Bridge, where *Cæsar* had left a Garrison, soon arriv'd on the Borders of *Liege*: They took several of the Natives Prisoners, and obtain'd a considerable Number of Cattle, which they are very greedy

*The Sicam-
bri cross the
Rhine and
come into
Liege,*

*where they
get a consi-
derable
Booty.*

War with of; neither Marsh nor Wood put a Stop to their Career, so long as Plunder call'd 'em forward, for from their Cradles they are inur'd to War and Theft: They were very inquisitive to know where *Cæsar* lay; and at last were inform'd that he and his Army had left the Country: But they desisted from their Progress upon the Advice of a Captive, who ask'd 'em, Why they would trouble themselves to pursue so trifling and worthless a Booty, when they might make their Fortunes at a single Stroke? For they might arrive in three Hours March at *Tongre*, where the *Romans* had repos'd all their Baggage, under the Guard of so small a Garrison, as was not sufficient to man the Ramparts, nor durst a Man of 'em venture out of their Trenches: Big with Expectation, they hid the Booty they had already got, and march'd directly to *Tongre*, whither they were conducted by the Captive who gave 'em this Advice.

but on the Advice of a Captive, desist from pursuing those of Liege.

and march directly to Cicero's Quarters.

C H A P. XV.

Cicero detaches five Cohorts to forage.

CICERO had so strictly observ'd *Cæsar's* Orders hitherto, that he had not permitted so much as a Boy to stir out of the Garrison; but the seventh Day he began to despair of the Performance of *Cæsar's* Promise, because he was inform'd he had march'd farther up into the Country, and could hear no News of his Return: Wherefore being mov'd by the Complaints of his Soldiers, who began to murmur at his Patience, and esteem their present Confinement as bad as a Siege, not suspecting any Accident of this nature could befall him within so short a Space as that of three Miles, whilst an Army of nine compleat Legions with a considerable Number of Horse was abroad, which had already defeated and dispers'd the Enemy; he detach'd five Cohorts to forage in the nearest Corn Fields, which were divided from his Camp only by a little Hill: All the Sick and Wounded of the Army were left in this Garrison, and they who were a little recover'd, to the Number of three hundred, were of the same Party, which was attended by all the Carts and Servants of the Camp.

The Germans arrive at Tongre, and endeavour to force the Decuman Port.

The very Moment the Foragers were gone out, arriv'd the German Cavalry, who endeavour'd to force their Passage thro' the *Decuman* Port with the same Fury they had gallop'd thither; the Woods prevented our having Notice

Notice of their Approach, which was so unexpected, that the Suters, who had Sheds in the Counterscap, had not leisure to save themselves by retiring within the Works. Our Men were extremely surpris'd at so sudden an Attack; and the Cohort that was plac'd for an Out-guard could hardly sustain the first Onset: In the mean time the Enemy rode round about the Trenches, to discover some more convenient Place to enter at; our Soldiers had much to do to maintain the Gates, for all other Parts were so well Fortify'd they needed no Defence: In fine, the whole Camp was frighted, every Man inquir'd of the next he met the Occasion of the Tumult, and no body knew which way to advance the Standards, or where to post himself; some reported the Camp was already taken, others, that the *Germans* having defeated *Cæsar* and his Army, were now come to storm their Trenches; whilst the rest, remembering that *Titurius* and *Cotta* had lost their Lives in the Place they were lodg'd in, became superstitious, and presag'd the same Fate to themselves. This Confusion confirm'd the Enemy in the belief of what the Prisoner had reported, that we had no Garrison within; wherefore encouraging each other, not to let so rich a Booty slip out of their Hands, they began to storm our Rampier.

*War with
Ambiorix
and the
People of
Liege.*

*The Romans
Confusion.*

P. Sextus Baculus, Primipile to *Cæsar*, whose Name has been mention'd in former Actions, was left behind in the Camp, and was so dangerously ill, he had eaten nothing for Five Days before; despairing of Safety either for himself or his Soldiers, weak and unarm'd he left his Tent; and perceiving Things were reduc'd to the last Extremity, (for the Enemy had almost forc'd their Passage,) he snatch'd Arms from the next Soldier, and plac'd himself before the Gate: The Centurions of the Out-guard follow'd him, and all together for a while sustain'd the *Germans* Charge, 'till *Sextus* having receiv'd many dangerous Wounds, began to Faint, was carry'd off by the Soldiers, and the rest had so far recover'd themselves, as to ascend the Rampier, and make a Shew of Defence.

*Baculus, tho'
wounded,
leaves his
Tent, and
places him-
self in the
Gate 'till the
rest of the
Soldiers
rally.*

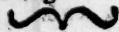
C H A P. XVI.

IN the mean while our Foragers were returning home again, and hearing a Noise, sent the Cavalry before to discover the Occasion, who brought 'em word how dangerous a Posture Affairs were in: They were

*The Foragers
returning
fall in with
the Ger-
mans.*

all

War with
Ambiorix
and the
People of
Liege.



The Veteran
Soldiers,
drawn up in-
to a Triangle,
force their
way thro' the
Germans,
and arrive
safe in the
Camp:

The new
Levies not
taking the
same way are
most of 'em
cut off.

all strangely surpris'd at the News, and lamented the Want of a Fortification to shelter 'em from the Enemy; but especially the new Levies, who having no Experience in War, impatiently waited for the Tribunes and Centurions Orders, to know which way they must dispose themselves: The *Germans*, at first when they beheld our Ensigns, left off the Storm, fancying the Legions which the Prisoners had inform'd 'em were march'd further into the Country, were now return'd; but finding their Error, and contemning the smallness of our Number, they surrounded our Foragers on all Sides.

The Soldiers Servants fled for Shelter to the next rising Ground, whence they were immediately driven, and cast themselves for Safety amongst the Ranks of the Maniples, which put 'em into more Confusion than they were in before: Some were of Opinion 'twould be the safest Method to draw themselves into a Triangle, and so force their Way thro' the Enemy; because the Camp was so near, that if some should fall in the Attempt, the rest might secure themselves; but others thought it best to possess the Hill, and all expect the same Fate. The Veteran Soldiers, who went out under one Ensign, could by no means approve of this Advice; wherefore encouraging each other, under the Conduct of *C. Trebonius*, a Roman Knight, their Commanding Officer, they broke through the midst of the Enemy, and arriv'd every Man of 'em safe in the Camp; they were follow'd by the Servants and Cavalry, who pursuing their Success, procur'd their Safety by the Soldiers Courage: But they who had possess'd themselves of the Hill, for want of Discipline, could neither persist in their own Scheme, and maintain their Ground, nor imitate their Fellow-Soldiers Example, who ow'd their Lives to the brisk Effort which carry'd 'em so fortunately to the Camp; but endeavouring to obtain the Gate, quitted their Post of Advantage: The Centurions, who for their Courage had been promoted from the lower Order in other Legions to the upper of these new Troops, fought bravely to maintain the Glory they had formerly acquir'd, and dy'd with Honour; their Courage, beyond Expectation, gave some of the Soldiers the Means to escape, but the rest were surrounded and cut to pieces by the Enemy.

C H A P. XVII.

War with
Ambiorix
and the
People of
Liege.

The Romans
Fear after
the Germans
Retreat.

THE *Germans* now despairing of Success, because they saw our Soldiers ready to defend the Works, return'd cross the *Rhine* with the Booty they had hidden in the Woods; but so great was the Fear which possess'd our Soldiers even after their Retreat, that when *C. Volusenus* arriv'd at Night with the Cavalry, they could not be persuaded that *Cesar* and his Army were safe, and returning to the Camp: In fine, they were so bewitched with Fear, that they would not believe but *Cesar* was routed, and none but the Horse had escap'd; for they could not conceive how the *Germans* durst attempt to force their Trenches, so long as he was safe; but his Arrival convinc'd 'em of their Error.

When *Cesar* came back, he was inform'd of the late Action, in which he found nothing to complain of, but the Cohorts foraging contrary to his Orders; for the Enemy's sudden Attack prov'd how dangerous it was to trust Fortune with the most minute Opportunity: He wonder'd extremely the *Germans* had so narrowly escap'd him, but infinitely more, that they who cross'd the *Rhine* to destroy *Ambiorix's* Country, should do him the greatest Service imaginable, by endeavouring to take the *Roman* Camp.

Cesar returns to the Camp, blames *Cicero* for letting his Cohorts forage contrary to Orders.

C H A P. XVIII.

ON his Return to harraßs the Country of *Liege*, having levy'd great Numbers of Forces in the neighbouring Provinces, he sent 'em into all Parts of the Country; not a House nor Village that came in their way escap'd burning, for they plunder'd on every Side: The continual Rains, as well as the Number of Soldiers and Cattle, help'd to destroy the Corn, so that they who escap'd the Sword, were likely to die with Famine. The Cavalry were divided into so many Parties, that they often came to the very Places where the Captives inform'd 'em they had actually seen *Ambiorix*, who could not possibly be far from thence; for some were so industrious in the Pursuit, that they almost wrought Miracles to oblige their General; each Moment flatter'd 'em the next would compleat their Happiness, but *Ambiorix* riding from one Thicket to another, and removing his Quarters in the Night,

Cesar returns to harraßs *Liege*.

The Cavalry divided into small Parties.

Ambiorix, trusting his Person only to a Guard of 4 Horse, often narrowly escapes.

escap'd

escap'd their most diligent Search ; being attended only by Four Horse, all the Friends he durst confide in.

Cæsar re-
turns to
Rheims,
bolds a Diet.

Durocorto-
rum Rhemo-
rum.

Acco sen-
tenced more
majorum.

* Aqua &
igne inter-
dicti.

† Agendicum
Senonum.

Thus *Cæsar* having laid their Country waste, only with the Loss of Two Cohorts, march'd his Army to the Capital of *Rheims*, where he summon'd the Diet of *Gaul* : When the States were assembled, he command-
ed 'em to examine into the Rebellion of *Sens* and *Char-
tres* ; and *Acco* being found the Principal Cause of this
Revolt, receiv'd a severe Sentence, which was, To be
stripp'd naked, and to have his Neck fix'd between the
Granes of a Fork, then whipp'd to Death, and afterwards
Beheaded ; and those who fled from Justice were * Ba-
nish'd. This Affair dispatch'd, he sent Two Legions
to take up their Winter-Quarters in *Treves*, Two more
to *Langre*, the other Six to the † Capital of *Sens* ; and
having provided his Army with Corn, return'd, accord-
ing to his Custom, to hold the Diet of *Lombardy*.

C. J. Cæ-

C. J. Cæsar's
 COMMENTARY
 OF HIS
 WAR
 IN
 GAUL.

The Seventh Book.

A General Revolt of the Gauls; who chuse Vercingetorix for their Leader. Cæsar takes several Places. The Siege of Bourges. Divisions in Autun. The Siege of Cleremont, where the Romans are repuls'd with Loss. Labienus's Success at Paris. Vercingetorix's Preparations; And the Siege of Alexia.

CHAP. I.

CÆSAR, having quieted the Commotions in Gaul, went, as he design'd, into Lombardy, to preside at the Convention of the States; where he was inform'd of Publius Clodius's Death, and the Senate's Decree for assembling all the Youth of Italy; whereupon he resolv'd to raise new Levies thro'out his whole Province: This News was soon carry'd into
 K Gaul

*Commotions
in Gaul.*

*The Gauls
taking Ad-
vantage of
Cæsar's Ab-
sence and the
Factions at
Rome, con-
sult about a
general Re-
volt.*

Gaul, where the Natives added what they thought convenient to it; reporting that *Cæsar* was detain'd by the Troubles at *Rome*, and that it was impossible for him to come to his Army, whilst the Factions there were so hot: Encourag'd by this Opportunity, they who had long bemoan'd their Subjection to the *Roman* Yoke, now began to consult more openly of War; and the Princes of *Gaul*, having appointed private Meeting-places in the Woods, there communicated their mutual Regret for the Death of *Acco*, in whose Punishment they thought themselves all concern'd; bemoan'd their common Misfortune, promis'd vast Rewards to them that would first begin the War, and venture their Lives to restore the Liberty of *Gaul*. The first Step to be made, in so important an Attempt, was to block up *Cæsar's* Passage to his Army, before he could receive Intelligence of their Design; which they imagin'd feasible, because the Legions without their General's Orders durst not leave their Quarters, nor could *Cæsar* come to them without a Guard: In fine, they resolv'd to die, rather than not recover that Glory and Liberty, which they had receiv'd from their Ancestors.

CHAP. II.

*These of
Chartres
first declare
War.*

WHEREUPON the People of *Chartres* declar'd no Danger should deter 'em from undertaking any Enterprize that might be of Service to the Publick, and promis'd to begin the War themselves; but, to avoid Delay, desir'd the rest should swear upon their Standards, (the most solemn Obligation amongst the *Gauls*) not to desert 'em after they had declar'd War against the *Romans*, for they had no time to deliver Hostages. The Satisfaction they desir'd was readily comply'd with, they were highly applauded for their Piety to their Country, and so the Council for that time was dissolv'd.

*Coruatus
and Coneto-
dunus massa-
cre Falus
Cotta, and
all the Ro-
man Mer-
chants at
Orleans or
Genabum.*

At the Day appointed the People of *Chartres*, led on by *Coruatus* and *Conetodunus*, two desperate Fellows, on a Sign given, march'd directly to *Orleans*, where they massacred all the *Roman* Citizens, who came thither to traffick, and seiz'd their Effects; amongst the rest *C. Falus Cotta*, a worthy *Roman* Knight, whom *Cæsar* had made Commissary General of the Stores: This Action was quickly carry'd thro' the whole Continent of *Gaul*; for when any important Accident happens,

the News soon circulates thro' the whole Country, by *Commotions* the extraordinary Clamour they make; which being *in Gaul* heard by the neighbouring State, is convey'd to the next beyond, as happen'd on this Occasion; for this Action, which was done at *Orleans* at Sun-rise, was heard of at *Auvergne*, about 160 Miles distant, before Nine a Clock the same Evening.

C H A P. III.

INSPIR'D by this Example, *Vercingetorix*, the Son of *Celtillus* of *Auvergne*, a Youth of the greatest Authority there, (whose Father had formerly obtain'd the Command of *Gaul*, but was slain by his own Countrymen for aiming at the Sovereignty) call'd his Clients together, and easily persuad'd 'em to rebel: But his Design being discover'd, the whole Country repair'd to their Arms, and he was expell'd the City of *Clere-* *Gerovia*.
mont by his Uncle *Gobanizio*, and those other Noblemen who were not for embarking in so dangerous an Attempt. However, not discourag'd by this Misfortune, he began to lift all the Vagabonds and Out-laws he could meet with, and having levy'd a considerable Number of those, he easily persuad'd such of his Countrymen as came near him, to follow his Standard, encouraging 'em to take Arms for the common Liberty of *Gaul*: And having now a powerful Army under his Command, being superior to his Enemies, he drove them out of the Country, who not long before had done him the like Service: Whereupon he was complimented with the Title of King. He immediately dispatch'd Embassadors to all the Countries round, to advise 'em to persevere in their noble Resolutions; and enter'd into a League with the People of *Sens*, *Paris*, *Poitou*, * *Quercy*, *Tours*, † *Limosin*, *Eureux*, *Anjou*, and those other Countries which lay towards the Sea; who by unanimous Consent chose him their General: Being invested with this Authority, he demanded Hostages from every one of those States, appointed what Quota of Men they should immediately furnish him with, and what Quantity of Arms each should provide, by a certain Day prefix'd. He was equally careful and severe, oblig'd those that stood neuter to declare themselves; such as were guilty of notorious Crimes he punish'd with Fire, and all manner of Torments; and they who committed smaller Faults, having their Ears cut off, or

Vercingetorix takes Arms, is expell'd his Country.

Gerovia.

But lifting an Army he returns and drives out his Enemies. Is proclaim'd King.

Enters into League with the neighbouring States, who oblige him their General.

** Cadarci. † Lemorice.*

His severe Discipline.

Commotions in Gaul. Eyes put out, were sent back again into their own Countries, that they might serve for an Example to the rest, and deter 'em by the Severity of their Punishment, from being guilty of the like Offences.

He sends Lucterius against Roverge. Bituriges. Marches himself to Berry.

Ligeris. The Cowardice of the Party the Autunois sent to assist Berry.

Thus having quickly levy'd a considerable Army, he detach'd one Party, under the Command of *Lucterius* of *Quercy*, a Man of Spirit and Enterprize, to *Roverge*, marching himself with the rest against *Berry*: Upon his Arrival, the People of *Berry*, being Dependants on those of *Autun*, sent thither for Assistance to protect 'em from the Enemy's Invasion; the *Autunois*, by the Advice of the Lieutenants whom *Cæsar* had quarter'd among 'em, comply'd with their Demands, and sent 'em a Party of Horse and Foot; who arriving at the *Loire*, which divides the Confines of *Berry* from *Autun*, staid there a few Days, without daring to pass the River, then return'd home again, and inform'd our Lieutenants, they were jealous of Treachery from those of *Berry*; for they were credibly inform'd, in case they pass'd the *Loire*, they should be attack'd on one side by the People they went to assist, and on the other by those of *Auvergne*: For my part, I cannot certainly affirm whether there was Truth in their Excuse, or they betray'd their Trust; but immediately on their Departure *Berry* join'd with the Rebels of *Auvergne*.

Cæsar having Notice of these Transactions, so soon as he was inform'd that *Cn. Pompey's* Prudence had compos'd the Disorders at *Rome*, repass'd the *Alps*; here he was mightily disturb'd to contrive which way he should join his Army, for he consider'd, in case he should send for any of his Legions out of their Quarters, they would be oblig'd, during his Absence, to give the Enemy Battel in their March; nor did he think it convenient to trust his Person, even amongst those States which had not yet rebell'd.

CHAP. IV.

Roverge submits to Lucterius, so do the Agenoiois and Givaudan; Nitiobriges by Gabali. He marches to enter the Roman Province.

IN the mean while *Lucterius* of *Quercy*, who was sent to *Roverge*, had oblig'd that Country likewise to join with the Faction of *Auvergne*; then marching against the *Agenoiois* and *Givaudan*, he receiv'd Hostages from each of those States; and having rais'd a considerable Army, endeavour'd to make an Erruption into the Roman Province on that side next *Narbonne*: Upon Notice of this Expedition, *Cæsar* thought it highly import-
ed

ed him to go immediately to *Narbonne*; on his Arrival *War with*
 he encourag'd such as were wavering to continue firm *Vercinge-*
 in their Allegiance, and plac'd Garrisons in those Parts *torix.*
 of *Roverge* that lay near the Province, in the *Lower Lan-*
guedoc, Tholouse, and the other Towns which were near- *Volca Are-*
 est the Enemy; commanding part of the Provincial For- *comici.*
 ces, together with the new Levies he had brought from
Italy, to render themselves at *Vivaraïs*, which joins to
 the Confines of *Auvergne*.

Thus having dispatch'd the necessary Orders for these *Caesar goes*
 Affairs, and disappointed *Lucerius*, who not thinking *to Vivaraïs,*
 it safe to venture amongst the Garrisons, had return'd; *whither he*
 he went to meet the Forces he sent before to *Vivaraïs*, *had sent the*
new Levies.
 'Twas now the Depth of Winter, and tho' the Moun- *Mons Ce-*
 tains of the *Cevennes*, which divide *Auvergne* from *Vi-* *benna.*
varais, were cover'd with Snow Six Foot deep, which *Crosses the*
 stopp'd all the Passages; yet by the wondrous Applica- *Mountains*
 tion of the Soldiers the Ways were open'd, and he ar- *of Cevennes*
 riv'd in the Territories of the *Auvergnois*, who little *in the midst*
 dreaming of his Approach (because they thought them- *of Winter,*
 selves as well secur'd on that side by the Mountains, as *and arrives*
 a Wall, since never any single Man had been known *at Auvergne,*
 to travel the same Way before, at that unseasonable *which sub-*
 time of the Year;) were soon suppress'd; for he sent his *mits.*
 Cavalry out in several Parties about the whole Coun-
 try, to strike as great a Terror as possible into the Re-
 bels. *Vercingetorix* was soon inform'd of this Action,
 whereupon his Countrymen desir'd he would so far con-
 sult the Good of *Auvergne*, as not to suffer 'em to be de-
 stroy'd by the Enemy, since the whole Strefs of the War
 depended on them: Mov'd by their Intreaties he de-
 camp'd from *Berry*, and march'd towards *Auvergne*;

But *Caesar* having stay'd Two Days only in the Coun- *Vercingeto-*
 try, because he foresaw *Vercingetorix's* Design; under *rix leaves*
 pretence of raising new Levies, and drawing the Ca- *Berry, and*
 valry together, left his Army under the Command of *marches to*
 young *Brutus*, whom he order'd to disperse the Horse *Auvergne.*
 as wide as he could, to harraßs the Country; promi- *Caesar leaves*
 sing, if possible, to return again to the Camp within *his Camp, ar-*
 Three Days: Then, without acquainting any body with *rives by Post*
 his Design, he took Post for *Vienne*, where he had laid *at Vienna or*
 fresh Horses some time before, and from thence, travel- *Vienne in*
 ling Day and Night without Intermission, rid through *Dauphine,*
 the Confines of *Autun*, to *Langre*, (where two Legions *and from*
 were quarter'd) that he might disappoint any Attempts *thence to*
 of the *Autunois* against his Person by Dispatch. *Langre.*

War with
Vercingeto-
rix.

CHAP. V.



BEING thus arriv'd at *Langre*, he sent to the rest of his Legions, and drew 'em all together, before the People of *Auvergne* knew of his being there; but so soon as *Vercingetorix* was inform'd of our Motions, he return'd again to *Berry*, and from thence march'd to invest *Gergovia*, a Town of the * *Boii*, built by *Cæsar* after the Victory he obtain'd over the *Swiss*, and by him made Tributary to the *Autunois*.

Vercingetorix marches to besiege Gergovia.

* The Boii, Sanfon says, are the present Inhabitants of Bourbonne,

yet will have this Gergovia to be the same with that in Auvergne, which he calls Cleremont, tho' he confesses others affirm this to be Moulins: Scaliger, in his Notitia Gallie, mentions not this Place; believing, as I suppose, with Ortelius, that it was foisted into the Text: Vossius is of a different Opinion, but says the Text is corrupted, because the Greek has it Γεργοβίαν; but which of these Learned Gentlemen is in the Right, I leave to the Determination of those Criticks who have more Curiosity than my self: I shall only take Notice, that tho' Monsieur Sanfon calls Gergovia in Auvergne, Cleremont, whose Interpretation I have follow'd in the Name; yet Scaliger, Ortelius, and Cluver, place Gergovia about a Leagues Distance from Cleremont.

Cæsar having drawn his Army out of their Winter quarters, marches to the Assistance of the Bourbonnois.

This Affair gave *Cæsar* no small Occasion to consult, what Methods were properest to be taken; for he was apprehensive, in case he should not draw his Legions out of their Quarters, to assist the Tributaries of *Autun*, the whole Country of *Gaul* would revolt, finding it in vain to expect Protection from the *Romans*; on the other hand, if he took the Field too early, he had reason to fear Want of Provisions: However he resolv'd to undergo any Difficulty, rather than suffer so ignominious and fatal a Blow to the *Roman* Interest. Wherefore having order'd the *Autunois* to furnish him from time to time with Provisions, he dispatch'd a Courier to inform the *Boii* he would quickly come to their Relief, to encourage 'em to continue firm in their Allegiance, and vigorously sustain the Assault of the Enemy: According to his Promise, having left the Baggage of his Army under a Guard of Two Legions at † *Sens*, he march'd towards *Bourbonne*.

† The Capital of Sens, Agendicum. Boii.

** Vellaunodunum, by some thought to be Velleneve in Lorraine, by others Auxerre; but Sanfon, who agrees with Cæsar, says 'tis Chateau Landon, which Cæsar besieges and takes.

The next Day arriving at ** *Chateau-Landon*, a Town in the Country of *Sens*, he resolv'd to take it in, that he might leave no Enemy behind to interpret his Convoys: In two Days he compleated his Circumvallation, and the Third the Besieg'd sent Deputies to treat of a Surrender, whom he commanded to deliver up their Arms.

Arms, Horses, and 600 Hostages: The Execution of *War with* this Treaty he left to the Care of *C. Trebonius*, intend- *Vercingetorix* ing to march with what Expedition he could to *Orléans*, a City belonging to those of *Chartres*; who having notice that *Chasteau-Landon* was taken, and concluding *He arrives at Orleans, which he takes and sacks.* *Cesar* would not rest there, resolv'd to provide a strong Garrison to defend the Town. Here *Cesar* arriv'd after Two Days March; but being benighted, was oblig'd to defer his Assault 'till the next Morning; however he dispatch'd the necessary Orders, and apprehending the Besieg'd might steal out of the Town by Night, because *Orléans* joins to the Bridge cross the *Loire*, he commanded Two Legions to lie all Night upon their Arms: Accordingly the Citizens, a little after Midnight, began to pass the River without any Noise; which *Cesar* having Notice of from his Scouts, set the Gates on fire, then commanding the Legions that were ready, to enter the Town; which they made themselves Masters of, and took most of the Enemy Prisoners: For the Narrowness of the Bridge and Passages, had given but few an Opportunity to escape. Having sack'd the Town, *Then marches towards Berry.* he gave the Plunder to the Soldiers, then passing the *Loire*, arriv'd on the Confines of *Berry*.

C H A P. VI.

VERCINGETORIX having Notice of his Approach, broke up the Siege, and march'd directly to meet him. *Cesar* was resolv'd to take in * *Neuvye*, a Town belonging to the Country of *Berry*, which lay in his Road; but the People sent Embassadors to desire he would please to pardon 'em, and preserve their Lives. That he might effect his more important Designs with greater Dispatch, he granted their Address, on condition they should deliver up their Horses, Arms, and send him Hostages. Part of the Hostages were already deliver'd; the rest were preparing, and some Centurions with a small Party were admitted to search the City for Arms and Horses; when the Besieg'd despoiling *Vercingetorix's* Cavalry at some Distance, which march'd before the rest of the Army, and hoping they came to their

K 4

Affi-

* Noviodunum: *Cæsar* mentions Four several Towns of the same Name; one in *Soisson*, which most People take for *Noion*, but *Monsieur Sanson* calls it *Soisson*? *Scaliger* cannot believe that any body ever found the true Name for it yet.

Another Town of this Name in *Autun*, upon the River *Loire*, all People expound *Nevers*: This we are now talking of, *Sanson* calls *Neuvye*: And the fourth *Noviodunum* *Diablintum* be applies to *Nogent Le Rotrou*, the chief Village of *Perch*, on the River *Mayen*.

War with Assistance, immediately set up a Shout, repair'd to their Arms, shut the Gates, and ascended the Walls: But the Vercingetorix.

Centurions that were in the Town, perceiving by the Noise, that the Gauls had some new Design, drew their Swords, and having possess'd the Gates, retreated with all their Men in Safety to the Camp.

Caesar immediately drew out the Cavalry to engage the Enemy's Horse, and finding his Men began to give Ground, detach'd about 400 German Horse to assist 'em: The Gauls were not able to sustain their Assault, lost many of their Party, and being routed, fled for Safety to their Army. Upon this Defeat, the Besieg'd again despairing, seiz'd all those Persons who had been instrumental in raising the Mob on the late Occasion, sent 'em Prisoners to Caesar, and deliver'd themselves up to his Mercy. This Affair dispatch'd, Caesar march'd towards Bourges, the Capital Town of Berry, situate in a plentiful Soil; not doubting but he should quickly reduce the whole Country, when he had made himself Master of the strongest Town in that State.

Caesar takes
Neuue, and
marches
from thence
to Bourges.
* Oppidum
Avaricum.

CHAP. VII.

Vercingeto-
rix summons
a Council;
his Speech.

VERCINGETORIX having receiv'd so many Losses successively, as those of Sens, Orleans, and Neuue, summon'd a Council, where he told his Countrymen, They must now think of making War after a quite different manner than formerly; that they must do their utmost to intercept the Roman Convoys, and Foragers; that the Season of the Year would be assistant to 'em in this Enterprize, for being as yet too early to forage in the Fields, the Enemy must be forc'd to disperse themselves to seek for Provisions in the Villages, where he might easily cut 'em off with their Cavalry. That they must not set a greater Value on their Goods than their Lives, for 'twas absolutely necessary all the Houses and Villages round should be burnt, to prevent the Enemy's foraging; and as for themselves, 'twas but reasonable they should be supply'd by the Countries they defended: This Council once put in practice, the Romans must either be oblig'd to starve, or forage at a great Distance from their Camp with infinite Danger. That it would be the same thing in effect, whether they defeated 'em, or intercepted their Convoys, for being depriv'd of those, they could not long subsist. And further he declar'd, all those Towns should be reduc'd to Askes, whose Artificial or Natural Fortifications could not preserve 'em from falling into

into the Enemy's Hands; lest the Romans should furnish War with themselves there with Forage and Plunder; and they be oblig'd to drain their Army, by sending Garrisons to so many Places. For tho' this might appear a harsh Resolution, yet they ought to consider how much better it was to comply with his Advice, than to suffer themselves to be put to the Sword, and their Wives and Children to be made Slaves, the unavoidable Fate of the Conquer'd.

His Opinion was approv'd of, and in one Day above Twenty Cities of Berry were burnt; the like was done in other Countries; in fine, nothing but Conflagration was to be seen on all Sides; which tho' the Natives beheld with some Regret, yet they flatter'd themselves with Hopes, that they should soon obtain the Victory, and recover all they had lost. The Fate of Bourges was solemnly debated in Council, whether it should be burnt or defended; the People of Berry most humbly petition'd that they might not be oblig'd to put fire with their own Hands to one of the most beautiful Cities of Gaul, which serv'd as well for a Defence, as Ornament to their Country, especially since it might be so easily maintain'd, for Nature had fortify'd the Place on all sides, except one narrow Passage, with a River and a Marsh: Vercingetorix at first oppos'd 'em, but at length being mov'd by their Prayers, and the generous Compassion of the Army; comply'd with their Desires, and sent a Garrison to defend the Town.

Upon his Advice 20 Cities in Berry burnt; several more in other places.

Debate whether Bourges should be burnt or no: Carry'd in the Negative.

C H A P. VIII.

THIS Affair determin'd, he follow'd Caesar by small Marches, 'till he arriv'd within Fifteen Miles of Bourges, where he chose a Place fortify'd with Woods and Marshes to encamp in: He had hourly Intelligence by his Scouts how Matters went at Bourges, and dispatch'd such Orders thither as he thought convenient: He kept a constant Watch upon our Convoys and Foragers, whom he frequently cut off, when Necessity oblig'd 'em to seek for Provisions at too great a Distance from the Camp; tho' we took all the Care imaginable to prevent his Designs, by avoiding the same Times and Places when and where we had gone before.

Vercingetorix marches towards Bourges, encamps within Fifteen Miles of it.

Caesar having encamp'd on that side where the Marsh and River had left a narrow Access to the Town, began to raise a Mount, to prepare his Penthouses, and erect Two Turrets, for the nature of the Place prevent-

Caesar sets down before Bourges.

ed

War withed any Circumvallation: He gave continual Orders to those of *Autun* and *Bourbonne* to supply him with Provisions; but the first of these were so negligent they did him no great Service, and the other, having but a small and poor Country, quickly consum'd all the Corn in their Province: Thus the *Autunois* taking no Care to perform his Orders, the *Bourbonnois* being poor, and the Country round about laid waste by the Enemy, the Army was so streighten'd for want of Corn several Days together, that they were oblig'd to subsist only upon the Cattle, which the Foragers had brought in, from the Villages a great Distance from the Camp; yet not a Man was heard to utter any Complaint unworthy the Dignity of the Roman Empire, or the Glory they had obtain'd in their former Victories; nay, tho' Cæsar himself visited all the Legions in the Works, and proffer'd to break up the Siege, if they found the Fatigue too great to be endur'd; yet they all desir'd, he would not entertain any Thoughts of that nature; for as they had hitherto behav'd themselves so well under his Command, that they had always effected their Designs, not meeting with the least Disgrace; so now they would not make an ignominious Retreat, and quit the Siege, for they were resolv'd to endure any Hardships, rather than not revenge the Massacre of the Roman Citizens at Orleans. The same thing they said to the Tribunes and Centurions, begging 'em to assure the Generals of their Resolutions.

The Romans
want Provi-
sions.

Cæsar of-
fers to quit
the Siege.
The Soldiers
Answer.

to break up the Siege, if they found the Fatigue too great to be endur'd; yet they all desir'd, he would not entertain any Thoughts of that nature; for as they had hitherto behav'd themselves so well under his Command, that they had always effected their Designs, not meeting with the least Disgrace; so now they would not make an ignominious Retreat, and quit the Siege, for they were resolv'd to endure any Hardships, rather than not revenge the Massacre of the Roman Citizens at Orleans. The same thing they said to the Tribunes and Centurions, begging 'em to assure the Generals of their Resolutions.

CHAP. IX.

Vercingeto-
rix decamps,
removes
nearer Bour-
ges; marches
with his Ca-
valry to at-
tack the Ro-
man For-
agers; where-
upon Cæsar
marches di-
rectly to his
Camp.

WHEN our Turrets approach'd the Walls, Cæsar had notice that *Vercingetorix*, having consum'd all the Forage round about his Camp, had remov'd nearer *Bourges*, and was gone out with a Party of Cavalry, and such light Infantry as us'd to fight amongst the Horse, to lie in Ambuscade for our Foragers: Whereupon Cæsar march'd privately about Midnight towards the Enemy's Camp, where he arriv'd the next Morning early. The Gauls were soon inform'd by their Scouts of Cæsar's Approach; wherefore having hid their Baggage and Carriages in the thickest Part of the Wood, they drew themselves up on an open Hill; which Cæsar perceiving, commanded his Soldiers to dispose of their Baggage, and stand to their Arms.

The Post which the Enemy had possess'd was a gentle rising Ground, surrounded almost on all Sides by

a dangerous Morass, about Fifty Foot over; having lodg'd themselves on this Hill, and broke down all the Vercingetorix. Bridges, they confided in the Situation of the Place, dispos'd themselves according to their several Countries, and sent small Parties to guard all the Fords and Avenues; resolving, if the Romans should attempt to force their Way, to pour down upon 'em from the higher Ground, and attack 'em whilst they stuck in the Mud. They who only reflected on the small Distance between the two Armies, thought the Enemy as willing to engage as themselves; but they that consider'd the Disadvantage of the Place, beheld the Gauls Ostentation with Contempt: However the Romans were so inrag'd to see the Enemy durst confront 'em at so small a Distance, that they impatiently desir'd the Sign of Battel: But Caesar inform'd 'em how many brave Lives that Victory would cost him; and since they were so ready to undertake any Danger for his Glory, he should think himself the most ungrateful Man in the World, if he did not set a greater Value on their Safety than his own. Thus having moderated their Desire he return'd to the Camp, and gave such further Orders as were necessary for carrying on the Siege.

The Enemy draw themselves upon a Hill surrounded by a Morass.

The Romans are impatient of the Sign of Battel. Caesar's Speech to 'em.

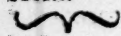
C H A P. X.

ON Vercingetorix's Return he was accus'd of Treason, for having mov'd his Camp nearer the Romans, for marching away with all the Cavalry, leaving the Army without a Commander, and giving Caesar so favourable an Opportunity to attack 'em; from whose Grant they believ'd he would rather receive the Kingdom of Gaul, than from their Election. To which Articles of Impeachment he answer'd, That he had decamp'd at their Desire for want of Forage: That he had lodg'd himself nearer the Romans, being induc'd by the Place, whose natural Fortifications were sufficient to defend it: That there was no Occasion for Cavalry in a Morass, but they might have been useful in the Place he carry'd them to: That he had left no Officer to command 'em, lest the Soldiers should have forc'd him to engage the Enemy, which he knew they were all inclin'd to, the Effeminacy of their Minds making them impatient of further Labour: That if the Romans happen'd to come during his Absence, he suppos'd they were oblig'd to Fortune for directing 'em; but if any Person had invited them thither, they ought to return him Thanks, for giving

Vercingetorix impeach'd of Treason.

His Answer.

War with giving them Occasion to behold the Smalness of the Enemy's Vercinge- Number from the rising Ground, and to despise their Effortix.



His Stratagem.

forts; who not daring to engage the Gauls, made an ignominious Retreat. That he scorn'd to accept a Kingdom from Cæsar's Gift, that he could obtain by Victory, which he and the Gauls were now assur'd of; however he was willing to surrender the Command they had invested him with, if they did not think the Advantages they receiv'd from his Conduct, sufficiently repaid the Honours he receiv'd: And, says he, that you may be convinc'd of my Sincerity, hear the Roman Soldiers themselves. Then producing some Servants, who were taken as they attended our Foragers not many Days before, had since been kept fasting in Irons, and instructed before, what Answers they should make to the Questions that were ask'd 'em; they declar'd, They were Legionary Soldiers: That being driven by Hunger, they privately stole out of the Camp, to try if they could get any Corn or Cattle in the Fields: That the whole Army suffer'd under the same Want. That every Man was grown feeble, and unable to endure Fatigue: Wherefore Cæsar had resolv'd, if he could not make himself Master of the Town within three Days, to quit the Siege.

He is acquitted and commended by the whole Army.

These said Vercingetorix, are the Advantages you receive from the Man you have accus'd of Treason, by whose Management, without the Loss of your Blood, you behold so powerful and victorious an Army almost consum'd by Famine; who has likewise provided, that no Country shall receive them, when they shall basely endeavour to save themselves by Flight. At this the whole Army gave a Shout, and, after the Fashion of their Country, clasp'd their Arms, as they always do when they approve the Harangue; proclaiming Vercingetorix for a great and faithful Commander, whose Conduct could not be excell'd. 'Twas resolv'd that 10000 chosen Men, pick'd out of the Army, should throw themselves into Bourges; for since they believ'd the whole Success of the War depended on the Preservation of that Town, they would not rely intirely upon the People of Berry for the publick Safety,

C H A P. XI.

The Industry of the Besieg'd.

THE Gauls are a very industrious and ingenious People at imitating any Machine they have seen; but all their Endeavours were disappointed by the wondrous Application of the Soldiers; tho' they hindered our

Hooks

Hooks from doing Execution on the Walls, by catching hold of 'em with Ropes, and pulling 'em with their Engines into the Town, and undermin'd our Mount; for their Iron Works had made 'em excellent Miners; tho' they erected Towers on every Part of their Walls, which they cover'd with Hides; made frequent Sallies Day and Night, either to set Fire to the Mount, or disturb our Works; daily increas'd their Towers to an equal Height with our Mount; and cast such plenty of sharp Stakes harden'd in the Fire, with scalding Pitch, and Stones of a prodigious Weight into our Trenches, that they prevented us from approaching their Walls.

*War with
Vercingetorix.*

*How the
Gauls build
the Walls of
their Cities.*

Most of the Cities in *Gaul* build their Walls after the same manner, they drive streight Beams of a considerable Length, at two Foot distance from each other, into the Ground, which they bind together on the inside, and cement with an earthen Bank; but the Intervals on the outside are fill'd with large Stones, which being fix'd with Mortar, another Row is laid upon them, to keep the same Distance, that the Beams may not touch each other, but observe a just Proportion; that there may be an equal and artificial Mixture of Wood and Stones, continuing the same Method 'till they have rais'd the Wall to such a Height as they think convenient: This way of building is as useful as beautiful, for the Variety and equal Intermixture of the Materials is pleasing to the Eye, so the Stone is Proof against Fire, and the Beams against the Battering-Ram; for being fasten'd within the Town by continual Planks, they can neither be disjointed, nor pull'd up by the Roots.

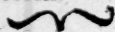
C H A P. XII.

THO' the Soldiers met with so many Difficulties in the Siege, tho' they were incommoded with the Dirt, Cold, and perpetual Rains; yet by incessant Labour they surmounted all these Inconveniencies; and in twenty five Days compleated a Mount 330 Foot broad, and eighty Foot high. When it almost touch'd the Walls, *Cæsar* according to his Custom attending the Works, and encouraging the Soldiers to lose no Time, about three in the Morning perceiv'd the Mount began to smok; for the Enemy had undermin'd and put Fire to it; then setting up a Shout on all Parts of the Wall, made a vigorous Sally from two several Ports; some cast Fire-brands

*The Industry
of the Ro-
man Soldiers.*

*The Besieg'd
set the Mount
on Fire, and
make a vigor-
ous Sally.*

War with
Vercinge-
torix.



brands and combustible Matter upon the Mount, some Pitch and such other Materials as might serve to encrease the Flame; so that we hardly knew whither to send Assistance first: But *Cæsar* had taken care to have a constant Out-guard of two Legions, who reliev'd those that wrought in the Trenches by Turns; so some immediately confronted those that sall'y'd out of the Town, and others were employ'd in drawing off the Towers and cutting the Mount, whilst the whole Army endeavour'd to extinguish the Fire.

The Dispute continu'd very warm all the rest of the Night, and the Enemy were still in Hopes of Victory, because the Sheds of the Turrets were burn'd, nor could our Soldiers manage 'em whilst they were expos'd to the Enemies Shot: Wherefore they sent fresh Supplies continually to relieve the weary, thinking the Fate of *Gaul* depended on that critical Minute. During this Conflict there happen'd a memorable Action, which I must not omit: One of the besieg'd, having planted himself before the Gate, cast Balls of Pitch and Tallow with his Hands to encrease the Fire of the Turrets, 'till being wounded on his right Side, with an Arrow shot from a Scorpion, he expir'd in the Place: The Man that stood next supply'd his Post, 'till he met with the same Fate; then succeeded a Third, and after him a Fourth; nor was the Place left vacant, 'till the Fire of the Mount was extinguish'd, the Enemy on all sides repuls'd, and the Fight at an End.

Four Gauls
successively
maintain the
same Post,
'till they are
all kill'd, and
others do the
like, 'till they
are beaten
back into the
Town.

C H A P. XIII.

THE *Gauls* having essay'd all Methods in vain, the next Day, in Obedience to *Vercingetorix's* Commands, began to consult about leaving the Town; which they hop'd they might do without much Damage, by the Favour of the Night, because they had no great Journey to their Camp; and the Morals which lay between would prevent the *Romans* Pursuit. Night came, and the Besieg'd were preparing for their intended March, when the Women, running out into the Streets, flung themselves weeping at their Husbands Feet, and besought 'em that they would not abandon their Wives and Children, whom Nature had form'd incapable to endure the Fatigues of a Flight, as a Prey to the Enemy: But when they found 'em inflexible, (for Self-preservation and Fear seldom admit of Pity) they

The besieg'd
design to quit
the Town,
but are pre-
vented by
their Wives.

they began to make a Noise, and acquaint the *Romans* with their Husbands Design; whereupon apprehending the Passages might be possess'd by our Cavalry they alter'd their Resolution.

Vercingetorix.

The next Day *Caesar* having advanc'd the Towers, and given the necessary Orders for carrying on the Siege, there fell an extraordinary Rain, which he thought a convenient Time for effecting his Design, because he observ'd the Watch on the Walls but negligently kept; wherefore he commanded the Soldiers not to labour too hard at the Works: The Legions being cover'd by the Vines, he encourag'd 'em to reap the Fruit of their Labours, and having promis'd a Reward to the first that scal'd the Town; they flew like Lightning from all Parts, and soon possess'd themselves of the Walls: The Enemy were extremely surpriz'd, and being forc'd from their Turrets and Battlements, drew themselves up in a Triangle in the Market-place, and such other Streets as were broad enough for that Purpose; that if the *Romans* should come to attack 'em, they might better maintain their Ground, being drawn up in Order of Battel: But perceiving no Body came near 'em, and that the Walls were possess'd round about by the *Romans*, apprehending their Flight might be prevented, they flung down their Arms, and ran to the farthest Part of the Town, where pressing forward to make their Escape thro' a narrow Gate, they hinder'd each other, and were kill'd by the Soldiers, as those who got out of the Town were by the Cavalry; for no body minded the Plunder, but enrag'd by the Massacre at *Orleans*, and the Fatigue they had endur'd in the Siege, put all to the Sword, without respect to Age or Difference of Sex: So that out of 40000 scarce 800 escap'd to *Vercingetorix*, who upon the first Alarm fled out of the Town; these he privately receiv'd in the dead of Night, sending out his Servants and the chief Noblemen of each Province, to meet and conduct 'em to those Parts of the Camp, where their several Countrymen were quarter'd, to prevent any Muriny that might arise from the Disgust of the Army upon their Return.

The Romans scale the Wall.

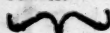
Storm the Town, and put the Besieged to the Sword. Out of 40000 only 800 escap'd to Vercingetorix: His Policy in receiving 'em.

C H A P. XIV.

THE next Day, *Vercingetorix*, calling a Council of War, comforted the *Gauls*, telling 'em, They had no Reason to be discourag'd at their late Loss, since the *Romans* had

His Speech upon the Loss of the Town.

War with had not succeeded by their Valour, but Skill in besieging Vercingetorix.



of Towns, which they had no Experience in : That constant Success was not to be expected in War ; and for his Part, they all could bear him witness, 'twas contrary to his Opinion that Bourges should be defended : Wherefore this Loss was to be imputed to the Folly of the People of Berry, and the too great Indulgence of the Army : however he would take care to repair the Damage, by a far greater Advantage ; for he would undertake the other Countries of Gaul, which had hitherto stood Neuter, should enter into the Grand Alliance : That the Kingdom of Gaul should join in the same Design, whose Force united, the whole World would not be able to withstand : That he had almost brought this Affair to a happy Conclusion ; but in the mean time he thought it convenient for the publick Safety, they should fortify their Camp, to defeat any sudden Excursions of the Enemy.

Vercingetorix's credit increas'd by the Loss of Bourges.

On his Advice the Gauls fortify their Camp the first time they ever did it.

This Harangue was not ungrateful to the *Gauls*, especially since they saw their General was neither dejected after so great a Loss, nor endeavour'd to abscond from publick View ; nor did it a little add to the Reputation of his Conduct, that as it was his Opinion *Bourges* should be burn'd, so he was the first that had advis'd them to desert the Place ; wherefore as ill Success generally eclipses the Credit of other Commanders, so his on the contrary, daily increas'd with his Losses : They flatter'd themselves on his Affirmation that the other States of *Gaul* would join with 'em, and began to fortify their Camp, which had never before been practis'd by the *Gauls* ; being reduc'd to so humble a Condition, that tho' they were not inur'd to Labour, yet they patiently suffer'd whatever Tasks were impos'd upon 'em.

CHAP. XV.

He endeavours to persuade all the other Countries of Gaul to revolt.

Arms and Cloaths the besieg'd that escap'd from Bourges.

VERCINGETORIX did not design to be worse than his Promise, he took abundance of Pains to draw the other Countries of *Gaul* into the same Alliance, endeavouring to gain the Noblemen of each State, by Presents and Promises ; for this Purpose he made choice of the best Negotiators, whose Craft or Interest might effect his Designs : For those that had escap'd from *Bourges* he provided Arms and Cloathing, and to repair the Loss he receiv'd there, gave Orders that each of the Revolted Provinces should furnish him with a certain

Num.

Number of Recruits, to be sent to his Camp by a Day prefix'd; and he commanded 'em to levy all the Archers in their Country, whereof they have plenty in Gaul, for his Service; by which means he soon recover'd what he lost at *Bourges*. In the mean time *Theutomatus*, Son of *Ollovico* King of *Agen*, whose Father had formerly been stil'd Friend by the Senate of *Rome*, came over to him with a considerable Number of Horse, which he brought from *Gascoigne*.

War with
Vercingetorix.

Raises new
Levies.
Theutomatus, King of
the Nitobriges or Aged,
comes over
to him.

C H A P. XVI.

CÆSAR stay'd several Days at *Bourges*, to refresh his Army after their late Labour; and want of Provisions; for he found plenty of Corn in the Town: The Winter was now almost spent, and the Season invited him to take the Field; wherefore he resolv'd to follow the Enemy, to try whether he could draw 'em out of the Woods and Marshes, or have an Opportunity of besieging 'em; when the principal Noblemen of *Autun* came to beseech him that he would assist their Country, which was in a dangerous Condition at that juncture; for as formerly by the Custom of *Autun* they were always govern'd by a single Annual Magistrate, whose Election invested him with Regal Power; now Two pretended Titles to the same Office, both affirming they were lawfully created: One of these Pretenders was *Convictolanus*, an illustrious Youth of great Interest; *Cotus* the other, of an antient Family, great Authority, and powerful in Relations, whose Brother *Vedeliacus* had discharg'd the same Office but the Year before: That the whole Country was up in Arms, the Senate and People divided, and should the Dispute continue, it was much to be fear'd a Civil War would ensue: To prevent which fatal Consequences, they rely'd entirely on his Care and Authority. Tho' *Cæsar* thought it inconvenient to leave the War, and the Enemy behind him; yet considering what Effects might arise from such Divisions, lest so powerful and firm Allies to the People of *Rome*, whom he had always favour'd and enrich'd, should fall out amongst themselves, and that Party which depended less on him, pray Assistance from *Vercingetorix*, he thought it necessary to put a Stop to the Progress of these Disorders; and because the Chief Magistrates of *Autun* are prohibited going out of the Country, lest they should detract from the Honour of their Office, he

Cæsar is inform'd of the Disputes in *Autun* about the Supreme Magistracy.

Wherefore
Cæsar goes
to *Autun*.

War with
Vercingetorix.

Summons
to Candidates to attend him at Deceria or Decise.

where he decrees in favour of Conuictolitanis, against Cotus's Pretensions.

Then orders the Autunois to furnish him with 10000 Foot, and all their Cavalry. He sends Labienus to Paris, marches himself to Cleremont, Gerrovia, Elaver.

with resolv'd to go himself in Person thither; and summon'd both the Senate and Candidates to attend him at *Decise*: Almost the whole Country came thither, and being satisfy'd that *Cotus* had been clandestinely chosen, by a few Electors, at an improper Time and Place, and declar'd Magistrate by his own Brother, contrary to the Law, (which does not only prohibit Two Persons of the same Family from executing the Supream Office of Magistracy, whilst he who first obtain'd it is alive, but even from sitting in the Senate;) he oblig'd him to quit his Pretensions, and gave Sentence in Favour of *Conuictolitanis*, who had been created by the Priests, according to the Custom of the Country, when the Place was vacant. Having accommodated this Affair, he desir'd the *Autunois* to lay aside all Thoughts of Faction, and give him what Assistance they could towards carrying on the present War; that *Gaul* being subdu'd, they might receive those Rewards their Loyalty deserv'd: He desir'd 'em immediately to furnish him with all their Cavalry, and 10000 Foot, that he might dispose 'em into Garrisons to levy Contributions: He divided his Army into Two Parts; Four Legions, with half of the Cavalry, under the Command of *Labienus*, he detach'd to *Sens* and *Paris*; and with the other four march'd himself to *Cleremont*, on the River *Allier*, in the Country of *Auvergne*; which *Vercingetorix* having notice of, broke down all the Bridges of the River, and march'd upon the Banks on the other Side.

C H A P. XVII.

Caesar's
Stratagem to pass the Allier.

It takes
Eight.

BOTH Armies were continually in View, encamp'd almost over-against each other; and the Enemy's Scouts were so dispers'd, that 'twas impossible for the *Romans* to cast a Bridge over the River: *Caesar* was very uneasy, lest he should lose the greatest Part of the Summer for want of an Opportunity to pass the *Allier*, which is never fordable till towards *Autumn*; to prevent which Inconvenience, he remov'd his Camp in a woody Place, over-against one of those Bridges which the Enemy had cut down: The Day following, hiding himself with Two Legions, he sent away the rest of his Army, with all their Baggage, as usual; making a Draught of one Fourth out of every Cohort, that the Number of the Legions might still appear compleat: He commanded the Army to march as far as they could, and when he

com-

computed, by the Time of Day, they might be encamping, he began to rebuild a Bridge upon the same Piles, whose lower Part the Enemy had left standing; and having soon compleated his Work, march'd his Legions over, chose a convenient Place to encamp in, and recall'd the rest of his Army: Whereupon *Vercingetorix*, that he might not be oblig'd to fight against his Will, went a great way before by long Marches. From thence in Five Days March *Cæsar* arriv'd at *Cleremont*, where having had a small Skirmish with the Enemy's Cavalry, and taken a View of the Town, he despair'd of reducing it by Storm, nor did he think it convenient to make any Steps towards investing the Place, before he had furnish'd himself with such Provisions as he had Occasion for: But *Vercingetorix* having encamp'd on the Hill close by the Town, dispos'd all his Army according to their several Districts, at a small Distance from each other, and having possess'd all the Hills round about, made a dreadful Appearance: He oblig'd the chief Noblemen of every State, whom he made his Council, to attend his Levy, every Morning early, either to consult or receive such Orders as he thought necessary; never omitting a Day without sending his Horse intermix'd with Archers, to skirmish with our Cavalry, that he might be acquainted with each Man's particular Merit. There was a rising Ground that join'd to the Foot of the Mountain the Town was built on, excellently well fortify'd by Nature, and difficult of Access on all sides; which if our Men could gain, they were in hopes to cut off the Water, and prevent the Enemy from foraging so freely as before; upon this Place the *Gauls* had only posted a slender Guard; wherefore *Cæsar*, leaving his Camp about Midnight, defeated the Party that was lodg'd there, before the Town could come to their Assistance, possess'd himself of the Hill, and having left Two Legions in the Place, drew a Line of Communication, by a double Trench Twelve Foot broad, from the lesser to the larger Camp; that the Soldiers might pass safely from one to the other, without any Annoyance from the Enemy.

War with
Vercingetorix.

Cæsar arrives at *Cleremont*; *Vid. Margin. Note, pag. 15.*

Vercingetorix encamp'd close under the Walls.

Cæsar gains a Hill of Advantage.

C H A P. XVIII.

WHILST Affairs were in this Posture at *Cleremont*, *Convictolitanis* of *Autun*, to whom *Cæsar* had lately decreed the Magistracy, being corrupted by the People

War with ple of Auvergne, endeavour'd to draw in some of the Vercinge-young Nobility; the chief of these were *Litavicus* and *Torix*.

his Brothers, Gentlemen of the greatest Family in the Country, with whom he divided his Bribes: He put 'em in mind they were born free, and destin'd by Nature for *Litavicus* Empire: That Autun alone held the Ballance of Victory, for all the other Provinces were restrain'd by her Example; but

Convictolitan
ni persuades
Litavicus
and his Bre-
thers rebel.

should she once declare, the Romans would have no Footing left in the Country: For his own Part, he must confess he had lately receiv'd a Favour from Cæsar, but such an one as the Merits of his Cause might challenge; yet he did not think himself oblig'd to shew his Gratitude, at the Expence of his Country's Liberty; nor could he tell any Reason, why the Autunois, should submit their Laws and Customs to the Arbitration of Cæsar, any more than the Romans theirs to the Autunois. His Authority, and the Rewards he propos'd, soon prevail'd; *Litavicus* with his Brothers agreed to undertake the Business, but first it was thought proper to consult about the Means for accomplishing their Designs; for they were satisfy'd the Country would not easily be induc'd to declare War against the

Litavicus
made Gene-
ral of the
10000 Foot;
his Brothers
were sent before to
Cæsar.

Romans: Wherefore 'twas resolv'd that *Litavicus's* Brothers should be sent before to Cæsar, that he should have the Command of the 10000 Foot, which the Autunois were to furnish; and the rest of the Affair should be manag'd as Occasion offer'd. Accordingly having receiv'd the Command of the Army, and march'd within Thirty Miles of Cleremont, *Litavicus*, on a sudden call'd the Soldiers together, and with Tears in his Eyes spoke to this Effect: Gentlemen, whither are we going? All our Horse, all our Nobility are already slain; *Eporedorix* and *Virdumarus*, Men of the best Quality in our Country, and accus'd of Treasons by the Romans, and put to Death unheard: But I refer you to those who have escap'd the Slaughter for further Information, because Grief for my departed Brothers and Kinsmen stops my Utterance. At that, some instruments who had been before instructed what to say, were produc'd; they join'd in the same Story with *Litavicus*, and inform'd the Army of the Particulars; that the Autunois Horse had been put to the Sword, for holding Correspondence with those of Auvergne, as the Romans pretended; that they had hid themselves in the Croud, and were sav'd by Flight from the Slaughter. Upon this Advice the whole Army were mightily disturb'd, and intreated *Litavicus* that he would contrive some Means for their Safety: He told 'em, The

Litavicus's
Treason and
Disimulation.

pre-

present Affair did not admit of any Debate: That there was War with no other way left but marching directly to Cleremont, and Vercinge, joining the Auvergnois; for, added he, *'tis not to be doubted but the Romans, having already committed so barbarous an Action, will make what Haste they can to put us likewise to the Sword; but if we have any Courage left, let us revenge the Death of our injur'd Countrymen upon these Villains:* Whereupon producing the Roman Citizens who had taken the Opportunity of their Convoy, they robb'd 'em of a considerable Quantity of Corn, and put 'em to a barbarous Death; then immediately dispatch'd Couriers to all Parts of *Autun*, to divulge the same Story, about the Death of the Noblemen and Cavalry, and to advise 'em to vindicate their Wrongs, as they had done.

Litavicus persuades the Forces under his Command to rebel.

C H A P. XIX.

EPOREDORIX and *Virdumarus* of *Autun*, one of an illustrious House and considerable Interest in his Country; the other of equal Age and Authority, tho' not so well descended; whom *Cæsar*, on *Divitiacus's* Recommendation, had rais'd to the highest Dignities; being particularly summon'd, came alone with the Horse: These two always rivall'd each other for the Precedence; in the late Dispute about the Magistracy, one espous'd *Convictolitani's* Quarrel, the other that of *Cotus*; and the first of these having Notice of *Litavicus's* Design, came to *Cæsar* about Midnight, discover'd the Plot, and intreated him not to suffer the Minds of a Country, his ancient Friends, to be alienated by the unreasonable Practices of some young Noblemen; for he foresaw, that if *Litavicus* went over to the Enemy, with so considerable an Army, their several Relations would think themselves oblig'd to use what Methods they could to preserve them, and consequently the Affair must have a powerful Influence over the whole Country. *Cæsar* was mightily surpris'd to hear that his Favourite *Autunois* should think of a Revolt, therefore he immediately drew out four light-arm'd Legions, with all the Cavalry; and not having Time to contract his Camp into a narrower Space, (because the whole Success of the Business depended on Dispatch) left Lieutenant *C. Fabius* with two Legions to guard the Baggage: He gave Orders before he set out for apprehending *Litavicus's* Brothers, but found they had not long before gone over;

Eporodrix acquaints Cæsar with Litavicus's Design.

Whereupon Cæsar marches to intercept the Autunois, before they reach Cleremont.

War with
Vercinge-
torix.

He meets the
Autunoi;
they submit
when they
find their
Error.

Litavicus
escapes to
Cleremont.

Cæsar has
Notice that
the Gauls
attack his
Camp:

He makes
Haste to its
Relief.

The Autunoi on Litavicus's Message take Arms, plunder the Roman Citizens.

to the Enemy. Having encourag'd his Soldiers cheerfully to endure the Fatigue of so necessary a March, they pursu'd their Journey with great Eagerness, for 25 Miles, till they arriv'd within sight of the *Autunoi*; then he detach'd the Horse before, to stop their March, commanding 'em not to put any Man to the Sword: And order'd *Eporodorix* with *Virdumarus*, whom they believ'd to be kill'd, to go along with the Cavalry, and shew themselves to their Countrymen the *Autunoi*; who finding their Mistake, discovering *Litavicus's* Deceit, held out their Hands to signify their Desire to surrender, and having laid down their Arms began to beg their Lives: *Litavicus* in the mean time, with all his Dependants, who are not permitted by the Custom of *Gaul* to desert their Patron in the greatest Dangers, escap'd to *Cleremont*. *Cæsar* immediately sent Embassadors to *Autun*, to acquaint the People how merciful he had been to their Countrymen, whom by Martial Law he might have put to the Sword; then having allow'd his Army three Hours time to rest, he march'd towards *Cleremont*, and had almost pass'd one half of the Journey, when a Party of Horse from *C. Fabius* came to give him Notice how much Danger the Camp was in, being assaulted by the Enemy on all sides, who when their Forces faint'd, still supply'd their Places with fresh Men; whilst the *Romans* having a large Camp, and but few Soldiers to defend it, were oblig'd, tho' never so weary, to maintain their Ground: That they had already receiv'd many Wounds from the Enemy's Darts and Arrows, tho' their Engines had done 'em good Service; That *Fabius*, at their Departure, had shut up two Gates of the Camp, increas'd the Height of the Rampier, and prepar'd for the next Day's Assault: Whereupon *Cæsar* made what Haste he could to his Relief; and arriv'd at the Camp before Sun-rise.

CHAP. XX.

IN the mean while the *Autunoi*, having receiv'd *Litavicus's* News, staid not for a Confirmation, but some being prompted by Avarice, others by Revenge and Rashness, which they are mightily addicted to, taking every thing they heard for granted, plunder'd the *Roman* Citizens, kill'd some, and sold others for Slaves: Nor did *Convictolitanis* a little foment their Fury, that by plunging 'em into some desperate Action, Shame might

might continue 'em in the same Resolution. They in-
 tric'd *Caius Antistius*, the Tribune, who was marching to Vercinge-
 his Legion, and several *Roman* Merchants, to quit *Chalons*,
 on Parole not to disturb their Passage; but set upon 'em
 on the Road, robb'd 'em of their Baggage, besieg'd
 those Night and Day who made Opposition, and many
 being kill'd on both Sides, rais'd a greater Power to ef-
 fect their Design. But being inform'd that all their Sol-
 diers were in *Cesar's* Power, they ran to *Antistius*, as-
 sur'd him nothing had been done by publick Authority,
 call'd those to Account that had seiz'd the *Romans* Ef-
 fects, sequester'd *Litavicus* and his Brothers Estates, and
 sent Embassadors to *Cesar*, to clear themselves from
 what had been done. All this they did to recover their
 Soldiers; but being tainted with the Treason, loth to
 make Restitution of those Goods which had been divid-
 ed amongst so many, and apprehensive of the Punish-
 ment they deserv'd, they privately consulted about car-
 rying on the War, and sent Embassadors to the States
 round about, to desire their Assistance.

Tho' *Cesar* was not ignorant of their Practices, yet
 sending for their Deputies in an affable manner he as-
 sur'd 'em, that he would not entertain an ill Opinion
 of their Country for the Disorders the Mob had been
 guilty of, or bear the less Affection to the *Autunni*.

War with
 Vercinge-
 torix.

besiege Anti-
 stius.
 Cabillonum.

But finding
 their Soldi-
 ers were in
 Cesar's
 Power, they
 send Embas-
 sadors to him
 to clear
 themselves.

Cesar gives
 'em a favou-
 rable Audi-
 ence,

C H A P. XXI.

BEING apprehensive of fresh Commotions in *Gaul*,
 that he might not be surrounded on all Sides in an Ene-
 my's Country, he consulted which way he might quit
 the Siege of *Cleremont*, and join the rest of his Army,
 without giving the Enemy Occasion to believe that he
 fled to avoid 'em. Whilst he was meditating on this
 Affair, there fell out an Accident which seem'd to fa-
 vour his Design; for going into the lesser Camp to view
 the Works, he observ'd a Hill left naked, which but a
 few Days before had been cover'd all over with the E-
 nemy's Forces; he wonder'd what was the Reason of
 their quitting it, and enquir'd the Cause of the Deser-
 ters, who daily flock'd in great Numbers to our Camp:
 They all agreed with our Scouts, that the Back of the
 Hill, from whence lay a Passage to another Part of the
 Town, was an even Ground, but woody and narrow:
 That the Enemy were mightily afraid of losing this
 Post, for the *Romans* having already made themselves

Cesar de-
 signs to quit
 the Siege of
 Cleremont.

War with
Vercinge-
torix.

but first re-
solves upon
an Exploit.

Masters of one Hill, should they obtain this likewise, the *Gauls* would be almost surrounded, and cut off from Foraging; for which Reason *Vercingetorix* had drawn out all his Forces to fortify the Passage. *Cæsar* upon this Intelligence detach'd several Squadrons of Horse thither at Midnight, commanding 'em to ride up and down the Place with as much Noise as possible: By break of Day he caus'd a great Number of Mules and Carriages to be drawn out of the Camp, and the Baggage to be taken out of 'em; then furnishing the Grooms and Waggoners with Helmets, that they might resemble the Horse, he caus'd them to ride about the Hill: With these, for the greater Shew, he mix'd a few Cavalry, commanding 'em to make a large Tower about the Place. This Party was soon descry'd by the Besieged, for the Town commanded a View of the Camp, tho' they could not perfectly at that Distance discover what was done: After these he likewise detach'd one Legion to the same Place, whom he order'd to hide themselves in the Woods and lower Grounds: This increas'd the Jealousy of the *Gauls* to such a Degree, that they immediately drew out all their Forces to maintain the Post: *Cæsar*, perceiving the Camp was deserted, hid his Colours, and caus'd his Soldiers to pass in small Parties from the larger to the lesser Camp, lest the Town should take Notice of it; then calling his Lieutenants together, to whom he had committed the Charge of each particular Legion, he gave 'em such Directions as he thought convenient: In the first place he order'd 'em to restrain their Soldiers from being carry'd too far by the Desire of Fight or Plunder; he acquainted 'em with the Disadvantage of the Place, which nothing but Dispatch could overcome; that the present was an Affair which depended more upon Opportunity than Virtue; and giving 'em the Sign to advance, sent the *Auxiliaries* to meet 'em by another Ascent on the Right.

C H A P. XXII.

THE Wall of the Town lay 1200 Paces distant from the Plain below, without computing the uneven Ground between, and the Circuit which was necessary to be taken for moderating the Steepness of the Ascent, which still increas'd our Journey: The *Gauls* about the middle of the Hill, so far as the nature of the Place would admit, had rais'd a Wall six Foot high for Fortification;

tion ; from the Foot of the Hill to this outward Wall *War with*
there was nothing to obstruct our Passage, but from *Vercinge-*
thence to the Town, the upper Part of the Hill was *torix.*
cover'd all over with little * Camps : So soon as the

Sign was given, our Men made such haste to execute *The Romans take the first War on the Hill.*
their Orders, that they quickly pass'd this Fortification,
and made themselves Masters of three several Camps ;

which they did with so much Dispatch, that *Theuto-*
matus, King of *Agen*, was surpris'd in his Tent, as he
was reposing himself about Noon, and narrowly escap'd
being taken ; for his Horse was wounded under him,
and he fled away half naked, not having Time to dress
himself. *Cæsar* having now accomplish'd all he desir'd,

commanded a Retreat to be sounded, whereupon the
Soldiers of the tenth Legion, who heard the Trumpet,
made a Halt ; and the other Legions, tho' the interven-
ing Valley prevented their hearing the Summons, yet

were commanded by the Tribunes and Lieutenants, ac-
cording to *Cæsar's* Instructions, likewise to halt ; but
prompted with the Hopes of a speedy Victory, encour-
rag'd by the Flight of the Enemy, and flush'd with the
Remembrance of their former Successes, they thought
nothing too difficult for their Courage to accomplish,

nor did they desist from the Pursuit before they came to
the very Gates and Walls of the Town : Which occa-
sion'd so great a Clamour and Confusion from all Parts,
that they who were furthest from the Place assaulted,
believing we had already forc'd our Entrance, left the

Town ; the Matrons cast their Cloaths and Money o'er
the Wall, with naked Breasts and extended Hands, be-
seeching the *Romans* to have Mercy on 'em, and not put
Women and Children to the Sword, as they had done at
Bourges ; and some of 'em being let down by their

Hands, deliver'd themselves up to our Soldiers : *L. Fa-*
bius, a Centurion of the eighth Legion, was so encour-
rag'd by the Plunder he got at *Bourges*, that he was heard
to say, no man should get into *Cleremont* before him ;

wherefore by the Assistance of three Soldiers of his Ma-
niple he mounted the Walls, then assisted 'em one after
another to do the like : In the mean while they who
were gone to defend the Passage on the other Side of
the Town, hearing a Noise and being inform'd by se-

veral Messengers that the *Romans* had taken Possession of *Vercingoto-*
Cleremont, sending their Horse before, follow'd after with
all Expedition ; each Man as soon as he arriv'd there, re-
turn to
plac'd himself under the Wall, to join with such as
ance.

had

* Because
Cæsar said
before they
were divided
into several
Parties, each
Country be-
ing plac'd by
themselves.

Theuto-
matus narrowly
escapes be-
ing taken
Prisoner.

Cæsar
sounds a Re-
treat ; the
tenth Legion
halts, but
the rest pur-
sue their Suc-
cess.

The Confu-
on of the Be-
sieg'd on the
Romans Ap-
proach.

Lucius Fa-
bius's Awa-
rice, which
costs him
dear.
He scales the
Walls.

Vercingoto-
rix's Party
return to
their Assis-
tance.

War with had already made Head against the Enemy; and they
Vercinge- soon grew so numerous, that whereas the Matrons, but
torix. the Moment before, besought the *Romans* to be merci-

*They assume
 fresh Cou-
 rage.*

ful to 'em, now they began to encourage their own Par-
 ty to make a vigorous Defence, by producing their
 Children, and shewing themselves with dishevell'd Hair,
 according to the Custom of the *Gauls*.

C H A P. XXIII.

THUS the Dispute became unequal to the *Romans*
 as well in respect to the Disparity of Number, as the
 Disadvantage of the Place; nor was it to be expected,
 that they who had already endur'd such a Fatigue,
 should be able to withstand those who came fresh to the
 Combat: *Cæsar* perceiving that the Number of the
 Enemy continually increas'd, and being concern'd for
 the Danger his Soldiers were in, sent Orders to Lieute-
 nant *T. Sextius*, whom he had left to guard the lesser
 Camp, immediately to draw out his Cohorts, and post
 'em at the Foot of the Hill, over-against the Enemy's
 Right Wing; that in case our Men should be routed,
 he might put a Stop to the Enemy's Pursuit; and he
 himself marching with one Legion, possess'd a Place
 not far from *Sextius*, where he expected the Event of
 the Battel. The Conflict was sharply maintain'd on
 both Sides, the Enemy confiding in their Post and
 Numbers, ours in their Courage; when on a sudden
 the *Autunois*, whom *Cæsar* had order'd to ascend by an-
 other way on the Right, to give the Enemy a Diversion,
 were discover'd on the Flank of our Soldiers, and
 the Resemblance of their Arms to those of the *Gauls*,
 did not a little surprise the *Romans*; for tho' they ex-
 tended their Right Arms, the usual Sign of Peace, yet
 our Men were apprehensive they did it only for a De-
 coy. At the same time *L. Fabius* the Centurion, and
 those who had got into the Town with him, being sur-
 rounded and kill'd, were thrown over the Wall; and
M. Petreius, another Centurion of the same Legion, en-
 deavouring to force the Gates, was oppress'd by the E-
 nemy's Numbers; wherefore despairing of Safety for
 himself and his Manipular Soldiers, who had follow'd
 him, he told 'em, *That since he could not save himself, he
 would at least take care of them, whom his Ambition had
 brought into that Danger, and advis'd 'em to make use of
 the Opportunity he would procure 'em;* then rushing into
 the

*L. Fabius
 kill'd and
 thrown over
 the Wall.*

the midst of the Enemy he kill'd two, oblig'd the rest to give way, and perceiving his Men strove to assist him, *War with*
In vain, said he, *do you endeavour to save the Man whom* Vercingetorix.
his Blood and Strength have already forsaken; begone there-
fore, whilst you may, and retire to your Legion: Then fighting on, he expir'd soon after, but purchas'd Safety for his Followers by the Expence of his Life. Our Men being attack'd on all Sides, after the Loss of forty six Centurions, were oblig'd to quit the Place; but the tenth Legion, which had been posted nearer the Bottom of the Hill to cover their Retreat, stopp'd the Enemy's Career, being sustain'd by the Cohorts of the thirteenth Legion, which were drawn out of the lesser Camp, and had possess'd the higher Ground: So soon as our Men recover'd the Plain, they made a Stand, and fac'd about to the Enemy; upon which Vercingetorix drew off his Forces from the Foot of the Hill into their Camps: This Day we lost almost 700 Men.

Marcus Petreius dies bravely. The Romans, after the Loss of 46 Centurions and near 700 Men, are oblig'd to retreat.

C H A P. XXIV.

CÆSAR, the Day after, having summon'd the Soldiers to attend him, made a Speech, wherein he condemn'd their eager Pursuit, and reprimanded 'em for presuming to judge how far they were to go after a Retreat was founded, and their Officers had command'd 'em to halt: He laid before 'em the Dangers they were liable to from the Disadvantage of the Place, which he was so sensible of at *Bourges*, that tho' he surpris'd the Enemy there without either Cavalry or a General, yet he forewent a certain Victory, rather than purchase it at so small an Expence as the Difficulty of the Passage would have cost him. He highly applauded their Courage, whom neither the Fortifications of the Enemy's Camp, the Height of the Mountain, nor the Walls of the Town could stop; but as much condemn'd their Pride and Arrogance, who fancy'd themselves better Judges of Victory, and the Event of Affairs, than their General; for he rather desir'd to have his Soldiers modest and obedient, than courageous and daring. In the conclusion of his Speech, he comforted the Soldiers for the Loss they had receiv'd; telling 'em, they should not be dejected at their late Misfortune, which was to be attributed to the Disadvantage of the Place, not to their Want of Courage. Then designing, as formerly, to quit the Siege, he drew his Army up in

Cæsar calls a Council, makes a Speech.

Reprimands the Soldiers for transgressing their Orders.

War with
Vercingetorix.

After a successful Skirmish with the Enemy's Horse, Cæsar decamps, passes the Allier; is inform'd by Virдумarus and Eporedorix of Litavicus's soliciting the Autunois to a Revolt.

in Order of Battel; but finding *Vercingetorix* was not dispos'd to fight him, after a small and successful Skirmish between the Cavalry, he withdrew into the Camp again: The like he did the Day following, then thinking he had done enough to encourage his own Soldiers, and abate the Pride of the *Gauls*, he decamp'd, and march'd to *Autun*: The Enemy did not think fit to follow us, wherefore having in three Days rebuilt the Bridge cross the *Allier*, he pass'd the River with all his Forces. He was inform'd by *Virдумarus* and *Eporedorix* that *Litavicus* was gone with all the Cavalry to solicit those of *Autun* to join the revolted *Gauls*, and therefore it would be absolutely necessary for them to prevent his Design, by confirming the Country in their Loyalty: Tho' Cæsar was already convinc'd of the Infidelity of the *Autunois*, and plainly foresaw that *Virдумarus* and *Eporedorix*'s going would hasten their Revolt, yet he thought it not proper to detain 'em, that he might not give 'em the least Pretext to blame him, or Reason to believe he suspected 'em. At their Departure he briefly enumerated the Services he had done their Country; in how mean a Condition he found 'em, shut up within their Walls, robb'd of their Fields, depriv'd of their Forces, made Tributaries, and oblig'd to deliver Hostages for their Fidelity: Whereas he had rais'd 'em to so high a Pitch of Grandeur, that they did not only recover, but far excel their pristine Glory and Authority; then taking his Leave, he dismiss'd 'em.

CHAP. XXV.

Virдумarus and Eporedorix seize Nevers, put the Garrison to the Sword.

NEVERS is a Town of *Autun*, conveniently seated on the River *Loire*: Here Cæsar had lodg'd all the Hostages of *Gaul*, the Corn, the publick Treasure, his own, and the greatest part of the Army's Baggage, and hither he had sent a great Number of Horses, which he had brought up in *Spain* and *Italy* for the Service. When *Eporedorix* and *Virдумarus* arriv'd at this Place, being inform'd how kindly *Litavicus* had been receiv'd at the * Capital of *Autun*, that *Convictolitanis*, the Chief Magistrate, with the greatest Part of the Senate, were come over to him, and had sent publick Embassadors to *Vercingetorix* to treat of an Alliance, thought it convenient to lay hold of that Opportunity; wherefore, having put the Garrison of *Nevers*, and the *Roman* Merchants who resided there to the Sword, they divided the Money

Divide the Plunder, and burn the Town.

* Bibracte.

Mony and Horſes between 'em; took care to ſend the *War with* Hoſtages to the Magiſtrate at *Autun*, and becauſe the *Vercingetorix* Town was not tenable, left it ſhould be of any uſe to the *Romans*, ſet it on fire. What Corn they had Carriage for, they immediately ſent away by Water, and flung the reſt into the River, or burnt it; then began to raiſe Forces in the neighbouring Countries, diſpos'd Parties for a Guard on the Banks of the *Loire*, and diſpers'd their Cavalry all the Country over, to ſtrike a Terror into the *Romans*, endeavouring to cut off their Convoys, and reduce 'em to a Neceſſity of leaving their Province: They promis'd themſelves Succeſs in this Affair, becauſe the late Snow had ſo ſwell'd the *Loire*, that it was not fordable.

On Advice of theſe Motions, *Caſar* thought it high time to make haſte, and if he muſt be at the Trouble of building a Bridge, reſolv'd to do it ſo quickly, that he might engage the Enemy before they grew ſtronger: For he held it by no means convenient to return to the *Roman* Province, whiſt Honour, the Mountains of the *Cevennes*, and the Difficulty of the way oppos'd his Paſſage: Beſides, he had a great Deſire to join the reſt of his Army under the Command of *Labienus*. Wherefore, beyond all Mens Expectation, marching both Day and Night, he arriv'd by long Journeys at the *Loire*; where the Cavalry having found out as convenient a Ford as could be expected for the Season, he diſpos'd them ſo as to break the Force of the Stream, whiſt the Foot paſs'd over the River, which took 'em up to the Shoulders, leaving 'em only the Liberty to hold their Arms above the Water: At the firſt View of the *Romans*, the Enemy betook themſelves to flight: Thus having ſafely paſs'd the *Loire*, obtain'd a conſiderable Booty of Corn and Cattle in the Fields, and reſreſh'd his Army, he reſolv'd to march into the Country of *Sens*.

C H A P. XXVI.

WHILST *Caſar* was thus employ'd, *Labienus* having left thoſe Supplies, which lately came from *Italy* for a Guard to his Baggage at *Sens*; march'd with Four Legions to *Paris*, which is ſituated in an Iſland of the *Seine*. Upon Notice of his Arrival, the Enemy drew a conſiderable Number of Forces from the neighbouring Countries, which they committed to the Charge of *Camulogenus* of *Eyreux*; upon whom they conſerr'd that Honour,

War with
Vercinge-
torix.

Labiænus
surprises
Melun, Me-
tiolodum :
for this is
the same
Place with
Meliodu-
num; Vide
the Preface.

Honour, for his singular Skill in Military Affairs, tho' his Age seem'd to have render'd him unfit for the Command : He, observing there was a large Morass which join'd to the *Seine*, and obstructed all the Passages round about, lodg'd his Army there, designing to prevent the Romans crossing the River. *Labiænus* was no sooner arriv'd there, but he began to make his Approaches, under the Shelter of his Vines, to fill up the Morass with Mould and Hurdles, to render the Passage firm ; but finding the Work very troublesome, leaving his Camp without Noise about Midnight, he march'd the same way that he came, 'till he arriv'd at *Melun*, which is another Town of the Country of *Sens*, situated likewise in an Island of the *Seine*, as well as *Paris* : Here he surpris'd about Fifty Ships, which he immediately mann'd with his Soldiers ; whereupon the few Inhabitants that remain'd in the Town (for the greatest part was gone out to the War) were so frightened, they immediately surrender'd. After this Success, he repair'd the Bridge, which the Enemy had cut down not long before ; cross'd the River with his Army, and march'd along the Banks with the Stream to *Paris* : The Enemy, having Notice of his Motions, by some that made their Escape from *Melun*, immediately set Fire to *Paris*, caus'd the Bridges to be cut down, and securing themselves in the Morass, on the Banks of the *Seine*, directly over-against *Paris*, placed themselves opposite to *Labiænus's* Camp.

The People
of Beauvois
prepare for
War.

By this time *Cæsar's* quitting the Siege of *Cleremont*, the Revolt of the *Autunois*, and the Second Rebellion of the *Gauls*, were known all the Country over ; to this News the Natives added some of their own, reporting that *Cæsar's* Journey was stopp'd by the *Loire*, and that for want of Provisions he was oblig'd to return to the Roman Province. Whereupon the People of *Beauvois*, having notice of the Defection in *Autun*, being naturally inclin'd to change, began to raise Forces, and make publick Preparations for War. *Labiænus* perceiving the Face of Affairs so wonderfully chang'd, was oblig'd to lay a quite different Scheme than what he had first design'd ; for now he did not think of making Acquisitions and Conquests, but of securing his Retreat to *Sens* ; because one side of the Country was possess'd by those of *Beauvois*, reputed a warlike People ; and the other by *Camulogenus*, who had already a powerful Army in the Field. To add to these Difficulties, his Legions were divided from their Garrison and Baggage by a broad River ;

River; wherefore he found nothing could free him *War with*
from these Inconveniencies, but his wonted Presence of *Vercinge-*
Mind. *torix.*

C H A P. XXVII.

IN the Evening he summon'd a Council of War, *Labienu*
and having encourag'd the Officers diligently to observe *prepares for*
his Orders, divided the Ships which he brought from *a Retreat to*
Melum, among the *Roman* Knights, commanding 'em to *Sens.*
fall down the River at Nine a Clock without any Noise, *Divides his*
and expect him about Four Miles off; Five Cohorts, *Army into*
whom he thought least capable of Service, he left for a *Three Par-*
Guard to his Camp; and the other Five Cohorts of *ties.*
the same Legion, with all the Baggage, had Directions
to march up the River with as much Noise and Confu-
sion as possible; he likewise got a Number of Cock-
boats, which he sent the same way, commanding 'em
to make as great a Bustle as they could with their Oars;
and he himself, not long after, march'd silently out of
his Camp with Three Legions, to the Place where he
had appointed the Ships to meet him. Here he sur-
pris'd the Enemy's Scouts, who were plac'd in all Parts
of the River, but were prevented from making their
Escape by a sudden Tempest; and our Foot and Ca-
valry, by the Care of the *Roman* Knights, to whom *La-*
*bienu*s had committed the Charge of that Affair, were
soon carry'd over the River. It happen'd that the En-
emy before Break of Day, almost at the same Instant,
had Notice, that there was a greater Noise than usual
in the *Roman* Camp; that a considerable Party were
march'd up the River; that beating of Oars was heard
the same way; and that a little lower another Party
had been transported cross the River: Whereupon be-
lieving the *Romans* design'd to cross the *Seine* in Three
several Places at once, and retreat as fast as they could,
because the People of *Autun* had revolted; *Camulogenus*
likewise divided his Army into Three Squadrons, one
he left for a Guard directly over-against our Camp, and
detaching a small Party towards *Melum*, with Orders
to go as far as the Boats were gone before; march'd
with the rest of his Forces against *Labienu*s.

The Gauls
on Notice of
it do the like.

By Break of Day we had transported all our Forces
cross the River, where we found the Enemy ready to
receive us: *Labienu*s encouraging his Men to remember
their *Pristine* Virtue, the many Battels they had for-
merly *Enemy.*

*Labienu*s
with 3 Legi-
ons crosses
the Seine,
engages and
defeats one
Third of the

War with merly won, and to believe *Cæsar* himself was present, *Vercingetorix* under whose Conduct they had so often met with Success, gave 'em the Sign of Battel. At the very first

Onset

the Left Wing of the Enemy was forc'd, and routed by the Seventh Legion; but their Right, with whom the Twelfth Legion engag'd, tho' the first Ranks were swept off by the *Roman* Piles, vigorously maintain'd their Ground, without the least Suspicion of Flight, *Camulogenus* being present to encourage 'em. Here the Dispute was dubious; when the Tribunes of the Seventh Legion, having Notice how Matters went, fac'd about, and attack'd the Enemy in the Rere; who even then attempted not to fly, but being surrounded on all Sides, were cut to pieces with their General. The Squadron which had been left behind to guard the Passage over-against our Camp, hearing the Two Parties were engag'd, came to assist their Countrymen, and posted themselves on a Hill; but not being able to sustain the Assault of our victorious Soldiers, fled as the other Party had done before 'em; and those who found no Shelter from the Woods and Mountains, were kill'd by our Cavalry. After this Success *Labienus* return'd to *Sens*, where he had left the Baggage of his Legions, and from thence with all his Forces march'd to *Cæsar*.

Another party come to their Assistance, and meet with the same Fate.

C H A P. XXVIII.

The Revolted States endeavour to draw others in.

THE Rebels, encourag'd by the Revolt of the *Autunoi*, sent Embassadors to solicit all the States round about to revolt; they made use of their Interest, Money and Authority to effect this Design, threatening those who stood neuter, that their Hostages, whom *Cæsar* had left at *Nevers*, should suffer for their Obstinacy. The

The *Autunoi* contend with *Vercingetorix* about the Supream Management of Affairs, and are overruled by Majority of Votes, which again chuse him Generalissimo.

Autunoi sent Deputies to *Vercingetorix*, desiring he would come to them, that they might consult together about the properest Methods for carrying on the War; but the chief Business when he came thither, was to desire he would resign his Command to them. The Dispute was submitted to the Decision of a General Council of all the Revolted States, to be held at *Autun*: Great Numbers flock'd thither by the Day appointed, the Question was put to the Vote, and *Vercingetorix* by Publick Consent, was again chosen General. The States of *Rheims*, *Langre* and *Treves* were not present at this Council, the first remaining faithful to the People

of

of Rome, and those of Treves; whose Country lay at too great a Distance, were employ'd at home by the Germans. The *Autunois* were not a little disturb'd to find themselves thus stripp'd of their Sovereignty; they already perceiv'd a mighty Change in their Fortune, and began to regret the Loss of *Cæsar's* Favour: But having embark'd in the Enterprize, there was no room for a Retreat; wherefore *Eporodrix* and *Virdumarus*, two hopeful young Gentlemen, were oblig'd, much against their Wills, to receive Orders from *Vercingetorix*.

Invested with this Office, *Vercingetorix* commanded the Confederates to send him Hostages; appointed a Day for a general Rendezvous, at which time they were to furnish him with 15000 Horse; for he was contented with the Foot he had already, because he did not design to try his Fortune in an Engagement; but hop'd to intercept the Roman Convoys, and cut off their Foragers, when he should be so well furnish'd with Cavalry; provided they would contentedly submit to lay their own Country waste, and set Fire to their Buildings; which Damage would soon be recompenc'd by perpetual Liberty and Empire. Having dispatch'd these Orders, he commanded the *Autunois*, and those of * *Lyons*, which lay nearest the Roman Province, to levy 10000 Foot; these, with 800 Cavalry, he committed to the Charge of *Eporodrix's* Brother, whom he order'd to make War on † *Dauphine* and *Savoy*, commanding likewise the People of *Gevaudan*, and the neighbouring Parts of *Auvergne* to harraß *Vivaraïs*; as he did those of *Rouerge* and *Quercy*, to make Inroads into *Languedoc* and *Rheims*: Not omitting, at the same time, underhand to solicit the People of *Dauphine* and *Savoy*, (who he hop'd were not well satisfy'd with their Subjection to the Romans) by sending their Noblemen Bribes, and promising the Natives the Sovereignty of the entire Roman Province.

Vercingetorix raises
15000 Horses

Sends several Parties against the Roman Province, *Languedoc* and *Rheims*.

To oppose this powerful Confederacy, *Cæsar* had only provided twentytwo Cohorts, which he caus'd Lieutenant *Lucius Cæsar* to levy in the Province: The People of *Vivaraïs*, who made themselves the Aggressors by attacking their Neighbours first, after the Loss of several Men, with *C. Valerius Donaturus*, Son of *Cæsurus*,

Cæsar levies
twenty two
Cohorts.

The People
of *Vivaraïs*
routed by
the Rebels.

* *Segusiæ*, whose Territories likewise contain'd all the Country of Forest: *Ortelius* has mistaken this Place, and condemn'd *Proteny* without any Reason. † That is *Allobroges* on both Sides the River *Rhone*.

War with *burus*, the principal Man in their Country, were oblig'd
Vercinge- to quit the Field, and retire within their Walls. But
torix. the *Dauphinois* and *Savoyards*, having dispos'd several
 Watches along the River *Rhofne*, preserv'd themselves
 by their extraordinary Care and Diligence. *Cæsar* un-
 derstanding, that the Enemy were so much superior to
 him in Horse, and had block'd up all the Passages, to
 prevent his receiving Supplies from *Italy*, or the *Roman*
Province; sent to those States of *Germany* cross the *Rhine*,
 which he had formerly quieted, for Cavalry, and such
 light-arm'd Foot as us'd to fight amongst them: Up-
 on their Arrival; perceiving they were but ill mount-
 ed, he took the Horses from the Tribunes of the Sol-
 diers, the *Roman* Knights and Volunteers, to furnish
 'em with.

*Cæsar sends
 for Cavalry
 to Germany.*

C H A P. XXIX.

*Cæsar de-
 signs to
 march to-
 wards Fran-
 checomte.
 Vercingeto-
 rix, designing
 to stop his
 March, calls
 a Council of
 War.*

IN the mean time the Enemy's Forces from *Auvergne*,
 and the Cavalry, which all the Confederates were to
 furnish, had met at the general Rendezvous: *Cæsar* was
 marching towards *Franchecomte*, thro' the extreme Con-
 fines of *Langre*, when *Vercingetorix*, having Notice of
 his Design, endeavour'd to interrupt his Journey; and
 being arriv'd, after three Days March, within ten
 Miles of the *Romans*, he sent for the Horse Officers to
 Council; And assur'd 'em the Time for Victory was now
 come, for *Cæsar* had left Gaul, and was flying to his Pro-
 vince; which would certainly give 'em present Liberty, but
 not secure 'em Peace and Quiet for the future; since the
 Romans did not design to quit Gaul, but return with more
 Forces to carry on the War: Wherefore that was the only
 Time to attack 'em, whilst they were upon their March;
 For should the Foot attempt to assist the Horse, that must
 of necessity put a stop to their Journey: But if every Man
 should endeavour to shift for himself, which he thought
 more likely, they would lose both their Baggage and Honour
 together. For as for the Cavalry, they might be assur'd not a
 Man of 'em durst venture out of the Body of the Army:
 And to strike the greater Terror into the Enemy, he would
 draw all his Forces out before the Camp. The Officers
 unanimously desir'd, that each Man should bind him-
 self to perform his Duty by a solemn Imprecation,
 Wishing that he might never return again to his own
 House, be disown'd by his Children, Wife and Relations,
 that should not twice force his Way thro' the *Roman*
 Army.

*The Gauls
 swear to ride
 twice thro'
 the Roman
 Army.*

Their

Their Request being granted, every Man took the Oath ; and *Vercingetorix* dividing his Cavalry the next Day into three Parties, order'd one to attack our Van, the other two were to follow at a small Distance on either Side : On Notice of their Design, *Cæsar* likewise divided his Horse into three Parties, and commanded 'em to meet the Enemy. Both Parties being closely engag'd, *Cæsar* order'd the Army to halt, the Baggage to be receiv'd in amongst the Legions, and where he perceiv'd his Men to be over-charg'd, he immediately detach'd others to their Assistance ; which prevented the Enemy's gaining Ground, and encourag'd our Soldiers, who found themselves so carefully reliev'd : But at last the *Germans*, having gain'd a rising Ground, pour'd down with such Fury upon the Enemy, that they routed, and pursu'd their Left-wing as far as the River, where *Vercingetorix* had posted himself with the Infantry ; which the rest of the *Gauls* perceiving, to prevent being surrounded, fled as their Countrymen had done before 'em. There was a dreadful Slaughter in all Places ; three of the chief Noblemen of *Autun* were taken, and brought to *Cæsar* ; *Cotus*, General of their Horse, who had lately disputed with *Convictolitavis* about the Magistracy ; *Cavarillus*, who, after *Litavicus's* Revolt, commanded their Foot ; and *Eporodrix*, who was Generalissimo for the *Autunois* against the *Franchecomtois*, before *Cæsar's* arrival in *Gaul*.

The Enemy's Horse being routed, *Vercingetorix* withdrew his Forces, and immediately march'd to *Alise* a Town of * *Dufemois*, commanding the Baggage to follow him ; *Cæsar* leaving his, under a Guard of two Legions, pursu'd him as far as the Day would permit, and, having kill'd above 3000 of the Enemy's Rere, arriv'd the next Day at *Alise*. He took a View of the Place, and having daunted the Enemy by the Defeat of their Horse, in which they most confided, encourag'd his Men to draw a Line of Circumvallation about the Town.

C H A P. XXX.

ALISE was not to be taken without a formal Siege, because it stands on the Summit of a very high Hill, whole Bottom, on both Sides, is water'd by several Rivers : Before the Town is a Valley, which extends about three Miles in Length, but every part besides is

M 2

surrounded

War with Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix sends all his Horse to engage the Romans. The Fight begins.

The German Horse break the Gauls Left-Wing, and rout 'em. All the rest are put to Flight.

Cotus, Cavarillus and Eporodrix taken Prisoners.

Vercingetorix marches to Alise. Alesia.

* *Mandubii. This Country lies in the Diocess of Langre, but has some dependence on that of Autun, according to Sanctus. Diodorus says Alesia was built by Hercules.*

The Situation of Alesia.

War with surrounded by Mountains of an unequal Height, plac'd
Vercingetorix. at a moderate Distance from each other. Under the
 Walls, on that side of the Town towards the East, lay

The Gauls encamp close under the Walls of the Town. all the Enemy's Forces encamp'd, who had fortify'd
 themselves with a Ditch, and a Wall of Stones heap'd
 up eight Foot high : The *Roman* Lines were eleven
 Miles in Circuit, their Camp lay in a convenient Place,

The first Line of Circumvallation drawn by the Romans, included eleven Miles; twenty three Towers built on it. where they had built three and twenty Turrets ; in
 these, Sentinels were plac'd to observe the Enemy's Mo-
 tions by Day, and in the Night they were guarded by
 a continual Watch and strong Garrisons.

Whilst we were employed about our Works, there
 happen'd a Skirmish on the Plain (which we told you
 extended three Miles) between ours and the Enemy's

A Skirmish on the Plain before the Town between the Cavalry: The Gauls worsted. Horse : Perceiving his Parry overpowered, *Cæsar* sent
 the *Germans* to their Assistance, and drew the Legions
 out before the Camp, to be in Readiness in case the E-
 nemy's Foot should make a Sally : Our Men encourag'd
 to see the Legions ready to relieve them, soon routed the
 Enemy, who crowded so close that they hinder'd each
 other's Retreat, and stuck fast between the Gates of
 their Camp : The *Germans* pursu'd them to their Forti-
 fications, where they put great Numbers of them to the
 Sword, and some quitting their Horses, endeavour'd to
 cross the Ditch, and get over the Wall : Whereupon
Cæsar commanded the Legions, which were drawn out
 before the Camp, to advance a little further. Nor were
 the Enemy within the Walls in less Confusion than
 those without; believing we design'd to force their Camp,
 they sounded an Alarm, some fled into the Town for
 Safety, and *Vercingetorix* was obliged to shut the Gates,
 lest the Camp should be deserted : So, after a great
 Slaughter, the *Germans* returned with a considerable
 Booty of Horses.

The Germans return after having made a great Slaughter, with a considerable Booty.

C H A P. XXXI.

Vercingetorix sends away all his Cavalry, orders 'em to bring along with 'em all that were able to bear Arms.

BEFORE our Fortifications were compleat, *Vercingetorix* thought fit to dismiss all his Cavalry by Night :
 He commanded them at their Departure, to return to
 their several Countries, and raise all the Men that were
 able to bear Arms : He put them in Mind of the Servi-
 ces he had done 'em, and conjur'd 'em not to abandon
 him as a Sacrifice to the Enemy's Rage, who had so well
 merited from the publick Liberty ; adding, that by
 Computation he found he had only Corn left for thir-
 ty

ry Days, which, by good Husbandry, might hold out a War with little longer; but if they were negligent in performing his Commands, 80000 chosen Men must perish with him: Having given 'em these Orders, he sent 'em out privately, about Ten at Night, by the Way where our Works were not compleat: So soon as they were gone, he commanded the Town, upon pain of Death, to bring in all their Corn, which he began to measure out very sparingly; he distributed the Cattle, which he had receiv'd in great Numbers from the People of *Dusemon*, amongst his Soldiers; and receiv'd all the Forces which were encamp'd under the Walls, into the Town, designing there to expect Relief from his Confederates; and thus he resolv'd to manage the War.

Cæsar, having Notice of his Designs from the Prisoners and Deferters, prepar'd these Fortifications to disappoint him: First he cut a Ditch Twenty Foot over with perpendicular Sides, as broad at the Bottom as the Top; all the other Fortifications were 400 Foot further off the Town than this Ditch; for he thought it necessary to encompass so large a Circuit of Ground, that his Works might not easily be surrounded on all Sides, nor surpris'd in the Night; as likewise that the Soldiers, who were employ'd about 'em, might be beyond the reach of the Enemy's Darts. Observing this Distance, he drew two other Ditches Fifteen Foot broad and deep, and fill'd the innermost, which lay in a *marshy Ground*, with Water from the River. Beyond these he cut a Trench, and cast up a Rampier Twelve Foot high, which he surrounded with a Breast-Work of Pales and Hurdles, fix'd sharp forked Stakes into the Bank, to prevent the Enemy from approaching where the Rampier and Breast-Work join'd, and surrounded the Whole with Turrets at Eighty Foot Distance from each other.

But perceiving our Men, who were oblig'd to forage, and provide Materials at the same time for so great a Work, were often cut off when they wander'd too far from the Camp; and that the *Gauls*, sometimes making a vigorous Sally from several Parts of the Town together, attempted to force his Lines; *Cæsar* thought it necessary to make more Additions to 'em, that they might be defended with the smaller Number.

* "Wherefore, having prepar'd several Trunks of Trees and strong Boughs, he cut 'em even at the Top,

Cippi.

M 3

and

* It appears, by what follows after, that these Cippi were plac'd immediately next to the innermost Ditch, which *Cæsar* tells you had Water in it, as the *Lilia* and *Stimuli* were between these and the great Ditch Twenty Foot broad, which was the farthest towards the Town.

War with "and sharpen'd every Grain; then drawing another
Vercinge- "Ditch about the Town, Five Foot in Depth, he plant-
torix. ed as many Rows of these Trees in it, which he
"fasten'd to each other at the Bottom, that they might
"not easily be pull'd out; their Tops stood up some-
"thing higher than the even Ground, and they were
"so interwoven with each other, that 'twas impossible
"for the Enemy, if they came that way, to avoid fal-
"ling on the Spikes, which the Romans call'd * Cippios.

Lilia.

"Before these, in order of *Quincunx*, were Pits dug
"Three Foot deep, † something narrower at the Bot-
"tom than the Top; into these were driven Stakes,
"about the thickness of a Man's Thigh, first harden'd
"in the Fire, and sharpen'd at the End; they were
"rooted Twelve Inches deep in the Earth, and only
"permitted to appear Four Fingers Breadth above
"Ground; the Mouth of these Pits were cover'd with
"small Twigs and Osiers to deceive the Enemy; Eight
"several Rows of this Work were made, at Three
"Foot distance from each other, which they call'd
"*Lilia*, for the Likeness they bore to that Flower.

stimuli.

"Before these likewise were plac'd another kind of
"Works, call'd *Stimuli*, which were Poles with Iron
"Hooks at the End of 'em; and those they drove into
"the Earth up to the Heads, all over the Place, at
"a moderate Distance from one another.

These

* Some old Editions read this Cappos, which Lipsius has converted into Scapos, and I think not without Reason, tho' Vallius is very angry at him for it. Cippi were Pillars sometimes set up in Memory of the Dead; but often for Landmarks, as that between the Capitol and Flaminian Way, which had this Inscription on it: I. D. Q. U. O. D. I. N. T. R. A. C. I. P. P. O. S. A. D. C. A. M. P. U. M. V. E. R. S. U. S. S. O. L. I. E. S. T. A. C. E. S. A. R. E. A. U. G. U. S. T. O. R. E. D. E. M. P. T. U. M. P. R. I. V. A. T. O. P. U. B. L. I. C. A. V. I. T. You may observe in the following Paragraph Cæsar says the *Lilia* were so call'd, for the Likeness their Figure had to the Lilly; now therefore supposing these Cippi or Scapi to have been call'd so upon the same Account, (which is but reasonable to imagine) the close Branches of the Trees, which were prepar'd for this Use, will much sooner claim Kinred with Scapi or Scopi, the bushy stocks on which Clusters of Grapes grow, than with Cippi, Pillars or Landmarks, which were as often made of Stone as Wood.

† Paulatim Angustiore ad Summitum fastigio, which Monsieur D'Ablancourt translates Narrower at the Top, On pied croissantes par le haut. But then what will become of the Likeness this sort of Work should have to the Lilly? Lipsius therefore would have this Summitum be converted into Imum, which Vallius opposes; for there is no Occasion to alter the Text, since ad Summitum Scrobis may as well signify to the Bottom of the Pit, as Altum Mare the deep Sea. On this Occasion Vallius has justly ridicul'd Ursinus, for trifling about the various Reading of this Place; but at the same Instant, has brown away above twice the Time, to confute Lipsius in a Point of as little Importance: So easily do the wits of Men overlook their own failings.

II.

her
nt-
he
ght
ne-
ere
ble
fal-
or.

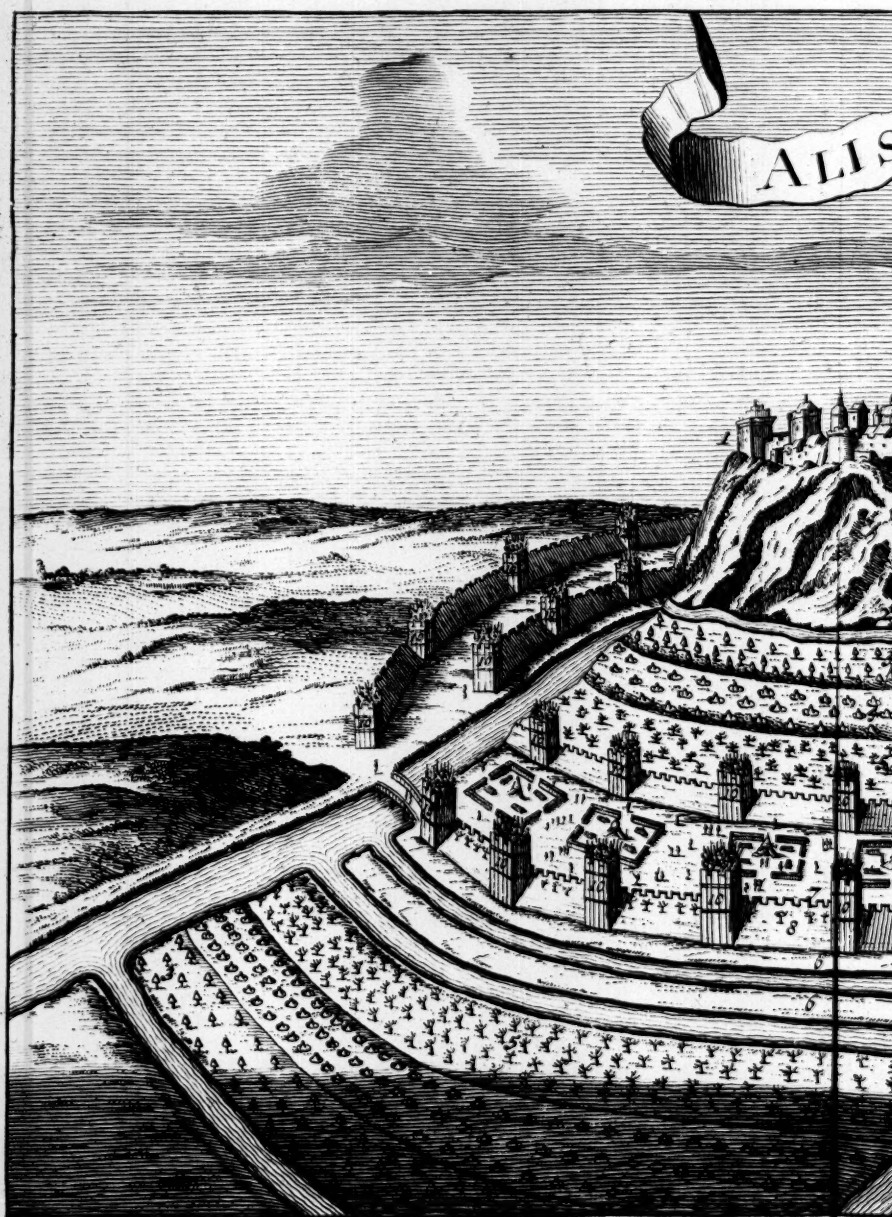
ug
or-
es,
nd
ere
ily
ve
ith
ht
rec
nd

of
on
to
at
fe

nd
rs
en
D.
E-
T.
be
to
se
n-
tb

es
be
is
L.
as
or
m
o
u

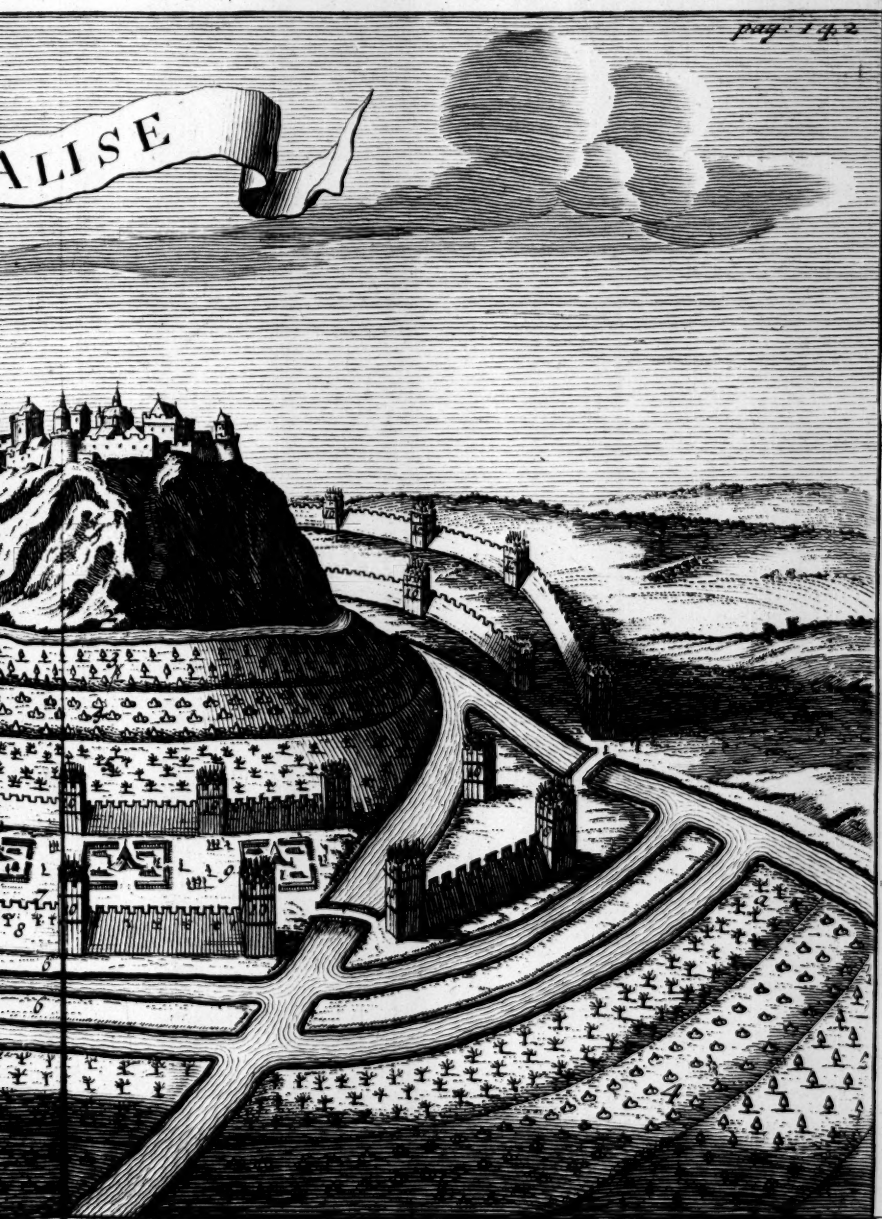




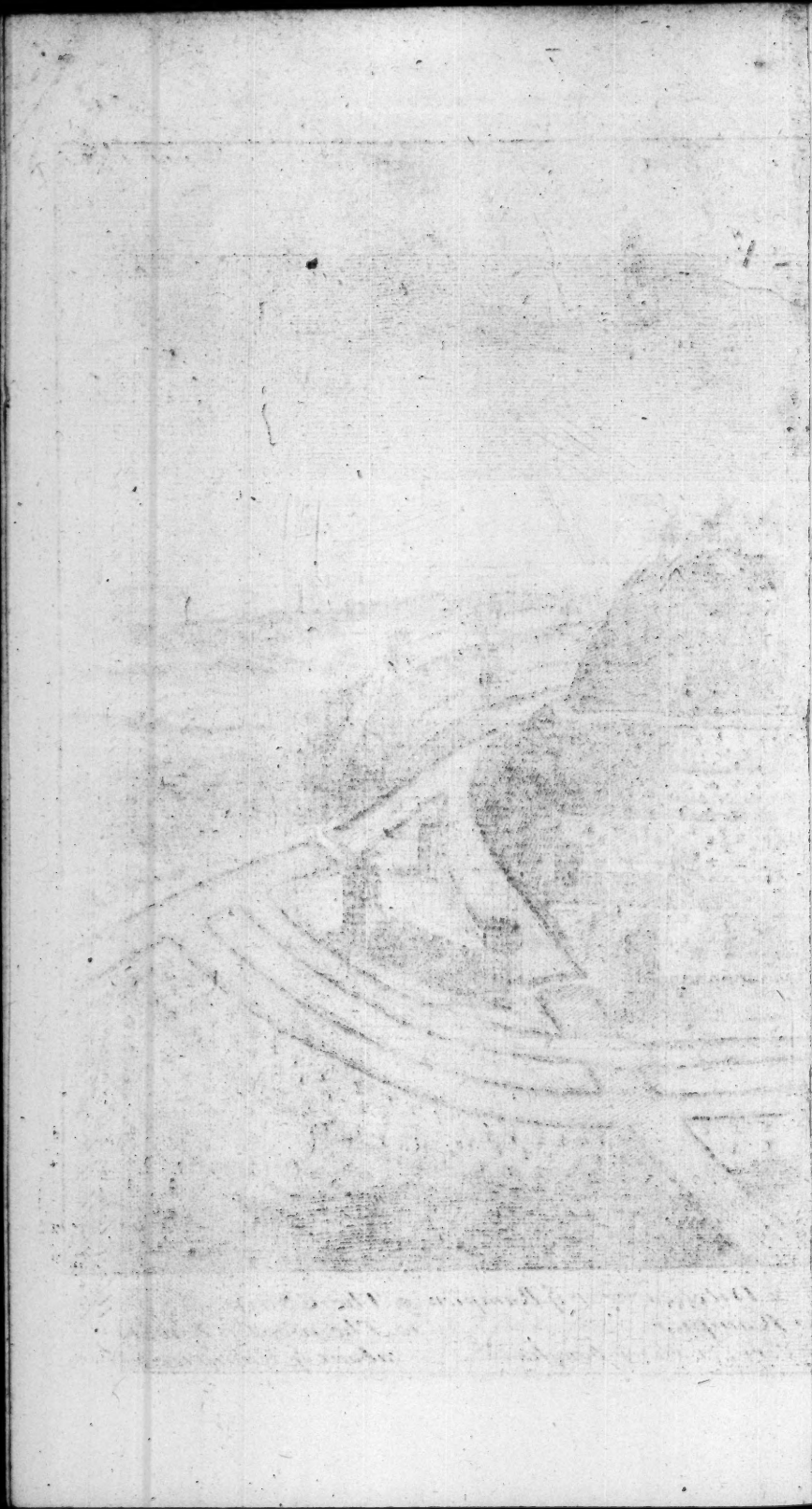
1. The Town of Alife.
 2. The Ditch twenty
 foot broad.

3. The Stimuli.
 4. The Lilia.
 5. The Cippi.

6. The 2
 7. The 1
 8. The Ce



6. The 2 Ditches near of Rampien 9. The Camp .
 7. The Rampier . 10. The wooden Towers
 8. The Cervior Sharp boughs . about of Rampier .



E
o
to
th
ci
m
th
ne
co
w

th
w
D
re
le
fu
kn
th
b
de
t
w
Fr
ea
Th
An
ea
fe
gu
rit
Ca
Bu
w
de
m
co

*
van
his
nor
*
flor
con

These Works compleated, encompassing another Space *War with* of Ground, as even as the Nature of the Place admit- *Vercingetorix.* ted, which extended Fourteen Miles in Circuit, he made the very same Fortifications outwards; that if any Accident should require his Absence from the Camp, it might easily hold out against a considerable Number of the Enemy's Forces: And that his Soldiers might run no more Hazard in foraging than was necessary, he commanded both Horse and Foot should be furnish'd with Thirty Days Provisions.

The same Works be made outward.

C H A P. XXXII.

WHILST these Affairs were in Agitation at *Alise*, *The Gauls* the Princes of *Gaul* held a General Council, where it *held a Council:* was not thought proper to comply with *Vercingetorix's* Desire, in sending all that were able to bear Arms; but resolv'd that each State should furnish a certain Quota, *Give Orders for each State to furnish a particular Quota for the Relief of Alise.* lest it should be impossible to get Provisions for so confus'd a Number; whom the Officers could not possibly know, or govern by Military Discipline: Wherefore those of *Autun*, with their Vassals, the * *Segusiani*, *Ambivareti*, *Aulerci*, *Brannovices* (or *Brannovii*) were order'd to furnish 35000: Those of *Auvergne*, with the † free People of *Quercy*, *Gevaudan* and ** *Velaun*, which † *Eleutheri*, were formerly their Vassals, the like Number: *Sens*, *Franchecomte*, †† *Berry*, *Xantonge*, *Roverge*, and *Chartres*, †† *Or rather* each 12000: *Beauvois* and *Limosin*, each 10000: *Poitou* the *Diocess* of *Turenne*, *Paris*, * *Vivaraun*, and *Soissons*, each 8000: *Amiens*, *Metz*, *Hainault*, *Terouenne*, and *Agen*, 5000 *which contains Berry, part of Burgundy, and Touraine.* each: ††† *Maine* as many: *Arras* 4000: *Vexen*, *Leis* ††† *Aulerci* *seux*, *Eureux*, and *Liege*, each 3000: *Basil* and *Burgundy* 30000: *Bretaigne*, *Normandy*, and the other Maritime Countries, as those of *Cornouaille*, *Auranches*, *Rhenes*, *Caux*, *Landreguet*, *Vannes*, and *Constance*, together 6000: But the People of *Beauvois* refus'd to furnish the Quota which was assess'd 'em, saying, They would wage an Independent War themselves, for they scorn'd to be commanded by any one; 'till out of Respect to *Comius* they comply'd so far, as to send 2000. This *Comius* (as we

M 4

have

* The *Segusiani* we have already explain'd to be the *Lionois*; *Ambivareti* or *Ambivarii*, *Sanlon* places at *Nevers*; but who these *Aulerci* were, can hardly be imagin'd; 'tis certain they cannot be the *Aulerci* mention'd before, because of the Distance of Place nor could any Body ever yet determine, who the *Brannovices* or *Brannovii* were.

* I have render'd this *Vivaraun*, according to *Vossius's* Opinion, who says the Text should not be *Eleutheri* *Suessones*, but *Helvii*, *Suessones*, two different States; but what would make *Mr. D'Ablancourt* mistake *Suessones* for the *Swiss*, I cannot conceive.

War with have already taken Notice) had been so faithful and serving-viceable to Cæsar, in his *English* Expedition, that he freed his Country from all Impositions, restor'd 'em the torix.

Use of their ancient Laws and Customs, and gave him the Country of *Terouenne* for his Loyalty; but so great was the universal Desire of the *Gauls*, at this Instant, to recover their Pristine Liberty and Honour, that neither Friendship nor Gratitude were sufficient to dissuade any one from embarking in the Publick Cause; for the Promotion whereof no Man spar'd either Money or Labour. Having rais'd 8000 Horse and 240000 Foot,

They muster their Forces, 8000 Horse, and 240000 Foot in Autun: Cluse Comias, Vir- dumarus, Eporedorix, & Vergasillaunus Generals. March full of Hope to Alise.

they review'd 'em in *Autun*, where they chose the general Officers, the chief of which were *Comius* of *Ar-ras*, *Virdumarus* and *Eporedorix* of *Autun*, and *Vergasillaunus* of *Auvergne*, Cousin-german to *Vercingetorix*; to these were added other Officers, who were to assist at Councils of War chosen out of every Country. Thus cheerful, and big with Expectation, they set forward to *Alise*, each Man persuading himself that the *Romans* would not have the Courage to look so vast an Army in the Face, while frequent Sallies from the Town should render the Success dubious; and such Numbers of Horse and Foot should be beheld without.

C H A P. XXIII.

The Besieg'd bold & Council of War.

IN the mean time the Besieg'd at *Alise*, having consum'd all their Provisions, the Day being pass'd which was appointed for the Return of their Friends, and being wholly ignorant of what was done in *Autun*, summon'd a Council to determine what Methods they should take in that Extremity: Several Opinions were propos'd, some were for surrendring, and others were for breaking thro' the Enemy, whilst their Strength would permit. Amongst the rest I must not omit a Speech Cruelty: 'Twas made by *Critognatus*, a Nobleman of *Auvergne*, whose Authority was equal to his Birth. I

Critognatus his Speech.

shall not, says he, trouble my self with their Opinion, who colour ignoble Servitude with the gentle Name of Surrender; Men unworthy to be accounted Citizens, much more to sit in this August Assembly: Rather let me join with those who talk of Sallies, in whose Advice, you all agree, appear Remains of ancient Gallic Virtue. Yet I must tell you, what you mistake for Courage, is only the Effect of that Effeminacy, which knows not how to suffer Want; for

for many, of their own Accord, have welcom'd Death, whose War with Patience would not have supported 'em under Pain. How Vercingetorix ever for my Part, I should readily submit to their Opinion, if our Lives only depended on the Event of this Affair; for I always had a particular Regard for Honour: But the whole Kingdom of Gaul which we have engag'd in our Quarrel, must receive its Destinies from our Resolves. Should Fourscore Thousand Men be slain in this Place, what Courage, think you, could their Friends and Relations have, to engage the Enemy almost upon their Carcasses? Far be it from us therefore, to ruin those, who have chearfully embrac'd all Dangers for our Preservation; let not our Rashness or Imbecility of Mind undo our Native Country, and plunge it into perpetual Bondage. Why should we despair of the Faith and Constancy of our Allies, because they have not been punctual to their Day? Surely it should not be taken for an Argument of the Romans Courage, that they daily enlarge their outward Works; if therefore they have intercepted our Couriers, let them witness for the Approach of our Friends, who apprehending their Return, labour both Day and Night to compleat their Fortifications. If you would follow my Advice, let us imitate the Example of our Ancestors, who in that far more dangerous War, with the Cimbers and Teutons, being shut up within their Town, and reduc'd to the same Necessity; did not surrender, but sustain'd themselves by the Bodies of those, whose Age had render'd 'em unuseful for the War: And if Antiquity had not furnish'd us with so glorious a Precedent to follow, we ought to have made one our selves, for the sake of our Publick Liberty, and the Instruction of Posterity. Gaul never was engag'd in a more dangerous War, never labour'd under greater Extremities, than when she was harass'd by these Cimbers; yet at length they quitted our Country, and march'd to another, leaving us our Land, our Customs, our Laws and Liberties intire. But what Design brought the Romans hither? except the Envy of subduing a renown'd and warlike People, possessing their Country, and making 'em perpetual Slaves: For they never yet made War upon any other Account. If you are ignorant of their Transactions in remoter Countries, cast your Eyes upon the neighbouring Gaul, which is reduc'd to a Province, depriv'd of its Laws and Customs, and labours under an eternal Yoke of Arbitrary Power.

The Matter being put to the Vote, it was first resolv'd that the Sick and Aged should quit the Town,

They resolve to expel the sick and aged out of the Town.

War with and that all other Methods should be try'd, before those Vercinge-
 torix. propounded by *Critognatus*; whose Advice however they design'd to put in Practice, rather than submit to a Treaty or Surrender. Thus the Natives of *Dufemon*, who had receiv'd 'em into *Alife*, were expell'd their own City, together with their Wives and Children: Approaching the *Roman* Lines, with Tears in their Eyes, they most humbly begg'd to be receiv'd as Slaves, and say'd from perishing by Famine: But *Cæsar*, having dispos'd a Guard all about the Works, refus'd 'em Entrance.

C. H. A. P. XXXIV.

The Confederates arrive at *Alife*.

IN the mean while *Comius*, and the other General Officers, with all their Forces, were arriv'd at *Alife*, and had lodg'd themselves upon a Hill, not above 500 Paces from our Works. The Day after, drawing out all their Cavalry, they fill'd the Valley, which as we have already said, extended Three Miles in Length; and rang'd their Infantry, not far from the same Place, upon the rising Ground. *Alife* commanded a View of all the Country round, the Besieg'd soon discover'd their Allies; met together, joyfully congratulated each other on their Arrival, and drawing out all their Forces before the Town, began to fill up the first Ditch with Mould and Fascines, and prepare all other Materials for a vigorous Sally.

The Besieged perceiving they are come, prepare for a Sally.

Cæsar orders the Cavalry to sally out upon the Enemy.

Cæsar having dispos'd the Army on both Sides the Works, that every Soldier might know, and be ready to maintain his particular Post; commanded the Cavalry to sally out upon the Enemy. From those Parts of the Camp which lay upon the higher Ground, might easily be seen what was done in the Field; and the whole Army were mighty intent on the Success of the Engagement. The *Gauls* had intermix'd small Numbers of light-arm'd Foot and Archers among their Horse, to assist 'em, and sustain the Attack of our Troops; who wounded several of our Cavalry unawares, and oblig'd 'em to quit the Barrel: Whereupon the *Gauls*, believing Success inclin'd to their Side, because our Men were oppress'd by their Numbers, encourag'd each other by a joyful Shout, which was return'd by the Besieg'd: The Place where the Conflict was, lay open to the View of both Armies, neither noble nor cowardly Actions could be conceal'd, so the Desire of Applause,

or fear of Ignominy, spurr'd on each Side to do their War with utmost. Victory had now continu'd dubious from Noon Vercingetorix till almost Sun-set, when the Germans in close united Ranks made a furious Charge upon the Enemy, put 'em to flight, surrounded their Archers, and cut 'em to pieces; our Men pursu'd the Gauls so close, they gave 'em no leisure to rally, till they were arriv'd at their Camp; upon which the Besieg'd, almost despairing of Victory, return'd very melancholy to the Town again.

The Germans charge the Enemy, and rout 'em.

After this Disappointment the Gauls allow'd themselves one Day's Respite, during which time they prepar'd great plenty of Fascines, scaling Ladders and Iron Hooks; then leaving their Camp about Midnight, with great Silence, they came to our outward Works: So soon as they were arriv'd there, setting up a Shout, to give their Allies in the Town Notice of their Approach, they began to fill up their Ditches with their Fascines, to dislodge our Men from the Rampier with Slings, Stones and Arrows, and to apply all other things necessary for a Storm: Vercingetorix, hearing their Summons, sound'd an Alarm, and led all his Forces out of the Town. Our Men, who had their several Posts allotted 'em, repair'd to the Fortifications, and ply'd the Enemy close with their Slings, Darts, Bullets and Engines: 'Twas very dark, and many were wounded on both Sides; but M. Anthony and C. Trebonius took care to draw out Parties from the farther Castles, to relieve the Soldiers under their Command, who were the most press'd by the Enemy.

The Gauls attempt to force the Roman Works a second time, but in vain.

Whilst the Gauls were at the greatest Distance from the Works, they did more Execution with their Darts than when they came nearer; for then they run themselves unawares upon the Stimuli, fell into the Lillies, and were wounded with the Spikes, or were kill'd by the Piles that were cast from the Rampier and Turrets. Many Wounds had been receiv'd on both Sides, and no Part of our Fortifications forc'd, when Day-light appearing, the Gauls were apprehensive they should be flank'd by a Sally from the higher Ground, and therefore retreated; but the besieg'd had spent all this time in filling up the first Ditch, and were inform'd of their Allies Retreat, before they could come near the Works themselves, therefore return'd again to the Town without effecting any thing.

War with
Vercinge-
torix.

C H A P. XXXV.

The Gauls
consult about
a Third At-
tack.

Vergasillaunus, with
55000 chosen
Men, goes to
attack Anti-
stius's Quar-
ters.

The Gauls
within and
without at
the same
time assault
the Roman
Works.

THUS twice repuls'd with Loss, the *Gauls* began to consult what Methods they should take, and having advis'd with those that knew the Ground, from them they were inform'd of the Nature of our Works, the Situation of our higher Camp, and learnt that on the North Side of *Alise* lay so large a Hill that the *Romans*, could not encompass it within their Works, but were oblig'd to take up their Quarters there upon an uneven Ground; that this Place was guarded by the Lieutenants *C. Antistius Reginus*, and *C. Caninius Rebilus*, with Two Legions: Whereupon having sent out their Scouts for further Knowledge of the Place, their Generals drew out 55000 chosen Men, from amongst those States that are esteem'd the most warlike, privately resolv'd what Means were most proper for the Management of this Design, and appointed the Time for the Assault about Noon: *Vergasillaunus* of *Auvergne* (*Vercingetorix's* Relation) one of the four Principal Commanders, who had the Charge of this Party, leaving the Camp about Nine a Clock, finish'd his Journey before Day; and posting his Troops behind a Hill, order'd the Soldiers to refresh themselves after their March. When Noon approach'd he went to *Reginus's* Quarters, at the same Instant the Enemy's Cavalry approach'd our Works, and the rest of the Army shew'd themselves drawn up in Order of Battel before their Camp. Which *Vercingetorix* beholding from the Tower of *Alise*, sally'd out of the Town, carrying along with him a great many Fascines, long Poles, Penthouses, Hooks, and such other Instruments as he had prepar'd for that Purpose; the Dispute was maintain'd on every side at once, for the *Gauls* left nothing unattempted to accomplish their Desire, still flocking to those Parts of the Works which appear'd to be weakest. The *Roman* Forces were oblig'd to divide themselves into several Parties, nor would the smalness of their Number easily permit 'em to be present in all Places at once: It was no small Discouragement to 'em to hear the Noise behind their Backs, considering their Safety depended on other Mens Courage; for all People are most apprehensive of the Dangers which they cannot see. *Cæsar* having posted himself in a convenient Place, from whence he might descry what was done in all Parts, detach'd fresh Supplies to sustain

sustain those that were over-charged, and encourag'd the whole Army, telling 'em, that was the only Time to give Proofs of their Virtue, for if the *Gauls* were not able to force their Lines they would certainly despair of Succels, and the *Romans* might expect an End of their Labours. The chief Streſs of the Battel lay at the higher Fortifications, where *Vergasillaunus* was engag'd; which tho' a very small Place, was of great Imporrance, because of its Declivity: Some of the Enemy's Forces were employ'd in throwing Darts, whilst others casting themselves into a *Testudo*, approach'd the Works, fresh Men still relieving the weary: They had soon thrown up a Mount, which did not only furnish 'em with an Ascent, but cover'd and intirely defeated the use of those Works the *Romans* had made in the Ground. In fine, our Men had been so long employ'd, that they had neither Strength nor Weapons left; wherefore *Caſar* sent *Labienuſ* with six Cohorts to their Assistance, commanding him, if he found himself unable to maintain the Works, to fall out upon the Enemy, but not otherwise. He himself went in Person to encourage the rest of his Army, assuring 'em that upon that Hours Succels depended the Reward of all their former Toils. The Besieged having already in vain attempted the lower Fortifications, were resolv'd to try their Fortunes in the higher and uneven Ground; thither therefore they brought all the Instruments they had got ready, drove our Men by Showers of Darts from the Turrets, levell'd the Way with Fascines, rais'd a Mount, and from thence began to break down the Rampier and Breast-works. So soon as *Caſar* had notice of their Effort, he first detach'd young *Brutus* with six Cohorts to maintain the Place, after him Lieutenant *Fabius* with seven more, and at last when the Dispute grew very warm, went thither himself in Person with another Supply: Having renew'd the Fight with fresh Vigour, and repuls'd the Enemy, he march'd to the Place whither he had sent *Labienuſ*, with four Cohorts, which he drew out of the next Turrets, commanding one Parry of Horse to follow him, and another to take a Circuit round about the outward Works, and attack the Enemy in the Rere. In the mean time *Labienuſ*, finding neither Ditches nor the Rampier were sufficient to defend him against the Enemy's Assault, had drawn out thirty nine Cohorts from the nearest Quarters thereabouts, and sent *Caſar* word what he thought necessary to be done; upon which

War with
Vercingetorix.

Caſar re-
lieves his
Men and en-
courage 'em
to fight.

Labienuſ
detach'd to
the Reli.f of
Antillius.

The Besieged
vigorously
attempts the
higher
Works.
Caſar ſends
Brutus and
Fabius to
maintain the
Place, comes
thither him-
self.
The Enemy
repuls'd, Caſar
goes to
Labienuſ.

War with
Vercingetorix.

Labienuſ
ſallies out
upon Verga-
ſillaunus's
Party.

Routs him.

Sedulius of
Limolin
ſlain.
Vergaſſilau-
nus taken
Prisoner.
The Beſieg'd,
on this De-
feat, retire
from the
Works; and
the Gauls
without de-
ſert their
Camp.

which he made what haſte he could to be preſent at the Engagement. His Arrival was ſoon perceiv'd by the Colour of his Garments, which he us'd to wear in Bat- tel, and the Troops of Horſe and Cohorts which he had order'd to follow him being diſcover'd from the higher Ground, the Fight began; they ſet up a Shout on both Sides, which was return'd from the Rampier, and all the Fortifications round: The Romans, having caſt their Piles, fell upon the Enemy Sword in Hand: The Cavalry which were ſent about, ſoon ſlew'd themſelves in the Enemy's Rere, more Cohorts came up to our Aſſiſtance, and the Gauls were routed; our Horſe purſu'd and ſlew great Numbers of 'em, amongſt the reſt *Sedulius*, Prince and General of *Limofin*; *Vergaſſilauus* was taken Priſoner, ſeventy four Standards were brought to *Cæſar*, and very few of the 55000 eſcap'd. The beſieg'd, beholding with Deſpair the Rout and Slaughter that was made amongſt their Allies, retreated from the Works. On the News of this bad Succeſs, all the Gauls deſerted their Camp, and had not our Soldiers been fatigu'd by perpetual Labour, and relieving each other, their whole Army might eaſily have been cut to Pieces: However, about Midnight *Cæſar* detach'd the Cavalry to purſue 'em, who falling in with their Rere took many Priſoners, and ſlew great Numbers, but the reſt eſcap'd to their ſeveral Countries.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Vercingetorix calls a
General
Council.

The Beſieg'd
ſend Embaſ-
ſadors to
treat of a
Surrender.
Alſo ſurren-
ders at Diſ-
cretion;
Vercingetorix deliver'd
up. Cæſar
marches to
Autun, which
ſubmits, with
Auvergne.

THE Day after, *Vercingetorix* having ſummon'd a General Council, remind'd the Beſieg'd, That he had not undertaken that War for his own private Intereſt, but for the ſake of the publick Liberty; however, ſince the Power of Fortune was not to be reſiſted, he would freely ſubmit to be ſacrific'd himſelf for an Attonement to the Romans, whether they ſhould think fit to demand his Head, or to have him deliver'd alive into their Power. Upon which they ſent Embaſſadors to know *Cæſar's* Pleaſure, who order'd 'em to ſurrender their Arms, and deliver up all their Noblemen; they obey'd his Commands, bringing *Vercingetorix* among the reſt. *Cæſar*, ſitting in the Fortifications before the Camp, diſtributed the Priſoners among the Soldiers for a Booty, excepting only the Natives of *Autun* and *Auvergne*, hoping by their means to recover the other States. This Affair thus ended, he march'd directly to *Autun*; on his Arrival the

the Country submitted, and those of *Auvergne* did the like, by their Embassadors: He demanded a considerable Number of Hostages from 'em both, and return'd 'em about 20000 Captives; then sent his Legions into Winter-quarters. *Labienus*, with two Legions and the Horse, he sent to *Branchecomte*, joining *M. Sempronius Rutilius* with him for an Assistant: *C. Fabius* and *L. Minutius Bassilius*, with two other Legions, he placed at *Rheims*, to prevent any Insurrections at *Beauvois*: *C. Antistius Reginus* he detach'd to the Country of *Nevers*; *T. Sextius* to *Berry*; and *C. Caninius Rebilus* to *Rouverge*; each with a single Legion: *Q. Tullius Cicero* and *P. Sulpitius* he detach'd to *Chalons* and * *Mascon*, upon the River *Soan*, in the Country of *Autun*, to take Care for Provisions; quartering himself at the Capital of the same State. So soon as the Senate were inform'd by Advice from *Caesar* of this Summer's Campaign, they proclaim'd a publick Thanksgiving of twenty Days for his Success.

War with
Vercingetorix.

Caesar returns 'em
20000 Captives. Sends
his Legions
into Winter-
quarters.

* Matiscon.

A

A
 COMMENTARY
 OF
 C. J. CÆSAR'S
 WAR in GAUL.
 The Eighth Book.

Vid. Suet.
 Tranquil. in
 Vita Julii.

By some attributed to A. Hirtius Panfa, by
 others to Oppius.

The Author's Preface to his Book. New Commotions in Gaul. Berry and Chartres laid waste by Cæsar. Beauvois, and several other States subdu'd. Rebellion in Poictou, Chartres, Normandy and Britain, quell'd by C. Fabius. A Victory obtain'd by Caninius. Usseldon taken by Cæsar. Comius defeated and pardon'd. The following Year, the whole Kingdom of Gaul being quieted, Cæsar's Enemies at Rome conspire against him.

Hirtius's
 Preface.

“ I N Compliance to your repeated Desires, I have
 “ at last, Balbus, undertaken a very difficult Task
 “ and continu'd our Cæsar's incomparable Memoirs
 “ of his Wars in Gaul, and those of Alexandria, which
 “ he left imperfect, not only to the End of the Civil
 “ War, but of his Life; fearing you should believe
 “ my daily Refusals proceeded from Idleness, rather
 “ than a just Sense of my own Disability. I wish my
 “ Readers may consider with how much Reluctancy I
 “ be-

"embark'd in this Affair, and not impute it either to *New Com-*
 "my Folly or Arrogance, that I have presum'd to place *motions in*
 "my Writings between those of *Cæsar*; whose Com- *Gaul.*
 "mentaries, tho' only design'd by him to preserve the
 "Memory of so many glorious Actions, for the Bene-
 "fit of other Historians; could never yet be equal'd
 "by the most accurate Writers: And are so much
 "esteem'd by all Mankind, that they have rather depriv'd
 "future Authors of the Opportunity, than furnish'd
 "em with Materials for compiling a larger History.
 "But we, *Balbus*, have more reason to admire him
 "than the rest of the World, who only know how po-
 "lite and correct his Performances are; whilst we are
 "acquainted in how short a time he compos'd 'em.
 "*Cæsar* was as happy in the true Knowledge of his
 "own Counsels and Designs, as in an elegant Style:
 "But for my Part, I neither had the good Fortune to
 "be present at the *Alexandrian* nor *African* Wars;
 "which tho' I have been partly inform'd of from his
 "Discourse, yet we give a very different Attention
 "to those Things, whose Novelty attract our Admira-
 "tion, and those we design to attest to Posterity. But
 "I shall add no more on this Subject, lest any one
 "should misconstrue my Excuses for Pride, and believe
 "me guilty of the Vanity to think my self compara-
 "ble to *Cæsar*, whilst I am alledging all the Reasons I
 "can invent to the contrary.

C H A P. I.

GAUL was now again reduc'd, and *Cæsar* design'd. *Several*
 to refresh his Soldiers in Winter-quarters, after the last *States revolt.*
 Summer's Fatigue, which had not allow'd 'em a Mo-
 ment's Respite from the War; when he was inform'd
 that several States were at the same Instant conspiring
 about a new Revolt. The Reason reported for the
 ground of this Resolution was, That the *Gauls* were
 convinc'd no Power they were able to bring into the
 Field, was sufficient to resist the *Roman* Army intire;
 but hop'd, if so many Countries revolted at once, the
Romans could neither have Time, nor Forces enough to
 subdue 'em all: Nor ought that single State, to whose
 Lot it should happen, refuse to submit to any Inconve-
 nience, so the rest might be enabled, by that Diverfion,
 to recover their Liberty.

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.

Caesar
marches into
Berry.

Lays the
Country
waste.

Takes se-
veral Priso-
ners.

Some fly for
Refuge to the
Neighbour-
ing States.

Berry sub-
mits.

Caesar re-
wards his
Soldiers for
the Hard-
ships they
had suffer'd
in this Expe-
dition; and
returns to
Autun.

The People
of Berry de-
sire Assistance
against those
of Chartres.

Left the Gauls should be confirm'd in this Opinion, Caesar leaving M. Antony the Treasurer to command his Winter-quarters, quitted Autun the last of December, and went with a Guard of Cavalry to the Twelfth Legion; which he had lodg'd in Berry, on the Confines of Autun: And having join'd the Eleventh Legion, which lay not far off, leaving Two Cohorts for a Guard to his Baggage, he ravag'd the most fruitful Parts of Berry; which being a large Country, and having many Towns, could not be aw'd into Obedience, and deterr'd from Conspiracies by a single Legion.

It happen'd, by Caesar's sudden Arrival, as of Necessity it must, that they who were unprovided and dispers'd in the Fields, were surpris'd by the Horse, before they could make their Escape into their Towns: For he had taken Care to prohibit burning of their Houses, the usual Sign of an Invasion, lest he should want Corn or Forage if he went too far into the Country, and the Enemy should have warning to take care of themselves. Many Thousands of the Natives were taken, and others, upon the Romans first coming, fled for Shelter to the Neighbouring States, depending either upon their antient Acquaintance, or the Interest which their Conspiracy had united. But Caesar disappointed 'em; for he arriv'd so unexpectedly, by long Marches, to all the Countries they had retir'd to, that he allow'd 'em no time to provide for themselves, much less to take care of their Neighbours: By which Dispatch he confirm'd his Friends in their Fidelity, and oblig'd the wavering to accept of Peace. At last the People of Berry, perceiving Caesar, on delivery of Hostages, had pardon'd and receiv'd the other States into Protection, were glad to embrace the merciful Opportunity for regaining his Favour, and follow'd their Neighbours Example.

Caesar promis'd each Soldier, as a Reward for the Hardships they had undergone in this Expedition, by the Season, the Difficulties of the Roads, and the intolerable Cold, the Sum of 200 Sesterces; to every Centurion 2000, instead of Plunder; and having sent the Legions back to their Quarters, after Forty Days absence, return'd to Autun. Here he was distributing of Justice, when Embassadors from Berry came to pray Assistance against the People of Chartres, who had invaded their Country: Immediately on Advice of these Commotions, tho' he had not rested above Eighteen Days

Days, having drawn out the Sixth and Fourteenth Legions from their Quarters, on the Banks of the *Soan*, (where he had posted 'em, as you may observe in the former Commentary, to take care of Provisions;) he march'd against the People of *Chartres*: Who upon the first Notice of our Approach, being terrify'd with the Punishment that others had met with, deserted those little Towns and Villages, which they had run up after the Destruction of their more considerable Buildings, to defend 'em from the Winter's Cold, and dispers'd themselves into several Parts of the Country. *Cæsar* being loth his Soldiers should endure the sharp Storms, which frequently happen'd at that Season, took up his Quarters at *Orleans*, disposing part of his Army in those Houses which the *Gauls* had rebuilt, and thatch'd the Barracks with Straw, which the Natives had left imperfect, to shelter the rest. But he dispers'd his Cavalry and Auxiliary Foot with good Success into all Parts, where he was inform'd the Enemy werè fled; for our Men often return'd with considerable Booties. The Natives thus oppress'd by the Cold of the Season, being driven from their Houses, not daring to continue long in any Place for fear of our Parties, and finding no Protection in the Woods from the sharpness of the Weather, were dispers'd; several of them lost their Lives, and the rest took Refuge in the neighbouring Countries.

*New Com-
motions in
Gaul.*

*Cæsar
marches a-
gainst Char-
tres.*

*The People
quit th. ir
towns, and
disperse
themselves.*

*Cæsar en-
camps at
Orleans.*

*Disperses his
Cavalry into
the Country.*

C H A P. II.

CÆSAR thought he had done enough for the Season of the Year, in dispersing the Enemy's Forces to prevent a War; but considering how much it importèd him to take care, that the Rebels should not be able to make any considerable Head the next Summer, left *C. Trebonius*, with Two of the Legions he brought along with him, at *Orleans*: And being inform'd by several Messengers from *Rheims*, that the People of *Beauvois* (who are more renown'd for Warlike Virtue than any other State of the *Belgæ*) with some of their Neighbours, under the Conduct of *Correus* of *Beauvois*, and *Comius* of *Arras*, were raising a considerable Army, and marching to a general Rendezvous, in order to invade the Borders of *Soisson*, which belong'd to the Country of *Rheims*; he thought it did not only concern his Honour, but Interest, not to permit such faithful Allies as those of

*Cæsar
leaves Tre-
bonius with
Two Legions
at Orleans,
and marches
against the
People of
Beauvois.*

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.



Rheims to suffer, who had merited so well from the *Roman Empire*: Wherefore drawing the Eleventh Legion again out of their Quarters, he sent Orders to *C. Fabius*, that he should march with the Two Legions under his Command to *Soisson*, and likewise writ to *Labienus* for one of his. So as his Garrisons lay most convenient, when Necessity requir'd, he sometimes oblig'd one, sometimes another, to quit their Quarters, allowing himself no Intermission from Fatigue.


Caesar gets
Intelligence
of the ene-
my's Designs.

Correus
and Comius
Chief Com-
manders of
the Rebels.

Having drawn these Forces together, he march'd to *Beauvois*, and encamp'd in their Territories, dispersing his Cavalry into all Parts to get Prisoners, from whom he might be inform'd of the Enemy's Designs. The Horse perform'd his Orders, and brought him Word, they could meet with very few in their Houses, tho' they had diligently search'd all Places; nor were those they had surpris'd left there to till the Ground, but to supply the Enemy with Intelligence. From these *Caesar* was inform'd, that all the People of *Beauvois*, who were able to bear Arms, with those of *Amiens*, *Eureux*, *Caux*, *Vexen* and *Arras*, had retir'd to a High Place, surrounded by a Marsh, where they had encamp'd themselves, having dispos'd all their Baggage in the remotest Woods. That these Forces were under the Command of several Officers, but had chosen *Correus* their Generalissimo, because he was most obnoxious to the *Romans*: That *Comius*, not many Days before, having left the Camp, was gone to *Germany*, to solicit Assistance from that Nation, who were their Neighbours, and a numerous People: That the Enemy had resolv'd, by Consent of all their Generals, and the ardent Desire of the Soldiers, in case *Caesar* should come only with Three Legions, as was reported, to offer him Battel, lest they should afterwards be oblig'd to engage him at a greater Disadvantage; but if he brought more Forces along with him, to continue within their Camp, to intercept his Convoys, and prevent him from getting Forage, which the Season of the Year had render'd scarce.

This Advice being confirm'd from many Hands, *Caesar* found their Designs well laid, and very different from those Resolves which the Rashness of the barbarous *Gauls* us'd formerly to produce. Wherefore he resolv'd to leave nothing unessay'd for drawing the Enemy to an Engagement, as soon as possible, by the Contempt of his small Numbers. The Seventh, Eighth and Ninth Legions, were Veteran Troops of extraordinary

inary Courage, and the Eleventh consisted of chosen *New Com-*
Men, all hopeful Youths, which had made eight *seve-* *motions in*
ral Campaigns, yet were not esteem'd comparable to *Gaul.*

the rest for Valour or Experience. Calling a Council he 

communicated the Advices he had receiv'd to all the
Officers, and encourag'd 'em to behave themselves man-
fully ; then drew up his Army, that he might entice *Cæsar draws*
the Enemy to a Battle, by seeing he had only three Le- *up his Army*
gions ; the Seventh, Eighth and Ninth Legions he *as close as he*
plac'd before the Baggage, which was never great a- *can, to entice*
mongst the *Romans*, and order'd the Eleventh to bring *the Enemy*
up the Rere, that the Enemy might not discover more *to an Engage-*
Forces than they expected. By this Disposition he mo- *ment ; and*
dell'd his Army almost into an exact Square, and ar- *marches to-*
riv'd within sight of the *Gauls* before they expected *wards' in in*
him : Who perceiving our Forces march so suddenly to *order of bat-*
'em in Battel Array, alter'd the Resolution which had *tel.*

been reported to *Cæsar* ; either fearing the Success of *But they*
the Fight, being surpris'd at our Approach, or desi- *decline the*
rous to attend the first Motions from us ; and drew up *Fight.*

in order of Battel before their Camp, without descend-
ing from the higher Ground. *Cæsar* was very desirous
to engage the Enemy, but considering their Numbers,
and the Disadvantage of the rising Ground, which ex-
tended farther in Ascent than the Breadth of the Valley
below, he thought it convenient to encamp directly o-
ver-against 'em. Round about the Place where he had

posted himself, he drew two Ditches, each fifteen Foot
deep, with perpendicular Sides ; behind 'em he cast
up a Rampier twelve Foot high, garnish'd with a
Breast-work proportionable to it, and several Turrets of
three Stories, join'd to each other by Galleries, which
likewise had their little Parapets of Osiers, that the En-
emy might be repuls'd by two several Rows at the
same Instant : And those in the Galleries were defend-
ed by their height from the Enemy, and enabled to cast
their Piles the greater Distance ; so they on the Ram-
pier were screen'd by the Gallery from those Darts which
might otherwise have fallen upon their Heads : Over
the Gates he built higher Towers than in any other
Place.

Cæsar had two Designs in making these Fortifications,
for he hop'd the Strength of his Works might persuade
the Enemy he was afraid of 'em, and he was assur'd
his Camp might be defended by a small Number, when
he should be oblig'd to make a long Excursion for Corn

*Cæsar en-
camps over-
against 'em,
His Fortifica-
tions.*

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.

small Skir-
mishes be-
tween both
Camps.

The Roman
Foragers
sometimes
intercepted.
Comius re-
turns to the
Enemy with
500 Horse
from Ger-
many.

or Forage. In the mean time, there happen'd small Skirmishes between both Camps, sometimes our Auxiliary Gauls and Germans, and sometimes the Enemy, crossing the Morass, pursu'd each other eagerly by Turns, the prevailing Party obliging the Weaker to retire towards their Camp. Here it happen'd, as of Necessity it must, that our Soldiers going out every Day to Forage, in remote and stragling Places, were sometimes surpris'd by the Enemy; which Losses of Carriages and Servants, tho' insignificant to us, yet puff'd up the foolish Gauls with Pride, which was not a little encreas'd by Comius's Return, with the Supplies he rais'd in Germany, and tho' he only brought 500 Horse, yet they valu'd themselves extremely upon their Arrival.

C H A P. III.

Cæsar sends
Orders to
Trebonius
to bring him
three Legi-
ons.

CÆSAR observ'd the Enemy had continu'd a long time within the Morass, and their other natural Fortifications: And considering he could not force their Camp without struggling with great Disadvantages, nor block 'em without a more considerable Army, he writ to Trebonius to draw out the thirteenth Legion, which he had quarter'd in Berry, with Lieutenant T. Sextius, and make what Expedition he could to his Assistance, with that, and the other two Legions under his own Command.

The Enemy
lie at Am-
bush for the
Roman Fo-
ragers.

In the mean while he detach'd the Cavalry of Rheims, Langre, and the other Countries, from whence he had receiv'd great Numbers, by Turns for a Guard to his Foragers, to defend 'em from the Assaults of the Enemy. This he did several Days successively, 'till daily Practice had diminish'd their Care, as always happens to continu'd Success. Thole of Beauvois having Notice of the Place where our Cavalry were daily posted, chose a select Number of Foot, and dispos'd 'em in the Woods thereabouts, sending a small Party of Horse thither the Day after to draw our Men into the Ambush; that they might be surrounded on every side. This ill Fortune fell upon the Cavalry of Rheims, whose turn it was that Day to guard the Foragers; perceiving the Enemies inferior to themselves in Number, they pursu'd 'em with too much Ardour, 'till they were enclos'd by the Foot: Being thus disorder'd they were oblig'd to retire with more Precipitation than is usual in time of Batrel, after the Loss of Vertiscus their Prince and General

The Cavalry
of Rheims,
that Day ap-
pointed to
guard the
Foragers, are
defeated, and
Vertiscus
their Gene-
ral kill'd.

neral, who was so much superannuated, he could hardly *New Com-*
sit on Horseback ; yet, according to the Custom of his *notions in*
Country, he would neither excuse himself by his Age *Gaul.*
from accepting the Command, nor permit 'em to engage
without him. The Enemy were mighty Proud of this
Success, thinking they had done wonderful Exploits,
because they had kill'd the Prince and General of
Rheims. But by this Disaster our Parties learn'd more
Caution and Vigilance, and not to pursue a routed E-
nemy too eagerly.

Daily Skirmishes went forward, in the sight of both
Armies; where the Fords and Passages of the Morals
gave the Combatants an Opportunity of engaging.

The *Germans*, whom Cæsar had sent for, to fight a-
mongst the Cavalry, boldly passing the Marsh, put
those few that resisted to the Sword, and pursu'd the
rest so warmly, that not only they who had first engag'd
'em Man to Man, and those who had been wounded at
a Distance ; but even the Parties which were dispos'd
at a greater Distance, to sustain 'em, basely fled to the
higher Ground, without looking behind 'em, 'till they
had arriv'd at their Camp, or farther: Which put their
whole Army into so great a Consternation, that it could
hardly be determin'd, whether they were more Insolent
after a trifling Success, or depress'd by the least Turn
of Fortune.

*The Ger-
mans skir-
mish with,
and defeat a
Party of the
Enemy.*

*Drive 'em
up to the
Gate of their
Camp.*

C H A P. IV.

AFTER they had lodg'd several Days in the same
Camp, the Generals of *Beauvois* had Notice of C. Tre-
bonius's Approach, with the Legions ; and fearing they
should be besieg'd, like their Countrymen at *Alise*, sent
away the aged, weak, and unarm'd by Night, with
the whole Baggage of their Army. But before this
confus'd, and troublesome Party could set forward, the
Day appear'd ; (for the *Gauls* when they carry the
lightest Baggage, are always attended with a mighty
Number of Carriages) and the Enemy were oblig'd to
post their Forces in Order of Battel before their Camp,
to secure the Retreat of their Baggage. But Cæsar
thought it not convenient, either to provoke 'em to
fight at so great a Disadvantage of Place, when they
were already in a Posture of Defence, nor yet to keep
so great a Distance, as to give 'em an Opportunity of
decamping without Danger. But that the Difficulty of

*The Enemy
on Notice of
Trebonius's
Approach,
send away
their Bag-
gage.*

*Cæsar en-
deavours to
prevent their
Retreat.*

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.



Gains the
Summit of a
Hill near
their Camp.

Keeps his
Men in rea-
diness to
pursue 'em.

The Gauls
Stratagem to
secure their
Retreat.

passing the Morass, which divided the two Camps, might not retard the Enterprize, he cast a Bridge over it, to the side of a Hill, which he perceiv'd was parted from the Enemy's Camp only by a small Valley; and having pass'd his Legions over, soon gain'd the even Ground on the Summit, which was fortify'd on two Sides by a steep Descent. He march'd in good Order to the extremest Ridge, and drew up his Legions in a Place, from whence, by the help of his Engines, he could shoot Darts amongst the thickest of the Enemy.

The Gauls, confiding in the Strength of their Post, resolv'd to engage our Forces, if we ventur'd to ascend their Hill; yet durst not file off by degrees, for fear of being attack'd whilst they were in Disorder, and therefore continu'd still in the same Posture: Which *Cæsar* perceiving, commanded twenty Cohorts to be always in readiness, and removing his Tents thither, order'd the Place to be fortify'd. When his Works were complear, he drew the Legions up before the Rampier, and appointed the Cavalry their particular Stations, where they were to expect his further Orders, with their Horses bridled. The Enemy perceiving we were ready to pursue 'em, and that they could not conveniently lodge in that Place the next Night, or continue there any longer without * Provisions, resolv'd to take this Method to secure their Retreat: They handed the Fascines and Trusses of Straw, on which they sat, to each other, whereof they had plenty, († for *Cæsar* has already taken notice in his former Commentaries, that the Gauls sit down when they are drawn up in Order of Battel) and plac'd 'em before the Front of their Army, 'till the Evening; then, upon a Signal given, set 'em all on Fire together, and so soon as the Flame was sufficient to screen 'em from the sight of the Romans, they ran away as fast as they could.

* Instead of *Cibarii*, which is the vulgar Lesson some Criticks read *Periculo*: For my part, I know no Reason for rejecting the Word since *Hirtius* tells you before, they had sent away all their Baggage. † *Hottoman* thinks this Place has Reference to the eighth Chapter of the third Book, where *Cæsar*, giving an Account of *Fabius's* Stratagem against the Gauls of *Constance*, says, *Velut explorata Victoria, Sarmenis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant; ad Caltra pergunt*: Which *Vossius*, in my Opinion, very justly opposes; for here is not a Syllable of the Gauls Custom of sitting, and I can understand no more by this Place, but that they provided plenty of Fascines to fill up the Roman Trenches: Therefore, either something is lost of *Cæsar's* former Commentaries, or this must be a gross Corruption of the Text; which I am rather inclin'd to believe, because it is not probable an Army should sit down when the Enemy is drawn up in Order of Battel, and ready to charge 'em.

Tho' Cæsar could not perceive the Enemy's Departure because of the Fires, yet suspecting they had made 'em to gain an Opportunity of retreating, he advanc'd a little further with the Legions, and order'd the Cavalry to pursue; marching slowly after 'em himself, because he apprehended the Gauls were posted not far off, and design'd to draw him into an Ambuscade: Most of the Horse were afraid of venturing thro' the Smoak and Flames, and they who were so hardy to enter, not being able to see so far before 'em as their Horses Ears, return'd again for fear of being surpris'd, and gave the Enemy time to retreat. By this Stratagem, which had an equal mixture of Cowardice and Craft, they escap'd without any Loss to a mighty strong Place about ten Miles further off, where they encamp'd; and laying several Ambuscades of Horse and Foot, mightily incommoded the Roman Foragers.

The Gauls
retreat.

Cæsar having receiv'd many Losses of this nature, was at last inform'd by a certain Prisoner, that the Enemy's General Correns, having chosen 6000 of his best Infantry, and 1000 Horse, had dispos'd 'em in a Place, where he expected the Romans would come to forage, because of the Plenty of Corn and Grass in that Field. Upon this Intelligence Cæsar drew out more Legions than usual, and sending the Cavalry before, intermix'd with light-arm'd Infantry, follow'd after with the Legions as fast as he could.

Correns,
with 6000
Foot, and
1000 Horse,
lies in Am-
bush for the
Roman Fo-
ragers.

On notice of
it, Cæsar
sends the Ca-
valry and
light-arm'd
Foot before,
following af-
ter with the
Legions.

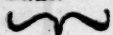
The Gauls in Ambuscade had chosen a Field for their Design, which did not extend above a Mile in Length any way, beset on every side, as with Toils, either by thick Woods, or a very deep River. This Place they had surrounded; but our Cavalry being already forewarn'd of the Enemy's Design, march'd resolutely in good Order to the Place prepar'd to engage the Enemy, because they knew they should be sustain'd by the Legions. On their Arrival, Correns thinking Fortune had blest him with an Opportunity he wish'd for, first appearing with a small Party, attack'd our foremost Ranks; our Men bravely sustain'd the Charge, not flocking too close together, as often happens thro' Fear in Skirmishes between the Horse, to their own Disadvantage: The rest of the Enemy's Horse that lay in the Woods, perceiving we engag'd their foremost Party in small Squadrons, and prevented their surrounding us, came up to the Assistance of their General; upon which the Dispute grew warm on both sides: Victory had for

Correns
with a small
Party first
attacks the
Roman Ca-
valry.

The Dispute
grows warm
on both sides.

some

*New Com-
motions in
Gaul.*



*Correus
routed.*

His Courage.

He is kill'd.

*Cæsar pur-
sues his good
Success.
Marches to-
wards the
Enemy's
Camp.*

*They send
Embassadors
to sue for
Peace.*

some time continu'd dubious, when the Enemy's Foot advancing to their Assistance, oblig'd our Horse to give way; but the light-arm'd Infantry, who had been sent before the Legions, came up to sustain 'em, and mixing themselves among the Horse, stopp'd the Enemy's Career. Thus the Battel was equal again on both sides, and our Men became bolder, having so well stood the Shock of the Enemy's first Charge, without being surpris'd by the Ambuscade. In the mean while the Legions approach'd, and both Parties had notice by their Scouts, that *Cæsar* was marching with his Forces in Order of Battel; whereupon, our Men, depending on the Assistance they expected from the Cohorts, renew'd their Charge with fresh Vigour, fearing Delay should let them in for a share of that Glory, Conquest would entitle 'em to. The Courage of the *Gauls* began to fail 'em, and in vain they look'd about on both Sides, for some way to escape; for all Avenues being stopp'd up, themselves we caught in the Trap they had prepar'd for the *Romans*: Being overcome, routed, and having lost the greatest Part of their Number, they ran with Confusion whither Chance directed 'em, some to the Woods, and others to the River; but were pursu'd by our Men and put to the Sword. Yet *Correus*, whose Mind was too great to stoop to any Misfortune, could neither be persuaded to quit the Field, take Refuge in the Woods, or accept of Quarter; but fighting obstinately, and wounding several of our Men, at last provok'd the haughty Victors to dispatch him with their Darts.

C H A P. V.

A F T E R this Defeat, *Cæsar* believing the Enemy, on Advice of their Loss, would immediately remove their Camp, which was not above eight Miles distance from the Place where the Action happen'd, resolv'd to pursue his Success; and notwithstanding the River obstructed his March, he passed it with his Forces. The People of *Beauvois*, and their Confederates, having Notice from some few, who by Shelter of the Woods had escaped (tho' wounded) out of the Battel, that all things had gone against them; that *Correus* was killed; their Horse, with the best of the Infantry cut off; and that the *Romans* were almost at their Camp; immediately call'd a Council by Sound of Trumpet, and unanimously agreed to send Embassadors and Hostages to *Cæsar*.

Comius

Comius of *Arras*, perceiving what would be the Re-^{New} Com-
sult of this Council, fled to the Germans, from whom ^{motions in} Gaul.
he had brought some Auxiliary Troops; he was no
sooner gone, but they sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, In-
treating him that he would be satisfy'd with the Punishment ^{Comius flies}
they had already receiv'd, for had they been in his Power, ^{into Germa-}
they were perswaded his wonted Mercy would not have in-^{ny.}
flicted so severe an one upon 'em: That the People of ^{The Embas-}
Beauvois were already ruin'd, by the Loss of their Caval-^{sadors of}
ry and chosen Footmen; for hardly enough had escap'd to ^{Beauvois}
bring the News of the Slaughter: However they had re-
ceiv'd this Penesit from their Damage, that the Author of
their Rebellion was kill'd; for as long as he surviv'd, the
Senate were never an equal Ballance for the common People. ^{their Speech.}

Cæsar gave their Embassadors Audience, but remind-
ed 'em, That in the former Year, when *Beauvois* and the
other Cities of Gaul revolted, they were the most obstinate
of all their Countrymen, and could not be induc'd to surrender
by the Example of their Neighbours: That it was an easy
Matter to transfer the Blame upon the Dead; but he was
very well satisfy'd, no single Person could, without the Con-
sent of the Senate, Noblemen and Country, wage War by
the weak Assistance of the Common People: However, he
was contented with the Punishment they had drawn upon
themselves.

Cæsar's
Answer.

The Night after the Embassadors return'd with this
Answer to their Countrymen, who immediately sent
Hostages. Whereupon the other Countries, who wait-
ed for the Success of this Embassy, did the like; in
fine, all except *Comius* submitted, whom Fear would
not permit to trust his Person in any one's Power: For
the Year before, whilst *Cæsar* was in *Lombardy*, *Labi-*
enus understanding that *Comius* solicited several States
to rebel, and had enter'd into a Conspiracy against *Cæ-*
sar; thought it lawful to reward his Treachery by any
means, on other Occasions not justifiable: And because
he judg'd 'twould be to no purpose to send for him to
his Quarters, lest a vain Attempt might have render'd
him more cautious, he sent *C. Volusenus Quadratus* to
kill him under Pretence of a Conference; picking out
some Centurions to attend him in the Enterprize.
When they came to the Enterview, and *Volusenus* had
taken *Comius* by the Hand, one of the Centurions, as
if surpris'd at some extraordinary Accident, attempted
to kill him, but was prevented by his Friends; how-
ever, the first Blow gave him a terrible Wound in the
Head:

The Embas-
sadors re-
turn and
send Ho-
stages.

The Asses-
sion of
Comius.

New Com- motions in Gaul. Head : Swords were immediately drawn on both sides, tho' neither Party were so eager to engage as to make their Escape; the *Romans*, because they thought *Comius* was already mortally wounded; and the *Gauls*, because they were apprehensive of an Ambuscade, fearing we had more Soldiers there than had yet appear'd. Upon which, 'tis reported, *Comius* vow'd never to hold further Commerce with any *Roman*.

C H A P. VI.

Cæsar divides his Army. *CÆSAR* having now subdu'd the most couragious States of *Gaul*, and perceiving there was no Country left which presum'd to take up Arms against him, but that some had left their Towns and Country to avoid the present Subjection to the *Roman* Empire; resolv'd to divide his Army into several Squadrons. *M. Antony* the Treasurer, with the eleventh Legion, he order'd to attend him; *C. Fabius*, with twenty five Cohorts, he sent to the farthest Parts of *Gaul*; being inform'd some of the States there were up in Arms, because he thought *C. Caninius Rebilus's* two Legions were not sufficient to keep 'em in Obedience. *T. Labienus* he order'd likewise to attend him, and sent the twelfth Legion in Winter-quarters under his Command into *Lombardy*, to defend the *Roman* Colonies there, lest they should meet with the same Misfortune which had befallen the People of *Trieſte* the Year before, who were plunder'd by a sudden Incurſion of the *Gauls*. He march'd himself to harraſs *Ambiorix's* Country, for tho' he despair'd of reducing him into his Power, because he continually fled before him, yet he thought it import-ed his Honour to lay his Country waste, destroy his Towns, Cattle, and Subjects; that if any should chance to survive the Slaughter, *Ambiorix* should not dare to return to his Country, for fear of their Reſentment, for the Calamities he had brought upon 'em.

Gallia Togata.
Tergellini.
Cæſar marches to harraſs Liege.

Sends Labienus to Treves.

When he had dispers'd his Army into every Part of *Liege*, and fill'd all Places with Slaughter, Fire and Rapine, having kill'd and taken great Numbers; he sent *Labienus* with two Legions to *Treves*, whose Inhabitants bordering on the *Germans*, with whom they had perpetual War, bear a great Reſemblance to 'em in their rough and unpolish'd Tempers, and never obey but when oblig'd to it by a ſtanding Army.

C H A P. VII.

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.

IN the mean time Lieutenant C. *Caninius*, having Notice from *Duracius*, who had always continu'd faithful to the People of *Rome*, that great Numbers were up in Arms on the Borders of *Poitou*, and that part of his Country had revolted, immediately march'd towards *Poitiers*. So soon as he was arriv'd within a small distance of the Town, he was inform'd by some Prisoners, that *Duracius* was besieg'd in *Poitiers*, by *Dumnacûs* General of *Anjou*, with several Thousand Men: But thinking his Two Legions not sufficient to encounter the Enemy, he encamp'd in an advantageous Place. *Dumnacûs*, having Notice of his Approach, quitted the Siege, and march'd to assault his Camp: But having spent many Days to no purpose, and lost several Men, without being able to force *Caninius*'s Trenches, he return'd again to invest *Poitiers*.

About the same time C. *Fabius*, having reduc'd several Countries, and receiv'd Hostages for their Obedience, had Notice from *Caninius* of the Posture of Affairs in *Poitou*; upon which he march'd to the Relief of *Duracius*: But *Dumnacûs* being inform'd of his Design, and despairing of Safety, if he should be oblig'd at the same time to encounter with the *Romans* without, and the Besieg'd within, immediately left *Poitiers*; nor did he think himself secure 'till he had cross'd the *Loire*, which was not to be pass'd without a Bridge. *Fabius*, tho' he had not yet arriv'd within sight of the Enemy, nor join'd *Caninius*, having fully inform'd himself how the Country lay, believ'd the Enemy must of Necessity fly the same Way they had taken; wherefore he made towards the Bridge, sending his Cavalry before, with Orders to march no farther beyond the Legions, than they could conveniently return again, without damage to their Horses, to encamp with the Foot at Night: They obey'd his Commands, follow'd, and attack'd the Enemy, falling upon 'em whilst they were frighten'd, flying, and loaden with their Baggage; kill'd several, gain'd a considerable Booty, came off with Glory, and return'd to the Camp. The Night following *Fabius* sent the Horse before, with Orders to engage the Enemy, and find 'em Employment 'till he should come up to their Assistance. Accordingly Q. *Atius Varus*, Commander of the Horse, a Man of singular Valour and

Conduct,

Dumnacûs
besieges *Du-*
racius in
Poitiers.
Caninius
marches with
Two Legions
to his Assis-
tance;

but is be-
sieged himself
in his Camp.

The Gauls
retire to be-
siege the
Town again,
not being a-
ble to force
his Trenches.

Fabius mar-
ches to assist
Caninius.

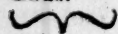
Dumnacûs
raises his
Siege, and
flies cross the
Loire.

Fabius pur-
sues him.

Sends the
Cavalry to
fall upon
Dumnacûs's
Rear.

Does the
like a second
time, and or-
ders 'em to
keep the
Gauls in
play, 'till he
comes up to
'em.

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.



Conduct, having encourag'd his Soldiers, pursu'd the Enemy ; Part of his Troops he dispos'd into convenient Places, and engag'd the *Gauls* with the rest : The Dispute was sharp on both sides, for the Enemy's Horse, being perpetually reliev'd by the Foot, fought briskly ; and believing they should have no greater Numbers to encounter with than in the former Skirmish, flatter'd themselves that they had obtain'd a lucky Opportunity for defeating our Horse : But the *Romans*, contemning those they had worsted but the Day before, remembering the Legions were coming to their Assistance, scorning to retire, and being ambitious to engross the whole Glory of the Victory to themselves, return'd the Charge of the Enemy's Foot with equal Vigour.

The Gauls
fly ; many of
'em kill'd
and taken
Prisoners.

Their in-
tire Baggage
taken.

The Conflict had been obstinately maintain'd on both sides, for a while, when *Dumnacus* drawing his Army into good Order appointed the Foot to relieve the Cavalry by turns ; but on a sudden beheld our Legions marching in close Ranks to the Assistance of our Horse : Upon which the Enemy's Cavalry were so frighten'd, their Foot so surpris'd, that forcing their way thro' their own Baggage, every Man endeavour'd to escape by Flight. But our Party, who but just before had bravely engag'd 'em, whilst they made Resistance, having now obtain'd the Victory, set up a joyful Shout on all sides, and pursuing the Enemy every way as far as their Horses could carry 'em, or as long as their Arms could do Execution, made a dreadful Slaughter amongst the *Gauls*, for having kill'd above 12000 armed Men, or such whose Fear had made 'em throw down their Weapons, we took their Baggage intire.

Caninius
pursues Dra-
pes and Lu-
terius.

Fabius
marches to
Chartres.

But *Caninius* being inform'd that *Drapes* of *Sens*, who in the first Revolt of *Gaul*, having assembled from all Parts Men of desperate Fortunes, Slaves, Out-laws, and Thieves, had intercepted the *Roman* Convoys ; together with *Luterius* of *Quercy*, who attempted, (as is already observ'd in the former Commentaries) during the same Rebellion, to make an Inroad into the *Roman* Province ; having both escap'd the Slaughter, were marching with about Five Thousand Men, the Remains of the last Defeat, upon the like Design : He follow'd 'em with Two Legions, lest the *Roman* Province might receive any Disgrace, from her Fear of these Rapparees, or the Damage she might receive from their Thefts. *C. Fabius*, with the rest of the Army, march'd towards *Chartres*, and those other Countries, which he understood had

been

been assisting to *Dumnacus* in the late Rebellion; nor *New Com-*
doubting but this Defeat had taught 'em that Submissi-*motions in*
on, which Time and *Dumnacus's* Advice might abolish: *Gaul.*
His Dispatch and Success in this Enterprize were equal,
for the People of *Chartres*, who, tho' often harra's'd,
had never yet entertain'd any Thoughts of Peace, upon
his Arrival submitted, and deliver'd Hostages: All the
States of *Bretagne* and *Normandy*, which lye in the ex-
treme Parts of *Gaul*, towards the Sea, influenc'd by
their Example, did the like without Delay. So *Dum-*
nacus being expell'd his Country, wandering and lurking
here and there alone, was forc'd to seek Refuge in the
farthest Parts of *Gaul*.

C H A P. VIII.

But *Drapes* and *Luterius*, finding *Caninius* pursu'd
'em with his Legions, and that it would be impossible
for 'em either to enter the Province, or plunder the
Country up and down, without Danger, made a Halt
in *Quercy*, where *Luterius* had, during his more pros-
perous Days, bore a considerable Sway amongst his
Countrymen, and been highly esteem'd by the common
People, for being the first Author of all Commotions.
Here he surpris'd *Usseldon*, which formerly belong'd to
him; and possessing it with his own and *Luterius's*
Troops, soon brought the Townsmen to join with him
in the Rebellion.

Caninius quickly arriv'd at this Place, but finding it
fortify'd on all sides by craggy Rocks, so steep, that
'twould be difficult for any Man to ascend 'em in Ar-
mour, tho' no body were in the Town to oppose him;
and knowing that the Inhabitants had very considerable
Effects, which they could not convey away without
falling into the hands of his Legions, much less of his
Cavalry; he divided his Cohorts into three Parts, and
dispos'd 'em in several Quarters on three Eminent Plac-
es, from whence he design'd by Degrees to draw a
Line of Circumvallation about the Town.

Which the Besieg'd perceiving, began to dread the
same Fate their Countrymen met at *Alise*, especially
Luterius; who, having felt the smart of that Blockade,
advis'd 'em by all Means to make sufficient Provision of
Corn; they took his Counsel, resolv'd to leave part of
their Forces to guard the Town and their Baggage,
and to march with the rest to fetch in Corn: Accord-
ingly,

Caninius
arrives at
Usseldon, di-
vides his For-
ces into three
Parts, and
besieges the
Town.

New Com- ly, by general Consent, leaving 2000 in the Place, the
motions in rett march'd out of Town under the Command of *Dra-*
Gaul. pes and *Luterius*: These Foragers, having stay'd some
time in the Country of *Quercy*, one Part whereof was
willing to supply 'em, and the other not able to oppose
their taking whatever they had occasion for; they soon
provided themselves with a great Quantity of Corn. In
the mean while the Besieg'd, sometimes sallying out in
the Night, assaulted our Turrets; wherefore *Caninius*
delay'd his Works, lest he should not be able to com-
pleat 'em, or be oblig'd to dispose feeble Garrisons in
several Places.

Luterius
marches with
a Convoy to-
wards Uffel-
don.

Is inter-
cepted by
Caninius.
Most of the
Cavalry kill'd
or taken.

Caninius
marches to
attack
Drapes.

Drapes and *Luterius*, having got abundance of Corn,
took up their Quarters about Ten Miles distance from
the Town, that they might have an Opportunity of
conveying their Provisions by Degrees into *Usselden*:
Each took his several Office, *Drapes* was to stay in the
Camp with part of the Army, and *Luterius* with the
rest to convoy the Provisions to the Town. Having
dispos'd Parties along the Road for a Guard, he set for-
ward about Four in the Morning by narrow Ways, thro'
the Woods: The Out-guards of our Camp, hearing a
Noise that way, sent out their Scouts to discover the
Occasion; who, at their return, inform'd *Caninius* of
the Enemy's Motions: Upon which, drawing those Co-
horts which were ready arm'd out of their Turrets, he
set upon the Enemy's Carriages just before Break of Day;
who, being mightily surpris'd at so sudden an Attack,
fled for Refuge to their Convoy; which the *Romans*
perceiving, fell furiously upon the Enemy, and refus'd
to grant any Man of 'em Quarter: But *Luterius* with
a few Followers, having made his Escape, return'd not
to the Camp again.

After this Success, *Caninius* had notice from some
Prisoners, that *Drapes* was encamp'd not Ten Miles off,
with another Part of their Forces; this Intelligence
was confirm'd by many Hands, wherefore believing
that one General being already routed, the other being
surpris'd, might easily be defeated, (for Fortune had been
so favourable to him, not to suffer any one to escape the
Slaughter, to carry News of the Action to *Drapes*) he
resolv'd, since there could not be any Danger in it, to
try the Experiment. He sent therefore all his Cavalry,
with the nimble *German* Foot before, and leaving one
Legion behind with the Baggage in the Three Camps,
follow'd after with the other himself. When he was
arriv'd

arriv'd near the Enemy, his Scouts inform'd him, that they had encamp'd themselves, according to the Custom of the *Gauls*, upon the Banks of a River, and that his Cavalry with the *German* Foot, had surpris'd, and set upon 'em unawares; upon which he march'd to their Assistance in Order of Battel. On a Signal given, our Men possess'd themselves of the higher Ground, which our Cavalry, and the *Germans* perceiving, by the Colours of the Legion, fought vigorously, and our Cohorts pouring down upon the Enemy, either kill'd or took 'em all Prisoners, obtain'd a considerable Booty; and surpris'd their General *Drapes*. This Affair so fortunately dispatch'd, scarce any *Roman* Soldier, having receiv'd a Wound, *Caninius* return'd again to the Siege; and having defeated his outward Enemy, for fear of whose Forces he had desisted from carrying on his Works, now commanded 'em to be compleated on all sides; and the next Day after, *C. Fabius* coming to his Assistance, took a Part of the Town to invest.

Routs his Army, and takes him Prisoner.

Returns to the Siege.

Fabius comes to his Assistance.

C H A P. IX.

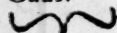
CÆSAR, in the mean time, leaving *M. Antony*, the Treasurer, in *Beauvois*, with Fifteen Cohorts, to prevent any new Insurrections in *Belgium*, went himself to other Countries, from whom he demanded great numbers of Hostages; and encourag'd those who were fearful, to continue faithful in their Allegiance. When he came to *Chartres*, where in his Commentaries he has taken notice the Revolt began; finding they were most afraid, because they were conscious of the Treason they were guilty of, that he might the sooner free 'em from their Apprehensions, he commanded 'em to deliver up *Guturvatus* to Justice, who had been the Author of that Rebellion. Tho' this unfortunate Man durst not confide in his own Countrymen, yet he was so diligently sought after, that he was soon brought to the *Roman* Camp: And *Cæsar*, contrary to his Nature, was oblig'd by the Soldiers (who alledg'd *Guturvatus* had been the Cause of all those Dangers and Misfortunes they had suffer'd during the late War) to condemn him to be whipp'd to Death, and then beheaded.

Cæsar marches to Chartres.

Demands Guturvatus, who is deliver'd up and put to Death.

Here he was inform'd, by frequent Advices from *Caninius*, of the Success he had had against *Drapes* and *Luterius*, and what Resolutions the People of *Usseldon* had taken. Now tho' he despis'd the smallness of their

New Com-
motions in
Gaul.



Cæsar
marches to
the Siege of
Usseldon.

Cæsar cuts
the Besieg'd
off from the
use of the
River.

Cæsar en-
deavours to
cut 'em off
from the
Fountain.

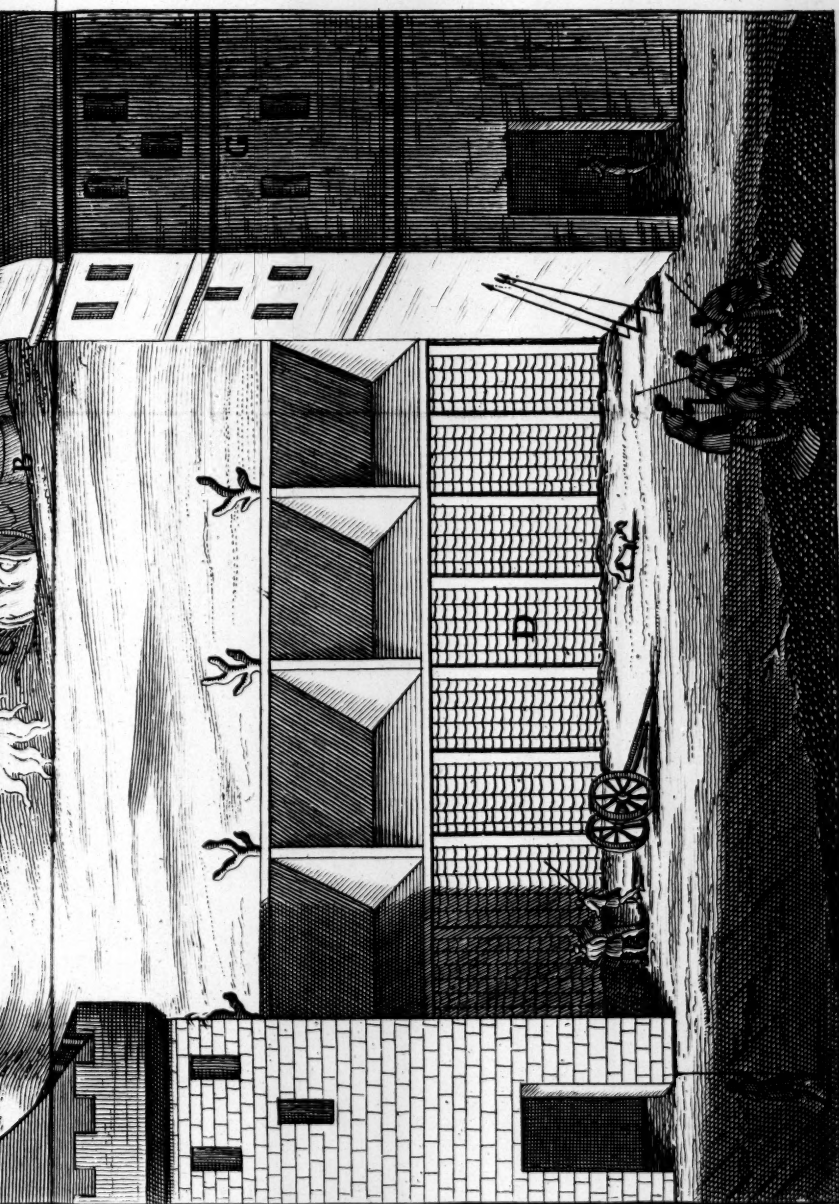
Numbers, yet he thought it necessary to inflict a severe Punishment upon 'em for their Contumacy; lest the whole Kingdom of *Gaul* should fancy, they had Constancy enough at least, tho' not sufficient Force, to oppose the *Romans*; and other States, following their Example, should possess themselves of fortify'd Places, and assert their Liberty: Especially since the *Gauls* knew his Commission expir'd the next Year, and had nothing to apprehend, if they could hold out but one Winter. Wherefore ordering Lieutenant *Q. Calenus* to follow after him by moderate Marches, he went before with all the Cavalry as fast as he could to *Caninius*: Being arriv'd there, beyond all Men's Expectation, he perceiv'd the Town was so well invested, 'twas impossible the Enemy should make their Escape; but being inform'd from the Deserters, that the Besieg'd had plenty of Corn, he attempted to cut off their Water. There was a River that divided the Plain below, which almost surrounded the craggy Hill whereon *Usseldon* was built, on every side; the nature of the Place prevented his averting the Stream another way, for it ran so very low, that no Ditch could be contriv'd to drain it: But the Descent to this River was so steep, that the Besieg'd could neither come at it, nor return again, without being wounded, and endangering their Lives, if the *Romans* oppos'd. Which *Cæsar* perceiving, dispos'd a Party of Archers, Slingers, and some Engines, over-against the Places where the easiest Descent lay, to prevent the Besieg'd from coming to the River; which oblig'd 'em afterwards to fetch Water at the same Place.

Close under the Walls of *Usseldon*, where, for the space of Three Hundred Foot together, the Town was not surrounded with the River, gush'd out a plentiful Fountain: Whilst all Men were desirous to cut off this Spring from the Enemy, *Cæsar* alone found out the Means, tho' not without Danger. Directly over-against the Hill, with great Labour, and perpetual Skirmishing, he began to raise Vines, and cast up a Mount; but the Besieg'd descending from the higher Ground, engag'd our Men at a Distance, without Danger, and wounded several that press'd too eagerly forward: Yet the *Romans*, not deterr'd by these Disadvantages, proceeded in their Works, endeavouring to surmount the Difficulty of the Ascent by their Labour; at the same time we made Mines to the Head of the Fountain, which was the only Work to be done without Danger or Suspicion.

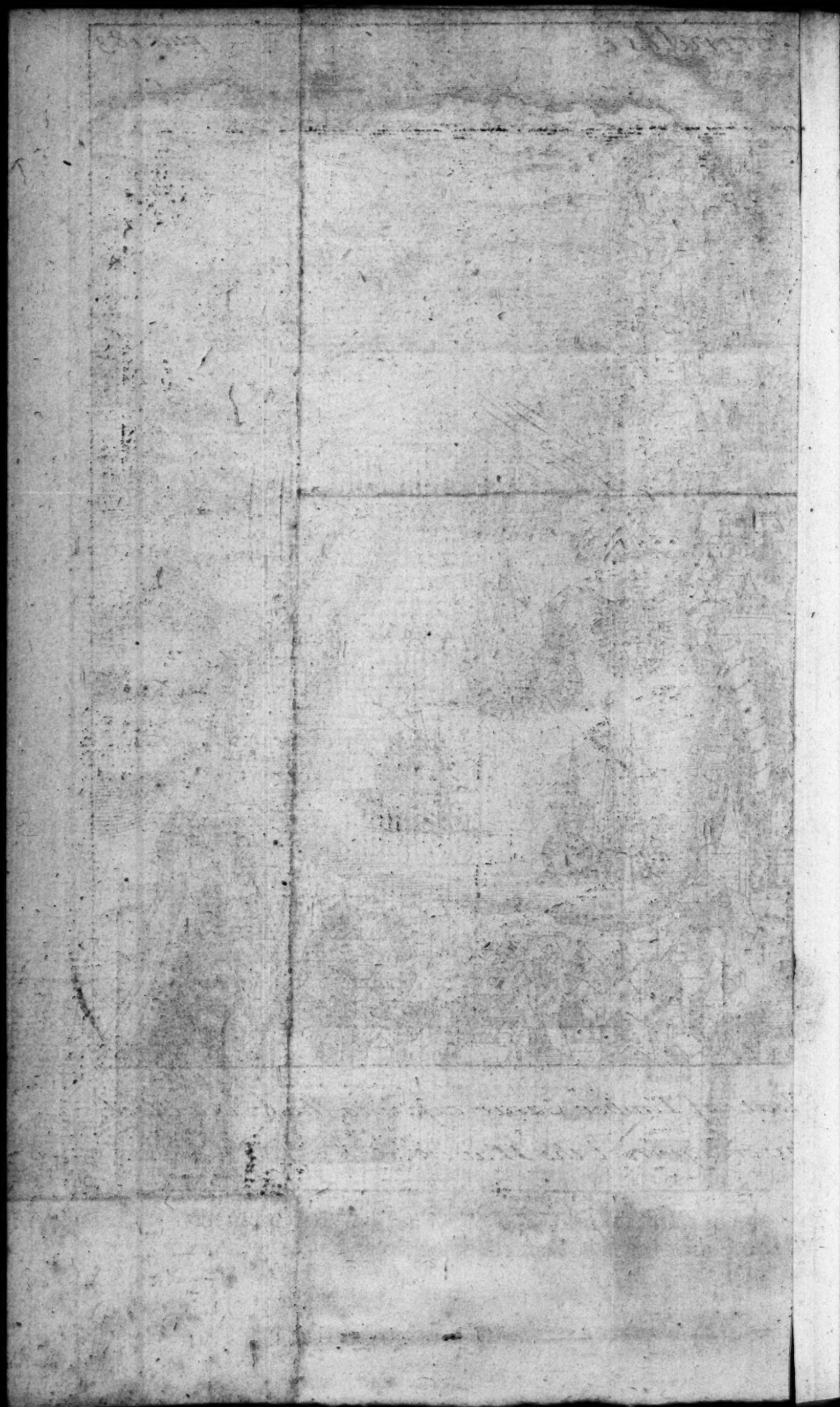
[illegible]

Uscidon.





A. Uffeldon. B. The fountain. C. The burning barrels. D. The mount. E. The tower.
to equal the height of the fountain.



P
P
v
t
t
P
r
t
T
n
f
n
r
l
n
t
t
n
v
f
c
v
a
t
V
c
a
t
h
t
g
f
l
f
V
S
f
c
h
c
l
t
h
f

picion. We cast up a Mount Sixty Foot high, on which we rais'd a Tower of Ten Stories, not to equal the Walls, for that was impossible, but only the Top of the Spring. This Work being perfected, Engines were planted to play upon the Accesses to the Fount, which made it so dangerous for the Besieg'd to fetch Water, that not only the Cattle, but several Men perish'd by Thirst. The Enemy to prevent so great an Inconvenience, fill'd several Barrels with Grease, Pitch, and small Pieces of Boards, and having set 'em on fire, roll'd 'em down the Hill upon our Battery; fighting furiously at the same time, to divert the Romans by the Danger, from extinguishing the Fire: Our Works immediately began to flame, for wherever they had thrown down these Barrels, they set fire to that part of the Mount or Vines where they stuck; but our Soldiers, notwithstanding the Danger of the Fight, and Disadvantage of the Ground, shew'd their Presence of Mind; for the Action happen'd on an eminent Place, conspicuous to the View of both Armies, and great shouting was heard on both sides, therefore every Man, especially the Brave, cast himself as far as he could, maugre the Flames and Showers of Darts, to signalize his Virtue.

Cæsar perceiving many of his Men were wounded, commanded his Cohorts to ascend the Hill on every side at once, and raise a Shout, as if they intended to scale the Walls; upon which the Besieg'd being frighted, because they knew not what we were doing, recall'd their Forces from our Battery, to man the Walls; which gave the Romans leisure to quench the Fire, and cut off such Parts of the Works as were not to be extinguish'd. Even after this they made an obstinate Resistance, and for all they had lost several of their Men, for want of Water, resolv'd to hold out: But at last the little Springs being either drain'd by our Mines, or averted from their usual Course, the Fountain was immediately dry'd up; which made the Enemy despair, and oblig'd 'em to surrender: For they did not believe this had been done by the Romans, but by the particular Hand of Heaven.

Cæsar being satisfy'd his Mercy was already sufficiently known to the World, that it would not be imputed to the Cruelty of his Nature, if he dealt more severely by the People of Usseldon than he had by others; and finding no End of his Trouble, if other States should

*New Com-
motions in
Gaul.*

*Rais'es a
Battery to
play upon the
Avenues.*

*The Besieg'd
roll fiery Bar-
rels down
the Hill upon
the Battery.*

*A bet Di-
sturb.*

*Cæsar's
Feint to de-
coy the Be-
sieg'd from
the Battery:
Its success.*

*Usseldon
surrenders.*

New Com- follow their Example, and revolt together, he resolv'd
otions in to deter others from being guilty of the like Offence, by
Gaul. their Usage; therefore pardon'd their Lives, but cut

W off all their Hands that had bore Arms against him,
Caesar cuts that their Punishment might be the more remarkable.
off the Fische-
g.d's Hands.

C H A P. X.

Drapes re-
fuses his
Meat, and
starves him-
self.

DRAPES, who, I have already told you, was ta-
 ken by *Caninius*, either thro' Grief and Vexation to see
 himself confin'd, or Fear of some heavier Punishment,
 refus'd his Meat a few Days together, and starv'd him-
 self. *Luterius* at the same time, who, as I have observ'd,
 escap'd out of the Skirmish, falling into the Power of
Epasnaetus of *Auvergne*, a faithful Friend to the *Romans*,
 (for he was often oblig'd to change his Quarters, and
 trust himself to several People, because he knew it dan-
 gerous to continue long in any Place, after he had ren-
 der'd himself so odious to *Caesar*;) without the least
 Hesitation he deliver'd him up to Justice.

Luterius de-
liver'd up by
Epasnaetus.

Labienus's
Success in
Treves.

In the mean while *Labienus's* Cavalry had met with
 good Success in *Treves*, where they kill'd several of the
 Natives and *Germans*, who were always ready to assist
 against the *Romans*, and took several of their Chief Offi-
 cers Prisoners; among which Number was *Surus* of *Au-*
tun, a Man of equal Birth and Courage, and the only
 Person of his Country then in Arms against the *Romans*.

Caesar
marches into
Gascoigne.

Caesar perceiving how well his Affairs succeeded in all
 Parts, and considering that the former Summers Expe-
 ditions had subdu'd the *Celtick* and *Belgick Gauls*, but
 that he had never visited *Gascoigne* in Person, having
 only made some small Acquisitions there by *P. Crassus*,
 march'd thither with Two Legions, to pass the rest of
 the Summer there. This, like his other Designs, he ac-

The Country
submits.

complish'd with as much Success as Dispatch; for all
 the States of *Gascoigne* sent Embassadors to him, and
 deliver'd Hostages. This Affair thus accomplish'd, he
 went with a Guard of Cavalry to *Narbon*, and distrib-

Caesar goes
to Narbon.

Sends the
Legions into
their Win-
ter-quarters.

uted his Army under the Command of his Lieutenants
 into their Winter-quarters; Four Legions with *M. An-*
tony, *C. Trebonius*, *P. Vatinius*, and *Q. Tullius*, he de-
 tach'd to *Belgium*; Two others he quarter'd in *Autun*,
 which he knew to be the most powerful Country in *Gaul*;
 Two more he sent to *Tours*, on the Borders of *Chartres*,
 to keep the Maritime Countries on that side in Obedi-
 ence; and Two he plac'd in *Limosin*, near the Borders of
Auvergne,

Auvergne, that no Part of *Gaul* might have an Oppor-^{New} Com-
tunity of rebelling. Having spent a few Days at his ^{motions in} Convention of the States, deter-^{Gaul.}
min'd the Differences of the People, and rewarded the
meritorious, (for he had a great Desire to know how e-
very Man behav'd himself during the general Revolt of
the *Gauls*, which he had suppress'd by the sole Fidelity
and Assistance of the Province) he return'd to *Belgium*,
and took up his Winter-quarters at *Arras*.

*Holds a Con-
vention of
the States in
his Govern-
ment, then
returns to
Arras,
Nemetosca-
na.*

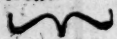
C H A P. XI.

HERE he was inform'd that *Comius* of *Arras* had had
an Engagement with his Cavalry ; for when *Antony*
came to take up his Quarters in *Arras*, which continu'd
loyal. *Comius*, who after the Wound we mention'd,
always us'd to be ready to head any Rebellion his Coun-
try were inclin'd to, that he might not be far out of
the Way, so long as the People continu'd in Obedience
to the *Romans*, supported himself and his Cavalry by
Plunder, intercepting several Convoys of Corn which
were going to the *Roman* Garrisons. *C. Volusenus*
Quadratus, Commander of the Horse under *Antony*,
was quarter'd with him, and detach'd by him to pur-
sue the Enemy's Cavalry. *Volusenus* very readily ac-
cepted the Office ; for besides the constant Desire he
had of Glory, he bore a mortal Hatred to *Comius* :
Wherefore having laid several Ambuscades, he often
obtain'd Advantages over him. But at last the Dispute
growing very warm, and *Volusenus* desiring to apprehend
Comius, he pursu'd too ardently with a few Followers ;
the other fled as eagerly, 'till he had drawn him from
his Party ; then on a sudden, conjuring his Men not
to suffer the Wound he had received from the *Romans*
Treachery to go unrevenge'd, he fac'd about, out-
riding the rest of his Company, made towards *Volu-
senus* ; his Men followed after, and being much su-
perior in Number to ours, oblig'd them to retreat: Du-
ring the Pursuit, *Comius* clapping Spurs to his Horse,
ran with a full Career against *Quadratus*, and struck him
thro' the Thigh with his Spear. Our Men perceiving
their Captain was wounded, rally'd again, forced the
Enemy to give ground, and charg'd so briskly, that they
wounded several, and routed the rest ; some were dis-
mounted in the Pursuit, and trodden under Foot, others
taken Prisoners, which Misfortune *Comius* escaped by the

*Volusenus
sent to pur-
sue Comius.*

*Comius
wounds
Quadratus.
Comius and
his Party
routed.*

Gaul quitted.



Comius surrenders.

Swiftneſs of his Horſe : But *Voluſenus*, being dangerously wounded, almoſt beyond hope of Recovery, was carry'd back to the Camp. *Comius* having thus either reveng'd the Injury he had receiv'd, or loſt the greateſt part of his Men, ſent Embaſſadors to *Antony*, to let him know he would deliver Hoſtages for his future Obedience, would live where, and in what manner he ſhould think fit to preſcribe, provided he would ſo far indulge his Fear, as not to oblige him to behold the Face of any Roman. *Antony* thought his Apprehenſions ſo juſtly ground- ed, that he accepted his Hoſtages, and granted his Deſire.

C H A P. XII.

Hirtius's Proem to the laſt Campaign.

“ *CÆſar*, I know, has divided each Year's Campaign into a ſeveral Book, which I did not think convenient, becauſe the next Year, under the Conſulat of *L. Paulus* and *C. Marcellus*, nothing memorable was tranſacted in *Gaul* : However, that the World might not be ignorant where *Cæſar* and his Army were during this time, I have added a ſhort Account to the preſent Commentary.

Whiſt *Cæſar* paſs'd his Winter in *Belgium*, he made it his chief Buſineſs to keep the ſeveral States in Amity, to take away all Hopes of another Revolt ; for he deſir'd to bring the Country into ſo peaceable a Condition, that he ſhould not be oblig'd to make War at his Departure, leſt when he march'd his Army away, there might be ſome Embers left, which the *Gauls* would willingly blow up, when they apprehended no preſent Danger : Wherefore treating each Country very honourably, making the Noblemen conſiderable Preſents, and impoſing no new Taxes, he eaſily kept the Kingdom of *Gaul* (already tir'd out with ſo many, and ſo ſucceſsleſs Efforts) in Obedience, by his gentle Uſage.

Cæſar goes into *Lombardy*.

The Winter being over, contrary to his Cuſtom, he took Poſt for *Lombardy*, to viſit the chief Towns, and Roman Colonies there, to whom he had recommended his Treasuſer *M. Antony's* Suit for the Prieſthood, doing his utmoſt Endeavour to gain the People's Affections, by his affable Carriage, as well for the Advantage of his particular Friend, whom he had ſent not long before, to put up for that Office, as to oppoſe a ſmall Faction, who deſign'd to diminith *Cæſar's* Credit, by repelling *Antony*. And tho' he was inform'd upon the Road, before he arriv'd in *Lombardy*, that his Friend was already made Augur, however he thought it neceſſary to continue

nue his Journey, that he might return the chief Towns and Colonies Thanks, for appearing and voting for *Antony*; as likewise to make Interest with 'em for the Honour he design'd to be Candidate for himself the ensuing Year: because his Enemies proudly boasted, that *Servius Galba* had been disappointed of the Consular, notwithstanding the Majority of Vores in his behalf, for being a profess'd Friend to *Cæsar*, under whom he had serv'd as a Lieutenant; but *L. Lentulus*, and *C. Marcellus* had been created Consuls, on purpose to strip him of all his Honours and Dignities.

Cæsar was receiv'd with wonderful Respect and Affection wherever he came, for this was the first time of his Return from the general Revolt of *Gaul*; nothing was omitted that the People could invent for the Ornament of the Gates, Roads and Ways which he was to pass thro'; Sacrifices were offer'd up in every Place, all the People came out to meet him with their Children, the Temples and Market-places were adorn'd with Carpets, and you would have imagin'd Preparations had been made for a glorious Triumph; so great was the Magnificence of the Richer, and Desire of the Poorer sort, to express their Satisfaction.

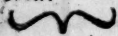
Having quickly visited all Parts of *Lombardy*, he return'd with great Dispatch to *Arras*, and drawing his Legions out of their Quarters to the Borders of *Treves*, went thither to review 'em: After which he made *T. Labienus* Governour of *Lombardy*, that he might the easilier obtain his Suit for the Consular; travelling from Place to Place the rest of the Summer, as he thought convenient for his Health. Tho' he was often inform'd that *Labienus* was sollicit'd by his Enemies, and assur'd there was a Design carry'd on at *Rome* by a small Faction, to take away Part of his Army from him, by virtue of a Decree from the Senate; yet he neither gave Credit to what was reported of *Labienus*, nor could be induc'd to do any thing contrary to the Senate's Authority: For he doubted not but he should gain his Desires, provided the Senators were permitted to give their Votes freely. Because *C. Curio*, Tribune of the People, who had undertaken the defence of *Cæsar's* Cause and Dignity, had often propounded to the Senate, since they had Apprehensions of *Cæsar's* Army, that he and *Pompey* too, whose over-grown Power did not a little awe the Courts, might both disband their Force, and lay down their Arms, that the City might be entirely free: Nor did he

He is receiv'd with great demonstrations of Joy.

He makes Labienus Governour of Lombardy,

The Factions at Rome against Cæsar.

Gaul quieted.



only propound this, but began to put it to the Vote; but the Consuls, and *Pompey's* Friends, to prevent any further Progress, interpos'd in the Matter, and broke up without coming to any Resolution.

This was a strong Argument of the Senate's Favour to *Cæsar*, and agreeable to their former Justice; for when *Marcellus* the Year before, to diminish *Cæsar's* Credit, contrary to the Edict of *Pompey* and *Crassus*, propos'd sending a Successor to *Cæsar's* Province before his Commission was expir'd; after the Senate had given their Votes, *Marcellus*, who strove to obtain Credit at *Cæsar's* Expence, departed with a Denial, and the House went upon other Matters. Yet this did not discourage his Enemies, but rather was a Spur to their Envy, and made 'em endeavour by strengthening their Party, to oblige the Senate to comply with their Designs.

The Senate decree Pompey and Cæsar shall each send a Legion to the Parthian War.

Not long after the Senate decreed, that *Pompey* and *Cæsar* should each detach a Legion to the *Parthian* War; yet it plainly appear'd this Order was wholly levy'd against *Cæsar*, for the first Legion *Pompey* had formerly furnish'd him with, which was levy'd in *Cæsar's* Province, and sent him as one of his own Number he now demanded again: Yet *Cæsar*, tho' all the World might see he was robb'd of his Army at his Enemy's Pleasure, sent *Pompey* his Legion again; and for his own part, in Obedience to the Senate's Decree, sent the fifteenth Legion, which was quarter'd in *Lombardy*, to *Parthia*; and to supply its Place, detach'd the Thirteenth to *Italy*. After this he dispers'd his Army into their Winter-quarters, *C. Trebonius*, with four Legions he plac'd in *Belgium*, *C. Fabius* with as many in *Autun*; for he thought it the securest way to keep the *Gauls* in Subjection, to set a Guard upon the Courage of the *Belgæ*, and the Authority of the *Autunois*.

After this, he went himself to *Lombardy*, where he was inform'd, the two Legions he had dismiss'd, which according to the Decree of the Senate should have been sent to the *Parthian* War, were given, by the Consul *C. Marcellus*, to *Pompey*, and quarter'd still in *Italy*. Tho' this was an undeniable Proof that *Cæsar's* Enemies prepar'd to make War upon him, yet he firmly resolv'd to endure all things, so long as there was any Hope left of composing the Matter by Civil Determination, rather than have recourse to his Sword.

The End of Cæsar's War with the Gauls.

C. Ju-

II.

te ;
any
up

our
for
re-
ro-
his
en
at
he
if-
eir
eir
ns.
nd
an
ly
ad
e-
n-
he
E-
nd
e,
n-
e
n-
ns
;
n
e

e
h
n
il
y.
s
d
t
f
d
e



C. Julius Caesar's Commentary

OF THE

CIVIL WAR.

Because this Book begins abruptly, Dionysius Vossius has in his Remarks collected out of Plutarch, Appian and Dion, as much as was necessary to make a Connexion between this and the former Commentry ; which I have render'd into English, but mark'd with an Inverted Comma, to distinguish it from the Text.

The Contents of the First Book.

The Causes of the Civil War. Caesar gains the Possession of intire Italy. Besieges Pompey in Brundisium. Takes the Town, but Pompey escapes. Caesar's Party prevails against Cotta in Sardinia, and Cato in Sicily. Caesar marches to Rome. Returns to Gaul. Then besieges Marseils. His Success in Spain.

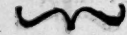
VOSSIUS's Supplement.

“ **C**ÆSAR having now subdu'd the whole Kingdom of Gaul, for several Reasons went to his Province; from whence he sent Deputies to Rome to obtain the Consular, and get his Commission renew'd: When his Demands were propounded, Pompey neither oppos'd nor further'd the Motion, for tho' he was averse to Caesar's Interest, he had not yet profess'd himself his open Enemy. But the Consuls, Lentulus and Marcellus, who had already declar'd in Favour

Caesar writes to Rome to get his Commission renew'd, and to obtain the Consular.

“ your

Pompey's
Faction at
Rome.



Curio comes
to Cæsar.
His Advice.

Cæsar writes
to the Senate

“ your of the opposite Faction, lest nothing omitted to
 “ disappoint him: Nor was this the only Injury Mar-
 “ cellus did him, for Cæsar had lately planted a Colony
 “ at Novo-Comum, and Marcellus not contented to deprive
 “ ’em of the Freedom of Rome, committed their Major,
 “ order’d him to be whipp’d, and then dismiss’d him to
 “ make his Complaints to Cæsar; an Ignominy never
 “ yet inflicted on any Roman Citizen. Whilst these Af-
 “ fairs were in Agitation, C. Curio, Tribune of the Peo-
 “ ple, who had done his utmost to serve the Republick,
 “ and promote Cæsar’s Cause, at last finding all his En-
 “ deavours in vain, fled from Rome to avoid the Malice
 “ of his Adversaries, and to inform Cæsar of his En-
 “ mies Designs against him. Cæsar thought himself ob-
 “ lig’d to go meet a Person of Curio’s Quality and Me-
 “ rit, and return him Thanks for the many friendly
 “ Offices he had done him. Curio advis’d him, since
 “ his Enemies openly prepar’d to make War upon him,
 “ immediately to draw his Army together, and rescue
 “ the Republick out of the Hands of that Faction, whose
 “ Tyranny she labour’d under. But tho’ Cæsar was con-
 “ vinc’d of the Truth of Curio’s Report, yet he resolv’d
 “ to demonstrate so particular a Regard to the Repub-
 “ lick, that no Man might justly accuse him for being
 “ the Cause of a Civil War: Therefore he only solicit-
 “ ed for Leave to continue in the Government of the
 “ Roman Province of Italy and Illyricum with two Legi-
 “ ons; which he did to comprise the Differences betwixt
 “ him and his Enemies in an amicable manner, and pre-
 “ serve the Republick in Peace. These Demands were so
 “ reasonable, that even Pompey himself could not oppose
 “ ’em; but at last, Cæsar finding he could meet with no
 “ Justice from the Consuls, writ a Letter to the Senate,
 “ wherein having briefly enumerated the meritorious
 “ Actions he had done for the Republick, he intreated
 “ ’em that he might have Liberty to put up for Consul
 “ the ensuing Year, without appearing in Person at
 “ Rome: He assur’d ’em he should not refuse to disband
 “ his Army, if the Senate and People commanded him,
 “ provided Pompey would do the like; but so long as
 “ the other kept his Forces standing, there was no rea-
 “ son he should dismiss his Soldiers, and leave his Per-
 “ son expos’d to the Malice of his Enemies. This Let-
 “ ter he committed to Curio’s Charge, who made so
 “ much haste to deliver it, that he arriv’d at Rome (140
 “ Miles distant from the Place he took Horse at) within
 “ three

Pompey's far did not disband his Army by a Day prefix'd, he should be proclaim'd a Traitor. But M. Antony, and Q. Cassius, Tribunes of the People, interpos'd their Authority, to prevent the passing of this Vote, upon which their Prerogative was likewise disputed, the Debate was manag'd with abundance of Heat, and he that spoke with most Virulence, was highliest applauded by Cæsar's Enemies.

The Tribunes oppose it.

CHAP. II.

* For the Tribunes had a Negative Vote.

The Tumults at the Election of Magistrates.

THUS the Senate broke up in the Evening, * without coming to any Resolution; and Pompey, having sent for all those of his Faction, commended them that were forward, confirm'd 'em in their Resolutions; reprov'd and encourag'd the more moderate; sent for many, who having formerly serv'd under him, obey'd his Summons, in hopes of Rewards and Dignities; and commanded several out of the two Legions, which had been return'd by Cæsar, likewise to attend his Orders on the Day for chusing new Magistrates. The Streets were crouded, and Curio call'd out the Tribunes of the People to be present at the Election: But all the Consuls Friends, Pompey's Dependants, and those who bore Cæsar any ancient Grudge, flocked into the Senate; by whose Concourse and Votes, the weaker sort were frighten'd, the irresolute confirm'd, and the Majority depriv'd of the Liberty of Voting.

Cæsar's Enemies.
Cato.

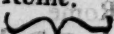
† The Prætorship.
Lentulus.

Scipio.

L. Piso the Censor, and L. Roscius the Prætor, offer'd to go to Cæsar, and acquaint him with the State of Affairs, desiring only six Days Respite to compleat their Negotiation; and others demanded Deputies should be sent to acquaint Cæsar with the Pleasure of the Senate; but were oppos'd by the Consuls Speech, by Scipio and Cato. The latter of these was mov'd by the old Enmity he bore Cæsar, and Revenge for having been disappointed of the † Office he put up for. Lentulus, by the Hopes of paying his Debts, when he should obtain the Command of Armies, and the Government of Provinces, with the Presents he expected from those Monarchs for whom he should procure the Title of Friends to the Roman People; he had the Vanity to boast amongst those of his own Party, that he doubted not but to make himself a second Sylla, and obtain the Supream Authority in the Commonwealth. Scipio was prompted by the like Expectations of Armies and Provinces, which he promis'd himself he should share with his Son-in-Law

Law *Pompey*; the Apprehension of being call'd to account for his Extortions, the Flattery of his Dependants, and the Authority of his Friends, who bore a considerable Sway in the Common-wealth, and Courts of Judicature. *Pompey* was incited by *Cæsar's* Adversaries, and nor knowing how to endure an equal in Dignity, had broke off all manner of Friendship with him, and join'd with their common Enemies, the greatest part whereof *Cæsar* had contracted during his Affinity with *Pompey*. On the other hand, the Reflection on that dishonourable Action, to have converted those Two Legions to his own Use, which should have been detach'd to the *Asian* and *Syrian* Wars, induc'd him to contrive all Means for promoting a Civil War.

Thus all Things were carry'd on with Violence and Confusion; *Cæsar's* Friends had not Leisure to acquaint him with the Posture of Affairs, nor the Tribunes to avoid the impending Danger, by interposing that Authority which *Sylla* had left 'em, to defend the Peoples Liberty: In fine, they were oblig'd the Seventh Day after the Entrance upon their Charge, to provide for their Safety; whereas the most seditious Tribunes, before that time, were never oblig'd to render an Account of their Actions, 'till the Eighth Month of their Administration. *Pompey's* Faction had recourse to that rigid Decree of the Senate, which never us'd to be put in Execution, but when the City was on Fire, and all things in a desperate Condition: *That the Consuls, Præ-tors, Tribunes of the People, and Proconsuls, should take care to preserve the Common-wealth from Danger.* The Order for enforcing this Decree bore Date the Seventh of *January*, so that during the Five first Days of *Lentulus's* Consulship, whilst it was lawful for the Senate to sit, (except Two which had been allow'd for the Election of Magistrates) dreadful Resolves were pronounc'd against *Cæsar* and the Tribunes of the People, Men of great Worth and Quality: Whereupon they * fled to *Cæsar*, who was then at *Ravenna*, expecting a suitable Answer to his modest Demands, which he hop'd might have reduc'd all Differences to a peaceable State amongst Men of the smallest Equity.

*Pompey's
Faction at
Rome.*

Pompey.

*The Senate's
Decree.*

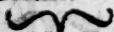
*The Tri-
bunes fly to
Cæsar * in
a Cart, dis-
guis'd like
Slaves.*

C H A P. III.

THE Day after, the Senate assembled without the Walls of the City; where *Pompey*, according to the Instructions

*A Senate
held without
the City.*

Pompey's instructions he had already given *Scipio*, applauded their *Faſhion* at Conſtancy and Reſolution; acquainted 'em with the Number of his Forces, that he had Ten Legions already in Arms to defend 'em; aſſur'd 'em he was very well ſatisfy'd *Cæſar's* Army were not well affected to him, and that it was not in his Power to perſwade 'em to follow, or aſſiſt him.

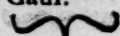


After this, he propos'd ſeveral other things to the Determination of the Senate; firſt, that Forces might be levy'd thro'out all *Italy*; that *Fauſtus Sylla* might be ſent Proprætor to *Mauritania*; that *Pompey* might have Money deliver'd to him out of the Publick Treafury; and that King *Juba* might have the Title of Friend and Ally to the People of *Rome*. But *Marcellus* oppos'd the laſt of theſe; and *Philippus*, the Tribune of the People, prevented the paſſing of *Sylla's* Commiſſion: But the other Motions were agreed to. Two Conſular Provinces were decreed to thoſe who had formerly diſcharg'd that Office, *Scipio* got the Government of *Syria*, and *Domitius* of *Gaul*. But *Philippus's* and *Marcellinus's* Pretenſions were over-rul'd by the prevailing Faction. All the reſt were Prætorian Provinces, to which Governours were ſent without the Privy, or Approbation of the People; for having taken the uſual Oath, they departed to their ſeveral Commands in a Military Habit, without further Ceremony. The Conſuls left *Rome*, private Men had Lictors march'd before 'em in the City and Capitol, an unpreſidented Action, abſolutely contrary to the Practice of former Ages. New Levies were made thro' all *Italy*, each Municipal Town was commanded to furniſh a certain quantity of Arms and Money; nor were the Temples free from this Tax, which made no Diſtinction between Divine and human Things.

C H A P. IV.

Cæſar's
Speech to his
Soldiers.

CÆSAR, having Notice of theſe Affairs, made a Speech to his Soldiers, wherein he gave 'em an Account how induſtrious his Enemies had always been to injure him; that they had made a Difference between him and Pompey, who envy'd Cæſar's Glory and good Fortune, tho' he always promoted Pompey's Honour. He complain'd of that Innovation in the State, that the Authority of the Tribunes of the People ſhould be oppos'd by Arms, and depreſs'd by thoſe who not many Years before reſtor'd it; for even *Sylla* himſelf, who ſtripp'd the Tribunes of ſo many Privileges, yet left 'em a negative Vote; which Pompey, who pretended to renew

renew their ancient Liberties, would now deprive 'em of. *New Com-*
 That the Decree for the Magistrates to provide for the Safe- *motions in*
 ty of the Republick, whereby all People were oblig'd to re- *Gaul.*
 pair to their Arms, was never known to be put in Practice, 
 but in Cases of imminent Danger, when pernicious Laws
 were made; the Tribunes rebell'd; the People revolted;
 and the Temples, or Places of Strength, were possess'd by
 Enemies of the State: Crimes which Posterity had been de-
 ier'd from, by the Fate of Saturninus and the Gracchi.
 But there were no such Affairs in Agitation then, nor even
 thought of, no Law was publish'd, no Conspiracy was going
 forward, nor any Revolt made. Wherefore he desir'd 'em, that
 they would defend the Honour and Reputation of their Gene-
 ral, against the Malice of his Enemies; under whose Com-
 mand they had serv'd Nine Years, gain'd so many Battels,
 and subdu'd the Gauls and Germans. The Soldiers of the
 Thirteenth Legion, which was then present, unani-
 mously cry'd out, that they would defend their General
 and the Tribunes: For this Legion he had sent for to
 attend him, at the Beginning of the Troubles; the
 others had not yet left their Quarters.

*The Soldiers
 resolve to
 stand by him.*

C H A P. V.

CÆSAR being assur'd of the Soldiers Affections, *Cæsar*
 march'd directly with that Legion to *Rimini*; where *marches to*
 the Tribunes of the People expected him: And on his *Ariminum.*
 Arrival, sent Orders for all the other Legions to attend
 him. Young *L. Cæsar*, whose Father was a Lieutenant-
 General in *Cæsar's* Army, came hither to wait on him,
 and after having acquainted him with the Occasion of
 his coming, told him he had a private Message from *Pompey's*
Pompey to deliver; who was desirous to clear himself so *Message to*
 far, that *Cæsar* might not think those Actions design'd to *Cæsar, by L.*
 affront him, which were done for the Service of the Repub- *Cæsar.*
 lick; whose Advantage he always prefer'd before his pri-
 vate Interest: And *Cæsar* was likewise oblig'd in Honour
 to lay aside his Passion, nor be so eager to take Revenge
 on his Enemies, at the Expence of the Common-wealth.
 Something more he added of his own Accord, to the
 same purpose; and the Prætor *Roscius* had a Negotiation *Roscius's*
 of the like nature to transact with *Cæsar*, on *Pompey's*
Account. *Negotiation.*

Tho' these Messages contributed very little to compo-
 sing of the Differences in hand, yet having an Oppor-
 tunity of transmitting his Thoughts by two such grate-
 ful

Pompey's ful Messengers; he begg'd the Favour of 'em, that as *Faction* at they had brought Pompey's Commands, they would like-
Rome. wise acquaint him with Cæsar's Desires; for possibly

*Cæsar's
Answer.*

so small a Labour might put an end to their Differences, and deliver all *Italy* from her Fears. That he always preferr'd the Honour of the Republick to his own Life; but he had Reason to be disturb'd, that the Affections of the Roman People should be alienated, by the malicious Reports of his Enemies: That half a Year of his Commission should be cut off, and he be commanded to return to Rome, after the People had already Voted him leave to put up the next Election for Consulate, tho' absent; the loss of which Honour he could willingly submit to, for the Advantage of the Common-wealth. That his Desire in his Letter to the Senate that other Armies might be disbanded as well as his, could not be granted; that new Levies should be made thro'out all *Italy*; that the Two Legions which were drawn from him, under Pretence of being sent to the Parthian War, should be still retain'd; and Rome be up in Arms: All which Circumstances seem'd to concur to his Destruction. However, he was willing to accept of any Conditions, and suffer any thing for the sake of his Country, let but Pompey go to his Province; both Armies be disbanded; *Italy* lay down her Arms; the City be deliver'd from her Apprehensions; the Elections Free; the Senate and People enjoy their antient Liberty in every respect; and to the intent these Conditions might be the better perform'd, let each oblige himself by Oath to observe 'em: Or if Pompey thought it more convenient, he might either come nearer Cæsar, or let Cæsar come to him, to determine their Differences by a Conference.

*Roscius and
Lucius Cæsar
depart
for Capua.*

Roscius and L. Cæsar having receiv'd this Answer, departed for *Capua*, where finding Pompey and the Consuls, they deliver'd Cæsar's Message. Having consulted about the Matter, they return'd

*The consuls
Reply.*

this Reply in Writing by the same Messengers: That Cæsar should leave *Rimini*, return to Gaul, and disband his Army; which Conditions perform'd, Pompey should then go to Spain. In the mean time, 'till Cæsar should give Security for the Performance of his Promise, the Consuls and Pompey should not desist from raising Men.

*War in I-
taly.*

Cæsar, thought these Conditions very unequal; that he should be oblig'd to leave *Rimini*, and return to his Government; whilst Pompey held Provinces, and Legions, which were none of his own: That he should dismiss his Army, whilst the other was raising new Forces; and only promis'd to go to his Government

without

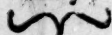
without fixing a Day for his Departure: An Evasion *War in Italy.* which would have clear'd him from Breach of Faith, tho' he went not thither 'till *Cæsar's* Commission expir'd. But he plainly perceiv'd there were no hopes of Peace, because they had neither appointed a Time for a Conference, nor promis'd to come any nearer him.

C H A P. VI.

WHEREFORE he sent *M. Antony* with five *M. Antony* Cohorts to *Alexzo*; but stay'd himself at *Rimini* with *sent to Arc-* Two more; where he intended to beat up for Volun- *tion.* teers: He soon possess'd himself of *Pisaro*, *Fano*, and *Ancona*. In the mean time, having notice that the Peo- *Cæsar takes* ple of *Inguvium* were inclin'd to his Interest, which *in Pisaurum,* Place the Prætor *Thermus* held against him with five *Fano, and* Cohorts, and had caus'd it to be fortify'd; he detach'd *Ancona;* three Cohorts thither from *Pisaro* and *Rimini*, under the Command of *Curio*: On notice of whote Approach, *Thermus*, doubting the Affection of the People, drew his Cohorts out of the Town, and fled away: But the Soldiers deserted in their March, and return'd home again. *Curio* was receiv'd into the Town with great *Curio takes* Demonstrations of Joy; on Notice whereof, *Cæsar* re- *in Inguvium.* lying on his Interest in the most considerable Towns, brought the Remainder of the thirteenth Legion out of Garrison; and march'd to *Osimo*, a Town possess'd by *Adius Varus* with several Cohorts, who had dispers'd some Senators round about the Country of *Piscara* to raise Recruits.

Cæsar's Arrival being known, the Burgeses of *Osimo* *The People* went in a Body to *Adius Varus*, and told him, they *of Osimo re-* would not pretend to determine what Party had Justice *solve to ad-* of their side; but neither they, nor any of the Muni- *mit Cæsar.* cipal Towns would shut their Gates against so great a General as *Cæsar*, whose glorious Actions had so well merited from the Republick. Wherefore they advis'd him to consider what would be the Consequence of making Opposition, and provide for his Safety. Upon *Adius Va-* this Declaration, *Varus* drew his Garrison out of the *rus flies a-* Town, and march'd away: But being pursu'd by a *way.* few of *Cæsar's* Van-guard, was oblig'd to halt; and so soon as he began to engage 'em, was deserted by his Party; some of 'em return'd home, and the rest came over to *Cæsar*. Amongst the Number of the Prisoners was *L. Papius*, a Primiple, who had formerly held the

War in
Italy.



same Command under *Pompey*: But *Cæsar* having commended those that came over to him, dismiss'd *Pupius*, return'd the People of *Osimo* Thanks, and promis'd never to forget the Service they had done him.

CHAP. VII.

*Lentulus's
Cowardice.*

THIS News arriving at *Rome*, the whole City was so frighten'd, that when *Lentulus* the Consul, in pursuance to the Senate's Decree, had open'd the Treasury to deliver out *Pompey* the Money, he fled from the City with so much Precipitation, that he forgot to lock the inward Door: For there was a false Report, that *Cæsar* was marching that way, and that his Cavalry was already arriv'd within a small Distance of *Rome*. Whereupon *Marcellus*, the other Consul, with most of the Magistrates follow'd after. *Pompey* was already gone the Day before to *Apulia*, where he had quarter'd the Legions which he receiv'd from *Cæsar*. In the mean while the Levies went not forward in *Rome*, for no Place appear'd secure nearer than *Capua*; where they first began to rally, and continue their Levies in the Colonies round about, which had been sent thither by the *Julian* Law. *Lentulus* assembled the Gladiators, whom *Cæsar* had bred up there to entertain the People of *Rome*, gave 'em their Liberry, and mounted 'em for his Guard. But afterwards, being advis'd by his Friends, who all condemn'd the Action, to dismiss 'em, he dispers'd 'em into the neighbouring Towns of *Campaign*, to keep Garrison there.

He takes the
Gladiators of
Capua for
his Guard.

Cæsar makes
a Tour thro'
Piscara,
where he is
well receiv'd.
Deputies
from *Cingulum*
attend
him.

Cæsar in the mean time, having quitted *Osimo*, made a Tour thro'out the whole Country of *Piscara*; where he was joyfully receiv'd by the Governors of every Town, who furnish'd him with necessary Provisions for his Army. There came Deputies from *Cingulum*, (a Town founded, and built by *Labienus*, at his own Charge) to desire he would honour 'em with his Commands; he accepted of their Friendship, and demand'd Recruits, which they readily sent. By this Time the twelfth Legion was come up to his Assistance, and with these Two he march'd to *Ascoli*, another Town of *Piscara*, which was commanded by *Lentulus Spinther* with ten Cohorts; who on Advice of *Cæsar's* Approach quitted the Town, and endeavour'd to retire with his Forces; but was deserted by a great part of 'em: And marching with the Remainder, by Chance met *Vibullius Rufus*, who had been sent by *Pompey* to encourage his

He marches
to *Ascoli*,
which he
gains.
*Vibullius
Rufus* ar-
rives in *Pis-
cara*.

Parry

Party in *Piscara*, *Vibullius* thus understanding the Posture of Affairs, dismiss'd *Lentulus* from his Charge, took the Soldiers under his Command, and assembled as many more of *Pompey's* Levies as he could meet with in the neighbouring Countries: Amongst the rest, six infire Cohorts, under the Command of *Vlcilles Hirus*, who had fled from *Camerin*, where they had been quarter'd. These Forces united, amounted to thirteen Cohorts, and with them *Vibullius* march'd by long Journeys to join *Domitius*, *Enobarbus* at *Corfinium*; and acquaint him *Caesar* was marching that way with two Legions. *Domitius* had already rais'd about twenty Cohorts in *Alba*, *Marfa*, *Pelignia*, and the adjacent Countries. *Caesar* having taken in *Ascoli*, and driven *Lentulus* out of the Town, caus'd an Enquiry to be made after those Soldiers that deserted him, that they might be list'd amongst his own Troops: And having stay'd one Day to provide himself with Corn, he march'd directly to *Corfinium*. Upon his Approach, *Domitius* detach'd five Cohorts to break down a Bridge over the River, about three Miles from the Town; but being encounter'd by *Caesar's* Van-guard, they were forc'd from the Bridge, and oblig'd to retire to the Town: By which means *Caesar* pass'd the River, arriv'd at the Town, and encamp'd under the Walls.

War in Italy.

Camerinorum.

Caesar marches to Corfinium, and besieges it.

C H A P. VIII.

WHEREUPON *Domitius* having engag'd several Couriers, who were well acquainted with the Country, by considerable Promises, to carry Packets for him to *Pompey*; earnestly press'd for Supplies, assuring him it was an easy Matter to inclose *Caesar*, by the Assistance of the narrow Ways, with two Armies, and cut off all his Provisions: Which Opportunity neglected, would necessarily plunge him, thirty Cohorts, several Senators, and *Roman* Knights into eminent Danger. In the mean while, having encourag'd his Men to behave themselves bravely, he dispos'd Engines on the Walls, appointed every Man his particular Post, and for their Encouragement promis'd each private Soldier four Acres of Land out of his own Estate; and the like in Proportion to every Centurion or Volunteer.

Domitius writes to Pompey for Assistance. This Domitius was the Person whom the Senate had appointed to succeed Cæsar in his Government.

Whilst *Domitius* was making these Preparations, *Caesar* had notice that the People of *Suimo* were at his Devotion;

War in
Italy.

tion, but prevented from declaring, by Q. *Lucretius* a Senator, and *Attius* a *Pelignian*, who possess'd the Town with a Garrison of seven Cohorts. This Place lay about seven Miles distance from *Corfinium*, and *Cæsar* immediately, on Receipt of the Message, sent *M. Antony* thither, with five Cohorts of the thirteenth Legion. On Discovery of his Ensigns, the *Sulmonenses* open'd their Gates, and the Soldiers as well as Citizens came out to welcome *Antony*. Whereupon *Lucretius* and *Attius* endeavour'd to make their Escape over the Wall, but the latter was taken, and being brought to *Antony*, desir'd he might be sent to *Cæsar*. Thus *Antony* having happily compleated this Affair, return'd again the same Day with *Attius* and his Troops to *Cæsar*, who adding these Cohorts to his own, dismiss'd *Attius* in Safety.

Rex No-
ricus.

The three first Days after *Cæsar* set down before *Corfinium* were employ'd in fortifying his Camp, and getting Provisions from the neighbouring Towns; for here he resolv'd to expect the coming up of the rest of his Army. During this time arriv'd the eighth Legion, with twelve Cohorts newly rais'd in *Gaul*, and about 300 Horse sent him by the King of * *Bavier*. Upon which he made a new Camp at another Part of the Town, where he appointed *Curio* to command in Chief. After this he began to surround *Corfinium* with a Rampier, on which he erected several Turrets. This Work was almost compleated, when the Couriers return'd that had been sent to *Pompey*.

Domitius's
Dissemblati-
on.

Domitius having read his Letter, thought proper to conceal the Truth; and declar'd in Council, that *Pompey* would immediately come to their Assistance. Wherefore he encourag'd 'em valiantly to defend the Town, and obey those Orders which were necessary for defeating the Enemy's Designs: And in the mean while, privately consulted with a few of his particular Friends how he might secure his Escape. But his Countenance and Speech seem'd so different, his Carriage appear'd so much more confus'd than before, his Conferences in private with his Friends were so frequent, and those with the General Council so rare, that the Truth could no longer be dissembled. For *Pompey*, in Answer to his Demands, had return'd, That he would not hazard the Loss of the Cause upon so dangerous an Issue; that it was neither his Desire, nor Advice that *Domitius* should throw himself into *Corfinium*: Wherefore, if he had an Opportunity of escaping, he would advise him to quit the Town, and march to join his Army.

Pompey's
Answer to
Domitius's
Letter.

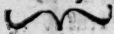
Army. Which *Cæsar* resolv'd to prevent, by finishing his Circumvallation. War in Italy.

Domitius's Design having taken Air, several of the Soldiers in the Town about Evening began to mutiny, and spoke to the Tribunes, Centurions, and Chief Officers to this Effect: *That they were besieg'd by Cæsar, whose Fortifications were now almost compleat; but their General, Domitius, on whose Honour they depended, when they embark'd in this Affair, without Regard to their Safety, was meditating an Escape: Wherefore they were oblig'd to provide for themselves.* At first those of *Marsia*, dissenting from this Resolution, possess'd themselves of the strongest Part of the Town; and the Dispute grew so warm, that it almost came to be decided by the Sword. But not long after, being inform'd by the Messengers that pass'd between 'em, of *Domitius's* Design, which they were formerly ignorant of; they all unanimously agreed to secure *Domitius's* Person, and send Deputies to *Cæsar*, to acquaint him, they were ready to surrender at Discretion, and deliver their General alive into his Hands. The Garrison mutiny.

On Receipt of this Message, tho' *Cæsar* was not ignorant how great Importance it was of, to gain *Corfinium* with as much Dispatch as possible; and unite the Soldiers to his Army whilst they were in the Humour to come over to him, lest their Minds might be alter'd by large Promises, Encouragements, or false Reports; (for the greatest Events in War are subject every Moment to change:) Yet, lest entring in the Night might give the Soldiers an Opportunity to plunder the Town; having return'd the Deputies Thanks for their Proffer, he sent 'em back again; desiring they would secure the Gates and Walls, the remainder of that Night with a very strong Guard: And he himself dispos'd his Soldiers round about the Works he had begun, not at certain Distances, as usual, but in one continu'd Rank, where the Sentinels, touching each other, form'd a compleat Circle. He order'd the Horse and Foot Officers to patrol about the Works; and be careful not only to prevent Sallies, but the Escape of any particular Person. Nor was any Man so drowsy to close his Eyes that Night, each impatiently expecting the Event of this Affair; and attending the Fate of the *Corfinians*, *Domitius*, *Lentulus*, and the rest of the Besieg'd. The Soldiers seize Domitius, send to Cæsar, and proffer to surrender at Discretion.

About Three in the Morning, *Lentulus Spinther* spoke to our Sentinels from the Walls, telling 'em he desir'd to leave Life. Lentulus Spinther comes to Cæsar to beg his leave Life.

War in
Italy.



Cæsar's
Answer.
* Which was
founded by
the Rubicon,
that ran be-
tween Ra-
venna and
Rimini.

leave to speak with Cæsar: Which being granted, he came out of the Town, attended by some of *Domitius's* Soldiers; who left him not 'till he arriv'd in Cæsar's Presence. He entreated Cæsar to pardon his Life for the sake of their former Friendship; he freely acknowledg'd the great Favours he had formerly receiv'd from him; that by his Interest he had been elected into the College of Priests, obtain'd the Province of Spain, when his Prætor's Charge expir'd; and was assisted by him, when he was Candidate for the Consulat. Here Cæsar, interrupting *Lentulus*, said, He had not left his * Government to do any Man a Prejudice, but to defend himself from the Power of his Enemies, to restore the Tribunes, who had been driven out of Rome, to their lawful Dignity, and assert his Liberty, and the People, who were oppress'd by Faction. *Lentulus*, encourag'd by this Answer, desir'd leave to return to the Town; that the Assurance of his Safety might revive the rest of the Besieg'd, lest Despair should oblige some of 'em to enter upon fatal Resolutions; which was granted, and he departed.

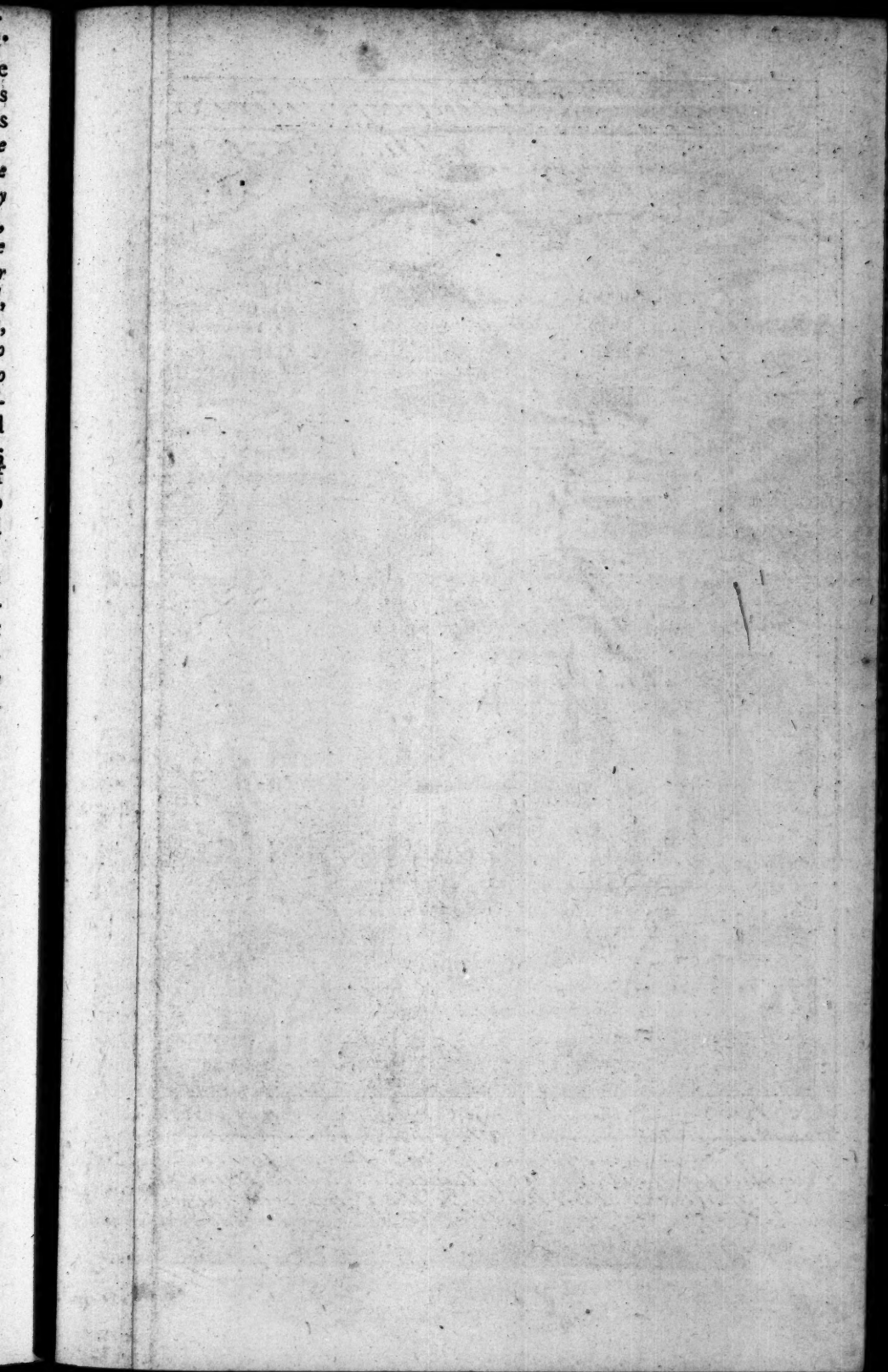
Corfinium
surrenders.

When Day-light appear'd, Cæsar commanded the Besieg'd to bring out all the Senators, Senators Children, Tribunes of the Soldiers, and Roman Knights: Amongst the Number of Senators were found, *L. Domitius*, *P. Lentulus Spinther*, *Vibullius Rufus*, *Sextus Quinctilius Varus*, the Treasurer *L. Rubrius*, besides *Domitius's* Son, and several other young Gentlemen, with a greater number of Roman Knights and chief Burgeses, who had been summon'd to attend *Domitius* from the neighbouring Towns. He protected 'em from the Insolences of the Soldiers, and having in a few Words reminded 'em of their Ingratitude, dismiss'd 'em all in Safety.

Cæsar re-
turns the 60
Sesterces of
Gold to *Do-
mitius*, which
were brought
him.

Marches
thro' † A-
bruzzo, and
great Part of
the Kingdom
of Naples.

Sixty Gold Sesterces, which *Domitius* had deposited in the Publick Treasury, were brought to Cæsar by the two Supreme Magistrates of the Town; but he return'd 'em to *Domitius*, tho' he knew they were Part of the Publick Treasury, and had been deliver'd out to *Pompey* for the Payment of his Army; to convince the World he was as generous as merciful. He commanded the Garrison to be sworn his Soldiers, having stay'd only Six Days before *Corfinium*, decamp'd the Seventh, when the Town surrender'd, and having made a compleat Days March thro' the Confines of the † *Marrucini*, † *Frentani*, and † *Larinate*s, he arriv'd in *Apulia*.





*A. Brindisi. B. The Haven. C. The Mounts & floe
up the Mouth of the Haven. D. The Island over*



*& floate of Timber Caesar cast into the Sea to block
nd over against the Haven.*

n
c
a
w
ci
w
B
h
ft
or
ea
an
th
P
ob
ve
be
M

C H A P. IX.

War in
Italy.

POMPEY, on notice of what had pass'd at *Corfinium*, leaving *Luceria* went to *Canosa*, and from thence to *Brindisi*, levying what Forces he could in all Parts of the Country. And having arm'd about 300 Slaves and Shepherds, he gave 'em Horses, and made 'em Cavalry. In the mean while, the Prætors, *L. Manlius*, and *Rutilus Lupus*, fled away, the first from *Alba* with Six Cohorts, and the latter from *Tarracina*, with Three, who discovering *Cæsar's* Cavalry under the Command of *Bibulus Curius* at a distance, deserted the Prætor, and came over to *Cæsar*. So the following Days several other entire Cohorts deserted to us, some joining our Foot, and others our Cavalry. *C. Magius* of *Cremona*, chief Engineer to *Pompey*, falling in with a Party of ours, upon the Road, was taken, and brought to *Cæsar*, who sent him back to *Pompey* with this Message; *That since he had not yet obtain'd an Opportunity of conferring with Pompey, he design'd to wait upon him at Brindisi; for it was of great Importance to the Commonwealth in general, and every Member in particular, that they should have an Interview, that might enable 'em to conclude a Treaty, which could not so conveniently be agreed on, when the Conditions were to be carry'd backward and forward at some distance by a third Person.*

Having dismiss'd *Magius* with this Message, he march'd himself to *Brindisi* with Six Legions; Three compos'd of Veteran Soldiers, the other of new Levies and Deserters: Not computing *Domitius's* Cohorts, which he immediately detach'd from *Corfinium* for *Sicily*. On his Arrival he was inform'd, that the Consuls were gone to *Durazzo* with great part of the Army: But *Pompey* remain'd in the Town with Twenty Cohorts, yet he could not be satisfy'd whether *Pompey* stay'd there for want of Shipping to transport him over, or with a Design to secure *Brindisi*, that he might the easier command the *Adriatick*, the Country of *Greece*, and the extreme Parts of *Italy*, and be able to maintain the War on both sides of the Gulf. However, lest *Pompey* should think it was not in *Cæsar's* Power to oblige him to quit *Italy*, he resolv'd to block up the Haven Mouth, and prevent all Access to the Town. Which he contriv'd to do by raising two Mounts on either side the Mouth of the Haven, where the Passage was narrowest, and

Luceria.
Canusium.
Pompey
flys to Brundisium.

Rutilus Lupus's Three
Cohorts desert to *Cæsar*.

Cn. Magius
being taken.
Cæsar sends
him back to
Pompey
with a Message.

Cæsar arrives at
Brundisium.
Dyrachium.

Cæsar's
Blockade at
the Haven of
Brindisi.

War in
Italy.



the Shores shallow. But where the depth of Water prevent-
ed Works of that Nature, close to the Mount, he plac'd
double Floats of Timber, Thirty Foot square in Surface,
with Anchors at each Corner, to prevent their being carry'd
away by the Waves. To this Float thus fix'd, he added
others to compleat the Blockade; cover'd 'em all over with
Earth and Fascines, that the Soldiers might have the surer
footing to defend 'em. Then rais'd a Breast-work, and
Penthouses all round the Work, and on every Fourth Float
built Turrets Two Stories high, to defend 'em from burning,
and the Violence of the Ships.

To interrupt these Works, and destroy our Blockade,
Pompey sent out a Squadron of large Vessels that lay in
the Haven, on which he erected Turrets Three Stories
high, and supply'd 'em with Plenty of Darts and En-
gines. So that there pass'd daily Skirmishes at a dis-
tance, with Slings, Darts, and Arrows: But yet Cæ-
sar manag'd his Affairs so prudently, as not to take
away all Hopes of composing the Matter by Treaty.
And tho' he wonder'd extremely that *Magius*, whom he
had sent to *Pompey*, had not yet return'd with an An-
swer to his Message; tho' he had often attempted a
Treaty in his own delay, yet not desisting from the same
peaceable Resolutions; he sent *Caninius Rebilus*, one
of his Lieutenants, to confer about the Matter with
Scribonius Libo, his particular Friend and near Relation.
Desiring him to engage *Libo* to be instrumental in mak-
ing up the Differences between him and *Pompey*; but
above all things to procure him an Interview, for then
possibly they both might consent on equal Terms to lay
down their Arms; and the Honour of the Treaty
would redound to *Libo*, if his Mediation concluded the
Peace. *Libo*, having conferr'd with *Caninius*, went
immediately to *Pompey*, and not long after return'd him
this Answer, *That Pompey could not treat during the*
Absence of the Consuls. Thus Cæsar, having so often to
no purpose essay'd a Reconciliation, thought it time to
lay aside any further Thoughts of a Treaty, and do
himself Justice by his Sword.

Cæsar sends
Rebilus to
Treat with
Libo.

Pompey's
Answer.

CHAP. X.

Pompey's
Fleet returns
to Brindisi,
before Cæ-
sar's Works
are compleat.

CÆSAR had already spent Nine Days about his
Works, which were almost half compleated, when the
Ships, which had transported the Consuls with part of
the Army to *Durazzo*, return'd to *Brindisi*; whereupon

Pompey,

Pompey, either apprehending the Consequence of *Caesar's* Works, or having long before design'd to quit *Italy*, so soon as the Fleet arriv'd, prepar'd for his Departure. And to moderate the Shock of *Caesar's* Attack, left his Soldiers should force their way into the Town whilst he was marching out, he stopp'd up every Gate, with all the Streets and Avenues; cut Ditches cross the Ways, wherein he fix'd sharp Piles and Stakes, covering the Surface with Turves and Hurdles, and only left two Passages open that led towards the Haven, which he fortify'd with strong Palisades.

War in
Italy.

Pompey
blocks up all
the Avenues
to Brindisi;

This Affair dispatch'd, he commanded the Soldiers to go on Board without Noise or Tumult, leaving only small Parties of Light-arm'd Archers and Slingers on the Walls, and in the Turrets, with Orders to quit their Posts upon a certain Signal, so soon as the rest of the Soldiers should be shipp'd off, and repair to a safe Place, where Gallies lay ready for 'em to embark in. But the Besieg'd who had receiv'd many Injuries and Affronts both from *Pompey* and his Army, were well affected to *Caesar*; and therefore so soon as they knew *Pompey's* Designs, whilst the Soldiers were preparing for their Voyage, gave *Caesar* notice of his Departure from the Tops of their Houses: Whereupon he immediately commanded his Soldiers to repair to their Arms, and provide scaling Ladders, that no time might be lost in the Execution of his Design. Not long before Night *Pompey* weigh'd Anchor, when the Soldiers on the Wall, receiving the intended Signal, quitted their Stations, and arriv'd at the Place where the Gallies attended 'em. *Caesar's* Soldiers in the mean while had scal'd the Walls, but being advis'd by the Besieg'd to beware of the * Piles, which had been fix'd by *Pompey's* Order in the Ditches, made a Halt, and were at last conducted by a long Circuit to the Haven; where, by the Assistance of some small Boats, they seiz'd Two of *Pompey's* Vessels, that stuck upon *Caesar's* Mounts.

and prepares
to go on
Board.

The Besieg'd
give *Caesar*
notice of it.

Pompey's
Soldiers go
on Board,
and weigh
Anchor.

* Vallum
Cæcum,
which seems
to be much
the same
with the Lil-
lies at the
Siege of A-
lile.

CHAP. XI.

THO' *Caesar* was fully perswaded how much it would conduce towards a speedy Determination of the War, to equip a Fleet and follow *Pompey* cross the Seas, before he could have an Opportunity of joyning his Transmarine Allies; yet he consider'd the Time it would requite to enable him to do it, because *Pompey* had ta-
ken

War in
Italy.

For Ancona
is the chief
Port of the
Piceni.

* Fretum.

Cæsar re-
solves to go
to Spain.
Sends Va-
lerius to Sar-
dinia, Curio
to Sicily.

Caralitani.
The Sardi-
nians exel
M. Cotta.

Cato's Pre-
parations for
War.

Cato's Com-
ardice.

Valerius
gains Sardi-
nia; Curio,
Sicily.

ken all the Shipping in the Harbour along with him, whereby he had effectually prevented a Pursuit; and if Cæsar design'd to come after, he must be oblig'd to attend the Arrival of a Navy from remote Countries, as *Gaul*, *Ancona*, and the * *Streights*, which the Season of the Year would render tedious and troublesome. On the other Hand he thought it might prove of ill Consequence to his Affairs, that *Pompey's* Veteran Army, and the Two Provinces of *Spain* (whereof one had been infinitely oblig'd to him for many signal Favours) should be confirm'd in his Interest; that his Enemies should have an Opportunity of raising more Horse, or soliciting *Gaul* and *Italy* to forsake him during his Absence: Wherefore he resolv'd at present to desist from pursuing *Pompey*, and make an Expedition into *Spain*.

Having order'd the Chief Burgeesses of the Municipal Towns to provide Shipping, and send 'em to *Brindisi*; he sent Lieutenant *Valerius* with One Legion to *Sardinia*; and *Curio*, the Proprætor, into *Sicily* with Three more; commanding him, so soon as he should have render'd himself Master of the Island, to transport his Army into *Africk*.

Marcus Cotta was Governour of *Sardinia*, *M. Cato* of *Sicily*; and *Africk* should have fallen to *Tubero's* Lot. The People of *Cagliari*, on notice of *Valerius's* Expedition, of their own Accord, before he had left *Italy*, expell'd *Cotta* out of their Town, who was mightily surpris'd at this Usage, but perceiving the whole Island was concern'd in the Business, left *Sardinia*, and escap'd to *Africk*. In the mean while *Cato* made great Preparations; he gave Orders for refitting the old Gallies in *Sicily*, for building new, and dispers'd his Lieutenants to raise Forces amongst the *Roman* Citizens in *Lucania* and *Brutia*, commanding every District in his Government to furnish him with a particular Quota of Horse and Foot. His Levies were almost compleated, when he receiv'd News of *Curio's* Arrival; whereupon he publicly complain'd, that he had been betray'd by *Pompey*, who had plung'd the Republick into an unnecessary War, assuring him and the rest of the Senate, that he had taken care for all kind of necessary Provisions, whereas he had provided nothing. Having thus declar'd his Mind, he likewise abdicated his Province, as *Cotta* had done before. So *Valerius* found *Sardinia*, and *Curio* *Sicily*, without a Governour, when they landed their Armies there.

Tubero,

Tubero, on his Arrival in *Africk*, found the Country commanded by *Attius Varus*; who, as we have already remark'd, having lost his Cohorts at *Osimo*, had immediately return'd into *Africa*, and without Commission possess'd himself of the Government, which he found vacant. Here, by the Interest and Knowledge he had of the People and Country, he soon levy'd Two Legions; for not long before, he had govern'd that Province, after the Expiration of his Prætorship. *Tubero* arriv'd at *Utica* with his Fleet, but was prohibited entering either the Town or Haven by *Varus*, who refus'd his Son leave to come ashore, tho' he had a Fit of Sickness upon him, and oblig'd *Tubero*, without further Delay, to weigh Anchor, and be gone.

War in
Italy.

Tubero dis-
appointed of
his Govern-
ment.

C H A P. XII.

THESE Affairs thus dispatch'd, that his Soldiers might have some respite from Fatigue, *Cæsar* dispos'd 'em into the nearest Municipal Towns, and went to *Rome*: Where having call'd a Senate, he laid before 'em an Account of the Injuries he had receiv'd from his Enemies. He told 'em, He never had aspir'd to extraordinary Dignities, and should have been contented to have enjoy'd the expected Consulat, during the usual time, according to that Decree of the Tribunes, whereby it was enacted, That he should have the Liberty of standing Candidate, tho' absent, spite of the Opposition made by his Enemies, but especially by *Cato*, (who consum'd so much time in insisting on the ancient Customs of *Rome*;) even during the Consulat of *Pompey* himself, who might have prevented the passing of the Decree, had he disapprov'd it: But if he then thought convenient to allow it, *Cæsar* knew no Reason why he should afterwards deprive him of the Benefit of the People's Affections. For him, he had given sufficient Proofs of his Patience, since of his own Accord he had propos'd, that both Parties should lay down their Arms, which might have been of fatal Consequence to his Honour and Dignity. But such was the Malice of his Enemies, that they refus'd to comply with those Propositions which they made to others; rather chusing to plunge all things into Confusion, than part with the Command of Armies. Here likewise he enlarg'd on the Injustice they had done, in taking away two of his Legions, their cruel and insolent Behaviour in violating the Authority of the Tribunes: His repeated Offers of Peace and a Conference, which could

Cæsar goes
to *Rome*,
calls a Se-
nate.

His Speech.

never

War in
Italy.

never be granted. Wherefore he desir'd and conjur'd 'em, to take the Republick into their Protection, and assist him to govern it: But if their Fears perswaded 'em to decline the Proffer, he should not much importune 'em to accept it; for he would assume the sole Administration into his own Hands. However, in the mean while, 'twas necessary to send Embassadors to treat about a Composition; for he valu'd not Pompey's Opinion, which he had lately declar'd in the Senate, that sending Embassadors to any one, necessarily imply'd a greater Power and Pre-eminence in the Person they were sent to, and apparent Fear in the Sender; since his Soul was act'd by superior Maxims; and as he had surpass'd the rest of Mankind in Warlike, and Noble Actions, so he was ambitious of out-doing 'em in Justice and Equity.

Cæsar proposes, that Deputies be sent to treat with Pompey; but nobody can be found to go.

The Senate approv'd well enough of this Embassage; but no Deputies could be found. For Pompey had declar'd, before his Departure, that he should esteem those who stay'd behind in Rome, equally guilty with those in Cæsar's Camp; which deterr'd every one from undertaking the Office. In fine, Three Days were consum'd in Debates and Excuses; for the Tribune, Lucius Metellus, had been engag'd by the contrary Faction to protract the Time, and oppose whatever Cæsar should offer.

This Metellus was the Person that oppos'd Cæsar's taking the Publick Treasure, till his Malice submitted to his Fear: But our Author has omitted this Passage, for which reason some Criticks have tax'd him with want of Integrity. I should rather attribute this Omission to Forgetfulness, since we have so strong an Argument of his plain Dealing in his Speech just before. Cæsar certainly wanted not the Courage to avow all his Actions to Posterity; and he who mistakes him for so shallow a Politician, to think he imagin'd he could suppress the Memory of this, by leaving it out of his Commentaries, must be a very great stranger to his Character,

C H A P. XIII.

Cæsar leaves Rome, goes to the farther Gaul.

CÆSAR had now spent Three Days to no purpose; when perceiving their Resolution, that he might lose no more, leaving the Designs unexecuted, which brought him thither, he quitted Rome, and went into the further Gaul. On his Arrival there, he was inform'd, that Pompey had sent Vibullius Rufus into Spain; who not long before had been taken at Corfinium, and dismiss'd; that Domitius was gone to Marseilles with Eight Gallies fitted out in Sicily and Sardinia, mann'd by his own Servants, infranchis'd Slaves and Plough-men: And that Pompey, before his Departure from Rome, having secur'd

secur'd several young Noblemen of *Marseilles* in his Interest, had sent 'em thither to prevent the former Offices of Friendship he had done 'em from being blotted out of their Memory, by those they had latelier receiv'd from *Cæsar*. On Receipt of this Message, the People of *Marseilles* call'd in their ancient Allies the *Albici*, to their Assistance; (a barbarous People, that inhabit the Mountains round about their Country;) set up Forges to make Arms, got Provisions from the neighbouring Fields and Castles, repair'd their Walls and Gates, refitted their Navy, and refus'd to give *Cæsar* Admittance into the Town.

War in Italy.

Marseilles shuts her Gates against *Cæsar*.

Strabo, l. 4. These fifteen were a particular Magistracy, as the Council of Ten at Venice. *Cæsar* has a Conference with the Magistrates of *Marseilles*. Their Answer.

Wherefore having sent for fifteen of the most considerable Persons in the City, to prevent the War from beginning at *Marseilles*, he advis'd 'em rather to follow the Example of all *Italy*, than be govern'd by any particular Person; not forgetting such other Motives as might incline 'em to embrace more prudent Resolutions. The Deputies return'd home, and brought him this Answer from the Government; That understanding the People of Rome were divided into two Factions, they neither had Judgment nor Authority sufficient to decide whether Party had Justice on their Side; especially since Pompey and *Cæsar*, the two Patrons of their Country, headed the different Factions. For they had been oblig'd to the former for the Revenues of the lower Languedoc and Vivarais; and to the other, for augmenting their yearly Tributes by a part of Gaul, after his Conquests there. Wherefore since they were equally indebted to 'em both, they resolv'd to declare for neither, but stand neuter; without admitting Pompey or *Cæsar* into their City or Haven.

But whilst this Treaty was in Agitation, *Domitius* arriving at *Marseilles* with his Fleet, was receiv'd into the Town, made Governor of the Place, and had the chief Management of the War committed to his Charge. He order'd the Navy to go a Cruising round the Coasts, commanding 'em to seize upon all the Merchants Vessels they could find; and with the Timber, Nails, and Tackle of such as were most crazy, to refit the rest. All the Corn in the City, and all kind of necessary Provisions, were laid up in the publick Arsenal; that they might be prepar'd for a Siege, if *Cæsar* should invest the Town.

Domitius receiv'd into the Town, made Governor.

Whereupon *Cæsar*, provok'd by these Injuries, march'd with three Legions to *Marseilles*, resolv'd to build Towers, Vines, and such other Works as were necessary to

Cæsar resolves to besiege *Marseilles*.

storm

War in
Spain.

Arelas.

storm the Town; and gave orders for building twelve Gallies at *Arles*, which were fitted out, equipp'd with all things necessary, and brought to *Marseilles*, within thirty Days after the Timber was fell'd. He made *D. Brutus* Admiral of this Squadron, and left *C. Trebonius* to carry on the Siege.

C H A P. XIV.

Cæsar sends
C. Fabius
with three
Legions into
Spain.

Fabius gains
the Passage
o'er the Py-
renean Hills.

WHILST these Preparations were going forward, Cæsar sent *C. Fabius*, with three Legions that were quarter'd about *Narbon*, into *Spain* before him; with Orders to secure the Passage over the *Pyrenean Hills* as soon as possible, which was guarded by a Party of *L. Afranius's* Army: And commanded the Legions that lay further off to follow after. *Fabius*, according to his Orders, made haste to the Mountains, oblig'd the Party to quit their Post, and from thence travell'd by long Marches towards *Afranius's* Army.

We have already taken notice that *Pompey* dispatch'd *Vibullius Rufus* into *Spain*, which he had divided amongst *Afranius*, *Varro*, and *Petereius*, three of his Lieu-

* In the Original 'tis *Afranius*, *Petereius*, and *Varro*, but certainly the Names must be transpos'd; for if *Varro*, who is plac'd the third, possess'd *Lusitania* and *Vettonum Agrum*, or rather *Bætica*, for that Province is divided from the *Lusitania* by the River *Guadiana*, what can be the meaning of the following Sentence, that *Petereius* should march with all his Forces out of *Lusitania*, thro' *Bætica* to join *Afranius*: For tho' I should agree that both *Varro* and *Petereius* possess'd different Parts of *Lusitania* at the same time, (for what else could Cæsar mean by that Division, from the *Castilian Forest* to the *Guadiana*?) Yet I cannot conceive why *Petereius*, if he was in the Northern Part of *Lusitania*, (as I shall endeavour to demonstrate) should take so unnecessary a Circuit to cross the *Guadiana* twice, and march thro' *Bætica* to *Ulerda* or *Lérida* in *Catalonia*, since there was no Enemy to oppose his Passage the nearer Way. Cæsar only divides *Spain* into two Provinces, the Nearer and the Farther; but Cluver into Three; *Bætica*, *Lusitania*, and *Tarraconensis*. The first of these contains *Granada*, *Andalusia*, *Extremadura*, and Part of New *Castile*; the Second, *Portugal*, with Part of Old and New *Castile*; but the third, which was by much the largest, did not only contain *Murcia*, *Valencia*, *Catalonia*, *Aragon*, *Navar*, *Biscay*, *Asturia*, *Gallaecia*, and *Leon*, but also Part of both *Castiles*. This Provincia *Tarraconensis*, which is all one with the Nearer Spain, you perceive was entirely engross'd by *Afranius*; *Petereius*, at the same time, commanded the Provincia *Bætica* with *Lusitania*, that is, the Southern Parts of *Lusitania*; for if he had the intire Province, what would become of *Varro*? He therefore, no doubt, commanded the Northern Part of *Lusitania*, as low as *Lisbon*, and from thence extending Eastward, in a direct Line, as far as *Calatrava*: For the River *Guadiana* divides this Part of *Lusitania* from the Provincia *Bætica*, all the Way between *Badajoz* and *Calatrava*. But *Petereius*, who had Part of his Legions quarter'd in the Southern *Portugal*, and Part about *Extremadura*, lay ready to execute these Orders, and at his Departure left the entire Command of the Farther Province, which in Cæsar's Time contain'd both *Lusitania* and *Bætica*, to *Varro*. One thing we may remark from this Division, viz. that they who derive the Original Name of the Kingdom of *Castile* from the Castles that were built in that Country by the *Goths* and *Vandals*, to put a Stop to the Incursions of the *Moors*, who had over-run the intire Provincia *Bætica*, must own themselves

themselves mistaken, 'till they can find out another Interpretation for *Saltus Castellonenfis*; for the Goths and Vandals got no Footing there themselves, 'till about 400 Years after the Birth of our Saviour, and the Moors not before 320 Years after them, which is about 800 Years after Cæsar wrote his Commentaries. Monsieur D'Ablandcourt indeed has render'd this *Saltus Castellonenfis*, *Castlona*, or his Editor for him in the Margin; but if *Castlona* be a Town in Andalusia, it can never quadrate with Cæsar's Meaning.

Lieutenants: The first of these commanded the nearer Spain, with three Legions; the second, from the Castilian Forest to the River *Guadiana*, with two; the third, *Batica*, and all the Southern Parts of Portugal, from the River *Guadiana* to the Sea, with the like Number. On *Vibullius's* Arrival 'twas resolv'd, that *Petreius* should march with all his Forces out of *Lusitania* thro' *Batica*, to join *Afranius*; whereupon *Petreius* began to levy both Horse and Foot in *Lusitania*, as *Afranius* did in *Celtiberia*, *Cantabria*, and those other barbarous Countries towards the Northern Sea. *Petreius* having compleated his Levies, immediately march'd thro' *Batica* to *Afranius*, and both resolv'd to make *Lerida* the Seat of War, because the Country lay so convenient for their Purpose.

Saltus Castellonenfis.
Ana.
Verroonum Agram.

Lusitania.

Lerida.

We have already observ'd that *Afranius* had three Legions, *Petreius* two; besides these, they had levy'd about eighty Cohorts of small and large Target-Bearers in both the Provinces of Spain, with near 5000 Cavalry. *Cæsar*, on the other hand, had sent his † Legions into Spain, with 6000 Auxiliary Foot, and 3000 Horse, which had serv'd under him during all his former Wars, and he was furnish'd with the like Number of Volunteers from the several States of *Gaul*, the Flower of their Country; but the most Warlike of these were the Highlanders of *Gascoigne*. Having Notice that *Pompey* was marching with his Legions thro' *Africk* to Spain, and would e'er long arrive there; *Cæsar* borrowed Money from the chief Officers of his Army, which he distributed amongst his Soldiers: By which means he gain'd two considerable Points at the same Instant; for he made it the Officers Interest to adhere to his Party, and secur'd the Soldiers Hearts by his Liberality.

Afranius
and *Petreius*
their Forces.
Scutari and
Cetrati.
† Viz. The
Legions that
had Orders
to follow af-
ter *Fabius*.

Cæsar's Po-
licy in bor-
rowing Mo-
ney of his
Officers to-
wards his
Spanish Ex-
pedition.

Fabius, in the mean while, left nothing unattempted for gaining the Country round about to his Party, by his Letters and Embassadors. He had already cast two Bridges cross *Sicoris*, about four Miles distance from each other, for the convenience of Foraging, because he had consum'd all the Provisions on this side the River.

Fabius
builds two
Bridges
cross the
Sicoris.

War in
Spain.

*Fabius's For-
agers at-
tack'd on
the Break-
ing of the
Bridge.*

*But Fabius
detaches two
Legions to
sustain his
Men;*

*whereupon
the Engage-
ment ceases.*

ver, *Pompey's* Lieutenants, for the same Reason, imi-
tated his Example, which occasion'd several Skirmishes
between our Cavalry. It happen'd one Day, that two
of *Fabius's* Legions going out to guard the Foragers, ac-
cording to their Custom, had pass'd the River, when
the Carriages and Cavalry endeavouring to follow after,
over-loaded the Bridge, which having already been
weaken'd by the Swelling of the River, fell down, and
prevented the Horse from joining the Foot who were
gone before. Which *Petreius* and *Afranius* perceiving,
by the Hurdles and other Materials that came swim-
ming down with the Stream, immediately detach'd four
Legions with all their Cavalry, cross the Bridge, that
lay nearest the Town and their Camp, with Orders to
attack *Fabius's* two Legions. On their Approach, *L.
Plancus*, who commanded the foraging Guard, found
himself oblig'd to gain the higher Ground, and make a
double Front, to prevent being surrounded by *Afra-
nius's* Cavalry. Notwithstanding the Disadvantage of
Number, he bravely receiv'd the Charge of their Horse
and Infantry, 'till the Colours of two Legions, which
Fabius had sent over the further Bridge to sustain his
Party, were descri'd at a Distance; for he suspected
Pompey's Lieutenants would lay hold of that Oppor-
tunity to fall upon his Men: On the Arrival of these
two Legions, the Engagement ceas'd, and both Parties
return'd to their several Camps.

CHAP. XV.

*Cæsar ar-
rives in the
Camp, gives
Orders for
repairing the
Bridge, and
marches to-
wards Leri-
da.*

*Afranius
draws out
his Forces to
confront
him, but
does not
fight.*

*Cæsar cuts
a Ditch in
his Ret., and
encamps.*

WITHIN two Days after *Cæsar's* Arrival in the
Camp with a Guard of 900 Horse, the Bridge which
had been broken down was almost rebuilt, and he gave
Orders for finishing the remaining Part by Night. Ha-
ving taken a View of the Place, he left six Cohorts for
a Guard to his Camp and Baggage, and march'd the
Day after with his Army in three Battalions towards
Lerida, where he offer'd *Afranius* Battel on an even
Ground: Whereupon *Afranius* drew out his Forces, and
dispos'd them on the middle of the Hill before his
Camp. But *Cæsar* perceiving he declin'd the Engage-
ment, resolv'd to encamp about 400 Paces from the
Foot of the Mountain. And lest the Soldiers should be
interrupted in their Works by sudden Attacks from the
Enemy, he order'd 'em not to throw up a Rampier as
usually, but only to cut a Ditch fifteen Foot breadth

in Front, towards the Enemy. The first and second Lines, according to Command, continu'd in Order of Battel, and the third had dispatch'd their Business, before *Afranius* discover'd that *Cæsar* design'd to encamp there.

War in Spain.

In the Evening *Cæsar* drew his Legions within this Ditch, and order'd 'em to lie that Night upon their Arms. The Day after he stirr'd not out of the Place; and because he must have been oblig'd to send a great way for Materials to compile a Rampier, he contented himself for the present, to surround his Camp on all sides only with a Ditch of the same Breadth with the former; and allotted a several Legion to compleat each Side of the Work, commanding the rest of his Forces to be ready to receive the Enemy's Charge. In the mean while *Petreibus* and *Afranius*, to divert the Soldiers from going forward with the Work, drew down their Legions to the Foot of the Hill, and provok'd 'em to engage: However, *Cæsar*, depending on the three Legions which were ready at their Arms, and the Defence of his Ditch, did not omit carrying on his Works: Which the Enemy observing, advanc'd no farther than the Side of the Hill; where they continu'd not long, before they return'd to their Camp. The third Day, *Cæsar* having fortify'd his with a Rampier, sent Orders to the Cohorts and Baggage, which he had left behind, to decamp, and come up to him.

He cuts a Ditch round about his Camp fifteen Foot broad.

Afranius draws out his Forces to divert the Works, to no purpose.

C H A P. XVI.

BETWEEN *Lerida* and the next Hill, where *Petreibus* and *Afranius* were encamp'd, lay a Plain about 300 Paces over; in the midst whereof was a gentle rising Ground, something higher than the Valley round about: *Cæsar* hop'd, if he could but render himself Master of this Place, to intercept the Enemy's Communication with the Town and Bridge, and deprive 'em of thote Convoys they us'd to receive from thence. Wherefore having made a Draught of three Legions, he rang'd 'em in Order of Battel, and commanded the *Antesignani* of one to run before, and gain the Place. Which *Afranius* perceiving, dispatch'd his advanc'd Guard a nearer Way to the same Post: They disputed the Matter warmly on both sides, but *Afranius's* Party, who came thither first, having the Advantage of the Ground, oblig'd our Men to retire, and being reforc'd

A bloody Skirmish between considerable Parties of both Armies,

War in Spain. by fresh Supplies, forc'd 'em to fly for Shelter to the Legions.

The way Afranius's Soldiers fought.

The Manner of their Soldiers Fighting was this, First, to make a furious Charge, in order to gain a particular Post, without regard to Ranks and Files, fighting desperately in small Parties on every side; and if they found themselves warmly receiv'd, they thought it no Disgrace to retire, being accustomed to this kind of Engagement, by their frequent Rencounters with the *Lusitanians*, and the other barbarous People of *Spain*: For Soldiers generally acquire the particular Customs of the Country where they have serv'd for a considerable time. But our Men were extremely surpris'd at this new way of Fighting, for perceiving every Soldier quitted his Rank, and ran disorderly up and down, they were apprehensive of being surrounded on all sides, whilst they were oblig'd to maintain their Ranks, and neither quit their Post nor Standard; but upon some very extraordinary Occasion. Thus the *Antesignani* being routed, the Legion likewise in that Wing gave Ground, and retir'd to the next Hill.

Cæsar's Party at first routed.

The ninth Legion sent to relieve 'em, rout the Enemy;

pursue too eagerly, fall into a disadvantageous Place.

The Fight renew'd.

Whereupon *Cæsar*, finding the whole Army surpris'd at this extraordinary Accident, detach'd the ninth Legion to sustain his Party, and put a Stop to the Career of the Enemy's Pursuit. His Orders were so well perform'd, that the Enemy, tho' flush'd with Success, were oblig'd in their turn to give Ground, and retire for Shelter to the Walls of *Lerida*. But the Soldiers of the ninth Legion being too eager to repair the Disgrace of their Party, pursu'd the Enemy 'till they had brought themselves into a disadvantageous Place, the Bottom of the Hill upon which the Town was built; and as they endeavour'd to retreat, found themselves charg'd afresh from the higher Ground. The Front of this Ascent was rough and steep on every side, extending only so far in Breadth as was sufficient for drawing up three Cohorts: But it was impossible to relieve 'em, nor could the Cavalry be of any use. From the Town, indeed, the Descent was something easier, for about 400 Paces in Length, which furnish'd our Men with an Opportunity of extricating themselves from the Disadvantage their Rashness had brought 'em into. Here the Fight was obstinately maintain'd, tho' with great Inequality on our side, as well on account of the Narrowness of the Place, as the Advantage the Enemy had, by being Masters of the rising Ground, from whence no Javelin fell in

War in
Spain.

in vain ; yet our Men bravely encounter'd with all these Difficulties, and patiently endur'd the Wounds they receiv'd : The Enemy perpetually receiv'd Supplies, and fresh Cohorts were frequently sent thro' the Town to relieve the weary'd ; which oblig'd *Cæsar* to detach Parties thither, for the like Purpose. The Engagement had now continu'd four Hours without Intermission, when our Men, who had spent all their Piles and Javelins, bravely charg'd the Enemy with Sword in Hand, and having kill'd some, oblig'd the rest to fly, notwithstanding the Advantage of the upper Ground : Thus having driven some into the Town, and the rest under the Walls, they easily obtain'd an Opportunity of retreating ; for our Cavalry, striving against the Steepness of the Ascent, mounting on either side to the Top of the Hill, and riding between both Armies, secur'd our Retreat : So many, and so various were the Turns of Fortune in this Rencontre. About seventy of our Men were kill'd in the first Charge ; amongst which Number fell *Q. Fulginius*, Centurion of the first Company of Pike-Men of the fourteenth Legion, who had been preferr'd to that Post, from a lower Rank, for his extraordinary Courage ; and above 600 were wounded. On *Afranius's* side were kill'd, *T. Cæcilius*, a Primiple, four more Centurions of inferior Orders, and above 200 common Soldiers. Yet so various were the Opinions of this Day's Success, that each Party thought they had the better on't. *Afranius's* Soldiers, because they had so long sustain'd the Assault of ours, tho' in all Mens Judgment they were the weaker ; for having first possess'd and maintain'd the Post, which was the Occasion of that Dispute, and oblig'd our Men on the first Rencontre, to give Ground. But ours, because they had maintain'd the Fight five Hours together, maugre the Inequality of Place and Number ; because they had forc'd their Way up the rising Ground with Sword in Hand, and oblig'd the Enemy to retire into the Town, notwithstanding the Advantage of the Hill. However, after the Engagement was over, *Afranius* fortify'd the Mount for which we contended, and plac'd a Garrison on it.

During the two Days that this Affair was in Agitation, there happen'd a very unfortunate Accident, for the Weather was so tempestuous, it rais'd the Water to a greater Height than ever was known in the Country ; the Snow ran down so violently from all the Mountains

Both Parties
retreat.Primus ha-
latus.The various
Opinions of
this Day's
Success.The Sicoris
overflows its
Banks, and
breaks down
both Fabi-
us's Bridges.

War in
Spain.

† Either
here must be
something
added, or
else there is
something
left out be-
fore in this
Book, for I
don't find a-
ny mention
made of the
Cinca.

The Difficul-
ties Cæsar
labour'd un-
der.

Utribus.

Cæsar en-
deavours to-
rebuild his
Bridges,
with all Suc-
cess.

round about into the *Sicoris*, that the River overflow'd its Banks, and in one Day were destroy'd both the Bridges which *Fabius* had built; which reduc'd the Army to great Extremities. For we have already observ'd, that our Forces were encamp'd between the two Rivers, † *Cinga* and *Sicoris*, which for the space of thirty Miles together were neither of 'em fordable: So the Army being block'd up within this narrow Compass, the Countries which had declar'd in favour of *Cæsar*, could not supply him with Provisions; the Foragers could not return again, because the Waters were out; nor could the Convoys and Recruits, which came from *Gaul* and *Italy*, find the Means of arriving at the Camp.

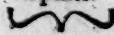
To add to these Difficulties, the Season of the Year render'd Provisions very scarce, for the last Year's Corn was all consum'd, and that on the Ground was hardly ripe. All the Countries round about were empty'd, for *Afranius*, before *Cæsar*'s Arrival, had carry'd most of the Corn to *Lerida*; and that small Remainder which was left, our Army had already devour'd. As for the Cattle, which were our second Dependance, the Natives had remov'd them farther off, when their Country was appointed the Seat of War. Our Foragers were mightily incommoded by the light-arm'd *Lusitaniens*, and *Spaniards* of the hither Province, who being acquainted with the Course of the Country, pursu'd 'em; for it was easy for them to get over the River, being always provided with Bladders, or leathern Bags to swim with.

But on the contrary, *Afranius* had plenty of all kind of Provisions, for he had laid up great Quantities of Corn, often receiv'd fresh Convoys, and had Forage enough for his Cavalry; the Bridge of *Lerida* furnishing him with all these Conveniencies without any Danger, for the Country beyond the River, which *Cæsar* could not come at, was wholly untouch'd.

The Waters were out several Days together; *Cæsar* did his utmost Endeavour to repair the Bridges, but the Swelling of the River, and the Parties which *Afranius* had dispos'd on the opposite Banks, prevented his Designs; which they might easily do, beause of the Nature of the River, the Height of the Water, and the Convenience they had of casting their Darts, all along the Bank, on that particular Place where our Men were oblig'd to work: Which render'd it very difficult for

for 'em at the same time, to struggle with the Force of the Stream, and avoid the Enemy's Darts.

War in Spain.



C H A P. XVII.

AFRANIUS had notice of considerable Reinforcements and Convoys, which were marching to join *Cæsar*; but being hinder'd by the Waters, were oblig'd to make a Halt on the River's side: Amongst these were Archers from *Roverge*, and Cavalry from the *Celtic Gaul*, with great store of Baggage, according to the Custom of their Country, besides about 6000 more of several sorts, with Servants and Children, who march'd without Order; for being subject to no Commander, every Man follow'd the several Dictates of his own Humour, travelling up and down the Country carelessly, as if the Roads were secure as formerly. There were likewise many young Gentlemen of Quality, Knights, and Senators Sons, with Embassadors from several States, and some of *Cæsar's* Lieutenants, but all their Journeys were stopp'd by the River.

On this Advice *Afranius* march'd in the Night, with Three Legions and all his Cavalry, to cut 'em off, and sent his Horse before, who fell upon 'em e'er they were ready to receive 'em: The *Gallic* Cavalry soon rally'd, and engag'd 'em bravely, returning their Charge notwithstanding the Disparity of Number, so long as they had none but Horse to encounter with; but on discovery of the Legions Ensigns, some few being slain, the rest retreated to the neighbouring Hills. However, this short Skirmish was of great Advantage to the rest of their Party, for it gave 'em Time to rally upon the higher Ground: This Day we lost about 200 Archers, a few Cavalry and Servants, with a small Part of our Baggage.

Afranius marches to attack some Convoys and Recruits that were coming to *Cæsar*.

Kills 200 Archers, some Cavalry and Servants.

But this increas'd the Price of Provisions, as well on the score of the present Scarcity, as the Apprehension of future Want: A Bushel of Corn was sold for * 50 Pence, the Soldiers daily grew more feeble, Inconveniencies encreas'd every Day, and a wonderful Change appear'd in a few Days time; so much did Fortune favour the Enemy, that whilst we labour'd under the want of all kind of Necessaries, they had plenty of every thing, and were esteem'd the Victors. *Cæsar* left nothing un-effected to redress the present Scarcity, he sent to the Countries that were in League with him, to furnish

Great scarcity in *Cæsar's* Camp.

* At least 16s. 8d. English.

War in Spain. him with Cattle, because they had but little Corn, and dismiss'd those that were Attendants on the Camp to distant Places.

The Reports at Rome, that Cæsar was already overcome.

Afranius, Petreius, and their Friends, sent Accounts of this to Rome; and so much had Report enlarg'd the Truth, that the War appear'd to be almost at an End: When the Couriers arriv'd at Rome, there was a great Concourse at Afranius's House, and mighty Congratulations were made amongst their Party; many flock'd out of Italy to Pompey, some to carry the first Account of this grateful News, and others to avoid coming latest, when Fortune should have given Judgment against Cæsar's Cause. Affairs being reduc'd to this Extremity, Cæsar perceiving all the Passes were guarded by Afranius's Parties, and that 'twas impossible to repair the Bridges, gave Orders for building such Boats as he had formerly observ'd the English made use of: Their Keels

By help of such Boats as the Britains us'd, Cæsar rebuilds his Bridges.

and lower Part were made of light Timber, the Sides of Wicker cover'd over with Skins; these being finish'd, he plac'd 'em on Waggon, sent 'em by Night about Twenty Two Miles from his Camp, and transported his Soldiers in 'em cross the River; where they quickly possess'd themselves of a Hill on the Bank side, which they fortify'd, before the Enemy had notice of their Motions: After these, to reinforce the Party, he likewise transported a Legion, and beginning the Work on both sides together, compleated his Bridge in Two Days; by which means, he recover'd his Foragers, receiv'd his Convoys and Recruits, and open'd a Passage for future Supplies of Corn.

His Cavalry surprise the Enemy's Foragers.

The same Day he detach'd a great Part of his Cavalry cross the River, who surpris'd a considerable Number of the Enemy's Foragers and Waggon, that were carelessly dispers'd up and down the Country; but a Party of light-arm'd Spanish Foot coming up to their Assistance, our Men divided themselves into two Bodies, one to secure the Booty, the other to receive, and return the Enemy's Charge. One of our Cohorts venturing too eagerly before the rest, was surrounded and cut off, but the rest return'd over the Bridge in safety to the Camp with a considerable Booty.

Return with a considerable Booty.

C H A P. XVIII.

WHILST Affairs were in this Posture at Lerida, the People of Marseilles, by L. Domitius's Advice, equip'd Seven-

Seventeen Gallies, (of which Eleven were cover'd) with several other smaller Vessels; that they might strike a Terror into our Fleet by the Number of theirs. These, they mann'd with a great many Archers, and the *Albici* we have already mention'd, whom they encourag'd to perform their Parts, by great Rewards, and Promises. *Domitius* desir'd a certain Number of these Ships for his particular Use, which he fill'd with the Shepherds and Husbandmen he had brought thither along with him. Thus being compleatly equipp'd, they boldly hoisted Sail, in search of our Fleet, which was commanded by *D. Brutus*, and rid at Anchor at an Island over-against *Marseilles*. *Brutus* was much inferior to the Enemy in Number of Shipping, but *Cesar* had chosen the most valiant Men amongst all his Legions, as well Centurions as *Antesignani*, at their own Request to man his Fleet: Who having prepar'd plenty of grappling Irons, Piles, Darts, and Javelins, on notice of the Enemy's Arrival, put out to Sea, and engag'd 'em. The Conflict was briskly maintain'd on both sides, nor were the *Albici* (a hardy Highland People, perpetually inur'd to Arms) much inferior to our Men in Courage; for being come directly from *Marseilles*, the late Promises which they had receiv'd were fresh in their Memories; and *Domitius's* Shepherds behav'd themselves with equal Courage, their Master being present in hopes of Liberty.

Those of *Marseilles*, confiding in the Nimbleness of their Ships, avoided the Shock of our Gallies, when we endeavour'd to split them with our Beaks; having Sea-room enough, they drew their Fleet up into a Line, in order to surround us; sometimes several of 'em would attack a single Ship of ours together; sometimes try to sweep off a Bank of Oars, by rushing furiously by the side of a Gally; but when we endeavour'd to grapple, laying aside the Skill of their Pilots and Mariners, they rely'd intirely on the Courage of the Mountaineers: We were oblig'd to make use of less skilful Rowers, and Pilots, who being lately taken from aboard Merchants Vessels, hardly knew the Names of the Tackle; they were mightily incommoded by the Sluggishness of our Ships, which being built in haste of unseason'd Timber, were not so ready at tacking about: But when we came close up to 'em, each single Ship of ours easily engag'd two of the Enemy's, and fighting boldly on each side, boarded their Fleet; where we kill'd great Numbers of the Mountaineers, and Shepherds;

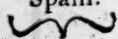
War in Spain.

The People of Marseilles prepare a considerable Fleet.

Brutus with the Roman Fleet engages 'em.

The Marseillians defeated; they lose 9 Ships.

War in
Spain.



part of their Vessels we sunk, some we took with the Men on board, and drove the rest into the Haven. In this Engagement the Enemy had Nine Ships sunk and taken.

C H A P. XIX.

CÆSAR had News of this Victory, at *Lerida*, so quickly did Fortune change, when his Bridge was finish'd. The Enemy fearing the Courage of our Horse, did not disperse themselves about the Country so carelessly as usual; sometimes foraging near their Camp, that they might the easilier retreat; sometimes taking a large Circuit about, to avoid meeting with our Parties; for if they receiv'd the least Loss, or even descry'd our Cavalry at a Distance, they would forsake their Wagons and fly; nay at last, they omitted foraging several Days together, and detach'd Parties in the Night to bring in Provisions.

Osca in Aragon, Calaguris in Old Castile, come over to Cæsar's Party. Iberus.

In the mean time, the People of *Huesca*, and those of *Calaborre*, their Fellow-Tributaries, both sent Embassadors to Cæsar, to receive his Commands; those of * *Jaca*, the *Ausetani*, and not many Days after, the *Illurgavonenses*, who lye near the River *Ebro*, follow'd the Example of these † *Tarraconenses*.

From these he demanded Supplies of Corn, which they promis'd, and having got all the Carriages in the Country together, soon brought him Provisions into his Camp. One Cohort of the *Illurgavonenses*, having notice of their Country's Resolution, came over to our Camp * with their Colours. There was a wonderful

* Or in an
intire Body.

Change

* *Jacetani*, or those of *Jaca*. Mounſieur D'Ablandcourt has render'd this Name the People of *Barcelona*; but I was rather inclin'd to believe Cæsar meant those of *Jaca*, because the Sound has no Affinity at all with *Barcino*, or *Barcelona*; nor can I meet with any Authority to warrant that Interpretation.

† The Original has it hos *Tarraconenses*; which Mr. D'Ablandcourt and Mr. Edmonds have render'd, the People of *Tarragona*: But I believe Cæsar design'd it for an Accuſative Case, and meant generally the Inhabitants of the Provincia *Tarraconensis*; because not long after, *Africanus*, finding he could not pass the *Ebro*, as he design'd, held a Council to determine whether he should return to *Lerida*, or march to *Tarragona*; which he would hardly have done, if the latter had revolted: Majority of Votes, indeed carry'd it for *Lerida*, but 'twas because that was the shorter Cut. Who these *Ausetani* were, for my part, I shall not pretend to determine; for I dare not affirm, with Mounſieur D'Ablandcourt, that they are the People of *Garrona*, because he may have Reasons which I am yet a Stranger to; much less that the *Illurgavonenses* are the present Inhabitants of *Tortola*, for tho' *Tortola* lyes at the Mouth of the River *Ebro*, yet 'twere no necessary Conclusion to affirm from thence, that this must be the Place which Cæsar meant, because he says the *Illurgavonenses* lay near the *Ebro*. But might I take the Liberty of changing a Letter or two, I could turn the *Illurgavonenses* into *Ilerdavonenses*, and then 'twould be no difficult matter to expound it that part of the Country of *Ilerda* near the *Ebro*, which lay the farthest off from *Africanus's* Forces.

Change for the better on our side ; for the Bridge was perfected, Five powerful States had enter'd into League with us, Care was taken for future Provisions, the Report of *Pompey's* Approach with the Legions thro' *Africk* was now at an end, and several Countries that lay at a farther distance, revolting from *Afranius*, declar'd for *Cesar*.

War in Spain.

The Scene of Affairs chang'd much for the better on *Cesar's* side.

Whilst the Enemy was discourag'd by our Success, *Cesar*, that he might not be at the Trouble of tending his Horse so far about to forage ; having chose a convenient place, began to cut several Ditches about Thirty Foot deep, to drain so much of the *Sicoris* as might render it fordable. This Work was almost compleated, when *Petreius* and *Afranius*, apprehending they should be cut off from foraging, because *Cesar* was so much superior to 'em in Cavalry, resolv'd to decamp, and remove the War to *Celtiberia*. They were the rather induc'd to embrace this Resolution, because those Countries which had been subdu'd by *Pompey* in the *Sertorian* War, still trembled at their Conquerer's Name, tho' absent ; and those who had continu'd faithful to him, were since confirm'd in his Interest by several Obligations, amongst whom *Cesar* was hardly known. Hence they expected considerable Supplies of Horse and Infantry, and doubted not but to be able to protract the War 'till Winter.

Afranius and *Petreius* resolve to remove towards *Celtiberia*.

Having agreed on this Resolution, they gave Orders for seising all the Ships on the *Ebro*, and carrying 'em to *Ostogesa*, a Town situate on that River, about Twenty Miles distant from their Camp ; where they commanded a Bridge of Boats to be cast cross the Water : And transporting two Legions over the *Sicoris*, fortify'd their Camp with a Rampier Twelve Foot high.

They give Orders for Transports to be prepar'd on the *Ebro* or *Iberus*.

Which *Cesar* having notice of by his Scouts, wrought incessantly at his Drains, and by the extraordinary Labour of his Soldiers, who neither rested Day nor Night, reduc'd the River to so low an Ebb, that the Cavalry might with some Difficulty, ford it ; which they ventur'd to do, and the Infantry likewise, tho' the Water took 'em up above the Shoulders, and the Stream was very violent, yet could not be deterr'd by those Difficulties from crossing the River. So that almost at the same Instant that *Cesar* was inform'd the Bridge cross the *Ebro* was near compleated, he found a Ford over the *Sicoris*.

Cesar drains the *Sicoris* 'till it becomes fordable.

War in
Spain.

C H A P. XX.

Petreius and
Afranius be-
gin their
March.

Cæsar de-
taches his
Cavalry to
pursue 'em.

They over-
take and at-
tack the E-
nemy's Rere.

The Legions
desire leave
to ford the
River, and
pursue the
Enemy.

Cæsar grants
their Re-
quest.

They cross
the River.

THE Enemy thought it high time to be marching; wherefore leaving two Auxiliary Cohorts for a Garrison at *Lerida*, they cross'd the *Sicoris* with all their Forces, and join'd the Two Legions which they had sent over before. Cæsar had now no other Remedy left, but to detach his Cavalry, to interrupt the Enemy's March; but because crossing the Bridge would oblige 'em to take so large a Circuit, that *Afranius* would arrive at the *Ebro* before 'em a nearer way; he order'd they should ford the River. About One in the Morning, just as *Petreius* and *Afranius* had decamp'd, our Cavalry descry'd their Rere, which they endeavour'd to surround, that they might delay their March.

So soon as Day-light appear'd, from the rising Ground near our Camp, we discover'd the Enemy's Rere, warmly engag'd by our Horse; who sometimes oblig'd 'em to halt, and disorder'd their Ranks; on the other hand, sometimes our Party were forced to give way to the furious Charge of their Cohorts; but so soon as the Enemy endeavour'd to pursue their March, our Cavalry again attack'd 'em. The Infantry, who beheld this Action from the Camp, were mightily disturb'd to think the Enemy should thus escape; which would necessarily prolong the War. Wherefore they entreated the Centurions and Tribunes to acquaint Cæsar, That they were ready to ford the River where the Horse had pass'd before 'em; wherefore they desir'd he would not be so careful to avoid exposing them to any Danger or Labour. Cæsar mov'd by their Importunity, tho' he thought it dangerous to venture his Army to ford so deep a River; yet judging it expedient to try his Fortune, caus'd the weakest Soldiers to be drawn out of every Century, whose Courage or Strength were incapable of that Expedition; and these, with one Legion, he left behind to secure his Camp and Baggage: Then drawing out the rest of his Forces, he dispos'd a great Number of Waggons both above and below the Ford, to break the force of the Stream, and march'd his Legions cross the River. Some few of our Infantry, being carry'd away by the Impetuosity of the Current, were preserv'd by the Cavalry, so that not a single Man perish'd in this Attempt. When he arriv'd on the other side the River, he dispos'd his Army into three Battalions, and so eager were

were the Soldiers in the Pursuit, that tho' they had taken a Circuit of Six Miles about, and had been mightily delay'd by fording the River, yet they came up with the Enemy (who had began their March by One that Morning) before Three in the Afternoon.

War in Spain.

and come up with the Enemy.

Petreius and *Afranius*, descrying our Legions at a distance, were mightily surpris'd; wherefore having gain'd the higher Ground, they drew their Army up in Order of Battel. *Cæsar* having refresh'd his Army in the Field, that they might not be oblig'd to engage the Enemy before they had recover'd their Fatigue, so soon as they renew'd their March pursu'd 'em afresh; which oblig'd 'em to encamp earlier than they design'd: For there were several Hills not far before 'em, and about Five Miles off, the Passages were narrow and difficult. They retir'd within these Mountains, that they might avoid being attack'd by our Cavalry, and dispos'd Parties in the Avenues, to put a Stop to the March of our Army, hoping by this means to secure their Retreat cross the *Ebro*; which it highly import'd 'em to endeavour, by all the means they could invent. But being fatigu'd by their continual Marches, and Skirmishes all the Day, they deferr'd the Execution of their Design 'till the Day after, and *Cæsar* encamp'd on a Hill which lay near 'em.

Afranius, being warmly pursu'd, is oblig'd to encamp.

About Midnight, a small Party of theirs, which went out a little distance from their Camp to fetch Water, was surpris'd by our Cavalry. By these *Cæsar* was inform'd, that the Enemy were silently decamping. Whereupon he likewise commanded the Signal for removing and packing up the Baggage to be given, according to the Roman Discipline.

Afranius designs to decamp privately,

The Enemy taking the Alarm, apprehending they should be attack'd, and oblig'd to fight, whilst they were loaden with their Baggage, or else block'd up in the narrow Passes by *Cæsar's* Cavalry, made a Halt, and return'd to their Camp.

but is prevented.

C H A P. XXI.

THE Day after *Petreius* went privately out with a small Party of Horse, to take a View of the Country; and *Cæsar* likewise detach'd another for the same purpose under the Command of *Decidius Saxa*. Both return'd the same Account to their several Camps, That for Five Miles together the Country was open and cham-

Parties sent out on both sides to view the Country.

War in Spain.

Afranius holds a Council of War to debate the Time for decamping.

† Veget. Lib. 11. cap. 5. The Soldiers swear vigorously to perform all their Generals Orders, never to desert, or refuse Death for the Service of the Republick.

Cæsar decamps, and seems to march the contrary way to the Ebro.

Afranius's Soldiers laugh at Cæsar's.

champain, but after that very rough and mountainous; and whatever Army first possess'd the Streights, might easily prevent the other's marching that way.

On this Advice, the Enemy's Generals held a Council of War, wherein the Time for beginning their March was debated. The Majority were of Opinion, 'twould be most convenient to set out by Night, for they might possess the Avenues before Cæsar could have notice of their Departure. But others declar'd, 'twas impossible to decamp so silently but they should be discover'd, as appear'd by the last Night's Alarm in Cæsar's Camp; besides, the Enemy's Cavalry were patrolling all Night about the Ways and Passages: And Night Engagements were always to be declin'd, lest the Soldiers should listen more to Fear, than the Observation of their † Military Oath, especially in a Civil War: Whereas in the Day, each Man having the Dread of Dishonour before his Eyes, would be restrain'd from Flight, and a Neglect of his Duty, by the Presence of his Officers. Wherefore 'twas absolutely necessary to make the Attempt by Day-light, and tho' they might receive some small Loss, yet the Body of the Army would obtain a safe Retreat, and possess the Post desir'd.

The latter of these Opinions being embrac'd, they resolv'd the next Morning by Break of Day to begin their March: And Cæsar having view'd the Country, set forward about the same time, taking a considerable Circuit, and observing no particular Rout: For the direct way to the *Ebro* and *Otogesa*, was block'd up by the Enemy's Camp, which oblig'd us to march over several Hills and Dales. And there often lay such craggy Rocks in the Road, that the Soldiers were oblig'd to deliver their Arms to a third Person to hold, whilst they help'd each other to ascend the Craggs. These Difficulties we had to encounter with; the greatest part of our March; yet all the Soldiers chearfully endur'd the Fatigue, in hopes of putting a speedy Period to their Labour, if they could but gain the *Ebro*, before the Enemy, and intercept their Convoys.

Afranius's Soldiers, being mighty joyful to perceive we march'd the contrary way, (which we did on purpose to deceive 'em) derided us, saying, we were oblig'd to fly, and return to *Lerida* for want of Provisions: Nor were their Generals less satisfy'd, to think how prudently they had acted in not decamping. They were confirm'd in this Opinion, because they found we had

had neither Baggage nor Carriages along with us, which they concluded must of necessity oblige us to remove in a very short time. But when they observ'd we began by degrees to wheel about to the Right, and that our advanc'd Guard had already gain'd the Ground beyond their Camp, there was no body so stupid or lazy, but perceiv'd the necessity of opposing our further March, without Delay. An Alarm was sounded, and only leaving a few Cohorts for a Guard to their Camp, all the rest of the Enemy's Forces march'd directly for the *Ebro*.

War in
Spain.

But when
Cæsar began
to wheel a-
bout, per-
ceive their
Error.

Thus the whole Issue of the Business depended on Dispatch, whether Party could first possess the Streights and Mountains. *Cæsar* had the Difficulties of the Way to struggle with; but on the other hand, *Afranius's* March was retarded by *Cæsar's* Cavalry. However, if the Enemy could have gain'd the first Hills, as they design'd, they might have secur'd their Retreat, tho' they must of necessity have lost their Baggage, and the Cohorts which were left behind in their Camp. *Cæsar* had the good Fortune to arrive first at the Place, and having pass'd the Rocks, drew up his Army on the Plain in Order of Battel.

Cæsar gains
the Streights
before 'em.

Afranius perceiving our Army in his Front, and finding his Rere attack'd by our Cavalry, began to halt, taking the Advantage of a rising Ground: From hence he detach'd four Cohorts, of *Spanish* Foot, to gain another Hill, which appear'd higher than any of the rest; they were commanded to dispatch these Orders with all Expedition, for he would come thither himself afterwards with his Army, and take another way than he had formerly design'd, on the Ridge of the Mountains to *Ostogesa*.

Afranius
halts, and
detaches a
Party of Foot
to gain a ri-
sing Ground,

The Enemy's Cohorts were taking a Circuit to the Place, when our Cavalry, perceiving their Design, charg'd 'em with such Violence, that they were not able to sustain their Fury, but being surrounded, in the sight of both Armies were cut to pieces.

but they are
cut to pieces
by Cæsar's
Cavalry.

CHAP. XXII.

THIS no doubt was a happy Opportunity for effecting something extraordinary, nor was *Cæsar* ignorant of it; for the Enemy was certainly daunted to see their Party defeated before their Eyes, and find themselves surrounded by our Cavalry in an equal, and open Place, where

War in
Spain.

Upon this
Advantage
Cæsar is im-
portun'd to
fight, but de-
clines it.

where the Dispute might have been decided by a Battel. Cæsar was strongly importun'd to fight by his Lieutenants, Centurions and Tribunes, who unanimously desir'd he would engage the Enemy, for all the Soldiers were eager for it; whereas *Afranius's* Army had given undeniable Proofs of their Fear, because they neither detach'd Supplies to sustain their Party, nor mov'd from the rising Ground they had first retreated to; and hardly sustain'd our Cavalry's Attack, but crouded their Standards confusedly together, without observing Ranks or Order: But if the Disadvantage of the Ground weigh'd any thing with him, that could not long obstruct the Design, because *Afranius* would be oblig'd to remove for want of Water.

His Reasons.

But Cæsar, hoping he should effect the same Business without an Engagement, because he had cut off the Enemy's Provisions, told 'em, *He knew no Reason he had to purchase Victory at the Expence of his Men; to let 'em be wounded, who had deserv'd so well at his Hands; nor why he should submit the Decision of the Affair to Fortune, when it redounded so much more to the General's Honour, to overcome by Conduct than by Force. Besides, he was mov'd with Compassion for those Romans, who he foresaw must be sacrific'd to that Day's Success; which he would rather obtain without the Loss of their Lives.* Cæsar's Opinion was generally dislik'd, and some of the Soldiers openly declar'd, since he had omitted so glorious an Opportunity, they would decline an Engagement when he should be dispos'd to it. However he continu'd firm in his Resolution, and retir'd some small Distance from the Place, to free the Enemy from their Apprehensions. *Petreibus* and *Afranius* laid hold on this Occasion to retreat to their Camp. And Cæsar having dispos'd Parties in all the Passes to the *Ebro*, lodg'd himself as near as he could to the Enemy.

The Soldiers
disgusted at
it.

Both Armies
again en-
camp.

Afranius and
Petreibus con-
sult about
making their
Retreat;

but bearing
their Fora-
gers were
cut off, re-
solve to draw
a Line of
Communica-
tion to the
River.

The Day after, *Afranius* and *Petreibus* being mightily disturb'd to find their Convoys intercepted, and all the Passages to the *Ebro* block'd up, consulted what Methods they should take, and found they had only two Ways left; to return to *Lerida*, or march to *Tarragona*. But whilst they were debating this Matter, they had notice, their Parties they had sent out for Water were attack'd by our Horse: Whereupon they resolv'd to line the Road to the Waters with several Parties of Horse and Foot, with some Legionary Cohorts intermix'd, and draw a Line of Communication by a Rampier from thence

thence to their Camp; that for the future they might securely fetch it, at any time without a Guard. *Petreibus* and *Afranius* each chose their particular Part of this Work, which oblig'd 'em to be at some Distance from their Camp.

War in Spain.

In the mean while, the Soldiers of both Armies, having an Opportunity of conferring with one another frequently came out of their Camps, enquir'd for their Fellow-Citizens, and former Acquaintance. First *Afranius's* Men return'd ours Thanks for sparing 'em the Day before, when they were in that mighty Consternation; and freely own'd they were oblig'd to us for their Lives: Then enquir'd how they might safely submit to *Cæsar*, and declar'd they were sorry they had not at the beginning joyn'd with their Relations and Acquaintance. Afterwards they demanded *Cæsar's* Parole for the Lives of their Generals, *Petreibus* and *Afranius*, that they might not be branded with Infamy, for betraying their Officers. On security for the Performance of these Demands, they promis'd to come over to us in an intire Body, and accordingly sent several Centurions of the first Degree to treat with *Cæsar* about a Peace.

Afranius and Petreibus being absent from their Camp, the Soldiers of both Armies have a Conference.

Send several Centurions to treat with Cæsar about a Surrender. Mutual Invitations among the Soldiers of both Armies.

In the mean while, Invitations were made by the Friends on either side, so that both the Camps appear'd united in one: Several of their Tribunes and Centurions came to pay their Court to *Cæsar*; the like did many Noblemen of *Spain*, who had been summon'd to attend *Afranius*, and were detain'd in his Army, in the nature of Hostages; each of 'em enquiring after his particular Friends and Acquaintance, who might recommend him to *Cæsar*. And *Afranius's* Son, a young Gentleman, treated with *Cæsar* by *Sulpicius* the Lieutenant, about pardoning his own, and Father's Lives. In fine, nothing but Mirth and Joy were to be seen in both Armies; in theirs, because they had escap'd so imminent Danger; in ours, because we had effected so important an Affair, without the Hazard of a Battel: And now every Man applauded *Cæsar's* Judgment, who had reap'd so extraordinary Advantage by his wonted Clemency.

All things seem to tend toward a Reconciliation.

Now Cæsar's Mercy is applauded.

C H A P. XXIII.

AFRANIUS having notice how Affairs went, desisted from his Works, and retir'd to the Camp again, where with an equal Mind he seem'd to expect whatever

War in
Spain.

But Petreius
breaks the
Conference.
Drives Cæ-
sar's Soldi-
ers from the
Rampier of
his Camp.

ever Event should befall him : But *Petreius* neglected not his own Safety on this Occasion ; having arm'd his Servants, with them, a Prætorian Cohort of Target-Bearers, and a small Party of *Spanish* Cavalry, his Dependents, who always us'd to attend him as his Guard : He repair'd with all the Dispatch he could to the Rampier ; where he surpris'd the Soldiers talking together, but he immediately interrupted the Conference, oblig'd our Men to retire from the Camp, and put those he could apprehend to the Sword. But the rest who had an Opportunity to rally, depending on the nearness of the Camp, wrapp'd their Cloaks about their Left-Arms, drew their Swords, and so defended themselves from *Petreius's* Party, 'till they had retreated to our advanc'd Guard, by whom they were protected.

He visits e-
very Part of
the Army,
and dissuades
'em from
surrendring.
He admini-
sters a new
Oath of Fi-
delity to the
whole Army.

After this *Petreius* visited every Maniple, call'd the Soldiers about him, and with Tears in his Eyes, conjur'd 'em not to forsake him, nor their absent General *Pompey*, and deliver 'em up as a Sacrifice to the Enemy. Whereupon there was an immediate Concourse of Soldiers about the General's Pavilion, and *Petreius* demand'd every Man should take an Oath, not to desert, betray the Army, or their Generals, nor enter into any private Consultation, without the Publick Consent : To set an Example, he first took the Oath himself, then oblig'd *Afranius* to do the like ; the Centurions and Tribunes follow'd after, with the Soldiers according to their several Centuries.

Cæsar's Sol-
diers which
were found
in *Petreius's*
Camp, put to
Death.

When the whole Army had sworn, 'twas proclaim'd, that whoever had any of *Cæsar's* Soldiers should deliver 'em up, and those they found were publickly put to Death before the Generals Tents : But most of the Soldiers conceal'd our Men, and dismiss'd 'em privately at Night over the Rampier. Thus the Terror which their Generals had struck into the Army, the Severity they had shown in Punishment, and the new Oath they had oblig'd 'em to take, for the present defeated all Hopes of a Surrender, chang'd the Soldiers Minds, and reduc'd the War to its pristine State.

Cæsar dis-
misses *Afra-
nius's* Soldi-
ers that
were in his
camp.

Cæsar caus'd diligent Enquiry to be made for such of *Afranius's* Soldiers as came to his Camp during the Truce, and order'd 'em to be return'd in safety to their General. But some of the Tribunes and Centurions voluntarily chose to stay with him ; whom afterwards he treated very honourably, promoting the Centurions to higher Ranks, and to such as were *Roman* Knights he gave Tribunes Commissions.

Afranius's

Afranius's Parties were much incommoded by our Men, when they went either to forage, or fetch Water: His Legionary Soldiers indeed had a small Quantity of Corn left, because they had been commanded to bring two and twenty Days Provision with 'em from *Lerida*. But the Target-bearers, and Auxiliary Forces had none at all; for they neither had Opportunities of supplying themselves, nor were their Bodies inur'd to carry heavy Burthens; which made 'em daily desert in great Numbers to *Cæsar*.

War in Spain.

C H A P. XXIV.

A F F A I R S being reduc'd to this Extremity, of the two Methods which had formerly been propos'd, 'twas thought the more convenient to return to *Lerida*, where they had left some Provisions behind 'em; and here they design'd to form themselves for the future Management of the War: Besides, * *Tarragona* lay farther off, and consequently they might have more Dangers to struggle with during their March; wherefore they resolv'd on the former, and decamp'd.

Afranius and *Petreius* resolve to return to *Lerida*.

* A Sea-port in *Catalonia*, between *Barcelona* and *Tortola*.

Cæsar having sent his Cavalry before, to retard the March of their Rere, follow'd after himself with the Legions. The Enemy were continually employ'd by our Horse, and their manner of engaging 'em was this: The light-arm'd Cohorts clos'd their Rere, and where the Country was even, they confronted our Cavalry; whenever they were to ascend a rising Ground, the nature of the Place sufficiently screen'd 'em from Danger, for the foremost Ranks could easily defend the hindmost: But when they came to a Valley, or Descent, where the foremost Ranks be of no Assistance to the Rere, and our Men cast their Darts with Advantage from the higher Ground, then they were in eminent Danger; wherefore, on their Approach to any such Places, they desir'd the Legions would face about, and furiously repulse our Horse: The Moment we began to give Ground, they would run down into the Valley, thence gain the next rising Ground, and face about again! For so little use were their Cavalry to 'em, of whom they had considerable Numbers, (that had been daunted by their ill Success in former Skirmishes) that they were oblig'd to receive 'em into the midst of their Army, and defend them with their Infantry: But if any of

Cæsar pursues 'em, sends his Cavalry before.

War in
Spain.

Afranius
oblig'd to
halt.
Pretends to
encamp.

So soon as
Cæsar does
the like, en-
deavours to
pursue his
March.

Cæsar's Ca-
valry sets up-
on their
Rere with
good Success.

Afranius
again oblig'd
to halt and
encamp.

'em chanc'd to straggle out of the main Body, they were immediately taken by Cæsar's Horse.

The Skirmishes continuing thus without intermission, the Enemy could march but slowly, being often oblig'd to halt, to relieve their Rere, as happen'd at this time: They had not march'd above four Miles, when finding themselves overcharg'd by our Cavalry, they posted their Army on a very high Hill; and drawing their Front up in Order of Battel, began to intrench themselves without unloading their Baggage. But so soon as they perceiv'd we had encamp'd our selves, pitch'd our Tents, and dispers'd the Cavalry a foraging; about Noon, on a sudden they dislodg'd. Which Cæsar observing, drew out his Legions and pursu'd 'em, leaving a few Cohorts for a Guard to his Baggage, with Orders to recal their Foragers, about four in the Afternoon, at which time he commanded the Horse should follow him. Accordingly the Horse perform'd their Orders, immediately return'd to their former Charge, and attack'd the Enemy's Rere so vigorously, that they almost routed them; for they killed several Soldiers, some Centurions; and the rest of our Forces follow'd close after, threatening a total Defeat to their Army.

In fine, having neither convenient Ground to encamp on, nor an Opportunity of marching further, they were obliged to halt, and intrench themselves in a disadvantageous Place, far from any Water. However, Cæsar, for the same Reasons that moved him to refuse the Engagement before, now likewise declined offering them Battel. He would not that Day permit the Soldiers to pitch their Tents, that they might be readier to pursue the Enemy, if they should endeavour to make their escape, either then, or in the Night.

The Enemy, observing the Defect of their Camp, laboured all that Night in advancing their Works, and disposing their Trenches with an opposite Front to ours: The same thing they did the Day after from Sun-rise, 'till the Evening. But it happened very unfortunately for them, that the farther they produced their Lines, the greater Distance they were from the Water; and remedied the present Evil with a worse hereafter. The first Night no body went out for Water; but the Day after, leaving only a small Guard in their Camp, they drew out all their Forces towards the River, yet sent no Parties out to forage.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXV.

T H O' *Cæsar* would rather have oblig'd 'em to capitulate by these Inconveniencies than by Force, yet he endeavour'd to hem them in with a Rampier and a Ditch, that he might the easlier prevent their sudden Sallies and Eruptions, which he believ'd they must at last have recourse to.

Cæsar endeavours to surround 'em with a Work.

The Enemy were reduc'd to great Necessities for want of Forage, and that they might more readily make their Escape, kill'd all their Mules, and Sumpter-Horses. Two Days were consumed in forming, and executing this Resolve; but the Third, perceiving great Part of our Works were already compleated, to prevent our further Progress, about two in the Afternoon, they drew out their Legions in Order of Battel before our Camp. Upon which *Cæsar*, having recall'd his from the Works, and commanded the Cavalry to put themselves in Order, did the like: For he had already found the Inconvenience of appearing unwilling to engage the Enemy. However, for the same Reasons which had before dissuaded him from it, he was not even now inclin'd to fight 'em; especially since there was so small a Distance between the two Camps, that if he routed the Enemy, he could not obtain a compleat Victory. For the Armies lay within two thousand Foot of each other, whereof the Legions, when drawn out, took up about two Thirds, and the rest only was left for the Soldiers to give their Charge in: Wherefore, had he engag'd 'em, the Nearness of their Camp would have furnish'd 'em with an easy Retreat. For which Reasons *Cæsar* resolv'd to stand upon his Defence, and not begin to charge *Afranius* first.

They kill all their Beasts of Burthen, because Forage is scarce.

Draw out their Forces to interrupt Cæsar's Works. Cæsar does the like.

But no Battel ensues.

The Enemy had dispos'd their Forces into a double Line, consisting of five Legions, and the Cohorts which formerly us'd to be dispos'd in the Wings, now form'd the reserv'd Body.

The Order Afranius dispos'd his Army into.

Cæsar's Army was drawn up in three Lines, the first consisting of four Cohorts, detach'd out of each of the five Legions, the second of Three, and the Third of the like Number; the Archers and Slingers were dispos'd in the midst, and the Cavalry on either side. Thus both Armies being rang'd in Order of Battel, each General seem'd to obtain his Desire: *Cæsar*, not to engage, unless he was oblig'd to't; and *Afranius*, to prevent the Progress of our Works: But having continu'd

Cæsar's disposition.

Both Armies retire into their Camps again.

War in Spain. in this Posture 'till Sun-set, they both return'd to their several Camps.

Cæsar goes on with his Works.

The next Day Cæsar went on with the Works he had begun, and the Enemy in the mean while endeavour'd to find out a Ford cross the *Sicoris*; which Cæsar observing, detach'd his light-arm'd *Germans* with some Cavalry cross the River, and dispos'd several Parties along the Banks to observe their Motions.

Afranius desires a Conference.

At length, finding themselves besieg'd on all sides, having had no Forage four Days together, themselves wanting Water, Wood and Corn, *Afranius* desir'd a private Parley out of the Soldiers hearing; but Cæsar would agree to no Conference, unless in Publick. Whereupon *Afranius* having sent his Son for a Hostage, they had an Interview at the Place appointed: Where, in the Presence of both Armies, he thus address'd himself to Cæsar.

His Speech.

That he had no Reason to be angry at him or his Soldiers, for having behav'd themselves faithfully to their General Pompey: But they had already given sufficient Proofs of their Constancy, and suffer'd enough for his Cause, by the Want of all kind of Provisions; being caught like Beasts in a Toil, imprison'd in their Trenches, and prevented from fetching Water: Wherefore they could no longer support themselves under these Afflictions of Mind and Body, but must confess the Power of their Conqueror; whom they most humbly besought and conjur'd to have so much Mercy, as not to force 'em to despair.

All this he deliver'd in a very modest and submissive Accent; but Cæsar made him this Answer.

Cæsar's Answer.

That Afranius, of all Mankind, had least Reason to complain, and implore his Compassion, who had hitherto shewn the least Inclination to Mercy. Cæsar, for his part, had declin'd Fighting upon Advantage of Time and Place, that he might conclude a Peace without the Effusion of Roman Blood: His Army, after Injuries receiv'd, when they knew their Comrades were kill'd, dismiss'd Afranius's Men that were in their Power, untouch'd; nay, even his own Party did their Endeavour to conclude a Peace, whereon they thought their Safety depended: In fine, both Armies had demonstrated their Desire of a Reconciliation, whilst Afranius and Petreius only would not endure the Thoughts of Treaty, broke the Truce, and barbarously murder'd those innocent Persons, whom the Interview had entic'd to their Camp. Wherefore, they had justly scar'd the usual Fate of the obstinate and haughty, to be oblig'd to have recourse

to those Conditions, and earnestly desire those very Terms, which not long before they despised. However, he scorn'd to take the Advantage of their Submission, to advance his own Authority and Reputation. He only desired that Army might be disbanded, which had been so many Years maintained against him: For to what other Purpose were six Legions sent into Spain, and a seventh rais'd there, so many powerful Navies equipp'd, so many great Commanders, and experienc'd Officers sent thither? These Preparations could not be made to reduce or guard the Provinces of Spain, which having long enjoyed a Peace, had no occasion for such extraordinary Forces; but he had long foreseen they were brought in for his Destruction. Innovations had likewise been made in the Republick, in order to effect this Design; so one Person commanded not only in Italy, at the Gates of Rome, but at the same time, tho' absent, held the two most warlike Provinces of Spain, so many Years together: The ancient Institution for distributing of Governments to the Consuls and Prætors, after the Discharge of their Office, was laid aside; and some being clandestinely chosen by a private Faction, were sent to Provinces: The Excuse of Old Age was not allow'd of, but even they who deserved a glorious Ease, by the Proofs they had formerly given of their Courage, were obliged to bear Arms, and compleat the Number of their Troops. And he alone had been deny'd that Justice, which no other General before him ever was refus'd; to disband his own Army, and return home with Honour, or at least free from Ignominy, after he had successfully served the Commonwealth. All which Injuries he had patiently endured; neither did he now endeavour to take their Army from them, and entertain them in his Pay, which would be no difficult Matter for him to effect, but he only desired they might no longer bear Arms for his Enemies against him; wherefore let them quit the Kingdom of Spain, and disband their Forces: Which Conditions performed, he would injure no Man; but these were the only Terms of Peace he would condescend to.

Evocato.

C H A P. XXVI.

THESE Conditions were very grateful to Afranius's Army, since being conquer'd they had reason to expect ill Usage from Fortune; but instead of that obtain'd the Liberty of quitting their Arms. They gave evident Proofs of their Satisfaction; for when the Place for disbanding was debated, ascending the Rampier, by

The Articles agreed upon.

War in
Spain.

The Articles.
+ Which di-
vides Gaul
from Italy.

Words and Signs they unanimously desir'd it might be done immediately ; for no Security could be given for the Performance of this Promise in futurity. The Dispute was soon decided, for 'twas agreed, " That they who had Settlements in *Spain*, should be disbanded there ; the rest at the River † *Varus* : That no Person should be molested or injur'd, nor any Man oblig'd to bear Arms under *Cæsar* contrary to his own Inclinations : That *Cæsar*, from the Day of their Surrender 'till their Arrival at the *Varus*, should furnish 'em with Corn. And of his own Free-will he promis'd, to restore to every Man whatever he had lost during that War, if any of his Soldiers had it ; to whom he paid an equal Value by way of Satisfaction.

After this, if the Soldiers chanc'd to have any Dispute amongst 'em ; they immediately had recourse to *Cæsar*, and submitted their Differences to his Arbitration. So when they were ready to mutiny for want of Pay, and *Afranius* and *Petereius* affirm'd there was nothing due to 'em, because the Day of Payment was not come, the Generals desir'd *Cæsar* might determin the Matter, which the Army readily agreed to, and both Parties were content with the Judgment he pronounced.

About a third Part of their Army being dismiss'd within two Days ; *Cæsar* commanded two of his Legions to march before their Army, the rest to follow after, and always to encamp very near 'em. The Charge of this Affair he committed to Lieutenant *Q. Fufius Kalenus* ; who attended 'em to the River *Varus*, where they disbanded the rest of their Forces.

C. J. Cæ-

C. J. Caesar's
COMMENTARY
 OF THE
CIVIL WAR.

The Second Book.

Marseilles closely besieg'd. On Nasidius's Arrival a Second Sea-fight, with ill Success on the Side of the Besieg'd. Trebonius's wonderful Works. The Besieg'd demand a Truce; which they break themselves, but at last surrender. Varro deserted, falls into Caesar's Power. Curio at first has good Success in Africk; but engaging rashly, afterwards, is cut to pieces with his whole Army.

CHAP. I.

WHILST these Affairs were in Agitation in Spain, Lieutenant C. Trebonius, whom Caesar had left to carry on the Siege of *Marseilles*, had begun to raise Mounts, Vines, and Turrets, in two several Places against the Town; one near the Haven, where the Ships lay; and the other near the * Mouth of the River *Rhodne*. For *Marseilles* is fortify'd almost on three several Sides by the Sea, the remaining fourth Part is all the Access it has by Land. Part of this Avenue, which led to the Tower, being equally fortify'd by Nature and a very deep Ditch, requir'd a long and difficult Siege to take it in. For perfecting these Fortifications, Trebonius dispatch'd Orders to the whole Province to furnish him with Men, Carriages, Rods to make Hurdles, and several other necessary Materials to compleat the

The Siege of Marseilles.

C. Trebonius casts up a Mount, and makes other Works.

* For Scalliger is of Opinion, these Words, Ex Gallia atq; Hispania ad id mare, quod attigit, ought to be expunged.

The Siege of Marfeilles. Work: Which being prepar'd, and brought together, he cast up a Mount about eighty Foot in height.

But so great plenty of all Kinds of Ammunition had the Besieged formerly stor'd up in their Magazines, so many Engines had they prepar'd, that no Vines made of Hurdles were sufficient Defence against 'em. For their * *Balista* shot wooden Bars about twelve Foot length, headed with Iron, which would force their way thro' four several Rows of Hurdles, into the Ground. Wherefore the Romans were oblig'd to cover their Galleries with Beams of Timber twelve Inches Square; under whose Covert they handed Earth and other Materials from one to another, for compleating the Mount. A *Testudo* likewise, sixty Foot in Length, was carry'd before, for levelling the Ground, built of strong Timber, and fortify'd with all Materials necessary to defend it from the Fire and Stones, which the Enemy cast from the Walls. But the Largeness of our Works, the Height of their Wall and Towers, with the Multitude of their Engines, made our Fortifications proceed but slowly. Besides, the High-landers often sally'd out of the Town, and set Fire to our Mount and Turrets; tho' our Soldiers easily extinguish'd it, and repuls'd them back into the Town with considerable Loss.

* Lipsius is of Opinion, these *Balista* were only for shooting Stones, but here we find 'em apply'd to other Uses.

C H A P. II.

Nasidius arrives with a Fleet to the Assistance of the Besieg'd. Messina. I N the mean while, *Nasidius* being sent by *Pompey* to the Assistance of the Besieged, with a Fleet of sixteen Ships, of which Number some were beaked with Iron; pass'd the Streights of *Sicily*, before *Curio* had Notice of his Expedition: And putting in at *Messina*, struck such a Terror into the Inhabitants, that the Magistrates, and Persons of best Quality deserted the Town; which gave him an Opportunity of surprizing one of the Gallies in the Haven: Adding this to the rest of his Fleet, he pursu'd his Voyage to *Marseilles*; and detach'd a small Vessel before, to give *Domitius* Notice of his Approach, and encourag'd the Besieged to venture a second Engagement with *Brutus*, after they should have join'd his Fleet.

The *Marseillians*, since their Defeat, had repair'd the Loss, by taking other Ships to make up their former Number out of the Docks, which they equipp'd with great Diligence. They had likewise prepar'd great Numbers of Rowers, Mariners, Pilots, and several Fishermens Vessels, which they filled with Archers and Engines;

Engines; these they cover'd with a Penthouse, to defend the Rowers from our Darts and Javelins. The Siege of Marseilles.

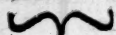
Their Fleet being thus fitted out, the *Marseillians*, incited by the Prayers and Tears of the old Men, Virgins and Matrons, to defend their Country in her Extremity, went on Board with no less Valour and Assurance than they did before. The Arrival of *Nasidius* had inspir'd 'em with fresh Courage; for we naturally believe those things we cannot see, more considerable than they really are, and our Hopes, or Fears, still bear a Proportion to our Fancy. The Wind offering fair, they weigh'd Anchor, and sail'd to *Nasidius*, at *Tauroën*, a Castle belonging to the People of *Marseilles*: After their joining, the two Fleets encourag'd each other vigorously to attack their Enemy, and having held a Council of War, 'twas resolv'd, the *Marseillians* should command the Right, and *Nasidius* the Left Squadron. They join Nasidius's Fleet.

Brutus, having notice of their Motions, made up towards 'em; for he had encreas'd the Fleet that *Cæsar* built at *Arles*, with six other Ships taken from the Enemy, which, since the last Engagement, he repair'd and fitted out. And having encourag'd his Men to despise those whom they had already conquer'd, when in their best Condition, he bore up briskly to 'em. From *Trebonius's* Camp, and the higher Ground, might easily be discover'd what was doing in the Town; from thence our Soldiers observ'd, that all the Youth who remain'd in *Marseilles*, the old Men, Women, Children, and the Guards, with extended Hands upon the Walls, or prostrating themselves before the Images at their Temples, besought the Gods to grant 'em Victory. Every one believ'd the Fate of their Country depended on that Day's Success; young Gentlemen therefore, and Persons of the best Quality of all Ages, were desir'd to go on Ship-board, that nothing might be wanting for the Preservation of their Fleet in case of an Emergency: For could they but obtain this Victory, either by their own Valour, or the Assistance of their Allies, they had no reason to despair of preserving their City from falling into *Cæsar's* Hands.

C H A P. III.

THE Fleets being engag'd, the *Marseillians* did not betray the least Want of Courage, but remembering the Exhortations lately given by their Friends, fought as resolutely, The Fight begins.

of Marseilles.



Two Mar-
seillian Gal-
lies design to
attack Bru-
rus, but fall
foul upon
each other.

Nasidius
flies, their
Fleet defeat-
ed, five sunk,
and four
Ships taken
by Brutus.

resolutely, as if they meant not to engage a second time; or as if he who fell in that Battel, only anticipated the Fate of his Countrymen for a short Moment, who must all submit to the same Decision of War, if Fortune should deliver the Town into the Enemy's Hands. Our Gallies moving but slowly, their Pilots had the greater Scope to shew their Skill, and the Nimbleness of Ships: Whenever we endeavour'd to board one of them, immediately the rest from all Sides came up to defeat our Design; but when we grappled, the *Albici* laid about 'em so briskly, they prov'd themselves but little inferior to our Men in Courage; whilst several of our Soldiers were wounded unaware by the Showers of Darts, which were shot from the lesser Vessels. In the mean while two of their largest Gallies, spying our Admiral's Ship, which might easily be discern'd by the Flag, resolv'd to run foul upon him, and crush him between 'em: But *Brutus*, being aware of their Design, made a shift to get out of the Way, the Moment they were coming towards him with all their speed, which made them run upon each other with so violent a Shock, that one of their Beaks being broken, the whole Vessel was almost shatter'd to pieces; which our Men observing, they that lay nearest immediately set upon, and sunk 'em both, before they could recover their Disorder.

Nasidius's Gallies prov'd useles, and therefore immediately left the Fight, for they had not those powerful Motives, the Sight of their Country, and the Intreaties of their Kindred, to spur 'em on to maintain a desperate Fight: He therefore lost one of his Number; but of the *Marseillian* Fleet, five were sunk, four taken, and one ran away with *Nasidius*, who steer'd directly for the farther *Spain*.

C H A P. IV.

The Soldiers
build a Tow-
er to defend
'em from the
Sallies of the
Besieg'd.

THE Legionary Soldiers, to whose Care the right side of the Works was committed, observ'd it would be of infinite Use, for repulsing the frequent Sallies of the Besieg'd, to build a Tower of Brick under the Walls: Which at first they rais'd to no considerable height, designing it only for that particular Purpose; and here they took shelter when they repuls'd or pursu'd the Enemy. This Tower was thirty Foot square, and the Wall five Foot in Thickness; but afterwards, as Experience improves all Things, so 'twas found necessary to raise

raise this likewise to the height of the other Turrets, *The Siege of Marfeilles.* which was thus effected.

So soon as the Work was rais'd to a sufficient height for a Story, the Forces were so dispos'd in the Wall, that the Ends should not appear thro' the Brick-work, lest they might be liable to be burnt. This Floor compleated, they proceeded in raising the Wall as high as the Mantlets would permit; and then laid two Beams cross each other, whose Ends extended almost as far as the Wall would suffer 'em; these were to sustain the uppermost Floor, which was design'd for a Roof to the Turret. And upon these Beams they laid Forces directly cross, which they boarded with Planks; they were contriv'd something longer than the rest, and jett'd a little further out than the Wall, for the convenience of fastning Penthouses to 'em, to defend the Workmen whilst they compleated the Walls between those two Stories. This uppermost Floor they pav'd with Lime and Tiles, that the Fire might have no Power over it. And laid Mattresses to break the Force of Darts and Stones, which the Enemy should shoot from their Engines. After this, for their better Security, they prepar'd Curtains woven of strong Cords, about four Foot in breadth, which they hung about those three Sides of the Turret next the Enemy, on high Poles; for this kind of Defence, they had formerly experienc'd, could not be pierc'd by any Dart or Engine whatever: When one part of the Tower was finish'd and compleatly fortify'd, they remov'd their Penthouses to another side. So high as these Curtains would permit, and under their Coverture, they elevated the Roof intire by the help of Scrues, and finish'd the Wall between: Then scruing up the Top a second time, they continu'd raising the Wall, till they had built it to a convenient height for another Story, which was floor'd like the rest. After this they scrued the Roof and Curtain still higher, by which means, without danger of being wounded, they compleated six several Stories, leaving Loop-holes in convenient Places for putting out the Engines.

Believing they should be able by the help of this Tower, to defend all the Works about it: They resolv'd to build a Musculus sixty Foot long, of Timber two Foot square, to extend from the Brick Turret to the Walls of the Town; which they built after this manner. First two Beams of an equal Length were laid upon the Ground, at four Foot distance, on which little Pillars five Foot high were erected, inclining gently to each other, and joined at the Top by the Beams which were design'd to bear the Roof of the Musculus: Upon whose Beams were

The Musculus describ'd.

The Siege were fixed Rafters two Foot square, which were fasten'd by of Marfeil- Iron Plates and Nails, and the Roof was cover'd with Boards
les.



four Fingers square, to bear the weight of the Tiles that were to be laid upon them. Thus the Engine being regularly built with a sloping Roof, they covered it with Tiles and Mortar, to defend it from Fire ; upon the Tiles laid Hides, to prevent the Cement from being wash'd away by Spouts of Water ; and over the Hides, to prevent the Force of Stones and Fire, laid Mattresses. The Work was begun close by the Tower, finish'd under the Protection of the Vines, before the Enemy had notice of it ; and immediately remov'd by Rollers and Leavers, as Ships are usually launch'd, so near their Tower, that it touch'd the Wall.

The Besieged
endeavour in
vain to de-
stroy the
Musculus,

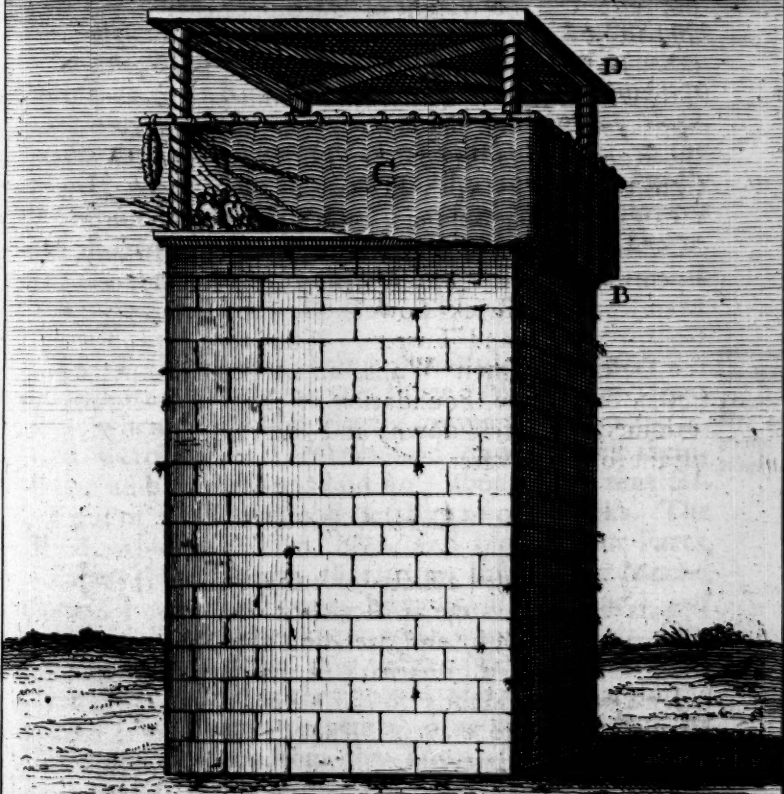
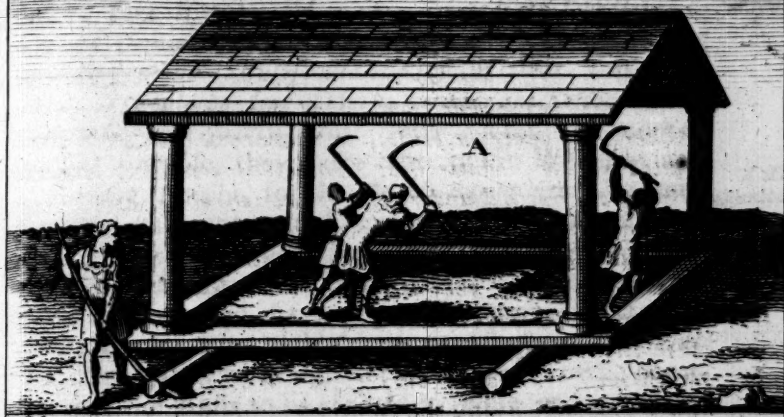
The Besieged were not a little disturbed at this ; wherefore they provided the largest Stones they could get, and with Leavers heav'd 'em o'er the Wall upon the *Musculus* : But perceiving the Work was so substantial, it did not submit to the weight of the Stones that fell upon it, and slid off the Ridge again ; they resolved to take another Method, to fling down burning Barrels of Pitch, Grease, and other combustible Matter ; nor did this Stratagem answer the Design, for they slid likewise off the Roof, and falling on the Ground, were thrust away from the Works with Forks and long Poles. In the mean while our Soldiers, under the Protection of this Machine, began to undermine the Foundation of the Enemy's Turret. The *Musculus* was defended by our Men from the Brick-Tower, and the Besieged driven from the Walls and Turrets. Thus forc'd to abandon the Defence of their Walls, and several Stones being pull'd out of the Foundation of their Tower, part of it immediately fell down, and the rest lean'd, as if it meant to follow after.

The Romans
undermine a
Turret ;
which falls.

CHAP. V.

The Besieged
surpris'd, beg
a Peace 'till
Cæsar's Ar-
rival,

THE Besieged afflicted for the Fall of the Turret, surpris'd at so strange an Accident, believing the Gods were angry at 'em, and dreading the Sacking of their City, came out all unarm'd, array'd like Suppliants, extending their Hands to the Lieutenant-Generals for Mercy. Upon so extraordinary a Shew, all Acts of Hostility immediately ceas'd, and the Soldiers flock'd to hear what they said : So soon as the Besieged came to the Camp, they threw themselves down at the Lieutenant's Feet, *Most humbly beseeching 'em to grant them a*
Truce



B. the Brick Tower. C. the Curtain woven of Cords.
 D. the Roof raised higher by degrees till the work was finished.

f
a
v
f
l
V
f
T
c
S
f
E
D
ti
P
M

Truce 'till *Cæsar's* Arrival ; for they perceiv'd their City *The Siege* was already taken, our Works being perfected, and their of *Marseil-* Turret destroy'd, wherefore they would make no longer De- les.
 fence : That if they did not pay immediate Obedience to *Cæsar's* Commands upon his coming, nothing could prevent their Destruction : But should the rest of their Turret fall down, it would be impossible to contain the Soldiers from plundering and sacking their Town. This, and more to the like purpose, they spoke with much Weeping, and a moving Accent, for the *Marseillians* are a learned People ; whereupon, the Lieutenants, mov'd with Compassion, withdrew their Soldiers from the Walls, desisted from carrying on the Siege, left a Guard to protect their Works ; and having granted 'em a kind of a Truce out of Pity, resolv'd to expect *Cæsar's* Arrival. No Darts pass'd from our Works to the Town, nor any from the Walls to us ; all Men were as careless as if the Place had been actually ours : For *Cæsar* had given particular Orders to *Trebonius* in his Letters, not to let *Marseilles* be taken by Storm, lest the Soldiers, inrag'd at their Rebellion and Contempt, and angry to think how much Pains they had taken about the Siege, should put all above fourteen Years of Age to the Sword ; which they threaten'd to do, and could hardly be restrain'd from entering the Breach, for they took it very ill *Trebonius* should prevent their gaining the Town.

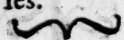
A Truce
granted 'till
Cæsar's Ar-
rival.

C H A P. VI.

BUT the Enemy being deceitful, only watch'd a fit Opportunity to break the Truce : With a few Days after, when our Soldiers were grown remiss, when several were dispers'd, others laid down to rest themselves, and all the Arms laid up ; about Noon they sally'd out of the Town, and set Fire to our Works. The Wind, which was very high, and blew in our Faces, so dispers'd the Flames, that in an Instant the Mount, *Testudo*, Mantlets, Tower, Engines, all were fir'd and consum'd, before they knew what was the Matter. Our Soldiers, alarm'd by this sudden Turn, immediately seiz'd such Arms as they could find, and charg'd the Enemy ; but were prevented from pursuing 'em, by Darts and Engines from the Town : The Besieg'd retir'd under their Walls, and there, without Danger, put Fire to the *Musculus* and Brick-Turret. Thus in a Moment perish'd the Effects of several Months Labour, by

The Besieg'd
break the
Truce, set
Fire to *Tre-*
bonius's
Works.

*The Siege
of Marseil-
les.*



*Trebonius
repairs his
Works.*

*The Works
finished.*

*The besieged
comply a se-
cond time.*

by the Perfidiousness of the Enemy, and the Violence of the Wind. The Day after, the Wind continuing still in the same Corner, the *Marseillians* attempted the like Design again, and sallying out with greater Assurance than before, brought plenty of Fire to consume the other Mount and Tower. But our Men, admonish'd by the last Days Action to be more careful for the future, had prepar'd all things necessary for their Defence; wherefore having kill'd great Numbers, they oblig'd the rest to retreat into the Town without effecting their Design.

Trebonius now began to rebuild what had been consum'd by the Fire, and the Soldiers gave greater Proofs of their Industry than before: For inrag'd to see their former Labours brought to nothing, their Courage derided, and the Truce broken by the perjur'd Enemy, because there were no Materials left for building a new Mount (for all the Timber round about, for a considerable way, had been already cut down, and apply'd to the former Work;) they began to raise a new-fashion'd one, with Brick-Walls six Foot deep; which had never before been practis'd; and these they joined together with Floors almost at the same Distance as the other, which had been made of Timber: But wherever the Space between the Walls, or the Weakness of the Work seem'd to require it, Piles were driven in, and cross Beams laid over them, to make the Place secure. The Joyces of every Floor were first cover'd with Hurdles, and afterwards with Brick.

Thus our Men being defended on the Right and Left by the Walls, and before by the Mantlers, safely brought the Materials which were necessary for carrying on the Work. The Business was quickly dispatch'd, the indefatigable Care and Virtue of the Soldiers soon rebuilt what the Enemy had destroy'd, and formerly cost them so much longer time to bring to Perfection: Doors were left in convenient Places, to sally out upon Occasion.

The Besieged perceiving those Works compleated in a few Days, which they flatter'd themselves could not be rebuilt in a much longer time; finding there was now no room for Deceit or Sallies, that 'twas no longer in their Power to oppose our Soldiers, or put Fire to our Works; considering that by the same Methods, all that Part of *Marseilles* which was accessible by Land, might likewise be block'd up with a Wall and Tur-

rets;

War in
Spain.

rets ; from whence Darts might be cast into the Town by the Soldiers Hands, whilst the Nearness of the Place would render their Engines useles, which they so much rely'd on ; that our Men would enjoy the same Advantage of Fighting from the Turrets, as they from their Walls ; and that they were no Match for us upon equal Terms ; again had recourse to the Conditions they had broken.

C H A P. VII.

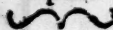
AT the Beginning of the Civil War, *M. Varro*, who possess'd the farther Province of *Spain*, understanding how Affairs went in *Italy*, and doubting the Success of *Pompey's* Cause, us'd to speak very favourably of *Cæsar*: That *Pompey* having retain'd him for his Lieutenant, he was oblig'd to be faithful to him ; but his private Inclinations made him wish well to the other : For as he was not ignorant of a Lieutenant's Duty, who was entrusted by his superior Officer, and of his own Power ; so neither was he a Stranger to the Affection which the whole Province bore *Cæsar*. This was the Subject of his Discourse in publick, without declaring for either Side. But afterwards, when he understood *Cæsar* was detain'd at *Marseilles* ; that *Petreius* and *Afranius* were join'd ; that they had considerable Reinforcements come in to 'em ; that the hither Province had unanimously resolv'd to support 'em ; with an Account of what afterwards happen'd, when *Cæsar* was reduced to such Straights at *Lerida*, which was set off to the best Advantage in *Afranius's* Letters, he likewise began to tack about with Fortune.

Varro's
Trimming.

Forces he rais'd thro'ought his whole Province ; to the two compleat Legions which he had with him, he added thirty Auxiliary Cohorts, and prepar'd a great Quantity of Corn, as well for the Relief of the *Marseillians*, as of *Petreius* and *Afranius*. He commanded the People of *Cales* to equip ten Gallies, and gave Orders for building several more at *Seville*: He remov'd all the Money and Ornaments out of the Temple of *Hercules* into the Town of *Cales*, detach'd six Cohorts thither for a Garrison, and made *Caius Gallonius*, a Roman Knight, who had been sent thither by *Domitius* to recover an Estate that belong'd to him, Governor of the Town ; giving Orders that all the Arms of the City, as well publick as private, should be lodged in *Gallonius's*

His Preparations on the
News of
Cæsar's ill
Success.Gaditani.
Hispalia.

War in
Spain.



* The Number of these Sesterces is almost incredible, considering how

much they would amount to; therefore I dare say this must be a Corruption of the Text; but what the certain Number should be, I shall not pretend to determine. Every Sestertium, in the Neuter Gender, according to Budæus, was of the Value of five Pounds Sterling; or as others will have it, seven Pounds ten Shillings.

us's House. He himself, in the mean while, began to speak harshly of *Cæsar*, often declaring in Council, that he had certain Accounts of several Defeats he had receiv'd, and that Multitudes of Deserters flock'd from his Army to *Afranius*. By which means he so terrify'd the Roman Citizens of his Province, that they were compell'd to promise him * one hundred and ninety thousand Sesterces, twenty thousand Weight of Silver, and one hundred and twenty thousand Bushels of Wheat.

On those Countries which he thought well affected to *Cæsar*, he laid heavier Taxes; such as spoke Words against the Government, had their Goods confiscated, and Soldiers quarter'd upon 'em: He gave Judgment himself upon several private Persons, and oblig'd the whole Province to swear Allegiance to him and *Pompey*. Having notice at last, how Affairs went in the further *Spain*, he prepar'd for War; which he resolv'd to manage thus: To retire with his two Legions to *Cales*, where all the Shipping and Provisions lay; for he knew the whole Province was inclinable to *Cæsar's* Interest; but he hop'd he might easily prolong the War in that Island, being so well stor'd with Corn and Shipping.

C H A P. VIII.

Cæsar resolves to march against *Varro*; who is retir'd to *Cales*.

Summons the States to meet him at *Cordova*, *Corduba*.

They assemble, and shut the Gates against *Varro*.

CÆSAR, tho' he found himself call'd upon by many Reasons to return to *Italy*, yet resolving to leave no Embers of a War in *Spain* behind him, because he knew the hither Province had many Obligations to *Pompey*, who yet had several Well-wishers there; sent two Legions before, under the Command of *Q. Cassius*, Tribune of the People, and follow'd after himself with six hundred Cavalry, by long Marches: Having publish'd a Proclamation, whereby he appointed all the Magistrates and Nobility of the Country to meet him by a Day prefix'd, at *Cordova*. This Proclamation being dispers'd thro'out the whole Province, every State sent part of their Senators thither to represent 'em, and all the Roman Citizens of Note appear'd there, by the Day appointed. The States being thus assembled, of their own accord

shut

shut the Gates of *Cordova* against *Varro*, dispos'd Sentinels on the Walls and in the Turrets, and retain'd Two Cohorts, call'd *Colonica*, which were accidentally marching that way, to protect the Town. About the same time the People of *Carmona*, which is the strongest Town in the whole Province, drove the Three Cohorts *Varro* left there, out of their Citadel, and shut the Gates of the Town against 'em.

War in Spain.

Carmona revolts to Cæsar, expels Varro's Garrison.

All these Circumstances oblig'd *Varro* to make more haste to *Cales* with his Legions, lest his March should be intercepted: In fine, so general and so great was the Affection, which the whole Province shew'd to *Cæsar*, that he had not march'd far, before he receiv'd Letters from *Cales*, to acquaint him, That immediately on Receipt of his Proclamation, as well the Inhabitants as Garrison, had agreed to expel *Gallonius*, and secure the Town and Island for him: That they had civilly acquainted their Governor with this Resolution, advising him to quit the Island, whilst he might with Safety; which if he refus'd to do, they should be oblig'd to take other Methods: Whereupon, *Gallonius*, being frighten'd, had fled from *Cales*. On Receipt of this News, one of *Varro's* Legions, call'd *Vernacula*, taking up their Ensigns, quitted the Camp whilst *Varro* stood by, and march'd directly to *Seville*, where they sat themselves down in the Market-place and publick Streets, without doing hurt to any one; which the Roman Citizens residing there, were so well satisfy'd with, that every one was desirous to quarter 'em in their Houses. *Varro* being mightily concern'd to see Affairs go so ill on his side, began to think of retreating to *Italy*, but upon Enquiry found all the Passes thither prepossess'd: Finding himself therefore thus lock'd up on every side; he sent a Messenger to *Cæsar* to acquaint him, he was ready to deliver the Legion under his Command, to whom he should please to appoint to receive it: Upon which he sent *Sextus Cæsar* to him for that Purpose. *Varro* having deliver'd up the Legion, went himself to *Cordova* to wait upon *Cæsar*; where he render'd him an Account of his Administration, and of the Publick Treasure, which he deliver'd into his Hands: He likewise inform'd him what store of Corn and Shipping he had provided, and where they were.

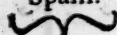
Cales does the like.

The Legio Vernacula deserts from Varro, marches to Seville.

Varro finding himself block'd up on all sides, surrenders.

Cæsar having made an Oration at *Cordova*, wherein he return'd Thanks to every one in general; to the Roman Citizens, for taking care to secure the Town in their one Thanks.

War in
Spain.



Cæsar goes
to Cales, and
from thence
to Tarrago-
na.

Cæsar ar-
rives at Mar-
seilles, is
made Dicta-
tor.

† The Dicta-
tors us'd al-
ways before

to be nam'd by the Consuls in the Night, but the Necessity of the Time dispens'd with the usual Form.

their own Hands; to those of *Carmona*, for expelling the Garrison; to the People of *Cales*; for disappointing his Enemies Designs, and vindicating their Freedom; to the Tribunes of the Soldiers, and Centurions, who came thither to guard the Place, and had confirm'd the Town in their Affections to him, by their Counsels and Examples; he remitted the Tax, which *Varro* had impos'd on the *Roman* Citizens; caus'd their Goods to be restor'd, who had spoken freely of *Varro's* Government: Having distributed some publick and private Rewards, and put the rest of the Province in hopes, after a Stay of Two Days at *Cordova*, he took his Journey to *Cales*. On his Arrival there, he caus'd the Money and Ornaments, which had been taken out of *Hercules's* Temple and laid up in private to be carry'd thither again. He committed the Province to the Care of *Cassius*, with an Army of Four Legions; and embarking on board the Gallies which *Varro* had caus'd to be equipp'd at *Cales*, arriv'd within a few Days at *Tarragona*; where Embassadors from most of the States in the Hither Province expected him. Here likewise he conferr'd several Marks of his Favour upon every State; he left *Tarragona*, and march'd from thence by Land to *Marseilles*, where he first receiv'd News of the Edict for constituting a † Dictator, and that *M. Lepidus*, the Prætor, had nam'd him for the Person.

CHAP. IX.

The Marseil-
lians resolve
to surrender.

Domitius
escapes out of
the Town.

THE People of *Marseilles*, being weary'd out with all kinds of Evils; reduc'd to great Straights for want of Corn; twice defeated at Sea; often repuls'd with Loss when they sally'd; afflicted with a dreadful Pestilence, occasion'd by their Confinement, and Change of Diet, (for they subsisted wholly on old Meal, and musty Barley, which had been long before laid up in their Magazines against the Siege;) their Tower being undermin'd; great Part of their Wall fallen down; and despairing of those Supplies from the two Provinces of *Spain*, which they understood were now in *Cæsar's* Power; resolv'd to surrender in good earnest. But a few Days before, *L. Domitius* having notice of their Design, got three Ships, accommodated his Friends with two of 'em, and

and embarking in the third himself whilst the Sea was rough, endeavour'd to make his Escape: Some of *Brutus's* Gallies, that perpetually cruis'd about the Mouth of the Haven, perceiving this, weigh'd Anchor and follow'd him; whereupon Two of *Domitius's* Ships being frighten'd, put again into the Haven, but that where he was on board made the best of her way, and by favour of the foul Weather got out of Sight.

War in Spain.

The *Marseillians*, as they were commanded, surrender'd their Arms and Engines, deliver'd up the Ships which were in their Harbour, together with the Publick Treasure: Whereupon *Cæsar* being willing to save the Town, rather for the Name, and Antiquity sake, than any Merit they could plead, left a Garrison of Two Legions there, sent the rest of his Army into *Italy*, and went himself to *Rome*.

Marseilles surrenders at Discretion.

CHAP. X.

War in Africk.

IN the mean while, *Curio* had sail'd from *Sicily* to *Africk*, and despising *P. Attius Varus's* Forces, only transported Two of the Four Legions which he receiv'd from *Cæsar*, with Five Hundred Horse. Having been two Days and Three Nights at Sea, he arriv'd at *Aquilania*, about twenty two Miles distance from the ** Clupej*, who have a very convenient Harbour for Ships in Summer time, shelter'd on each side by two eminent Promontories. Here *Lucius Cæsar*, the Son, expected his Arrival with Ten Gallies, which had formerly been taken from Pirates, and repair'd by *Varus* at *Utica*; but frighten'd at the Number of *Curio's* Fleet, he ran his Gally on Shore, and leaving her there, march'd by Land to *Adrumetum*; a Town possess'd by *C. Confidius Longus*, with a Garrison of one Legion. The rest of *Cæsar's* Fleet, seeing their Admiral run away, put into *Adrumetum*: *M. Rufus* the Treasurer, by *Curio's* Orders, pursu'd *L. Cæsar* with Twelve Ships, which came from *Sicily* as a Convoy to the Transports and Tenders; but finding the Gally upon the Sand, he tow'd her off, and return'd again to the Fleet.

Curio sails to Africk.
** So call'd from its Shape like a shield. Naturalists say, Scorpions will not live near this Place.*
Lucius Cæsar the Younger, on Notice of Curio's Approach, runs his Gally on shore, and flies to Adrumetum.
Adrumetum is now call'd Mahomera.

Curio sent *Rufus* before with the Navy to *Utica*; whether he design'd to march with his Army by Land: In Two Days Journey he arriv'd at the River † *Bagrada*, where he left *C. Catinus Rebilus* with the Legions, and

Curio sends Rufus to Utica with the Fleet, and marches thither by Land.

† Or Magrada: This River flows between Carthage and Utica: Here *Regulus* kill'd the Serpent, above 220 Foot long.

War in Africk.

Encamps at the Cornelian Camp.

went before with the Cavalry, to take a view of the *Cornelian* Camp; which was esteem'd a very convenient Place to take up their Quarters in: For 'tis the Ridge of a very steep Hill jetting out into the Sea, difficult of Access on all sides, but that towards *Utica*; whence there was a gentle Descent, and not above a Mile's distance from the Town, the direct way: But in the midst, between this Place and *Utica*, was a Fountain towards the Sea, which discharging it self into the Plain made a Marsh, that oblig'd the Traveller to take a Circuit of Six Miles, before he cou'd arrive at *Utica*.

From hence *Curio* beheld *Varus's* Camp, which join'd to *Utica*, at the Gate call'd *Bellica*, and was strongly fortify'd by the nature of the Place; for on one side 'twas defended by the Town, on the other by a Theatre, which stood without the Walls, and took up so large a Compass of Ground, it render'd the Avenues to the Camp very narrow and difficult. Hence likewise he observ'd great store of Carriages, making towards the Town, from the Country, upon this Alarm; whereupon he detach'd some of his Cavalry to plunder 'em.

A Skirmish between Curio's Cavalry and the Numidian Horse, Curio's Party gets the better.

About the same instant *Varus* had likewise sent a Party of 600 *Numidian* Horse, with 400 Infantry, which he had lately receiv'd from King *Juba*, to guard the Roads. This Prince was equally mov'd to assist *Varus*, by the Friendship which had been between his Father and *Pompey*, and the Hatred he bore *Curio*, for preferring a Law during his *Tribunat*, for sequestering his Kingdom. In fine, the Cavalry on both sides met, but the *Numidians* were not able to sustain our Charge; about 120 of 'em being kill'd, the rest escap'd to the Town.

** These Victuallers did not belong to him, as appears by his Speech afterwards.*

In the mean while our Gallies being arriv'd, *Curio* caus'd it to be proclaim'd, That such * Victuallers as rode at Anchor at *Utica* (being about Two Hundred in Number) which did not immediately hoist Sail for the *Cornelian* Camp, should be esteem'd as Enemies: On notice of this Order, they all immediately weigh'd Anchor, left *Utica*, and repair'd to the Place appointed, which furnish'd the Camp with Plenty of Provisions of all kinds: Whereupon he return'd to *Bagrada*, where by universal Consent of the whole Army, he was saluted by the Name of † Emperor.

† Which is no more than Generalissimo.

C H A P. XI.

War in
Africk.

THE Day after, *Curio* march'd his whole Army towards *Utica*, and encamp'd near the Town ; but before the Fortifications of his Camp were compleated, the Out-guard of Cavalry brought Advice, that considerable Reinforcements sent by *Juba*, both Horse and Foot, were marching towards *Utica*. *Curio* being a little surpris'd at the News, sent his Cavalry before to receive the Enemy's Charge, and find 'em Employment, 'till he could dispose his Legions in Order of Battel. The Horse engag'd the Enemy, and, before the Legions could be drawn up, routed the King's Forces; for they march'd very carelessly, and without any manner of Order : Several of the Foot were slain, but the Enemy's Horse being nimble, most of 'em made their Escape along the Shore into the Town.

A considerable
Party of
Juba's routed
by *Curio's*
Cavalry.

The next Night, two Centurions of the Country of *Marfia* deserted from *Curio*, and went over to the Enemy, with two and twenty Maniples: These, either out of a Design to please *Varus*, or because it was really their Opinion, (for we easily believe what we wish, and hope other Men are of the same Opinion with our selves,) positively affirm'd, that the Legions were disaffected to *Curio*; wherefore it might be of great Advantage, if both Armies were drawn out, and could come to a Conference with each other. *Varus* believing their Intelligence, early the Day after drew out his Legions; *Curio* did the like, and both Armies were dispos'd in Order of Battel on a small Valley, not far from one another.

Two Centu-
rions desert
to *Varus*.

Sextus Quintilius Varus, who, as we have already observ'd, had been taken at *Corfinium*, was now in the Enemy's Army; for being dismiss'd by *Cesar*, he had fall'd into *Africk*. It happen'd, *Curio* had transported those Legions that *Cesar* took at *Corfinium*, which were still commanded almost by the same Officers. *Quintilius* therefore thinking this a happy Opportunity, went up and down *Curio's* Army, and besought the Soldiers to remember the first Oath they had taken to *Domitius* and him, their Pay-master, not to bear Arms, against them, who had shar'd the same Fortune, and suffer'd in the same Siege together, nor assist those, who had formerly reproach'd 'em with the Name of Deserters. To this Speech he added some Promises of Rewards, which they might expect

Both Armies
drawn out.*Quintilius's*
Speech to
Curio's Sol-
diers.

War in
Africa.

A Mutiny
in Curio's
Camp.

* All the rest
of this Para-
graph is so
corrupted
and confus'd
in the Orig-
inal, it can-
not be ren-
der'd into
English; but
I have aim'd
at Cæsar's
Meaning as
near as I
could.

pect from his Generosity, if they came over to him and Varus. This was Quintilius's Harangue, but none of Curio's Soldiers made him an Answer; so both Armies retreated again into their Camps.

However, Curio's Camp was possess'd with strange Apprehensions, which were quickly increas'd by variety of Discourses; for every Man was of a several Opinion, and Fear always added to Report. In fine, what was first invented by one, came to be talk'd of by so many, that there appear'd to be several Authors of the same Notions: * That it was lawful for every Man, in a Civil War, to do what he thought convenient, and chuse long'd to Pompey; and since Cæsar offer'd Governments, even to those that were his Enemies, his Favour should not out-balance their ancient Friendship and Acquaintance. But they came not all from Marsia and Pelignia, as those who had deserted the Night before: Therefore some reprimanded their Fellow-Soldiers for talking so freely; and others, who would appear more diligent in their Duty than the rest, enlarg'd in their Accounts of the Matter to the Officers.

CHAP. XII.

Curio calls
a Council of
War, vari-
ous Opinions.

UPON this, Curio immediately summon'd a Council of War, to consult what Methods were proper to be taken. Some were of Opinion, 'twas necessary forthwith to attack Varus in his Trenches, because nothing could so effectually banish these Notions out of the Soldiers Heads, as Employment. Some, That 'twas much better to put their Fortune upon the Hazard of a Battel, rather than prolong the Time till they should be deserted, and expos'd to the fatal Consequences that must necessarily follow. Others voted for retreating to the Cornelian Camp about One the next Morning, that the Soldiers having Time to consider, might return to their Duty; and if any Inconvenience should happen, being near the Fleet, they might easily retire to Sicily.

Curio's
Speech to the
Council.

But Curio approv'd of none of these, for he thought one Opinion as void of Courage, as the other of Conduct; since one advis'd a shameful Retreat, and the other attacking an Enemy at so great a Disadvantage. With what Assurance, said he, can we expect to take the Enemy's Camp, which is so well fortify'd by Art and Nature? And what will be the Consequence of returning with
Loss

Loss from the Attempt? As if the Affection of any Army to their General, did not depend on his good, or bad Success. But then, as to decamping, what Construction can be made of it, but Cowardice and Despair? And what the Effect, but the Contempt of the Soldiers? The Wise should be void of Suspicion, should never be too credulous, but above all things conceal their Fear, lest it should encrease the Arrogance of the Soldiers, and detract from that Respect which is their due. But taking it for granted the Army are so ripe for Mutiny, as we are inform'd, (which Account, for my part, I believe either wholly false, or much less than Report has made it;) how much more were it for our Interest, to hide and dissemble, than confirm it? We ought to conceal the Defects of our Army, with the same Industry as the Wounds of our Body, lest we should put the Enemy in Hopes. But what could they design, that advis'd decamping about Midnight; except giving those who had a mind to mutiny, the better Opportunity to do it? For Disorders of this nature, are often suppress'd either by Shame or Fear; which Darknes is an Enemy to. For these Reasons, I neither am so desperate to attack the Enemy in their Trenches, without any manner of Prospect, nor so oppress'd with Fear, to be wanting to my self: Wherefore I shall experience all Methods, before I agree with the Opinions propos'd; and I doubt not, but the Majority of you will agree to my Resolution.

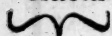
War in
Africk.

C H A P. XIII.

U P O N this, dismissing the Council, he caus'd the Soldiers to be assembled, and made an Harangue to 'em, wherein he reminded 'em, *What a signal piece of Service they had done Cæsar at Corfinium: That their Friendship and Authority had induc'd a considerable Part of Italy to declare in his Behalf: For, said he, all the Municipal Towns immediately follow'd your Example; wherefore you were justly esteem'd as much by Cæsar, as you were hated by his Adversaries. For Pompey, without losing a Battel, was oblig'd by your Revolt to quit Italy; whereupon Cæsar committed me, who have the Honour to be particularly belov'd by him, with the Province of Sicily and Africk, to your Protection; without which he could neither preserve Rome, nor the rest of Italy. 'Tis true, you have been advis'd to leave us; and certainly nothing could be more grateful to our Enemies than to ruin us, and at the same instant bind you to their Interest, by making you*

Curio's
Speech to the
Soldiers.

War in
Africk.

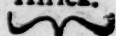


commit so vile an Action. Let me tell you, 'tis an Argument they entertain but a very base Opinion of you, to think you could be induced to betray those, who own you the Makers of their Fortune; and put your selves again into their Power, who declare you have ruin'd 'em. Have you not been inform'd of Cæsar's Success in Spain? That he has conquered two Armies, two Generals, and reduced two Provinces, within forty Days after he first beheld the Enemy? If they, who had never been worsted before, were not able to resist him, how shall the defeated do it? And will you, who generously ran the Hazard of Cæsar's Fate, desert him, after Fortune has decided the Cause in his Favour, and the Time is arriv'd for rewarding your Services; to embrace the conquered Party, who remind you of your former Oath, and you with the Names of Traytors and Deferters? But did you desert Domitius, or Domitius his Soldiers? Were you not ready to have endured the last Extremities, whilst he privately endeavoured to escape? Were you not betrayed by him, and saved by Cæsar's Mercy? And how can the Oath any longer oblige you, when he to whom you swore, having thrown aside all Marks of Consular Dignity, became a private Person, and a Captive to another? But may be you approve of Cæsar's Cause, yet dislike your Generals; for my part, I shall not recount the Obligations you have to me, because they are much inferior to my own Desire and your Deserts: Though Soldiers always used to attend for their Rewards till the War was determined; the Success of which, in my Opinion, you have now no Reason to doubt of. Shall I take notice, to how fair a Prospect my Diligence has already brought the Business? Are you sorry that I have safely transported the Army hither, without the Loss of a single Vessel? That on my first Arrival I put the Enemy's Fleet to flight? That I was twice successful over their Cavalry in two Days time? That I brought two hundred Victuallers and Tenders out of the Enemy's Port, and reduced them to such Necessities, that they could neither be supplied by Sea or Land? Will you therefore desert all this good Fortune, will you quit the General that has done these things; and return to those who delivered up Corfinium with so much Ignominy, who fled from Italy, surrendered Spain, and share with them the ill Success of the African War? For my part, I desired no greater Name than that of Cæsar's Soldier; you thought fit to give me that of Emperor: But if you repent of what you have done, I shall freely surrender the Title:

Give
Give

Give me back my Name again, that you may not appear to have advanced me, to make my Fall the greater.

War in
Africk.



CHAP. XIV.

THIS Speech had so extraordinary an Effect upon the Soldiers, that they often interrupted him, to express their Grief for being suspected : And, when he had finish'd his Oration, unanimously desir'd him to depend upon their Fidelity, and engage the Enemy. Thus all Peoples Minds being chang'd, and the Army's Affection confirm'd, *Curio*, by general Consent, resolv'd to lay hold of the first Opportunity for giving *Varus* Battel : Wherefore, the Day after he drew out all his Forces in the same Place as formerly : And *Varus* did the like, either designing to obtain another Conference with our Soldiers, or to embrace an Occasion for engaging us upon equal Terms.

The Effect
the Speech
had upon
the Soldiers.

Both Armies
drawn up.

The Valley between the two Armies, as we have already taken notice, was not very large, tho' of difficult Ascent ; therefore both expected whether would first endeavour to pass it, that they might encounter each other to the greater Advantage. At length *Varus's* Cavalry, of which consisted the Left Wing of his Army, mix'd with the light-arm'd Foot, descended from the Hill : *Curio* sent his Horse, and two Cohorts of the *Maraucini* to engage 'em ; whose first Charge their Cavalry were not able to sustain, but clapping Spurs to their Horses, retreated as fast as they could to the main Body ; leaving the Infantry that came along with 'em to the Mercy of our Soldiers, who surrounded and cut 'em to pieces, in View of their own Army. Upon which, *Rebilus*, one of *Cesar's* Lieutenants, (whom *Curio* had brought along with him out of *Sicily*, because of his great Experience in Military Affairs) cry'd out ; *Curio*, You see the Enemy is surpriz'd, why don't you immediately lay hold of this happy Occasion ? *Curio* took his Advice, and only staying to put the Soldiers in mind of their Promise made the Day before, advancing himself before the rest, commanded 'em to follow him. The Ascent was so steep, that the foremost could hardly get up without the Assistance of those that came after ; but the Enemy were so frighten'd with the Rout and Slaughter of their Men, that they did not endeavour to oppose us. In fine, they thought themselves already surrounded by our Cavalry ; before a Dart was thrown, or

The Battel
begins.

Varus's
Horse rout-
ed.

His whole
Army flies.

we

War in
Africk.

*Fabius's
Attempt on
Varus's Life.*

*His Design
misses, and
he is kill'd.
The Enemy
routed, they
croud one a-
nother to
Death in the
Pursuit.*

we approach'd 'em, the whole Army turn'd their Backs, and retir'd into their Camp.

During the Pursuit, *Fabius a Pelignian*, a Soldier of the meanest Rank among *Curio's* Forces, following the Enemy's Rere, called aloud upon *Varus*, as if he had been one of his own Party, and had something extraordinary to impart to him. *Varus*, hearing himself call'd so often, stood still, and looking back, demanded his Business: Upon which *Fabius* made a Stroak at his Shoulder which was uparm'd and had certainly kill'd him, had not the other receiv'd the Blow upon his Shield; but he was soon surrounded, and cut to pieces by the Soldiers that stood next him. The Gates of their Camp were immediately throng'd by those that fled, who hinder'd each other; and more were crouded to Death, than fell either in the Battel or Pursuit. We had like to have taken their Trenches, for some fled directly into the Town; but the Nature of the Place, and the Fortifications which *Varus* had thrown up, prevented our Design, who being drawn out only to fight a Battel, wanted Materials to fill up the Ditches: Wherefore *Curio* retreated to his Quarters again, without the Loss of a Man, except *Fabius*: But on the Enemy's side were six hundred kill'd, and a thousand wounded; who upon *Curio's* Departure went into the Town, with many others who retir'd thither out of Fear, upon the same Pretence. Which *Varus* perceiving, and taking notice of the Consternation his Army was in, left his Camp about Midnight silently, and march'd into the Town, leaving only a Trumpet in the Camp, with a few Tents for a shew.

CHAP. XV.

*Curio be-
sieges Utica.*

** As well
Natives as
Roman Citi-
zens, like
that at Se-
ville.*

The Town

designs to surrender; but on News of Juba's Approach, change their Resolution.

THE next Day *Curio* resolv'd to besiege *Utica*, and draw a Line of Circumvallation about it. The Town had many Inhabitants, whom a long Peace had made wholly ignorant of War; and having formerly receiv'd several Favours from *Cæsar*, stood well affected to his Interest: The Common-Council, which consisted of several sorts of People, were so frighten'd with the ill Success which they had hitherto met with, that they talk'd publickly of surrendring; and desir'd *Varus* not to ruin 'em by his Obstinacy. But whilst this Affair was in Agitation, arriv'd a Messenger from *Juba*, to encour-

rage

rage 'em to hold out, for he was coming to their Assistance with a considerable Army, which immediately alter'd their Minds. War in Africk.

Curio likewise had notice of this, but confided so much in his good Fortune, that at first he could hardly believe it: For the News of *Cæsar's* Success in *Spain* being now publickly known in *Africk*, he could not be persuaded *Juba* would attempt any thing against him. But at last being satisfy'd the King, with all his Forces, was already arriv'd within twenty five Miles of *Utica*; he quitted his Works, and retreated to the *Cornelian* Camp. Here he began to intrench himself, to provide Corn, and immediately dispatch'd away Messengers into *Sicily* for the other two Legions, and the rest of the Horse he had left behind him. The Camp was mighty conveniently plac'd, well fortify'd by Art and Nature, lay near the Sea, was plentifully stor'd with Water and Salt, whereof Store had been lately imported from the neighbouring Salt-Pits. In fine, he neither could want Wood, Trees, nor Corn, wherewith the adjacent Fields abounded: Wherefore, by general Approbation, here *Curio* resolv'd to expect the Arrival of the rest of his Forces, and prepare for the War. Curio will not believe it at first.

Having resolv'd upon this Scheme by publick Consent, for the Management of Affairs; he was inform'd, by some Deserters from the Town, that *Juba* was oblig'd to return home to defend the Borders of his Kingdom, and compose the Disputes amongst the *Leptinians*; but had sent his General *Sabura* with a small Number of Forces, who were marching towards *Utica*. *Curio*, giving too easy Credit to this Intelligence, alter'd his former Design, and now resolv'd to try his good Fortune in a Battel: His youthful Ardour, Greatness of Mind, former Success and Dependence upon his good Fortune precipitated him upon this Enterprize. Induc'd by these Motives, at the beginning of the Night he detach'd the Cavalry before to the Enemy's Camp, at the River *Bagrada*; where *Sabura*, whom we mention'd but now, commanded in Chief. But *Juba* himself follow'd after him, and had taken up his Quarters not above six Miles off. Our Horse perform'd their Journey before Day-light, surpris'd and set upon the Enemy unawares: For the *Numidians*, being a barbarous People, observ'd no manner of Order; which gave our Men an Opportunity of killing great Numbers, whilst they were dispers'd and asleep; others, being frighten'd, betook themselves Retreats to the Cornelian Camp.

Curio receives false Intelligence.

He resolves to fight Sabura.

Sends the Horse before, who have good Success,

War in themselves to Flight ; and thus the Cavalry return'd to Africk. *Curio* with several Prisoners.

They return with some Prisoners to Curio.

Curio's Over-eagerness.

He exhorts the Soldiers to make haste.

Curio, by break of Day, with all his Forces had quit- ted his Camp ; leaving only five Cohorts behind to guard his Baggage. He had not march'd above six Miles be- fore he met the Horse, who gave him an Account of the Action ; whereupon he examin'd the Captives to know who commanded their Camp at *Bagrada* ; to which they answer'd, *Sabura*. Being mighty eager to pursue his Journey, without staying to ask more Que- stions, he turn'd about to the nearest Troops, and said, *Observe, Gentlemen, this Account of the Prisoners agrees exactly with that we receiv'd from the Deserters. The King is absent, and their Forces must of necessity be in- considerable, who were not able to repulse so small a Num- ber of Cavalry. Wherefore let us hasten to obtain the Spoil and Glory, that I may the sooner reward, and render you Thanks for the Services you have done.*

C H A P. XVI.

TO give the Cavalry their due, they had obtain'd a considerable Boory, and done Wonders, considering how far inferior they were to the *Numidians* in Num- ber. But however they enlarged a little in their Ac- counts of the Action ; for Men naturally represent themselves to the best Advantage : The Horse made their Appearance, and the Prisoners they had taken were pro- duced to inflame the Army, and make 'em believe each Moment they lost, retarded them so long from Victo- ry : Thus the Ardor of the Soldiers became equal to the Hopes of their General. He commanded the Horse to follow after, and march'd before himself with the Infantry as fast as he could, that he might have an Op- portunity of falling upon the Enemy, whilst they were flying, before they could recover their Surprize : But the Horse being fatigu'd by their last Night's Expedit- ion, were not able to perform his Orders ; some stay'd behind in one Place, others in another, yet even this could not diminish *Curio's* Expectations.

In the mean while *Juba*, having notice from *Sabura* of the last Night's Engagement, had immediately sent two thousand *Spanish* and *French* Cavalry, his own Life-guard, together with a select Battalion of Foot to his Assistance : Suspecting *Curio* was not far behind his Horse

War in
Africk.



Horse, he himself follow'd gently after with the rest of his Army, and Sixty Elephants. *Sabura* having drawn up his Forces, he commanded 'em at first to retreat, as if they were afraid; for he would give 'em the Sign to engage when he should think convenient, and distribute the necessary Orders. *Curio*, being confirm'd by this Decoy in his former Hopes, and believing the Enemy fled, drew his Army down into the Plain from the higher Ground. At length, having march'd a considerable way, and weaken'd his Soldiers with a Journey of Sixteen Miles, he made a Halt. Upon which *Sabura* put his Army in order, rid up and down to every Company, and having encourag'd 'em to fight, gave the Sign of Battel: But he only sent the Cavalry to charge our Men, keeping his Foot at a distance for a Shew. *Curio* wanted not Presence of Mind, he advis'd his Men to repose all the hopes of Safety in their Courage. Nor did the Foot, tho' wearied with their March, or the Cavalry, tho' few in Number, and fatigu'd with the Duty they had already done, betray want of Courage, or Inclination to engage. Of the latter were only Two Hundred left, for the rest had halted by the way; yet where-ever they charg'd, they oblig'd the Enemy to give way; but their Horses were so tir'd they could not pursue 'em far.

*Curio and
Sabura en-
gage.*

In the mean while *Sabura's* Horse began to surround our Army on both sides, and gall us in the Rere: Whenever our Cohorts issu'd out to charge 'em, the *Numidians*, being fresh, avoided the Attack by their Nimbleness; but when our Men endeavour'd to return again to the main Body, they were environ'd and intercepted: So we could neither maintain our Ranks, nor charge their Forces with Safety.

*Curio sur-
rounded by
Sabura.*

C H A P. XVII.

THEY receiv'd fresh Supplies perpetually from *Zuba*, whilst our Men began to faint with the Labour they had taken; and our whole Army being beset by their Horse, even they that were wounded could neither quit the Field, nor retire to a Place for Security. Wherefore despairing of Safety, as Men usually do when they are dying, they bemoan'd their own Fates, and wish'd their Friends better Fortune, if it were possible for any of 'em to escape the Slaughter. In fine, the whole Army was over-run with Grief and Fear.

Curio

War in
Africk.

Curio
routed.

He dies
bravely.

Part of the
Cavalry e-
scape to the
Camp.

They desire
to be trans-
ported to Si-
cily.

Their idle
Fears.

The Tran-
sports go off,
and leave
greatest part
of 'em be-
hind.

Curio perceiving the Soldiers were in so great a Consternation, that they neither gave ear to his Commands or Intreaties, as the last Refuge, gave Orders they should gain the neighbouring Hills: But they were already possess'd by Sabura's Cavalry, which reduc'd our Men to the last Degree of Despair; part endeavouring to escape, were kill'd by the Enemy's Horse, and others, to preserve themselves from the like Fate, fell prostrate on the Earth. Whilst Affairs were in this desperate Condition, Cn. Domitius, Commander of the Horse, having only a few of his Followers left, advis'd Curio to save himself by retreating to the Camp, and promis'd not to forsake him. But Curio, having lost the Army which Caesar committed to his Charge, resolv'd never to behold his Face again; wherefore fighting bravely, he expir'd. Some few of the Cavalry escap'd the Slaughter; and they who stay'd behind to refresh themselves, perceiving at a distance the Army was routed, retreated in Safety to the Camp, but the Foot, every Man of 'em were cut to pieces.

M. Rufus, the Treasurer, whom Curio had left behind in the Camp, desir'd the Soldiers not to be dejected: They begg'd to be transported to Sicily, and he promis'd they should. Whereupon he order'd the Captains of the Ships to bring their Boats to the Shore so soon as Evening approach'd. But so great Confusion were they in, that some affirm'd Juba was almost at the Camp with his Army, some, that Varus with his Legions was coming that way, and that they perceiv'd the Dust occasion'd by his March; but these Reports were both of 'em false: Others again were apprehensive that the Enemy's Fleet would immediately be with 'em. Thus all being frighten'd, every Man consulted his own Preservation; those who had embark'd were for hoisting Sail immediately; and their weighing Anchor made the Transports in haste to follow after. A few small Tenders obey'd Rufus's Orders, and stay'd: But the Strand was so crouded, and every one so eager to get on Board before the rest, that some of these Vessels were sunk, and others were afraid to come nearer the Shore. Thus it happen'd that a few Soldiers and aged Men, who were receiv'd on board, either thro' Interest or Compassion, together with such as were able to swim to the Transports, got safe into Italy. But the rest having

having sent their Centurions that Night as Deputies to
Varus, surrender'd.

War in
 Africk.

The Day after, *Juba*, seeing these Cohorts before
Utica, claim'd 'em as part of his Booty, commanded
 several to be kill'd, and sent others, whom he had se-
 lected out of the Number, into his own Country.
Varus in vain interceded for 'em, affirming his Honour
 was engag'd, for he durst not oppose what the other
 had a Mind to. *Juba* made his Entry into the Town
 on Horseback, attended by several Roman Senators, a-
 mongst which Number were *Servius Sulpicius*, and *Li-*
cinus Damasippus: He stay'd in *Utica* but a few Days;
 for having given out such Orders for the Government
 of the Place as he thought convenient, he return'd again
 to his own Kingdom with all his Forces.

They surren-
 der to Va-
 rus; but are
 kill'd by Ju-
 ba, after
 Quarter
 granted.

Juba makes
 his Entry in-
 to *Utica*.

Returns to
 his own
 Kingdom.

C. J. Ca-

C. J. Caesar's
COMMENTARY
 OF THE
CIVIL WAR.
 The Third Book.

Caesar and Pompey their Preparations. Caesar goes into Greece. The Siege of Salona. Pompey retires to Durazzo. Bibulus dies. Propositions of Peace rejected. Tumults at Rome compos'd. Antony and Kalenus join Caesar. Scipio's Tyranny in Asia. His Arrival in Macedonia. Pompey besieged by Caesar at Durazzo. Skirmishes with various Success. Caesar quits the Siege. Draws Pompey into Thessaly. Engages and Defeats him. Lælius besieges Brundisium. Cassius burns Caesar's Ships in Sicily. Pompey kill'd in Egypt by Achilles and Septimius. Caesar goes to Alexandria; where he is engag'd in another War.

C H A P. I.

Caesar and
 Servilius
 Consuls.

* An U. C.

705.

† viz. According to
 Sylla's Law,
 whereby it
 was enacted,

No Person shall enjoy the Consulate a Second Time, 'till Ten Years after his first Election.

THE Dictator *Caesar* presiding at the Assembly for Election of Magistrates, he himself and *P. Servilius* were chosen Consuls; for this * Year it was † lawful for him to be elected to that Office. This Affair being over, *Caesar* perceiving Commerce was at a stop in *Italy*, because no body paid their Debts, decreed that Arbitrators should be appointed for settling

such

such an Estimate on the Estate and Goods of Debtors, as *Cæsar* settles Affairs they were really worth before the War began; and delivering 'em at that Value to the Creditors. For this he at Rome. thought the properest Method for preserving the Reputation of the Debtor, and taking away all Apprehension of a Law for pardoning Debts, as usually happens in Civil Wars. He restor'd the ancient Custom of appealing to the People, by the Prætors and Tribunes. He likewise revers'd some Judgments given upon Persons for Bribery in Elections, by Virtue of the *Pompeian* Law, whilst *Pompey* kept his Legions in the City; because the Merits had often been heard by one Judge, and Sentence pronounc'd the same Day by another, that knew nothing of the Cause. And thinking himself as much oblig'd to those who had proffer'd their Service to him at the beginning of the War, as if he had accepted of their Friendship, he resolv'd to free 'em from the Sentence they lay under upon his Account: But thought it more convenient to have his Affair effected by the Votes of the People, that he might neither seem ungrateful, nor appear to assume too great Authority.

Makes a Law for payment of Debts, restores Appeals to the People. Reverses Judgments given in Pompey's time.

Gets those clear'd by the People who were condemn'd for proffering their service to him.

C H A P. II.

THESE Affairs, together with the * *Latin* Festivals, and the rest of the Elections, took him up eleven Days; after which, having laid down his Dictatorship, and left the City, he went to *Brindisi*; where he had appointed twelve Legions, with all the Cavalry, to meet him. But he found so few Transports in the Haven, they were hardly sufficient for carrying over twenty thousand legionary Soldiers, and six hundred Horse: This was the only thing *Cæsar* had need of, to enable him to put a speedy End to the War. Besides, those Troops which went on board wanted Recruiting, for the Wars of *Gaul*, and long Marches from *Spain*, had kill'd a great many; and an unhealthful Autumn about *Brindisi* and *Apulia*, with the Change of so wholesome an Air as that of *Gaul* or *Spain*, had made the whole Army out of Order.

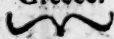
He lays down his Dictatorship goes to Brindisi. Festivals celebrated Memory of the Alliance between the Romans and the Latins.

Pompey had now had a Twelve-months time, free from all Interruption, to raise an Army in; which he employ'd to the best Advantage: For he got a considerable Fleet together, from *Asia*, the *Cyclades*, *Corfu*, *Athens*, *Pontus*, *Corcyra*, *Bythinia*, *Syria*, *Cilicia*, *Phœnicia*, *Egypt*; and had given Orders for building several Ships in other Places.

Pompey's Preparations, his Forces.

He

War in
Greece.



He had rais'd a great deal of Money in *Asia* and *Syria*, besides what he receiv'd from all the Kings, Dynasts, Tetrarchs, and Hans-Towns of *Achaia*; he likewise extorted vast Sums from the Corporations or Societies of the Provinces under his Command.

His Land
Forces.

* Crete.

He had levy'd nine Legions of *Roman* Citizens; five he brought along with him from *Italy*; one Veteran Legion came from *Sicily* call'd the *Gemella*, because it consisted of two others; another from † *Candia* and *Macedonia*, of old Soldiers, which had formerly been disbanded there by other Generals; and two more from *Asia*, which had been rais'd by *Lentulus's* Care. Besides these, he had considerable Numbers from *Thessaly*, *Ætolia*, *Achaia*, and *Epirus*; which he distributed amongst his Legions by the way of Recruits, together with * *Antony's* Soldiers.

* Taken
from him at
Cortu, 1bo
omitted in
the Commen-
tary.

Over and above all these, he expected two Legions under *Scipio's* Command from *Syria*, with Archers from thence, *Candia*, *Lacedemon*, *Pontus*, and other Countries, to the Number of three thousand; with six thousand Slingers, two thousand hired Soldiers, and seven thousand Horse. Six hundred of the latter came along with *Deiotarus* from *Gaul*; five hundred with *Ariobarzanes* from *Cappadocia*; the like Number from *Thrace*, sent by *Cotus*, under the Command of his Son *Sadalis*; two hundred from *Macedonia*, led by the famous *Rasclipolis*; six hundred Gauls and Germans from *Alexandria*, whom *A. Gabinius* had formerly presented *Ptolemy* for a Guard; *Pompey's* Son brought eight hundred in his Fleet, whom he had levy'd amongst his Slaves and Shepherds; *Tarcundarius Castor* and *Dani-*

Rasclipus's
Brother, who
was of Cæ-
sar's side.

Gallogre-
cos.

laus furnish'd three hundred *Galatians*; the first of these came himself in Person, the latter sent his Son; two hundred, most of 'em Archers, were sent from *Syria*, by *Comagenus* of *Antiach*, who had been infinitely oblig'd to *Pompey*. To these were added the *Dardani*, with others from *Macedon*, *Thessaly*, and other Countries, to compleat the Number of his Cavalry; Part Volunteers, and Part Mercenary Troops.

His Fleet.

He had provided vast Quantities of Corn from *Thessaly*, *Asia*, *Candia*, *Cyrene*, and other Countries: He resolv'd to quarter his Army that Winter at *Durazzo*, *Apollonia*, and the other Maritime Towns, to prevent *Cæsar's* passing the Sea; for which purpose he took care his Fleet should cruise perpetually about the Coasts. *Pompey*, the Son, was Admiral of the *Egyptian* Squadron;
D. Lelius

D. Lelius and *C. Triarius* of the *Asian*; *C. Cassius* of the *Syrian*; *C. Marcellus* and *C. Coponius* of the *Rhodian*; *Scribonius Libo* and *M. Octavius* of the *Liburnian* and *Achaian* Fleets: But † *M. Bibulus* was High-Admiral, whose Orders the rest were to observe upon all Occasions.

War in Greece.

Bibulus

High Admiral.

† Once Fellow-Consul with *Cæsar*.

C H A P. III.

CÆSAR, upon his Arrival at *Brundisium*, call'd the Soldiers together; and desir'd, since their Labours and Dangers were now almost at an end, they would be content to leave their Baggage behind 'em in *Italy*, that the greater Number might embark, and expect all things from Conquest and his Liberality: They unanimously exclaim'd, let him command whatever he pleas'd, they were ready to obey his Orders. Wherefore (* as we have already remark'd) having put seven Legions on board, the fourth of *January* he weigh'd Anchor, and arriv'd the Day after at the Promontory of *Ceraunium*; where he obtain'd a quiet Harbour amongst the Rocks and unfrequented Places: Apprehending all the Ports were prepossess'd by the Enemy, he fell down to a Place call'd *Pharsalus*, where he landed every Man of his Army in Safety. *Lucretius Vespillo* and *Minutius Rufus*, Vice-Admirals to *D. Lelius*, were both at *Oricum*, with eighteen of the *Asian* Ships; and *M. Bibulus* with an hundred and ten at *Corfu*. But the first of these had not the Courage to attack *Cæsar*, tho' he had only twelve Gallies for a Convoy. One whereof he was on board himself: And *Bibulus's* Fleet being out of Order, and his Sailors dispers'd, he could not come time enough; for *Cæsar* was landed, before the News of his Approach was heard of.

Cæsar desires the Legions to leave their Baggage behind.

He embarks for Greece.

* This has Reference to the twenty thousand Men spoken of before: For he said the Legions were not compleat. He lands at *Pharsalus*. This Word all Mankind agree to be corrupted, yet no body knows how to mend it.

Having set his Soldiers on Shoar, he sent the Fleet back the same Night to *Brindisi*, to fetch the other Legions and Cavalry. The Care of this Business was committed to Lieutenant *Fusius Kalenus*, who had Orders to make what Dispatch he could. But the Fleet weighing Anchor too late, lost the Benefit of the Wind, that offer'd fair all the Night; which prevented their Return. For *Bibulus*, who lay at *Corfu*, being assur'd by this time of *Cæsar's* Arrival, was in hopes to intercept some Part of our Fleet: He took about thirty, but finding they were empty, set 'em all on Fire, to satisfy his Spleen for having slipp'd so happy an Opportunity,

Kalenus sent back with the Fleet to fetch the rest.

Bibulus catches thirty as they return. His Malice.

War in
Greece.

His Dili-
gence.

* The Ori-
ginal runs,
Neque sub-

sidium expectans, si in Cæsar's compectum venire posset. But must of nec sibi be corrupt, therefore Ciaccinius and Ursinus have mended it thus; Ne quod subsidium expectabat Cæsar, in conspectum venire posset.

Octavius
besieges Sa-
lona.

The Valour
of the be-
sieged.

The Be-
sieged make
a vigorous
Sally, and
rout Octa-
vius.

and to deter other Masters by the Punishment, from transporting any more of Cæsar's Forces. After this, he dispos'd his Men of War all along the Coasts between *Salona* and *Oricum*, to guard the Shoar with more Diligence for the future: He himself continu'd on board in the coldest Weather, not declining any Fatigue, * so he might but intercept the Forces Cæsar expected.

After the *Liburnian* Gallies were gone, *M. Octavius*, with the rest of the Squadron under his Command, which came from *Illyria*, sail'd to *Salona*; having rais'd the *Dalmatians*, and other barbarous People, drew *Issa* to revolt from Cæsar. But finding he could not prevail with the Inhabitants of *Salona* to do the like, he resolv'd to invest the Town. *Salona* is situate on a Hill, and well fortify'd by Nature; but the *Roman* Citizens residing there, to make the Place better able to hold out, immediately surrounded it with several wooden Towers: They made a vigorous Defence, and after having receiv'd many Wounds, finding their Number not sufficient to maintain the Town; as their last Refuge, enfranchis'd all their Slaves that were able to bear Arms, and cut off their Womens Hair, to make Cords for the Engines. *Octavius*, finding 'em so obstinate, divided his Army into five Parts, and surrounded the Town; designing at the same Instant to oppress 'em by Blockade and Storm. The *Salonians* were resolv'd to endure the last Extremities, and wanted nothing but Corn; wherefore they sent to Cæsar for Supplies; all other Inconveniences they patiently endur'd. They had now been invested a considerable time, and the Enemy was grown remiss; when taking the Opportunity, about Noon they dispos'd their Wives and Children upon the Walls to supply their Places; and making a vigorous Sally with their enfranchis'd Slaves, forc'd the Enemy's next Quarters, then attempted the next, after that the Third, and so the rest with equal Success; so having kill'd great Numbers of his Men, they oblig'd *Octavius* to fly to his Ships. Thus ended the Siege, and Winter drawing on, *Octavius* despairing of Success, after having receiv'd a considerable Loss retreated to *Pompey* at *Durazzo*.

C H A P. IV.

War in
Greece.

WE have already taken notice, that *Vibullius Rufus*, one of *Pompey's* Officers, had twice been taken by *Cæsar*, and as often dismiss'd; once at *Corfinium*, and another time in † *Spain*. *Cæsar* therefore thought him a proper Person to carry some Proposals to *Pompey*, as well on the score of the Favours he had conferr'd upon him, as the Interest the other had in his General. His Message was to this Effect: 'Twas time for 'em both to lay aside their Obstinacy, quit their Arms, and tempt Fortune no longer: For they both had met with ill Usage from her. *Pompey* had been expell'd out of Italy, Sicily, Sardinia, and both the Provinces of Spain, in which Countries he had lost near a Hundred and Thirty Cohorts of Roman Citizens: And *Cæsar* had reason to bemoan the Fate of *Curio* and his Army in *Africk*, with the Surrender of his Forces at *Corfu*. Wherefore they should both do wisely, to consult their own Interest, and that of the Common-wealth; both had experienc'd the Power of Chance in War, and ought to be wise by their own Misfortunes: But this was the only Time for treating, whilst the Balance of Success was equal; for should Fortune incline the least to either side, he who seem'd superior would not be content with half, so long as there was a Prospect of obtaining all. That since the Conditions could not sooner be agreed on, they should be refer'd to the Senate and People of Rome. In the mean while, it would be equally grateful to the Common-wealth and themselves, that both should publickly swear to dismiss their Armies in Three Days time; for when both had disbanded their Forces, and the Auxiliaries they now depended on, they must of Necessity submit to the Judgment of the Senate and People. And to shew how ready he was to perform these Proposals, for his part, he would immediately discharge all his Forces in Garrison, and in the Field.

Vibullius having receiv'd these Commands from *Cæsar*, thought it more necessary to give *Pompey* speedy Notice of his Approach, that he might be provided to receive him, than to perform his Commission: Wherefore he posted Day and Night towards *Pompey*, frequently taking fresh Horses for the greater Expedition, to acquaint him that *Cæsar* was coming that way with all his Forces. *Pompey* had been in *Candavia*, from whence he was marching thro' *Macedonia*, towards his Winter-quarters in *Apollonia* and *Durazzo*: And being concern'd

† There is no mention made of his being taken in Spain, therefore something must be wanting. *Cæsar* sends Proposals to *Pompey* by *Vibullius Rufus*.

Vibullius's Haste to acquaint *Pompey* of *Cæsar's* Approach,

War in Greece. at the Receipt of this unexpected News, he hasten'd his Journey towards *Apollonia*, to prevent *Cæsar's* making himself Master of the Sea-Coasts.

Cæsar takes Oricum. But *Cæsar* having landed his Forces, march'd the same Day towards *Oricum*; when he came thither, *L. Torquatus*, whom *Pompey* had made Governor of the Town, with a * *Parthenian* Garrison, designing to shut the Gates, and defend the Place, commanded the Soldiers, to repair to their Arms, and man the Walls: But they refus'd to fight against the People of *Rome*, and the Citizens, of their own Accord, resolv'd to admit *Cæsar* into the Town. Wherefore *Torquatus*, despairing of Relief, open'd the Gates, surrender'd both himself and the Place at Discretion; and *Cæsar* took care no Injury should be done him.

And Apollonia. Having taken in *Oricum*, he immediately march'd to *Apollonia*: On Notice of his Arrival, *L. Staberius*, Governor of the Place, order'd the Castle to be fortify'd, Water to be carry'd into it, and demanded Hostages from the Townsmen: Who were so far from complying with his Demands, they declar'd, *They would not shut their Gates against the Consul, nor take Resolutions contrary to those of all Italy, and the People of Rome.* Upon this Reply, the Governor thought it high time to prepare for his Security by Flight: When he was gone, the Inhabitants sent Deputies to *Cæsar*, and receiv'd him into the Town. The *Bullidenses*, *Amaniani*, with the rest of the neighbouring Countries, and all *Epirus*, follow'd their Example, sending Embassadors to let *Cæsar* know, they were ready to receive his Commands.

Pompey marches to Durazzo. *Pompey*, in the mean while, having Notice of what pass'd at *Oricum* and *Apollonia*, and being in pain for *Durazzo*, march'd thither as fast as possible: 'Twas reported likewise that *Cæsar* was not far off. Which meeting with more Credit, because *Pompey* had order'd 'em to march Day and Night, put his whole Army into so great a Consternation, that several of his Troops left their Colours behind 'em in *Epirus*, and the bordering States; whilst others threw away their Arms, and all went forward with so much Precipitation, as if they fled rather than march'd. Nay, even when they were arriv'd near *Durazzo*, and their General gave Orders for

The Disorder of his Army. laying out the Camp, they had not recover'd their Disorder: Which *Labiæus* perceiving, first stood out, and oblig'd himself by Oath, never to desert *Pompey*, but to share whatever Fortune should befall him: The other

Lieu-

Lieutenants follow'd his Example, the Tribunes and Centurions did the like, and so did the rest of the Army.

Caesar finding *Pompey* had reach'd *Durazzo* before him, began to march more leisurely; and having encamp'd at the River *Apsus*, (that he might the easilier cover the Countreies he had been so much oblig'd to) there resolv'd to quarter that Winter, and expect the Arrival of his other Legions from *Italy*. *Pompey* did the like, and having pitch'd his Tents on the other side the River, there assembled all his Troops and Auxiliaries.

Kalenus, in the mean while, according to *Caesar's* Orders, having embark'd as many of the Legions and Cavalry at *Brindisi*, as his Transports would hold, had weigh'd Anchor; but sail'd not far, before he receiv'd Letters from *Caesar*, by which he was inform'd, that all the *Grecian* Coasts were guarded by the Enemy's Fleet: Whereupon he recall'd his Ships, and return'd again into the Haven. But one private Vessel, which carry'd no Soldiers, and was not subject to *Kalenus's* Command, pursuing her Voyage to *Oricum*, was taken there by *Bibulus*; who granted Quarters to none that were on board, putting even Servants and Children to Death. So narrow an Escape had the whole Army.

C H A P. V.

BIBULUS, as we have already observ'd, lay with his Fleet at *Oricum*, and as he depriv'd *Caesar* of all Intercourse by Sea; so *Caesar* having dispos'd Parties along the Shore, prevented him from landing: He could neither get Wood, fresh Water, nor cast Anchor near the Land upon any Occasion. This put their Fleet to many Inconveniencies, and reduc'd 'em to the last Extremity for want of Necessaries; for they were oblig'd to fend for all manner of Provisions, even Wood and Water, as far as *Corsu*. Nay once they were forc'd to relieve their Thirst by the Dew which fell upon the Hides that cover'd the Decks, a thing never practis'd but in Cases of the utmost Necessity: Yet they patiently endur'd all these Difficulties rather than leave the Coasts open, and Ports unguarded.

Whilst they labour'd under these Straights, *Libo* having join'd *Bibulus*, they call'd from on board to *M. Acilius* and *Statius Mureus*, two of *Caesar's* Lieutenants, that guarded the Walls of *Oricum* and the Sea-Coasts

War in
Greece.

* In the
Original, ^{his}
Bibulus, but
the Error is
manifest.

A sham
Treaty to
gain a Truce.

* Vossius
says, Cæsar
calls Pom-
pey's Party
the Council,
instead of
the Senate,
by way of
Derision.
Libo's De-
mands.

Cæsar's
Answer.

to acquaint 'em, they had extraordinary Affairs to com-
municate to *Cæsar*, if they might have an Opportunity
of speaking with him; adding somewhat farther for the
greater Confirmation, as if they design'd to treat about
a Peace. In the mean while, they earnestly desir'd
there might be a Truce, for their Business was of
very great Consequence. *Murcus* and *Acilius* knew this
Message would be extreamly grateful to *Cæsar*, and
believ'd * *Vibullius's* Negotiation had turn'd to some
Account.

Cæsar was then at *Buthrotum*, directly over-against
Corfu, whither he had march'd with One Legion, to take
in the farther Countries, and supply himself with Corn;
which began to grow scarce. Here, having receiv'd an
Account of *Libo's* and *Bibulus's* Demands, he left the
Legion, and return'd to *Oricum*. When he arriv'd
there, and the Time appointed for the Conference
was come, *Libo* only came to the Interview: He
made an Apology for *Bibulus's* Absence, as well on
the score of his Cholerick Temper, as of the pri-
vate Pique between him and *Cæsar*, ever since his
discharging the Offices of *Ædile* and *Prætor*; where-
fore he avoided the Conference, lest the hopeful
Progress of so important an Affair might be inter-
rupted by his Presence. Then declar'd how desirous
Pompey had always been of a Treaty and Cessation of
Arms: But he had not yet receiv'd a Commission from
him to act, nor could conclude any thing without his
Orders; because the * Council had conferr'd the sole
Management of the War upon *Pompey*. But if *Cæsar*
would acquaint him with his Demands, he would take
care to transmit 'em to *Pompey*, who he doubted not in
the least would comply, upon *Bibulus's* and his Persua-
sions. Wherefore he desir'd a Truce, 'till such time as
he could receive an Answer. After this, he added some-
thing about the Justice of their Cause, the Strength of
their Forces and Auxiliaries; which *Cæsar* did not
think proper then to make any Answer to, nor worth
his time, to burthen his Memory with what was said
upon that Subject.

But he desir'd they would either give some of his Lieute-
nants a Pass-port to *Pompey*, or undertake they should be
convey'd thither in Safety. As to the Truce insisted on, he
told 'em, the present State of the War was such, that as
they commanded the Sea, and prevented his receiving any
Supplies that way, so he, being Master of the Coasts, pro-
hibited

hibited them the Use of Land and fresh Water: Where- War in
fore 'twas but reasonable, if they expected he should give Greece.
them the Liberty of landing, that they in return should
leave the Seas open for him: Nor would he part with
his Advantage upon any other Terms. However, tho' they
could not agree upon the Point, the Treaty might still
proceed.

But they would neither grant his Lieutenants a Pass-
port, nor oblige themselves to conduct 'em in Safety;
referring the whole Matter to Pompey: Yet insisted
mightily upon the Truce. *Caesar* perceiving their De- *Caesar per-*
sign, that there were no hopes of Peace, that they of- *ceives their*
fer'd no Conditions, but only made use of this Artifice, *Design, and*
to deliver 'em out of the present Danger and Difficul- *disappoints*
ties they labour'd under, began to think of prosecuting *'em.*
the War.

C H A P. VI.

BIBULUS, having long been prevented from Land- *Bibulus dies.*
ing, had contracted a dangerous Fit of Sickness, by the
Cold and his perpetual Fatigue: Yet tho' he could not
be cured on board, he resolv'd not to relinquish his
Charge; so the Violence of the Distemper carry'd him
off. After his Decease, no body had the sole Command
of the Fleet, but every Admiral acted separately with
his own Squadron. The Surprize being now over,
which *Caesar's* sudden Arrival had occasion'd; *Vibullius* *Vibullius's*
the first time, when *Libo*, *Lucceius*, and *Theophanes*, *Negotiation*
Pompey's greatest Confidants, were present, resolv'd to *ineffectual.*
deliver the Commission he had receiv'd from *Caesar*: But
Pompey soon interrupted his Discourse, saying, *Pompey's*
What Satisfaction can I have, either in Life, or returning to *Answer.*
Rome, when the World shall believe I have been beholden
to *Caesar's* Mercy for both? Which Notion can never be
blotted out, till I shall go back a Conqueror into Italy,
from whence I was expell'd. *Caesar* had Notice of this,
from some that were present at the Debate; however
he attempted to obtain a Parley by several other
Methods.

Nothing parted the two Camps but the River *Apsus*,
the Soldiers frequently discours'd with each other, and
by Compact amongst themselves, cast no Darts on either
side during the Conference. Wherefore *Caesar* sent Lieu-
tenant *P. Vatinius* to the Banks of the River, with Or-
ders to omit nothing which he thought might conduce
to-

War in
Greece.

Varinius
sent to de-
mand a Con-
ference;

which is a-
greed to;

but perfidi-
ously inter-
rupted.

Labienus's
Malice.

towards an Accommodation; and to demand with a loud Voice, *Whether it might be lawful for Romans to send Deputies to treat of Peace with their Fellow-Citizens? Which had never been deny'd even to Out-laws and Highway-men on the Pyrenæan Mountains, and was much less to be oppos'd, when the Design of the Conference was to prevent the Effusion of Roman Blood by Romans.* *Vatinius* having spoken a great deal to the same purpose in a very submissive Accent, as became him when he treated about so great a Concern as his own, and the Publick Safety; a profound Silence ensu'd on both Sides, and he receiv'd this Answer: That *Varro* would appear the next Day at the Conference; whither *Cæsar's* Deputies might safely come, and make their Demands. A certain Time was appointed for the Meeting; which being come, Multitudes on both sides crowded to the Place, and all Men appear'd dispos'd to a Peace. *T. Labienus*, advancing before the rest, began to confer in a low Voice with *Vatinius*; but the midst of their Discourse was interrupted by the Darts that came flying from every side; which Danger *Vatinius* escap'd, being cover'd by the Shields of the Soldiers: But many were wounded, as *Cornelius Balbus*, *M. Plorius*, and *L. Tiburtius*, the Centurions, with some private Soldiers. Then exclaim'd *Labienus*, *Let us talk no longer of Treaties; for 'till Cæsar's Head be cut off, we can never think of Peace.*

C H A P. VII.

M. Cælius
Rufus occa-
sions an In-
surrection.

IN the mean while, *M. Cælius Rufus*, the foreign *Prætor*, having undertaken the Cause of the Debtors, on his Entrance into his Office, caus'd his Tribunal to be fix'd near that of the City *Prætor*, *C. Trebonius*; and promis'd, if any Person should appeal from the Estimation and Orders of the Arbitrators for Payment of Debrs, whom *Cæsar* had appointed, he would relieve 'em. But *Trebonius* pronounc'd his Judgments with so much Equity and Compassion, which was very necessary in those ticklish Times, that no body thought of Appealing. For to have pleaded Poverty, ill Circumstances, the Hardness of the Times, or the Difficulty of putting their Effects to Auction, would have been an Argument of Meanness of Spirit: But to have own'd themselves indebted, and yet have desir'd to keep their Possessions intire, would have been unreasonable to the last Degree: There.

Therefore no body made any Demands of this Nature. War in Greece.

But *Cælius* was very severe upon those that should have reap'd Advantage by this Law: And having embark'd in the Business that he might acquit himself with Credit of so ungrateful an Office; he made a Law, whereby 'twas enacted, That Debtors should pay in the Money they had borrow'd within † Six Months time, without Interest.

† The Text is *Sexies feni Dies sine Usuris Credi-*

12 Pecunie solvantur; which is a manifest Corruption. Cujacius therefore has made it, Sexagies feni Diebus; Manutius, Sexenni Die; others, Sexpensionibus; whom M. D' Ablancourt agrees with; but I rather chose to follow Voilius, who corrects it, Sex Mensium Die.

But the Consul *Servilius*, and the rest of the Magistrates opposing this Edict, he found it had not the Effect upon the People he design'd: Therefore having annull'd that Law, he publish'd two others; one for discharging all Tenants from paying their Rents, the other for cancelling of Debts. These had the desir'd Effect, they rais'd the Mob; who assaulted *C. Trebonius*, and having wounded some that were about him, pull'd him out of his Tribunal. The Consul *Servilius* gave the Senate an Account of this Affair, who thereupon resolv'd *Cælius* should be remov'd from his Office: By Virtue of which Decree, the Consul prohibited him the Senate, and caus'd him to be taken out of the *Rostrum*, as he was going to harangue the People.

Cælius's Sedition; the Mob rises.

Afflicted with this Disgrace, *Cælius* pretended he would go to *Caesar*; but instead of that, privately sent Messengers to invite *Milo* into *Italy*; who stood condemn'd for the Murder of *Clodius*, and had gain'd the Remainder of the Gladiators, by considerable Presents, for his Guard: On his Arrival he join'd him, and having sent him to *Tuvene*, to solicit the Shepherds to take Arms, went himself to * *Cassiline*. On his Arrival there, he had Notice, that his Arms were seiz'd at *Capua*, his Partisans at *Naples*, and their Design of betraying the Town discover'd; wherefore finding himself shut out of *Capua*, his Counsels exploded, and apprehending some Danger, because the *Roman* Citizens had already taken Arms, and look'd upon him as an Enemy; he chang'd his Resolution, and desisted from the Journey.

Cælius expelled Rome, he joins with Milo.

* Famous for being besieged by Hannibal, long ago reduc'd to Ashes; but the present *Capua* now stands in the same Place where this Town was formerly situated. His Designs de-

Milo, seated,

War in
Greece.

Milo, in the mean while, having sent his Circular Letters to the Municipal Towns, pretended he had a Commission from *Pompey* for what he did, and receiv'd his Instructions from *Bibulus*. He endeavour'd to draw the Debtors over to his Party; but finding he could not prevail, enfranchis'd some Slaves, and with them went to besiege *Cosa* in *Turane*. The Town was commanded by the Prætor *Q. Pedius* with a Garrison of one Legion; and here *Milo* dy'd by a Wound he receiv'd from a Stone that was cast by an Engine from the Walls. *Cælius*, having given out he was gone to *Caesar*, came to *Thurium*, where, endeavouring to corrupt the Inhabitants with the *Spanish* and *Gallick* Horse, whom *Cælius* had left there in Garrison, they kill'd him; which put a speedy End to those dangerous Beginnings, that found the Magistrates so much Work, and alarm'd all *Italy*.

C H A P. VIII.

Libo blockades
Erindisi.

LIBO, leaving *Oricum*, with a Squadron of Fifty Ships under his Command, sail'd to *Brindisi*, and possess'd himself of an Island directly over against the Mouth of the Haven. This he esteem'd a very important Post, because our Fleet must of Necessity pass that way, and therefore by guarding that single Place, he did as much in Effect as if he had actually block'd up all the Ports and Shores on the other side. His Arrival being unexpected, he surpris'd a few Transports, which he burnt, carry'd off one Vessel that was loaden with Corn, put our Men into great Disorder; and having landed some Foot, with a Party of Archers, in the Night, defeated our Guard of Cavalry. Flush'd with this Success, he writ *Pompey* Word, he might draw the rest of the Navy on Shore, and careen 'em if he pleas'd; for he alone was able, with his Squadron, to intercept *Caesar's* Supplies.

His Success
and Vanity.

Antony's
Attempt and
Success.

Antony happen'd to be then at *Brindisi*, who, confiding in the Courage of his Soldiers, prepar'd about sixty Pinaces and Long-Boats; which he arm'd with Pent-houses and Breast-Works of Hurdles, and having put a select Number of Soldiers on board, dispos'd 'em in several Places along the Shore. He had taken Care to equip Two Gallies at *Brindisi*, with Three Banks of Oars, and these he commanded to row to the Mouth of the Haven, by way of Exercise. *Libo*, perceiving they

they ventur'd boldly, hop'd to intercept 'em, and therefore detach'd five Four-bank'd Gallies to attack 'em. But so soon as they approach'd us, the Veteran Soldiers that were on Board, retir'd within the Haven: The Enemy, eager of the Pursuit, follow'd too rashly; for immediately, upon a Sign given, all *Antony's* Boats made up to their Gallies, and having taken one, with the Sailors and Soldiers on Board, oblig'd the rest to make an ignominious Retreat: To add to this Loss, *Antony* having dispos'd Parties of Cavalry along the Banks, prevented *Libo* from getting fresh Water: Which forced him to quit the Blockade of *Brindisi* with Disgrace.

War in
Greece.

He takes
one of *Libo's*
Gallies,
and obliges
him to quit
the Blockade.

Several Months had now pass'd, and the Winter was almost spent, yet neither the Legions nor Navy were come from *Brindisi*. *Cæsar* believ'd his Lieutenants had let some Opportunities slip; for the Wind had certainly offer'd fair during all that Time, whose Mercy he at last must be oblig'd to trust to. The longer they omitted coming, the more careful were *Pompey's* Admirals to guard the Coast, and the greater Hopes they had of intercepting 'em. *Pompey* likewise, to encrease their Diligence, writ frequently to reprimand 'em for their former Neglect, and remind 'em they should be more careful for the future, especially since the Season began to grow milder.

Cæsar's uneasiness for want of the rest of his Legions.

C H A P. IX.

CÆSAR therefore, being very uneasy, writ sharply to his Officers, commanding 'em to weigh Anchor the first Wind, and direct their Course either for *Oricum*, or the Coasts of *Apollonia*; where they might safely land, because those Places were not strictly guarded by the Enemy's Fleet; who durst not venture too far from the Havens.

Sends positive Orders for the Fleet to set sail the first fair Wind.

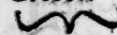
The Soldiers, who were eager for the Voyage, and ready to undertake any Danger for *Cæsar's* Sake, assuming their wonted Courage, under the Conduct of *Antony* and *Calenus*, weigh'd Anchor with a Southern Wind, and the Day after pass'd by *Apollonia* and *Durazzo*, where *Q. Coponius*, Admiral of the *Rhodian* Squadron lay; who, so soon as they were descri'd from the Continent, put out to Sea; and the Wind growing slack had almost overtaken our Fleet, when a fresh Gale deliver'd 'em out of Danger. *Coponius* however did not desist from the Pursuit, but hoping to over-

Antony and *Calenus* weigh Anchor, and arrive safe at *Durazzo*.

Coponius pursues 'em close.

come

War in
Greece.



But they
get safe into
Nymphæ-
um.

Two of Cæ-
sar's Fleet
that lay be-
hind, ac-
cack'd.

One sur-
renders on
promise of
Quarter, and
the Soldiers
in her put to
Death.

The other
escapes by
the Courage
of the Vete-
ran Soldiers.

come the Winds by the Industry of his Rowers, fol-
low'd after, for all they had pass'd *Durazzo*. Our Men,
who were apprehensive of falling into the Enemy's Hands,
if the Wind grew gentle again, laying hold of For-
tune's Favour, put into *Nymphæum*, about three Miles
beyond *Lissus*: This is a dangerous Haven when the
Wind blows South, but safe enough during a South-
West: However they thought they had less to apprehend
from the Fury of the Tempest, than that of *Coponius*.
But the Moment they were got into the Port, by incre-
dible good Fortune, the South-wind which had conti-
nu'd two Days without intermission, wheel'd about to
South-west. This was a very remarkable Turn, for we,
who but a Moment ago had reason to dread a tempe-
stuous Road, by this Accident were shelter'd from all
Danger; and they, who just before threaten'd Destru-
ction to our Fleet, were now oblig'd to prepare for their
own Security. For the same Wind which protect'd us,
so scatter'd the *Rhodian* Squadron, that out of sixteen
not one escap'd Shipwreck.

Two of our Transports that were but slow Sailors,
and could not keep up with the rest, not knowing
where they had put in, cast Anchor over-against *Lissus*.
Whereupon *Otacilius Crassus*, Governor of the Place,
sent out several Boats and small Vessels to seize 'em,
but promis'd Quarter if they would surrender. One of
these Vessels carry'd two hundred and Twenty new
Levies; the other something less than two hundred
Veteran Soldiers; and from hence we may observe
what mighty Service Pefence of Mind is of. The new
Levies, frighted at the Number of the Enemy's Boats,
and sick with their Voyage, on Assurance of their Lives
upon Oath, surrender'd to *Otacilius*, and were after-
wards, contrary to Faith and Agreement, every Man of
'em put to the Sword. But the old Legionary Soldiers,
tho' disorder'd by the Storm and noisom Stink of the
Pump, forgot not their Pristine Courage; they protra-
cted some Part of the Night under Pretence of a Trea-
ry and Surrender; then oblig'd the Pilot to run the
Vessel on Shore, and having got a convenient Place to
land on, staid there the Remainder of the Night. *Ota-
cilius*, by break of Day, detach'd about four hundred
Horse, with some Part of the Garrison, to defend that
Part of the Coasts, and pursue 'em. But they made a
brave Defence, and having kill'd some of the Enemy's
Men, secur'd their Retreat to the rest of our Forces.

Upon

Upon this Success, the *Roman* Citizens residing at *Lissus*, to whose Charge *Cæsar* had formerly committed the Defence of the Town, which he had taken Care to fortify, open'd their Gates to *Antony*, and furnish'd him with all kind of Provisions: Whereupon *Otacilius* left the Place, which consisted of three Veteran Legions, one new one, and eight hundred Horse, sent most of the Transports back again to *Italy*, to fetch the rest of the Foot and Cavalry. But he left the * *Pontones*, a kind of *French* Vessels, at *Lissus*, left *Pompey* imagining *Italy* was left unguarded, as most People believ'd, should transport his Army thither, and *Cæsar* be depriv'd of the means to follow; whom he immediately acquainted where he had landed, and how many Men he had brought over.

War in
Greece.

Lissus surrenders to
Antony.

* *Pontones*, these were not like our *Pontons* nowadays, but rather a kind of *Loyters*.

C H A P. X.

CÆSAR and *Pompey* had both Advice of *Antony's* Arrival at the same Instant. For his Fleet had been descri'd passing by *Apollonia* and *Durazzo*, and follow'd along the Coasts: But no body knew, till some time after, what Haven they had put into. On the first News of his Landing, *Cæsar* and *Pompey* took different Resolutions, the first to join *Antony*, the other to prevent their joining, either by Force or Stratagem. Both quitted their Camps at *Apsus* about the same Time; *Pompey* privately by Night, *Cæsar* publickly in the Day-time: But he had the longer Circuit to take before he could ford the River: Whereas *Pompey*, having no Occasion to cross the *Apsus*, march'd by long Journeys towards *Antony*; so soon as he had Intelligence of his Approach, he chose a convenient Place to encamp in, and gave Orders there should be no Fires, that the other might know nothing of his being there. But *Antony* was soon inform'd of his Design by the Natives; and having communicated an Account of the Enemy's Motions to *Cæsar*, stay'd one Day within his Camp. On Advice of *Cæsar's* Arrival, *Pompey*, to prevent being block'd up by two Armies, remov'd with all his Forces to *Asparagium*, a Town belonging to the People of *Durazzo*, where he pitch'd his Tents in an advantageous Place.

Pompey and *Cæsar* both have notice of *Antony's* Arrival.

Cæsar marches to join him.

Pompey to intercept their Meeting;

but with ill Success.

War in
Greece.

C H A P. XI.

Scipio's A-
varice and
heavy Impo-
sitions.

I N the mean while *Scipio*, notwithstanding the several Losses he receiv'd near the Mount *Amanus*, stiled himself Emperor; exacting great Sums of Money from the States and Princes of that Country. He oblig'd the Receivers to pay in the two Years Taxes which lay in their Hands, and advance a Third, by Way of Loan. He likewise distributed Orders to the whole Province for levying Cavalry, and so soon as they were rais'd, leaving his neighbouring Enemies, the *Parthians*, behind him, who not long before had defeated *M. Crassus*, and besieg'd *Bibulus*, he march'd out of *Syria* with his Horse and Legions. When he came into the * Province, he found the Natives mighty uneasy for fear of the *Parthian War*; and his Army declar'd, tho' they were ready to march against an Enemy, yet they would not bear Arms against the Consul and their Fellow-Citizens. But to secure 'em in his Interest, he gave 'em considerable Presents; and having quarter'd 'em at *Pergamus*, and the richest Towns, gave 'em free Liberty to plunder.

* Asia.

Scipio's
Taxes.

The Villany
of his Collec-
tors.

In the mean while, he omitted not laying heavy Taxes upon the Province; for he made both Slaves and Free-men, without Distinction, pay Poll-Money. Imposts were plac'd upon Pillars and Doors of Houses, upon Corn, Water-Men, Arms, Engines, and Carriages. In fine, nothing that had a Name escap'd being tax'd, not only in Cities, but little Towns and Villages. And he that collected these Subsidies with the greatest Rigour, was esteem'd the honestest Man and best Citizen. The Province swarm'd with Catchpoles, Officers, Collectors, and Overseers; who, besides the publick Impositions, exacted Money for their own private Use; but to colour their Extortions, alledg'd extream Poverty, and their being expell'd their own Country. To add to these Inconveniences, (as it generally happens during War time) if the Creditor prolong'd the Payment, the Debtor was to esteem this Continuation as a great Favour, as if the Debt had been actually pardon'd: Thus, in two Years time, the Debts of the Province were doubled. Nor were the *Roman* Citizens only liable to these Taxes; for certain Sums of Money were demanded from every State and Corporation, as a Loan on the Credit of the *Senates Decree*; and the

the Receivers had Orders to advance the next Year's *War in*
Tribute upon Interest. *Greece.*

Not content with these Sums, he gave Orders for taking all the Mony and Images of *Diana*, out of her Temple at *Ephesus*; which had long been treasur'd up there. But he no sooner came into the Temple, attended by a great many Senators, but he receiv'd an Express, with News of *Cæsar's* being landed with his Legions, positive Orders to come away immediately with his Army, and make what Dispatch he could to join *Pompey*. On Receipt of these Letters, he dismiss'd the Senators, march'd directly towards *Macedonia*, and arriv'd there within a few Days. Thus the Temple of *Ephesus* escap'd being plunder'd.

The Treasure of Diana at Ephesus narrowly escapes him.

C H A P. XII.

CÆSAR, having join'd *Antony*, thought it convenient to march further up into the Country, and try the Affections of the *Greeks*: Wherefore he drew the Legion out of *Oricum*, which he had left there to guard the Coasts. Embassadors soon came to wait upon him from *Thessaly* and *Ætolia*, promising to declare for his Party, if he would send 'em Garrisons to defend their Country. Whereupon he detach'd *L. Cassius Longinus* with the twenty-seventh Legion, new Levies, and two Hundred Horse into *Thessaly*: *C. Calpurnius Sabinus*, with a small Party of Horse, and five Cohorts into *Ætolia*: Desiring they would take particular Care to furnish him with Corn, because those Provinces lay the nearest to his Army. He likewise sent *Cn. Domitius Calvinus* with the second, eleventh, twelfth Legions, and five Hundred Horse, into *Macedonia*: For *Menedemus*, the greatest Man of that part of the Province, which is call'd *the Free*, being sent Embassador to *Cæsar*, had assur'd him of his Countrymens Affections.

Cæsar and Antony joined.

Thessaly and Ætolia declare for Cæsar.

Calpurnius, upon his Arrival in *Ætolia*, met a welcome Reception, and made himself intire Master of the Country, after having expell'd the Enemy's Garrison out of *Calydo* and *Naupactum*. But *Cassius*, when he came with his Legion into *Thessaly*, found two Factions there, one headed by *Egesaretus*, a Man of establish'd Credit for *Pompey*; the other by *Petreius*, a Noble Youth, who employ'd his utmost Interest for *Cæsar's* Service.

Calpurnius arrives in Ætolia; Ayton and Lepanto. Cassius in Thessaly.

Domitius, about the same time, arriv'd in *Macedonia*; and whilst Embassadors from all Parts were attending him,

Domitius comes into Macedonia.

War in
Greece.

Scipio marches towards him; but wheels about for Thessaly.

Leaves his
Baggage at
Haliacmon
with Favonius.

* King of
Thrace.

But on Notice of Domitius's coming to besiege Favonius, returns,

him, News arriv'd of *Scipio's* Approach with his Legions, which alarm'd the whole Country: For Fame generally renders things more dreadful than they really are. *Scipio* march'd by long Journies, without Intermission, towards *Domitius*; but when he was arriv'd within twenty Miles of him, on a sudden wheel'd about for *Thessaly*: Which he did with so much Expedition, that *Cassius Longinus* had no Notice of his marching that way, before he was actually come thither. For *Scipio*, that he might make the more Dispatch, left his Baggage behind him at the River *Haliacmon*, which divides *Macedonia* from *Thessaly*, with a Guard of eight Cohorts, under the Command of *M. Favonius*; whom he order'd to erect a Fort there. At the same time * *Cotus's* Cavalry, that frequently made Inroads into *Thessaly*, came to attack *Cassius's* Camp: Who being mightily surpris'd at the News of *Scipio's* Arrival, and discovering these Horse, which he believ'd to be his, made the best of his way towards the Mountains that surround *Thessaly*; designing from thence to march towards *Ambracia*. But whilst *Scipio* was closely pursuing *Cassius*, there arriv'd a Courier from *Favonius*, to acquaint him, that *Domitius* was marching to besiege him; and 'twas impossible for him to defend himself without his Assistance. Whereupon *Scipio*, changing his Resolution, desisted from the Pursuit, and return'd to *Favonius*. Marching Day and Night he arriv'd so opportunely, to his Relief, that the Dust of *Domitius's* Army, and his Van-guard, were descry'd at the same Instant. Thus *Domitius's* Care preserv'd *Cassius*, and *Scipio's* Dispatch *Favonius*.

C H A P. XIII

Scipio and
Domitius
both draw
out their
Armies.

SCIPIO stay'd two Days with *Favonius* on this side the *Haliacmon*, which parted him from *Domitius's* Army: But the next Day, early in the Morning he forded the River; and the Day after, drew his Forces up in order of Battel before his Camp. *Domitius*, being ready for an Engagement, did the like; and, because there was a † large Field between the two Armies, he led his Legions close up to *Scipio's* Camp.

The

† The Original is Campus circiter Millium passuum sex,

but must be a Corruption of the Text; for the last Chapter tells us, he was so near *Favonius*, that the Dust rais'd by his March was perceiv'd; which could hardly be at Six Miles distance: And to what purpose did *Scipio* draw his Army up in Order of Battel, or how could *Domitius* see it, if he had been so far off?

The Enemy mov'd not from their Rampier; yet *Domitius* could hardly contain his Soldiers from fighting, tho' a Rivulet, with steep Banks, oppos'd their Passage. *Scipio* observing how eager our Soldiers were for the Engagement, that he might not be oblig'd the next Day, either to fight against his Will, or remain with Disgrace within his Trenches; tho' he cross'd the River big with Expectation, ended his rash Attempt with Disgrace; for he was oblig'd to escape by Night cross the *Haliacmon*, without giving the usual Sign for decamping, to prevent alarming *Domitius*. After this Retreat, he encamp'd upon a rising Ground, near the Banks of the River; and having remain'd there a few Days, laid an Ambush of Cavalry for our Foragers, where they usually came. When *Q. Varus*, General of *Domitius's* Horse, according to his daily Custom, was come to the Place, they immediately discover'd themselves: But our Men soon rally'd in good Order, receiv'd and return'd their Charge with equal Vigour. We kill'd about eighty of the Enemy upon the Spot, put the rest to flight, and return'd again to the Camp, with the Loss of only two on our side.

Domitius, after this Success, that he might entice *Scipio* to fight, pretended to be mightily streighten'd for want of Corn; and having given the Sign for decamping, march'd about three Miles, where he drew his Infantry and Horse up in a private and convenient Place. *Scipio* being ready to follow, detach'd a Party of Horse, and light-arm'd Infantry, to discover what Way he had taken. They had not march'd very far, before their Van-guard came within the Reach of our Ambush, who suspecting something, because they heard our Horses neigh, began to retreat; which they that follow'd after, perceiving, made a Halt. Whereupon our Men, finding themselves discover'd, and thinking it in vain to expect the rest of the Army, intercepted two Troops that were in their Power. *M. Opimius*, General of *Scipio's* Horse, was amongst these, * who made his Escape, all the rest were either kill'd or taken Prisoners.

CHAP. XIV.

WE having already taken Notice, that *Caesar* having drain'd his Garrisons along the Sea-Coasts, had only left three Cohorts to defend *Oricum*, and the Gallies

War in
Greece.

Domitius's
Soldiers ea-
ger to fight;
but be re-
strains 'em.

Scipio's dis-
graceful Re-
treat.

Domitius's
Foragers rout
a Party *Sci-*
pio had laid
in Ambush.

Domitius's
Ambush,

with pretty
good Success.
* Which is
not in the
Text, but
must be ad-
ded to agree
with what
follows.

Young Pompey's Ex-
ploits.

War in
Greece.



Enters the
Haven of O-
ricum.

Carries off
Four of Cæ-
sar's Gallies,
burns the
rest.

Burns Thirty
Transports at
Lilius.

Cæsar
marches to-
wards Alpa-
ragium; ef-
fers Pom-
pey Battel;
which he de-
clines.

which he brought out of *Italy*. This Business was committed to the Charge of *Acilius*, who, for the better Security of the Shipping, had caus'd 'em to be drawn up into that part of the Haven behind the Town, and fasten'd to Shore: He likewise sunk a Transport in the Mouth of the Haven, to block up the Entrance; where he fix'd another at Anchor, upon which he built a Tower, and fill'd it with Soldiers, to prevent Surprise.

Pompey's Son, who commanded the *Egyptian* Fleet, having Notice of this, came to *Oricum*; where he weigh'd up the Vessel that was sunk, and after a great deal of Trouble, took the other, which had been plac'd by *Acilius*, for a guard to the Haven: For he attack'd it with several of his Ships together, whereon he had likewise erected Turrets to an equal Height with ours; he took care to relieve his Men perpetually, and to divert us from doing the like, storm'd the Town at the same Instant both by Sea and Land: But all our Soldiers that were on board escap'd in small Boats. After this, possessing himself of a natural Mole on the other side, which almost form'd a *Peninsula* over-against *Oricum*, he caus'd Four little Gallies to be heav'd over the Neck of Land upon Rollers, into the inner Part of the Haven, that lay behind the Town: So assaulting the Gallies, which were empty, and fasten'd to the Shore, from both sides together, he carry'd away Four, and burnt the rest.

This Affair dispatch'd, leaving *D. Lelius*, with a small Squadron to intercept all Provisions from *Bullis* and *Amantia*; he sail'd for *Lissus*: Where he burnt the Thirty Transports which *Antony* had left in that Haven. He endeavour'd likewise to take the Town; but the Garrison and *Roman Citizens* made so vigorous a Defence, that after Three Days Labour lost, they oblig'd him to quit the Siege.

CHAP. XV.

CÆSAR, having Notice that *Pompey* was at *Asparagium*, march'd thither with his Army; and having taken in the Capital of *Parthenia* by the way, where *Pompey* had left a Garrison, he arriv'd in Three Days in *Macedonia*; where he encamp'd not far off the Enemy. The Day after, drawing out all his Forces, he offer'd *Pompey* Battel; but finding he declin'd it, retiring to his Camp, *Cæsar* began to think of other Measures.

Where-

Wherefore the next Morning he remov'd, and taking a large Circuit about, through rough and narrow Roads, he march'd towards *Durazzo*; hoping either to oblige *Pompey* to follow him thither, or else to cut off his Communication with the Town, where he had repos'd his Magazines for the War: Which happen'd accordingly; for *Pompey* at first not perceiving his Design, because he had taken a different Road, believ'd he was oblig'd to decamp for want of Provisions; but being better inform'd by his Scouts, he broke up from *Asparagium* the Day after, hoping to disappoint him, by marching the nearer Way. Which *Cæsar* suspecting, encourag'd his Soldiers patiently to endure the Fatigue; and having allow'd 'em but a small Part of the Night to refresh themselves in, arriv'd the next Morning early at *Durazzo*, where he encamp'd, before *Pompey's* Van-guard could reach the Place.

War in Greece.
Cæsar marches to Durazzo, to cut off Pompey's Communication with the Place.

Pompey's Communication with *Durazzo* thus intercepted, and his Design defeated, as the best Method which was left, he resolv'd to possess himself of the *Petra*, a rising Ground, that has a tolerable good Haven, which is shelter'd from some Winds. Here he gave Orders for Part of his Gallies to attend him, and Corn to be brought from *Asia*, and those other Countries, which were subject to his Command. *Cæsar* apprehending the War would be tedious, and despairing of Supplies from *Italy*, because the Coasts were so straitly guarded by *Pompey's* Fleet, and his own Ships, equipp'd the last Winter in *Sicily*, *Gaul*, and *Italy*, were not arriv'd; dispatch'd Lieutenant *L. Canuleius* to *Epirus* for Corn. But because that Country lay at so great a Distance, he caus'd Granaries to be built in several Places, and order'd the neighbouring Countries to furnish him with Waggons: Not omitting to gather what Corn was to be found in *Lissus*, the Country of *Parthenia*, and the adjacent States; which was but inconsiderable, for the Soil being mountainous and barren, the Natives were oblig'd to relieve themselves by imported Grain: Besides, *Pompey*, who foresaw *Cæsar's* Occasions, had already ravag'd those Places, and having pull'd down their Houses, his Cavalry carry'd off all the Corn the Country afforded.

Pompey encamps on the Petra.

Cæsar sends Canuleius into Epirus for Corn.

War in
Greece.

C H A P. XVI.

Besieges
Pompey in
his Camp;

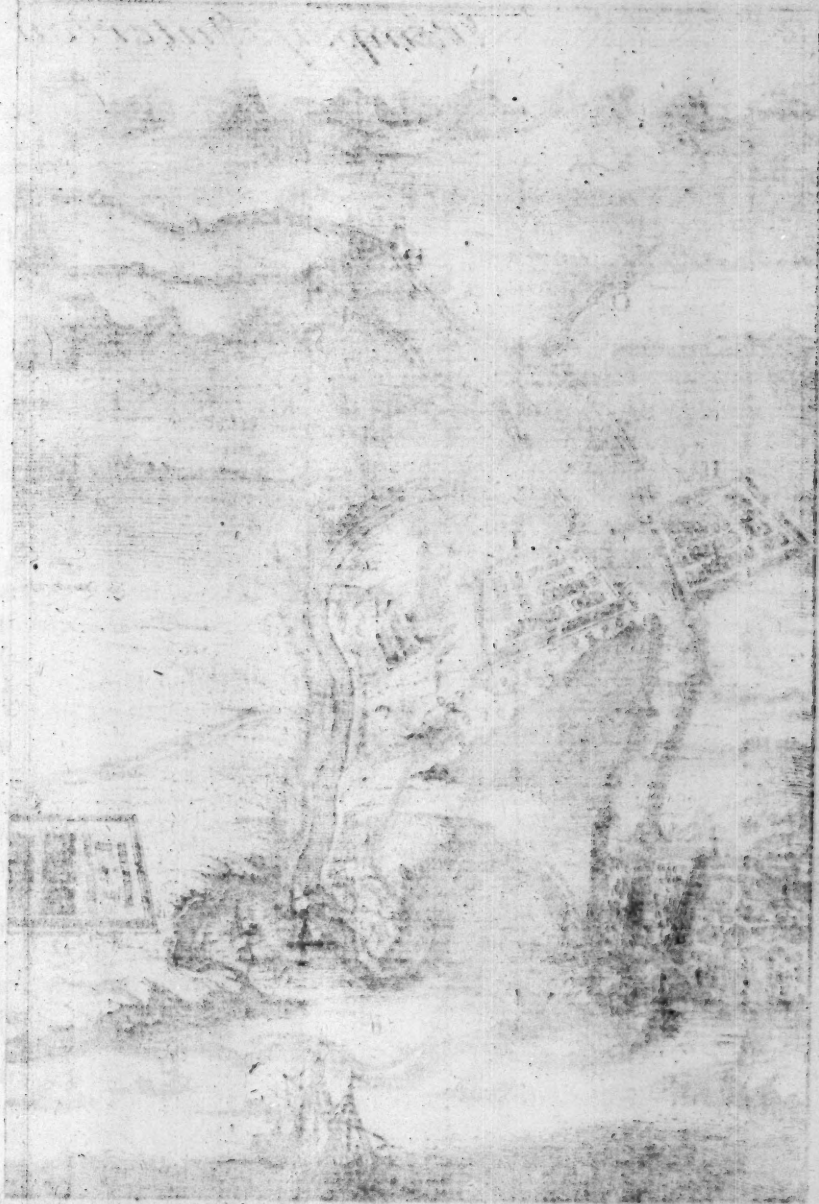
His Reasons
for it.

Pompey's
Works with
in Cæsar's.

Pompey
builds twenty
four castles,
includes fif-
teen Miles
within his
Lines.

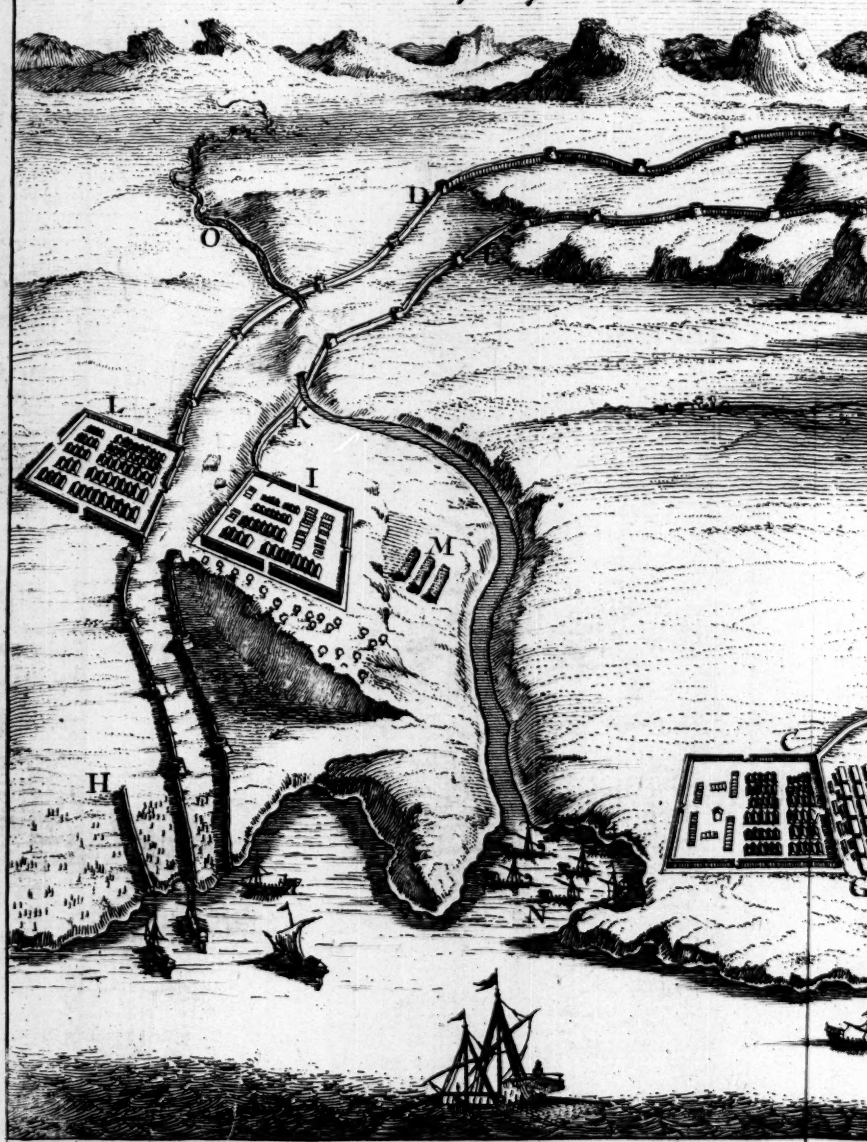
WHEREFORE *Cæsar* resolv'd upon a certain Expedient, which the Nature of the Place suggested. *Pompey's* Camp was surrounded by steep and high Mountains; on these *Cæsar* first dispos'd Parties, and erected Castles; designing, as the nature of the Place would permit, afterwards to draw Lines of Communication from one Turret to another, and enclose the Enemy with a Ditch and a Rampier. The Reasons which mov'd him to take this Resolution were, That being mightily distress'd for Want of Corn, he might with less Difficulty supply his Camp, whilst *Pompey's* Cavalry, of which he had great Numbers, were shut up, and prevented from foraging. And that he might detract from that Credit, which *Pompey* had acquir'd amongst foreign Nations; when it should be reported thro' the World, he was besieg'd by *Cæsar*, and durst not venture an Engagement.

Pompey, in the mean while, resolv'd neither to quit the Advantage of the Sea, nor *Durazzo*, where he had stor'd all his Preparations for the War, as Darts, Arms, Engines, with Corn for his Fleet and Army: Nor could he prevent the Progress of *Cæsar's* Works without fighting him, which he thought at that time inconvenient. The only Refuge therefore he had left, was to enclose as many Hills, and take in as much Ground within his Works as possible; that he might disperse *Cæsar's* Forces. The Design succeeded; for having erected twenty four Castles, and enclos'd a Circuit of fifteen Miles; he had room enough for his Cavalry to forage in, besides great Part of the Ground was cultivated. Whilst our Men were drawing their Circumvallation, they were uneasy, lest they should have left any Part of the Work imperfect, that might furnish the Enemy with an Opportunity of sallying, and attacking 'em from behind. Nor were *Pompey's* Soldiers less careful in perfecting their Lines to defend themselves from the like Inconvenience. But their Works went faster on than ours, because they had more Hands, and a smaller Space of Ground to enclose. Wherefore when *Cæsar* attempted to gain any Place, tho' *Pompey* design'd not to give him Battel; yet he endeavour'd to interrupt his Progress, by detaching Parties of Archers and Slingers, which he had Plenty of, to oppose him. Many
of



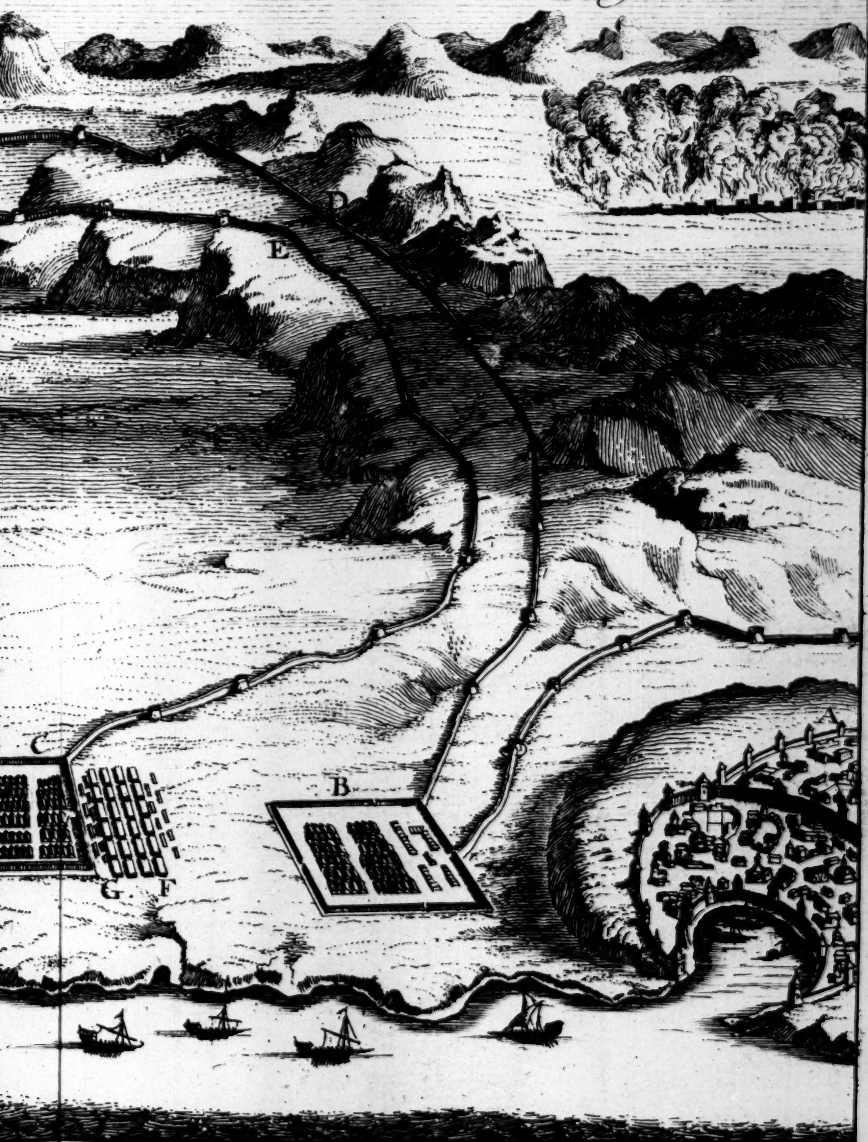
[Faint, illegible handwritten text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

Pompey's Intercours

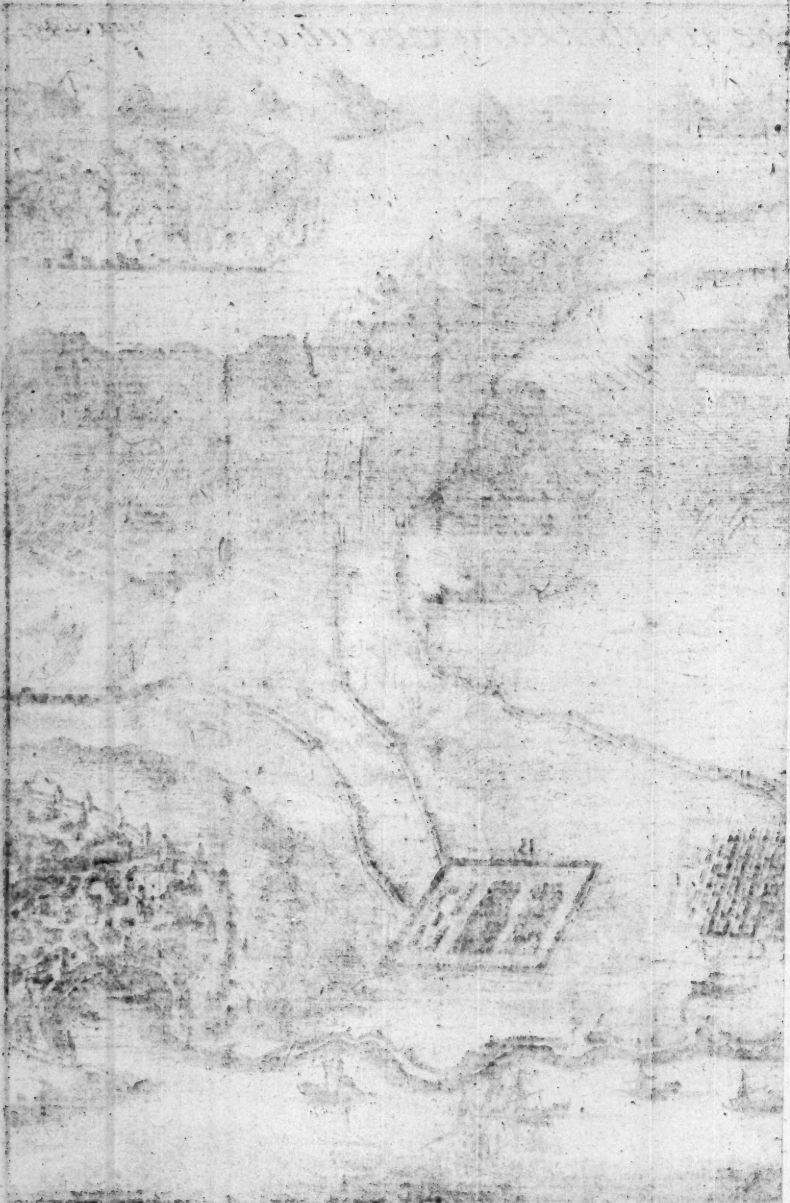


A. Durazzo B. Caesar's Camp. C. Pompey's on y. P. Sea. D. Caesar's 15 Miles within em. F. G. The two armies drawn out, Pompey part of Caesar's works next y. Sea. I. Pompey forces Caesar's nei drawn from y. Camp to y. River. L. Caesar's Camp over again to y. assistance of his Party. N. the Pelop. & it's haven. O. y. 1

course with Durazzo cut off. pag. 249.



. Caesar's Lines. E. Pompey's 24 Castles inclosing a Circuit of
 t. Pompey's close to his Rampier. H. Pompey's attempt on that
 Caesar's ninth Legion from the hill & fortifies it. K. his Line
 over against him. M. the fifth Legion detached by Pompey
 n. O. y. River whose Course Caesar has stop'd.



Handwritten text, likely a title or description, located below the map. The text is written in a cursive script and is mostly illegible due to fading. It appears to be a single paragraph of text.

of our Men were wounded, and the rest so frighten'd, *War in* that they made themselves Coats of Mail, or thick Leather, to defend 'em from Danger. In fine, both Generals endeavour'd to make themselves Masters of every Post; *Cæsar*, that he might 'block up *Pompey* in a narrow Compass; and *Pompey*, that he might gain as much Liberty as possible; which occasion'd many Skirmishes.

Cæsar encloses Pompey's Works within his Fortifications.

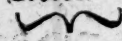
C H A P. XVII.

AMONGST other Rencounters, it happen'd, as *A Skirmish between Cæsar's ninth Legion and a Party of Pompey's.* *Cæsar's* ninth Legion had possess'd themselves of a Piece of Ground, and were going to fortify it, *Pompey* gain'd the opposite Mount, and began to interrupt their Works. Our Hill on one Side was of easy Access, that way therefore he first detach'd Parties of Archers, Slingers, and afterwards a strong Battalion of light-arm'd Foot; plying us warmly at the same time with his Engines: Nor was it easy for our Soldiers at once to sustain their Charge, and go forward with their Lines. *Cæsar's at first have the worst.* *Cæsar* perceiving his Men were wounded from all Sides, sent 'em Orders to quit the Place and retire: But the Descent being very steep, the Enemies believing we gave Ground for Fear, pursu'd us so close, they allow'd us no time to retreat. 'Tis reported that *Pompey* should vainly say upon this Occasion, to those that were near him, *Pompey's vanity.* *He would forfeit his Reputation, if Cæsar's Legions could extricate themselves from the Danger their Rashness had plung'd 'em into, without a considerable Loss.*

But *Cæsar*, being uneasy for his Soldiers Retreat, caus'd Hurdles to be plac'd on the Ridge of the Hill, between them and the Enemy; sunk a Trench behind of a pretty good Breadth, dispos'd Slingers in convenient Places to cover his Men, and having omitted nothing to render the Enemy's Pursuit difficult, commanded them to retreat. Which *Pompey's* Party perceiving, eagerly pursu'd, and having pull'd up the Hurdles, attempted to get over the Ditch. Whereupon *Cæsar*, apprehending his Mens disorderly Retreat might be misconstru'd for a Rout, which would have been a great Disgrace; order'd *Antony*, who commanded that Legion, to encourage his Men, and give 'em the Sign of Battel; upon which, after they had retir'd half way down the Hill, they rally'd, cast their Piles, and charg'd the Enemy so briskly, that for all the Advantage of the upper Ground they

But Cæsar secures their Retreat.

War in
Greece.



they routed 'em : Nor were *Pompey's* Men a little incommoded by the Hurdles, Stakes and Trenches, when they endeavour'd to make their Escape. But our Soldiers, who were contented to have secur'd their Retreat, having kill'd several of the Enemy, and lost only five of their own Number, quietly retir'd some Paces distance ; where, having gain'd other Hills, they proceeded with their Lines.

C H A P. XVIII.

Cæsar's
Army reduc'd
to great
Straits for
want of Pro-
visions.

Their ex-
traordinary
Patience.

THE Management of this War was particularly new and unusual, as well in respect of the Number of Castles, which enclos'd so vast a Circuit of Ground, and the Nature of the Works ; as of other Circumstances that attended it. For generally they who besiege another, do it with a Design to cut off his Provisions, grounding the Attempt upon their own Superiority of Forces, or on the Fear and Weakness of the Enemy, after the Loss of a Battel, or some other Disadvantage has daunted him. But *Cæsar* besieg'd *Pompey*, when he was inferior to him in Number, whilst the other's Troops were intire, in good Order, and had Plenty of of all kind of Provisions : For several Ships arriv'd every Day from all Parts, which supply'd 'em with what they wanted ; nor could any Wind blow, but would waft their Convoys from one Place or other. Whereas *Cæsar's* Army, having consum'd all the Corn round about, were reduc'd to the last Necessities ; which they endured with singular Patience ; Remembring they had labour'd under the same Inconveniences in *Spain* but the Year before ; yet surmounted 'em, and brought an important War to a happy Conclusion. Nor did they forget the great Difficulties they were oppress'd with at *Alife*, tho' not comparable to those at *Bourges*, where their Virtue subdu'd the most famous Nations. They were content with Pease or Barley ; and thought themselves feasted when they got any Cattel, which *Epirus* furnish'd 'em with in great Numbers.

During this Extremity, *Kalerius's* Men found out certain Roots, call'd *Chara* ; these they mingled with Milk, and made into Bread, which reliev'd their Hunger. The Country afforded Plenty of 'em ; they were of singular Service to us, and whenever *Pompey's* Men reflected on our Want of Provisions, our Soldiers, to dash their Hopes, often flung 'em these Loaves.

Now

Now the Corn began to ripen, and Hopes of immediate Plenty, made our Soldiers endure the present Want with Chearfulness: They would often declare in their Discourse with each other, or when they were upon the Guard, "They would support their Hunger by the Barks of Trees, rather than suffer Pompey to escape 'em. In the mean while, we were frequently inform'd by the Deserters, that their Horses were almost starv'd, the rest of their Cattle actually dead, and the Army much disorder'd by being enclos'd within so narrow a Compass; where they were subject to several noisom Smells, besides those that proceeded from dead Carcasses, fatigu'd by perpetual Labour, which they were unus'd to, and reduc'd to great Extremities for want of Water. For *Cæsar* had either turn'd the Course of all the Rivers that discharg'd themselves that way into the Sea, or damm'd up their Currents. The Ground being mountainous, with some few narrow intervening Vallies, by driving Piles in the Earth, covered over with Mould, he stopp'd out the Water: Which oblig'd the Enemy to search for low and marshy Places to dig Wells in, and encreas'd their daily Labour: Yet these Fountains lay at a considerable Distance from some Parts of their Army, and were soon dry'd up by the Violence of the Heat. But *Cæsar's* Army were in perfect Health, and Plenty of Water, and all kinds of Provisions but Wheat; which the Season of the Year promis'd 'em Plenty of in a very short time, for Harvest approach'd.

War in
Greece.

and Resolu-
tion.

Pompey
mightily in-
commoded
for want of
Room and
Water.

In this new-fashion'd way of waging War, both Generals made use of several Stratagems: They, observing by our Fires that our Cohorts guarded the Lines in the Night-time, silently approaching the Works, discharg'd a Flight of Arrows upon our Men, then retreated as fast as they could within their own Fortifications. But our Soldiers, who wanted not Experience, soon found out a Remedy for this Mischief, to watch in one Place, and make Fires in another.

C H A P. XIX.

** IN the mean while *P. Sylla*, whom *Cæsar* had left to command the Camp during his Absence, having Notice how the Engagement stood, came to the Assistance of the Cohort with two Legions; and easily repuls'd Pompey's Forces, who could hardly stand the Durazzo.

** Here is
a great deal
wanting: I
suppose *Cæ-
sar's* At-
tempt upon
Sight,

War in
Greece.

*Sylla re-
lieves his
Party, then
retreats.*

*The Diffe-
rence be-
tween a
Lieutenant
and a Gene-
ral.*

Sight, much less sustain the Charge of our Soldiers. Their first Ranks being broken, the rest turn'd their Backs and were routed : But *Sylla*, to prevent his Mens pursuing too far, sounded a Retreat. 'Twas generally believ'd, if he had push'd his Success, that Day might have determin'd the War : Yet he was not to be condemn'd, because the Offices of a Lieutenant and a General are very different ; the first ought never to exceed his Orders, but upon a very extraordinary Occasion ; tho' the other may act without Restraint. *Sylla* thought he had done enough to deliver his own Party out of Danger, and had he gone further, perhaps he might have been reflected on, for assuming a greater Power than belong'd to him. *Pompey's* Men found great Difficulty in retreating, for having mounted to the Top of a Hill, when they came to descend again, our Soldiers had a great Advantage over 'em : The Dispute continu'd till almost Sun-set ; for Hope of accomplishing their Design made 'em maintain the Fight with great Obstinacy. But *Pompey* at last, finding no other way, possess'd himself of another Hill, beyond the Reach of Darts and Engines from our Turret : Here he sat down, fortify'd the Place, and brought all his Forces thither.

Our Men were engag'd in two other Places at the same time ; for *Pompey* attack'd several Castles at once, to disperse our Forces, and prevent one from sending Relief to the other. *Volcatius Tullus*, in one Place, sustain'd and repuls'd the Charge of an entire Legion with three Cohorts ; in another, the *Germans* sallying out slew several of the Enemy, and return'd safe again within our Lines.

*Volcatius
Tullus re-
pulses a Le-
gion of Pom-
pey's with
three Co-
horts.*

*The Num-
ber of the
Slain on both
Sides.*

*Scæva's
Courage and
Reward.*

* The Number of these Arrows, and the Holes *Scæva* had in his Shield, are almost incredible ; but the Encrease no doubt is owing to those that have transcrib'd the Original ; some Manuscripts reduce these Holes to 120, which agrees with the Number mention'd by *Suetonius*, which

which had two hundred and thirty Holes in it. *Ca-* War in
far therefore, to reward a Person that had so well me- Greece.
 rited from him and the Republick, presented him with
 † six hundred sixty Six Pounds, thirteen Shillings and
 four Pence Sterling; and promoted him from the
 eighth Rank, to be first Centurion of the Legion; for
 his Courage had contributed much to the saving of the
 Fort. As for the Cohort, he decreed them double Pay,
 and double Allowances for Meat and Cloathing, with
 many other Military Ornaments.

Mr. Edmyns 600 l. But if Thomasius's Account be true, whose excellent (tho' short &
Dissertation on Latin Monies, I dare venture to rely on, both these Gentlemen must be
Mistaken, especially the French; for computing their Crowns at English Value, which
they fall considerable short of, the Sum will but amount to 500 l.

+ The Original is Milli-
 bus ducentis
 Eris. Mr.
 D' Ablan-
 court tran-
 slates this
 Deux Mille
 Eeus, two
 thousand
 Crowns;

Pompey, having wrought all the Night to compleat
 his Trenches, built his Turrets afterwards, and raising
 his Fortifications fifteen Foot high, cover'd that Part of
 his Camp with Mantlets. Having stay'd there five
 Days, by the favour of a very dark Night he retreated
 in Silence to his former Works, after he had closely
 block'd up the Gates of his Camp, to prevent a Pur-
 suit.

CHAP. XX.

LONGINUS and *Calvisius* having possess'd them-
 selves of *Aetolia*, *Acharnania*, and *Amphilochis*; *Caesar*
 thought it convenient to pursue his good Fortune, and
 attempt the gaining of *Achaia*: Wherefore he sent *Fusius*
Kalenus, *Q. Sabinus*, and *Cassius* thither, with a De-
 tachment. On Notice of their Approach, *Rutilius Lu-*
pus, who commanded that Province for *Pompey*, lodg'd
 himself in the *Isthmus*, hoping to stop their Passage.
 But *Delphos*, *Thebes*, and *Orchomenus*, of their own ac-
 cord submitted to *Kalenus*; some States he obtain'd by
 Force, and to others sent Embassadors, persuading 'em
 to embrace *Caesar's* Interest.

Kalenus,
Sabinus and
Cassius sent
 to *Achaia*.

Thus *Fusius* employ'd his Time: *Caesar*, in the mean *Caesar of*
 while, omitted not drawing out his Forces every Day, *sers Pompey*
 offering *Pompey* Battel on equal Ground; and, to pro- *Battel;*
 voke him to accept it, led his Army up so near the E- *which he de-*
 nemy's Camp, that his Van-guard was almost within *clines.*
 Engine shot of their Rampier. *Pompey* indeed, to save
 his Credit, drew out his Legions too; but so close to
 their Trenches, that his third Line touch'd the Rampier,
 and

War in
Greece.



Cæsar sends
Clodius to
Scipio to
treat about a
Peace.

His Message;

and all his Army might have been cover'd by the Weapons cast from thence.

Such was the Posture of Affairs, in *Achaia* and at *Durazzo*, when *Cæsar* had notice of *Scipio's* Arrival in *Macedonia*: And still retaining the same peaceable Designs, he dispatch'd away *Clodius* to him, an intimate Friend to 'em both; whom *Cæsar* had entertain'd upon *Scipio's* Recommendation. Before his Departure, he gave him a Letter to deliver, with other Instructions to this Effect; *That he had left nothing unattempted to attain a Peace, tho' he believ'd his Endeavours had been frustrated by the Neglect of the Persons he had employ'd; who durst not mention his Demands to Pompey at a proper time: But he knew Scipio's Power to be so considerable, that he could not freely advise, but enforce the Execution of his own Counsels; and oblige Pompey to hearken to Reason. For he had the independent Command of an Army, could back his Authority by Arms, bless Italy and the Provinces with Peace; and make the whole Empire his Debtor, for the Restoration of her Health.*

which proves
ineffectual.

Clodius perform'd his Commission, and at first met a favourable Audience, but afterwards could not be heard: For *Favonius*, having reprimanded *Scipio*, render'd the Negotiation ineffectual, as was discovered after the Conclusion of the War. *Cæsar* in the mean while, that he might the easilier shut up *Pompey's* Horse in *Durazzo*, and prevent their Foraging, blockaded all the Roads (which we have already said were narrow) with mighty strong Works, on which he erected Castles. But *Pompey*, finding they could not effect what he had design'd, convey'd 'em by Sea from *Durazzo* to his Camp again. Forage was so scarce, they were oblig'd to feed their Horses with green Reeds, or Leaves taken off the Trees; for all the Corn they had sown within their Lines was consum'd, and they were oblig'd to send a great Way about by Sea for Forage to *Corfu* and *Acharnania*; which falling short, they mixed it with Barley, to support their Horses. But afterwards having consum'd all their Barley, Grass, Herbs and Boughs of Trees; their Horses being almost dead with Famine, *Pompey* thought it high time to make an Eruption.

Extream
want of Fo-
rage in Pom-
pey's Camp.

C H A P. XXI.

War in
Greece.

In *Cæsar's* Camp were two *Savoyards*, that came along with the Cavalry their Country sent *Roscillus* and *Ægus*, Sons of *Adbucillus*, who for many Years together had bore the most considerable Sway of any Person in *Savoy*. These were Gentlemen of extraordinary Courage, and had done *Cæsar* particular Service during his Wars in *Gaul*; wherefore he rewarded 'em with great Offices, took Care to get 'em introduc'd into the Senate before the usual Age, gave 'em great Sums of Money, and rais'd their Fortunes by ample Grants of forfeited Estates: Nor had their Personal Merit gain'd 'em less Credit with the Army than with *Cæsar*; but presuming upon his Favour, and growing barbarously proud and haughty, they despis'd their Country-men, cheated the Cavalry of their Pay, and apply'd the Money to their own private Use. Whereupon the Soldiers complain'd of this Usage in a Body to *Cæsar*, taxing 'em, amongst other Articles, with making false Musters.

Roscillus
and *Ægus*
cheat their
Countrymen
the *Savoy-*
ards of their
Pay.

Cæsar re-
primands 'em
for it.

Cæsar, thinking it no proper time to take notice of the Matter, and having a particular Respect for the Persons complain'd of, took an Occasion to reprimand 'em in private, for defrauding their Soldiers, telling 'em, they ought to expect that Reward for their Services, from his Favour, which their Merits deserv'd. However, this Affair disgust'd 'em, because it diminish'd their former Credit; for Consciousness of the Fact render'd 'em as uneasie as the Reflections that were cast upon 'em for it. Thus prompted by Shame, and perhaps by Fear, not believing themselves clear'd, but that their Punishment was only deferr'd to another time, they resolv'd to desert, try their Fortunes elsewhere, and search for new Friendships: Having communicated their Design to a few of their Clients, whom they might entrust with so criminal a Project, they at first attempted to murder *C. Volusenus*, General of the Horse, (as was discover'd when the War was over) that they might render themselves more welcome to *Pompey* by so signal a Piece of Service. But finding this Design impracticable, because they could not obtain an Opportunity for accomplishing it: Having borrow'd vast Sums of Money, on pretence of making Restitu-

tion,
They design to
murder Vo-
lusenus, and
then desert.

War in
Greece.

They desert
to Pompey.

Give him
Intelligence
where Cæ-
sar's Works
are strong,
and where
the weakest.

Pompey's
Preparations
for a Sally.

A Descrip-
tion of the
Place Pom-
pey storm'd.

tion, instead of that, they bought up great Numbers of Horses, and went over to *Pompey*, with those they had admitted into the Secrer.

Pompey, because they were Persons of Quality, liberally educated, came well attended with Servants and Horses, were reputed Men of Courage, and in great Esteem with *Cæsar*, waited on 'em round about his Works, to shew 'em to his Soldiers, as a very unusual sight. For before that time neither Horse nor Foot Soldiers had ever deserted from *Cæsar* to him, tho' Deserters flock'd almost every Day from *Pompey* to *Cæsar*, especially from amongst the new Levies in *Epirus*, *Ætolia*, and those Countries that had declar'd for his Interest.

The *Savoyards*, having accurately remark'd all the strong Places and Defects in our Works, the particular Times, distance of Place, the Strength and Vigilance of the Guards, with the Character of each individual Officer, gave *Pompey* an exact Account.

C H A P. XXII.

UPON this Intelligence, *Pompey* resolv'd to put his former Design of breaking out in Execution: Wherefore he commanded the Soldiers to cover their Helmets with Osiers, and prepare Fascines; which being done, he sent a strong Party of light-arm'd Infantry and Archers, so soon as 'twas dark, with the Materials for filling up *Cæsar's* Trenches, on board some small Vessel which he order'd to meet him, together with the Gallies that lay at *Durazzo*, at that part of *Cæsar's* Lines nearest the Sea, which lay the farthest distant from his Headquarters. Having given these their several Instructions, about Midnight he made a Draught of sixty Cohorts from his Camp and Fortifications, then march'd to the Place appointed. The Works, which *Pompey* design'd to storm, were guarded by *Lentulus Marcellinus*, the Treasurer, with the Ninth Legion, who had taken *Fulvius Posthumus* for his Coadjutor, because he found himself indispos'd. Here was a Ditch fifteen Foot deep, with a Rampier ten Foot high, and of an equal Breadth; about two hundred Yards within them was another Rampier something lower than the former, and with a contrary Front, which *Cæsar* had rais'd not many Days before, to prevent being attack'd from the Sea, and defend his Men if the Conflict should grow dubious.

But

War in
Greece.



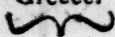
But the Extent of the Lines, and the perpetual Fatigue the Soldiers had endur'd in inclosing a Circuit of eighteen Miles, had interrupted this Work: So the cross Rampier, which should have made a Communication between these and the rest of our Lines, was not compleat: This Pompey had Notice of from the Savoyards, which was of fatal Consequence to us. The Out-guards of the ninth Legion, by break of Day, discover'd Pompey's Forces; which surpris'd 'em extreamly; for at the same Instant the Foot and Archers from on board cast Showers of Darts upon the outward Rampier; those that came thither by Land were filling up their Trenches, fixing their scaling Ladders, and driving our Soldiers from the inner Works by their Darts and Engines; having first dispos'd considerable Numbers of Archers on both sides our Fortifications. The only Refuge we had left in this Extremity, was to ply the Enemy with Stones; but the Officers they had wound about their Helmets, prevented our doing any great Execution. To add to these Misfortunes, having descry'd the Defect in our Lines, they landed their Men between the two Rampiers, attack'd our Soldiers in the Rere, and oblig'd 'em to quit both sides of their Works.

Marcellinus, on Notice of this Disorder, sent a Party to sustain his Out-guards; which arriv'd not before they were routed; and could neither persuade 'em to rally, nor were able themselves to maintain their Ground. The more Supplies he sent, the more Confusion he created; for they were no sooner arriv'd, but they were infected with the same Fear that possess'd their Fellow-Soldiers, and only serv'd to prevent each other's Retreat. During this Engagement, the Eagle-bearer of the Legion, finding himself mortally wounded, and almost spent with Loss of Blood, thus address'd the Cavalry. *Many Years have I carefully guarded this Ensign, and now I surrender it safe to Cæsar before I die: Let me conjure you, therefore, deliver it into his own Hands, nor suffer so great an Ignominy as the Loss of an Eagle, a thing never heard of in Cæsar's Army.* Thus the Standard was preserv'd, tho' all the Centurions of the first Cohort, except the Primiple, were kill'd.

The Courage
of the Eagle-
Bearer.

The Enemy, having made a dreadful Slaughter amongst our Men, had almost forc'd their way to Marcellinus's Quarters, and struck no small Terror into the rest of the Cohorts of that Legion; when M. Antony, who lay nearest Marcellinus, on Advice of the Dispute, def-

War in
Greece.



descended with twelve Cohorts from the higher Ground to his Relief: *Antony's* Arrival soon put a stop to their Career, and inspir'd our Party with fresh Courage. Not long after, *Cæsar*, having Notice by the Smoak of the Castles, the usual Signal upon such Occasions; having drawn some Cohorts out of the Lines, came up to the Assistance of his Soldiers.

C H A P. XXIII.

Pompey
breaks out of
the Fortifica-
tions.

Cæsar and
Pompey's
new Camp.

CÆSAR, understanding the Loss he had sustain'd, perceiving *Pompey* had now escap'd out of his Works, was encamp'd so conveniently near the Sea, that his Horse had Liberty enough to forage; and he still enjoy'd the same Use of his Shipping as before, alter'd his former Scheme, which had prov'd ineffectual, and encamp'd as near *Pompey* as he could. When his Camp was fortify'd, *Cæsar* had Notice from his Scouts, that a certain Number of the Enemy's Cohorts, which to them appear'd a compleat Legion, were retir'd behind a Wood into the Works that had formerly been desert-ed. For some few Days before, *Cæsar's* Ninth Legion being attack'd by a Party of *Pompey's*, whilst they were carrying on the Lines, retir'd a little farther off, and encamp'd themselves upon another Hill, adjoining to a Wood, nor above Four Hundred Paces distant from the Sea: But afterwards, *Cæsar*, for certain Reasons, remov'd beyond that place, which *Pompey*, not many Days after, possess'd himself of: And because the Works were not large enough to contain so many Legions as he design'd to lodge there, leaving the old Rampier standing, he cast up another beyond it, designing the first should serve instead of a Citadel; from the left Angle of his Camp he had likewise drawn a Line of Communication to the River, about Six Hundred Foot long, that his Army might fetch Water without Danger. But some time after, changing his Mind for some Reasons not necessary to be mention'd at present, he left the Place: So the Camp, with all the Works, remain'd several Days intire.

Hither the Scouts reported they saw the Standard of a Legion carry'd, which was confirm'd by Advice from the higher Turrets. This Place was about Five Hundred Paces distant from *Pompey's* new Camp; *Cæsar* therefore, being desirous to repair the Loss he had sustain'd, and hoping he might surprize this Legion, left
only

only two Cohorts for a Blind to carry on the Works : *War in Greece.*
 And taking a different Rout, march'd as privately as he could with thirty three more, (amongst which Number was the ninth Legion, that had suffer'd so severely in the late Action, by the Loss of several Centurions and Soldiers,) he led 'em, ready drawn up in two Lines, to the lesser Camp, where *Pompey's* Legion had lodg'd themselves. Nor was *Caesar* deceiv'd in his Opinion, for he arriv'd at the Place before *Pompey* could have notice of his Design ; and tho' the Fortifications were strong, yet the Left Wing, where he himself was present, briskly charging the Enemy, oblig'd 'em to quit the Rampier : But the Port being stopp'd by a * Turn-Pike, gave 'em an Opportunity to maintain their Ground, and oppose our Entrance : Here *T. Pul-
fio*, who betray'd *Antony's* Forces, gave signal Proofs of his Courage. But at last the Virtue of our Men prevail'd, and having forc'd the Bar, they first enter'd the outward Trenches, afterwards the inner Works or Citadel, and kill'd several of the Enemy, for thither they had retir'd. But Fortune, whose Influence is powerful in all things, especially in War, where she causes the greatest Revolutions in a Moment, now exerted her Prerogative. For the Right Wing of *Caesar's* Party, being unacquainted with the Place, seeking for another Gate, follow'd the Rampier, which led to the River, where they arriv'd before they perceiv'd their Mistake : Then finding there was no body to oppose 'em, got over the Rampier, and were follow'd by the Horse.

Caesar's ^{tempt to}
 off a Pa
 of Pompe
 He has g
 Success a
 first.

* Eritius,
 which Suet
 dius calls E-
 ritius, and
 differs not
 much from
 the modern
 Cheval de
 Frize.

C H A P. XXIV.

In the mean while *Pompey* having sufficient notice, detach'd the fifth Legion to relieve his Party. Thus, at the same Instant, his Cavalry approach'd ours, and our Soldiers, who had possess'd the Camp, descri'd the fifth Legion marching to the Place of Action in Order of Battel ; which immediately chang'd the Posture of Affairs. For the Enemy, encourag'd by Hopes of speedy Relief, possess'd themselves of the *Decuman* Port, and charg'd our Cohorts. Our Cavalry having got over the Rampier into a narrow Passage, fearing they could not secure their Retreat, first began to fly ; the Right Wing perceiving their Disorder, and finding themselves cut off from the rest of their Party, to prevent being set upon in to disadvantageous a Place, follow'd their Example ; se-

But Fortune
 turns about,

and *Pompey*
 gets the bus-
 ter.

War in
Greece.



veral of 'em to avoid being shut up between the two Ram-
piers, which were ten Foot high, cast themselves from
thence into the Trenches ; where the first Ranks being
trodden to Death, procur'd a safe Retreat to those that
came after. In the mean while the Soldiers of the Left
Wing, perceiving *Pompey's* Approach, and observing the
Confusion of the Right, apprehended they should be
enclos'd, and attack'd from without as well as within,
began to think of retreating the same Way they came
thither : In fine, nothing was to be seen but Fear, Fly-
ing, and Disorder. And when *Cæsar*, to stop their Flight,
lay'd hold of the Ensigns, and commanded 'em to halt,
some rid away as fast as their Horses could carry 'em,
others were so frighten'd, they let the Standards drop
out of their Hands, and no body obey'd his Orders.

Whilst Affairs were in this desperate Condition, it
happen'd very fortunately, to prevent all our Party from
being cut off, That *Pompey*, apprehending an Ambus-
cade, as I suppose, because the Business look'd so much
better on his side than could be expected, for just before
he saw his Soldiers flying out of the Camp, durst not
for some time approach the Works. His Cavalry were
prevented pursuing by the narrowness of the Way, and
the Difficulty of passing the Ports which *Cæsar's* Soldiers
were Masters of. So small a matter happen'd to be
of great Importance to both Parties. For the Works
that led to the Water, as they depriv'd *Cæsar* of the
Victory he had obtain'd, so they preserv'd his Men by
retarding the Pursuit of the Enemy.

In the two Engagements of this Day *Cæsar* lost thir-
ty two Colours, with nine hundred and sixty Men, a-
mongst which Number fell many Roman Knights of
Note, as *Pelginas Turicanus*, *Gallus* a Senator's Son,
C. Pelginas of *Placentia*, *A. Gravius* of *Puresoli*, *M. Sa-*
cratiotus of *Capua*, besides thirty Tribunes and Centu-
rions : But the greatest Part of them died without
Wounds, being lost in the Trenches, Works and Ri-
ver, ruin'd by their own Fear and disorderly Flight.
After this Engagement *Pompey* was saluted by the Name
of Emperor, a Title he wore ever after ; however he
us'd it not in the Style of his Letters, nor suffer'd Law-
rel to be carry'd before in his Consular Rods. But the
Traytor *Labienus*, having begg'd the Prisoners might be
deliver'd into his Hands, caus'd 'em to be brought out
for Ostentation, and calling 'em Fellow-Soldiers, de-
manded, in a haughty manner, whether Veteran Sol-
diers

Pompey ob-
tains the Ti-
tle of Empe-
ror.

Labienus's
Cruelty to
Cæsar's Sol-
diers that
were taken.

diers us'd to fly ; then caus'd 'em to be murder'd in the Presence of the whole Army, to gain himself the greater Credit with *Pompey*.

War in Greece.

Pompey's Party proud of this Success.

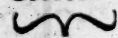
The Enemy were so puffed up with this Success, that they thought no longer of carrying on the War, believing themselves compleat Victors already : Not remembering the inequality of Number on our Side, their Advantage of Place, the Inconvenience of the Passage; their being first Masters of the Camp; our Confusion within and without the Fortifications, with the Separation of our Forces that could not relieve each other; which were the real Causes of the Defeat : Not considering the Battel was manag'd with no manner of Order, no formal Engagement; that our Soldiers did themselves no more harm in the narrow Passes, than they receiv'd from the Enemy : And lastly, they made no Allowance for the common Events of War ; where the most insignificant Causes, groundless Suspicions, Surprizes or Scruples, prove of fatal Consequence ; where an Army is often lost by the Fall of a General, or the Error of a Tribune : But as if the Success of the Day was wholly owing to their own Virtue, and Fortune had no further Power over 'em, divulg'd the Fame of this Action throughout the Universe.

C H A P. XXV.

CÆSAR's former Scheme thus render'd ineffectual, he resolv'd to think of other Methods; wherefore, having drain'd all his Forts, quitting the Siege, he appointed his Men a general Rendezvous, where he made an Harangue to encourage, And advise 'em not to be dejected, that Fortune, to whom they were indebted for the Reduction of Italy without Bloodshed, the Acquisition of Spain, tho' guarded by two powerful and experienc'd Generals, and the Friendship of neighbouring Provinces that furnish'd 'em with Corn, had mingled one Disappointment with so continu'd a Series of Success. That they ought to remember how they had escaped falling into the Enemy's Hand, when they sail'd thro' the midst of their Squadrons; which possess'd all the Coasts and Havens; and endeavour to overcome ill Fortune by their Industry, attributing the Damage to her alone; not to him who had led 'em to an advantageous Place, possess'd himself of the Enemy's Camp, expell'd and overcome them that oppos'd him : But whether the Loss of the Victory he had actually obtain'd was owing

Cæsar de-camps, first makes a Speech to his Soldiers.

War in
Greece.



Cæsar cashier-
ers some En-
signs. The
Soldiers de-
sire to re-
dress the
Loss.

to the Confusion his Soldiers were in, their Mistake, or Fortune, it import'd 'em all to endeavour to retrieve it by their Application: Which might turn the Scales again to their Advantage; as happen'd at Cleremont; where, of their own Accord, they offer'd the Enemy Battel, who not long before were afraid to engage 'em.

After he had ended this Speech he cashier'd some Ensigns: But the whole Army were so sensibly afflicted for the Disgrace they had receiv'd, and so desirous to regain their Credit, that there was no Occasion either for the Tribunes or Centurions to remind 'em of their Duty; for every Man impos'd a harder Task upon himself, than either his Duty or Cæsar requir'd from him, as a Punishment for the late Dishonour; all were eager to engage the Enemy, and some Officers of Note were so touch'd with their Intreaties, that they desir'd Cæsar to venture a Battel. But he thought it not convenient to depend upon an Army that had been so lately daunted, 'till further Time should have settled their Minds; besides, having quitted his Works, he was in Pain for his Convoys.

He decamps.

Wherefore having taken Care for the sick and wound- ed, without further Delay, as soon as Night approach'd, he sent away all his Baggage under a Guard of one Legion towards *Apollonia*, with Orders not to halt, 'till they should have perform'd their Journey. This Affair dispatch'd, keeping only two Legions, about three in the Morning he drew out the main Body of the Army at several Gates of the Camp, and order'd 'em to follow the same Rout the Baggage had taken. Soon after these had began their March, that Military Discipline might be observ'd, and the News of his removing known as late as possible, he order'd the usual Sign for decamping to be given; then setting out himself, overtook the rest of his Forces.

Pompey's
Cavalry at-
tack his
Rere; but
are defeated.

Pompey immediately took the Alarm, and hoping to surprise Cæsar's Army during their March, whilst they were incumber'd with their Baggage, drew out all his Forces, sending his Cavalry before to stay the Rere: But Cæsar having dispos'd of his Carriages, march'd with so much Dispatch, that he arriv'd at the River *Genusus*, before the Enemy's Horse could come up with him. Here they charg'd his Army in the Rere; but he sent his Cavalry, with a Parry of *Antesignani*, to sustain their Charge, who oblig'd 'em to retreat, and after having kill'd several of the Enemy, return'd safe again to the main Body.

Cæsar

Cæsar, having march'd as far as he design'd that Day, and crossed the *Genusus*, took up his Quarters in his old Camp, over-against *Asparagium*. He commanded all the Foot to keep themselves within the Rampier; but sent out the Cavalry to forage, with Orders to return immediately by the *Decuman* Porr.

War in Greece.

Cæsar encamps over-against *Asparagium*.

C H A P. XXVI.

POMPEY likewise, having compleated his Day's Journey, lodg'd himself in his former Camp at *Asparagium*; but his Soldiers, finding themselves at leisure, because the Works were entire, some made long Excursions to fetch Wood or Forage, and others, having set out upon so short Notice that they were oblig'd to leave great Part of their Baggage, entic'd by the Nearness of the Place, laid down their Arms, and went back again to fetch what they had left behind 'em.

Pompey does the like

Cæsar foreseeing the Absence of the Soldiers would prevent *Pompey's* Pursuit, about Noon gave the Sign for decamping, drew out his Army, and having march'd twice as far as the Day before, remov'd eight Miles from *Pompey*, who could not follow him.

Cæsar gains a Day's March before him.

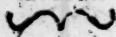
The Day after *Cæsar* decamp'd again about four in the Morning, having sent away his Baggage over Night; that in case he should be obliged to engage the Enemy, he might the better prevent a Surprise; having no Carriages to hinder him. This Order he observ'd in his March every Day; by which means he cross'd the deepest Rivers, and most rugged Passes, without the least Inconvenience. For *Pompey*, having intirely lost the first Day, and in vain attempted by long Journeys to overtake *Cæsar* afterwards, finding he could not accomplish his Desires, resolv'd the fourth Day to pursue no farther.

and he cannot overtake him again.

Cæsar was oblig'd to call at *Apollonia*, to leave the wounded there, pay his Army, confirm his Friends in their Fidelity, and dispose Garrisons for the Safety of the Country. But he allow'd no longer Time for these Affairs than was absolutely necessary; for apprehending *Domitius* might be surpris'd by *Pompey*, he made all imaginable haste to join him; for the Scheme which *Cæsar* proceeded on was this; that *Pompey* would either follow him, and being drawn far distant from the Sea, and those Provisions which he had treasur'd up at *Durazzo*, be reduc'd by want of Subsistence to engage him upon equal Terms; or cross the Seas for *Italy*;

Cæsar calls at *Apollonia*; from thence marches to join *Domitius*.

War in
Greece.



whither, having join'd *Domitius*, he would follow him thro' *Illyricum*. But should *Pompey* invest *Apollonia* or *Oricum*, and endeavour to deprive him of the Sea-Coasts, then *Caesar* would besiege *Scipio*, which would oblige him to desist from that Attempt. Wherefore having wrote to *Domitius*, to acquaint him with his Design, and left a Garrison of four Cohorts at *Apollonia*, of one at *Lissus*, of three at *Oricum*, and dispos'd of the Sick and Wounded, he march'd thro' *Epirus* and *Arcanania*.

C H A P. XXVII.

POMPEY guessing at *Caesar's* Design, thought it necessary to make what haste he could to *Scipio's* Relief, if *Caesar* march'd that way : But if he resolv'd not to quit *Corfu* and the Sea-Coasts, 'till he receiv'd the Legions and Cavalry he expected, then *Pompey* would attack *Domitius*. Thus the Affair depended on Dispatch, for it highly import'd each Army to relieve their Friends, and not lose a Moment which might furnish 'em with an Opportunity of surprising their Enemies.

Pompey
marches to
Macedonia.

Pompey march'd the nearest way thro' *Candavia* for *Macedonia* ; and it happen'd very unluckily, that *Domitius*, who for many Days together had encamp'd over-against *Scipio*, was now gone to *Heraclea Sentica*, a Fief of *Candavia*, to provide his Army with Corn : Thus Fortune seem'd to throw him directly in *Pompey's* way, which *Caesar* then had no Notice of. *Pompey* had taken Care to send Letters before him to every State and Province, with an Account of the Action at *Durazzo* ; wherein he enlarg'd so much to his own Advantage, that 'twas generally believ'd *Caesar* had lost almost all his Forces, and was oblig'd to fly. This Report made some States come over to *Pompey*, and secure the Passes of their Country ; so that several Expresses were sent between *Caesar* and *Domitius*, which were all intercept'd : But the *Savoyards* that attended on *Roscillus* and *Agus*, meeting *Domitius's* Couriers upon the Road, either out of

Domitius
narrowly es-
capes him by
Advice from
some of his
own Party.

Caesar and
Domitius
join'd.

Vain-glory, or ancient Friendship, (because they had serv'd together in *Gaul*) gave 'em an exact Account of the Posture of Affairs, *Caesar's* March, and *Pompey's* Arrival. Thus *Domitius* was oblig'd to the Enemy for his Intelligence, narrowly escap'd the Danger, being not above Four Hours March before 'em, and arriv'd at *Eginium*, a Town situate on the Frontiers of *Thessaly*, where he join'd *Caesar's* Army.

C H A P. XXVIII.

War in
Greece.Cæsar
marches into
Thessaly.Androsthe-
nes shuts the
Gates of
Gomphi a-
gainst him.Cæsar
forms and
takes the
Town in four
Hours time.

CÆSAR, having join'd *Domitius*, march'd to *Gomphi*, the first Town in *Thessaly* towards *Epirus*; which Nation, not many Months before, of their own Accord had sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*, to desire he would send an Army to defend 'em, and command what their Country afforded. But hither likewise had the Fame of the Battel of *Durazzo* extended, and *Androsthenes*, Prætor of the Province, desiring rather to be a Companion of *Pompey's* Success, than *Cæsar's* Adversity, summon'd all the Servants and Children out of the Fields into the Town, where he shut the Gates against *Cæsar*, dispatching Messengers to *Pompey* and *Scipio* to relieve him; for he durst rely upon the Fortifications of the Town, provided they would come immediately, tho' it would be impossible for him to hold out any Time. But *Scipio*, on Advice of the Armies quitting *Durazzo*, march'd to *Larissa*, and *Pompey* was not near *Thessaly*. Wherefore *Cæsar* having encamp'd himself, caus'd all things necessary for a Storm to be prepar'd, then, to encourage his Soldiers to make a vigorous Assault, he told 'em what Importance it wou'd be of, to render themselves Masters of so rich a Town, stor'd with sufficient Provisions to relieve all their Wants; that the taking this Place would strike a Terror into the other States, but it must be done before the Enemy came to their Relief. The Soldiers were so eager to effect the Business, that tho' they began not the Storm 'till Three in the Afternoon, the same Day they arriv'd there, yet they carry'd the Place before Sun-set. As a Reward for their Valour, *Cæsar* gave 'em free leave to plunder; and having decamp'd, march'd to *Metropolis*, not allowing Fame Time enough to acquaint 'em with the Fate of *Gomphi*, before his Arrival.

Metropolis
surrenders.

The Inhabitants, mov'd by the same Reasons, at first deny'd him Entrance, and mann'd the Walls with Soldiers; but afterwards, being inform'd from the Prisoners whom *Cæsar* brought from *Gomphi*, that their City was sack'd; they open'd their Gates, and *Cæsar* took care the Soldiers should commit no Excesses in the Town. The other States of *Thessaly*, reflecting on the different Usage *Metropolis* and *Gomphi* had met with, one for receiving, the other for opposing *Cæsar*, all immediately submitted to him, except *Larissa*; which *Scipio* possess'd with

All the
States of
Thessaly, ex-
cept *Larissa*,
do the like.

War in
Greece.



with a considerable Army. Thus *Cæsar* having render'd himself Master of a plentiful Country, where the Corn was almost ripe, here resolv'd to take up his Quarters, attend *Pompey's* Arrival, and determine the War.

C H A P. XXIX.

Pompey arrives in Thessaly; joins Scipio; his Speech to his Soldiers.

Hot Disputes in Pompey's Army about the Sharing of Offices.

POMPEY, not many Days after, came into *Thessaly*, and having join'd *Scipio*, assembled both Armies, made a Speech to the Soldiers, wherein *He* first return'd his own Thanks for the Services they had done; then encourag'd *Scipio's* to put in for Sharers with them of the Booties and Rewards, the Victory being already obtain'd. Having receiv'd both Armies into one Camp, he divided his Command with *Scipio*, ordering a Prætorian Tent to be erected for him, and the Trumpets to attend him. *Pompey's* Forces being thus increas'd by the uniting of two such powerful Armies, his Soldiers Courage was confirm'd, and they made themselves so sure of Victory, that every Moment seem'd to delay their Return to *Italy*; wherefore when *Pompey* acted slowly, or with Consideration, they would often say, the Business only requir'd a Day to dispatch it; but *Pompey* was in love with Authority, and car'd not how long he detain'd the Consuls and Prætors amongst the Number of his Servants. They began already to dispute in Publick about the Rewards they were to have, the Priests Offices, and pitch'd upon those who should annually succeed to the Consulat. Others put in for the Goods and Houses of those that were of *Cæsar's* Party: And it was warmly debated in Council, whether *L. Hirrus*, whom *Pompey* had sent against the *Parthians*, should stand the next Election for Prætor by Proxy: Some urg'd *Pompey's* Promise in his Behalf; and desir'd their Friend, who depended on the General's Honour, might not find himself deceiv'd; others oppos'd it, saying, since he was not the only Person that embark'd in that dangerous Enterprize, there was no reason he should be preferr'd before the rest.

Flamen Domitius.

Domitius, *Scipio*, and *Lentulus Spinther*, were perpetually quærelling for *Cæsar's* Priesthood, and publickly affronted each other about it; *Lentulus* urging the Respect due to his Age, *Domitius* the Interest he had at *Rome*, and *Scipio* depending on his Alliance with *Pompey*. *Attius Rufus* accus'd *L. Afranius* for betraying the Army in *Spain*; and *Domitius* mov'd in Council, there might be a High-Commission of Senators erected, who had

had been present in the War, for trying such as had stay'd at *Rome*, with those that attended *Pompey*, but had not perform'd their Duty. And that these Commissioners might be entrusted with a triple Power, to acquit, condemn to Death, or impose an Amercement. In fine, the whole Army was taken up with the Thoughts of Rewards, Honours, and Revenge; nor contriving how to gain, but how to employ the Victory, after they should obtain it.

War in
Greece.

C H A P. XXX.

CÆSAR, having now provided his Army with Corn, and allow'd the Soldiers sufficient Time to re-assume fresh Courage, after the Battels of *Durazzo*; when he thought their Minds were settled, resolv'd to try whether *Pompey* was inclinable to fight. Wherefore having drawn out his Forces, he rang'd 'em in Order of Battel near their own Trenches, some Distance from *Pompey's*: But the following Days he led 'em up to the Foot of the rising Ground where *Pompey* was encamp'd; which inspir'd his Soldiers with Courage. His Cavalry being much inferior to *Pompey's* in Number, he observ'd his former Discipline, of mingling the stoutest and most active of the *Antesignani* amongst 'em, who by daily Practice and Skirmishes became expert in that way of Combat. Thus he render'd his Cavalry so hardy, that tho' they were but one Thousand, they would upon Occasion sustain the Charge of *Pompey's* seven Thousand, even in open Field, without being surpris'd at their Numbers. For several Days they skirmish'd with good Success, and kill'd one of the *Savoyard* Brothers who deserted to *Pompey*, with several others of his Party.

*Cæsar daily
offers Pompey
Battel; which is not
accepted.*

Pompey having lodg'd himself upon a Hill, drew his Army up at the Foot of the Mountain, expecting to draw *Cæsar* into a disadvantageous Place. But *Cæsar*, finding he could not persuade *Pompey* to accept of Battel, thought it the most convenient way to remove, and always be upon the March; hoping his frequent Decampings might furnish him more commodiously with Corn, and perhaps with an Opportunity of Fighting; at least he was sure of harassing *Pompey's* Army, who were not inur'd to so much Fatigue. Mov'd by these Reasons, he gave the Sign for decamping; but the Tents were no sooner struck, e'er it was observ'd, that *Pompey*, contrary to his usual Custom, had drawn his Legions out

*Cæsar de-
signs to de-
camp;*

at

War in Greece. at a farther Distance from his Camp, and seem'd to offer Battel upon equal Terms. Upon this Cæsar addressing himself to the Soldiers, when the Army was just ready to march out of their Trenches, said, *We must not think of decamping at present, but of giving the Enemy Battel, which we have so long desir'd; we shall not easily find such another Opportunity as this again; let us therefore prepare to engage 'em:* This being said, he immediately drew out his Forces.

but perceiving Pompey had drawn out his Forces, does the like.

Pompey brags he'll defeat Cæsar, without engaging both Armies.

Pompey likewise, as was afterwards known, had resolv'd to offer Battel, in Compliance to the repeated Desires of his Friends. He had declar'd in Council, *He would defeat Cæsar's Forces before both Armies could engage;* but observing several could not conceive his Meaning; I am sensible, said he, *that my Promise almost exceeds Belief, but I will give you my Reasons, that you may fight with more Assurance: I have taken care our Horse, when they approach the Enemy, shall flank their Right Wing, and enclose 'em behind: This they have promis'd to perform, which must certainly disorder 'em, before the Foot can meet each other.* Thus, added he, *we shall decide the Dispute without hazarding the Legions, and almost without receiving a Wound. Nor can there be any Difficulty in the Design, since we are so much superior to 'em in Cavalry: Be ready therefore for the Combat to Morrow, since the happy Occasion you have so long attended is come; and behave your selves worthy of that Opinion the World has of your Valour and Experience.*

Labienus's Speech.

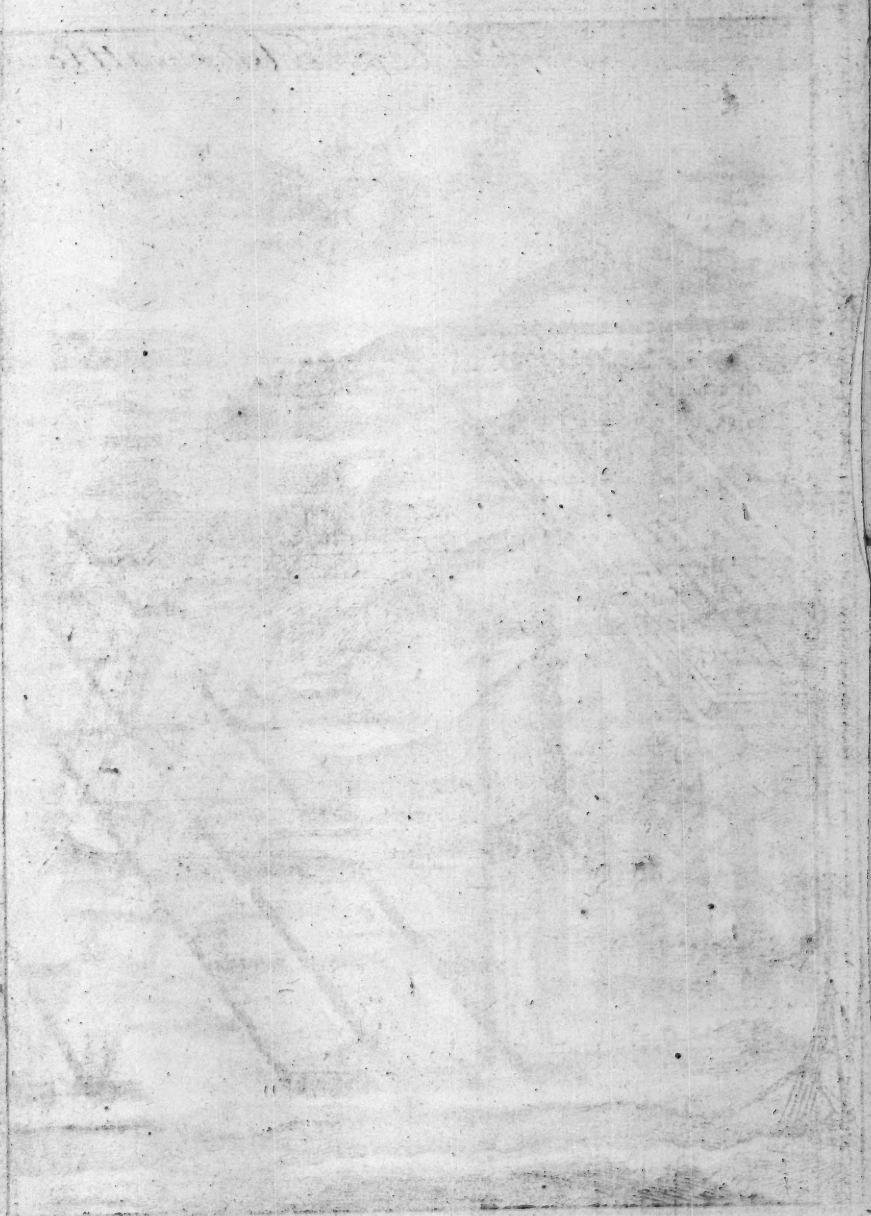
Here ended Pompey's Speech, when Labienus, as well to applaud his Design, as to discredit Cæsar's Army, began thus: *Think not Pompey, you are to engage the Conquerors of Gaul and Germany: I was present at all those Battels, and of my own certain Knowledge can affirm, there are but few of that Army now remaining: Many have been kill'd, as must of Necessity happen in so many Conflicts; many were consum'd by the Plague in Apulia; many have quitted their Arms; and several are left behind to guard Italy. Have you not been inform'd that the Cohorts at Brindisi consist of Invalids? And the Forces which you now behold are compos'd of new Levies, rais'd in Lombardy, and the Colonies beyond the Po. For the Flower of Cæsar's Army fell*

He swears in the two Defeats at Durazzo. Having finish'd what he had to say, Labienus took an Oath never to return to the Camp again, unless victorious.

in the two Defeats at Durazzo. Having finish'd what he had to say, Labienus took an Oath never to return to the Camp again, unless victorious; and desir'd all the rest of the Council might do the like. Pompey so well approv'd the Motion, he was the first that follow'd his

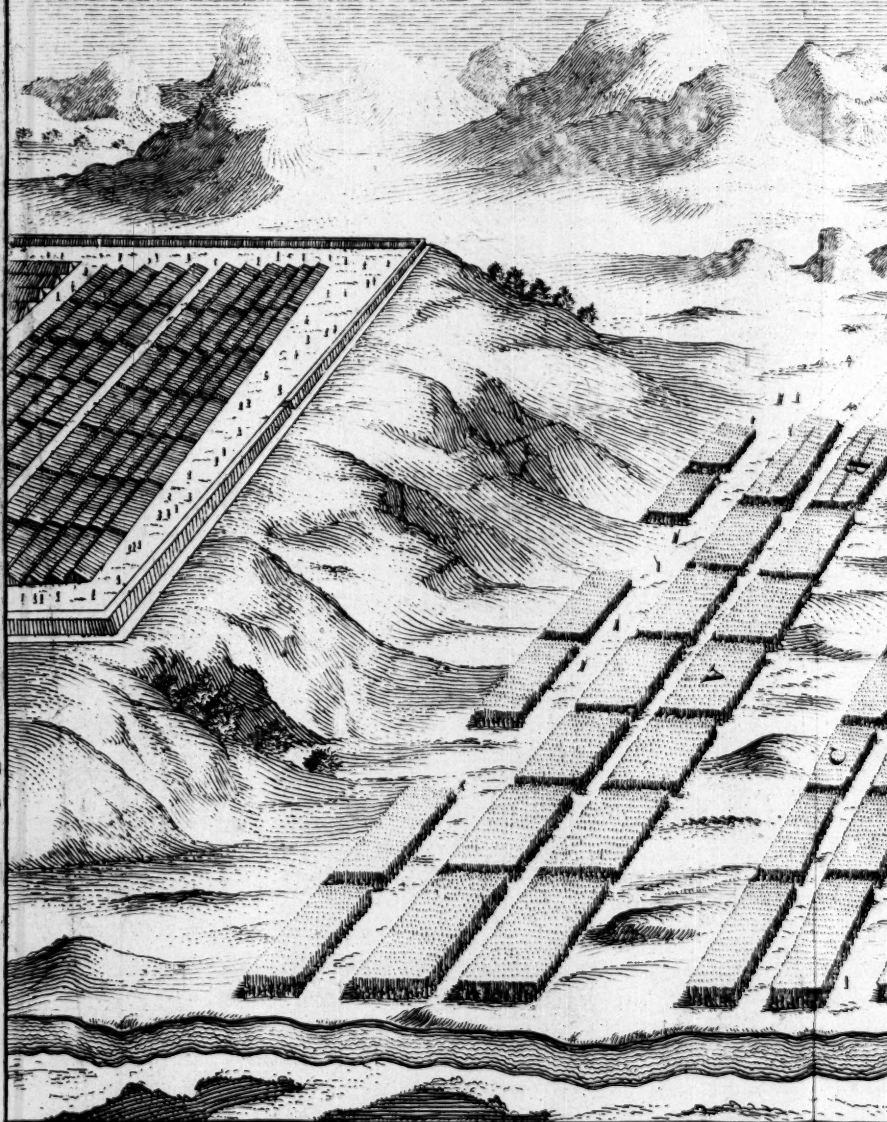
Example:

I.
f.
f.
ft
or
my
ly
e-
i-
e-
d
il,
ld
is
ft
ou
e,
br
to
ot
he
ut
he
y:
he
e-
of
elt
e-
n-
se
ere
en
s;
ve
rd
n-
old
he
ell
he
ft
p-
his
e:

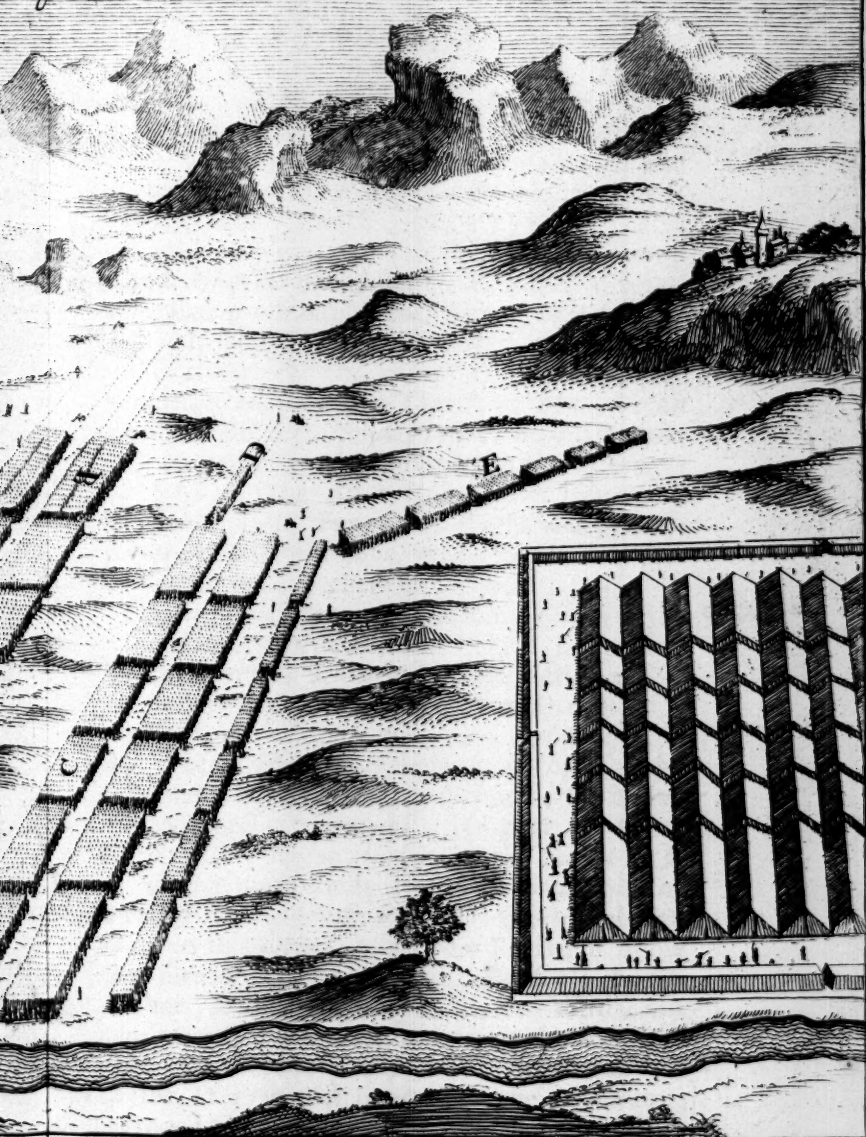


A series of faint, horizontal lines or text at the bottom of the page, possibly a signature or a date, but it is too light to read accurately.

The Battle of Pharsalus



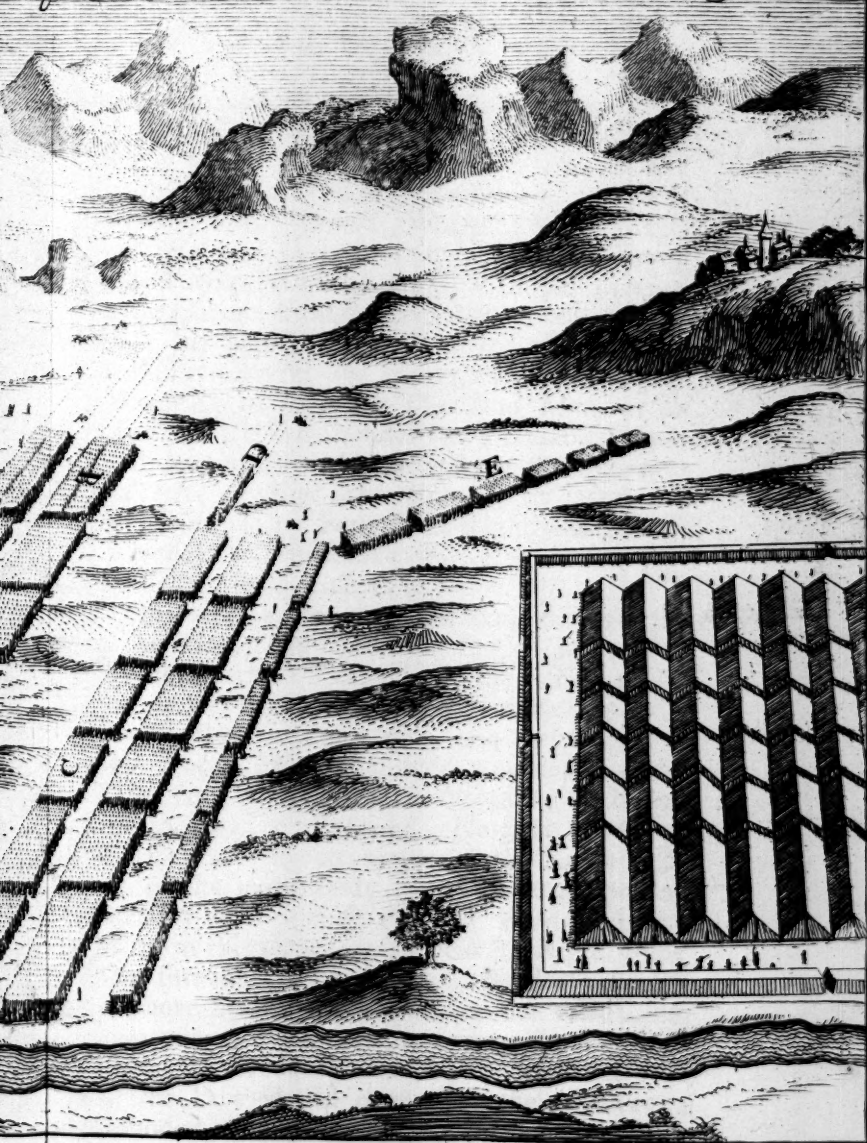
A. Pompey's Army, with his Right wing towards the River
 selves in order to surround Caesar's Right wing. C. C.
 reserved to oppose Pompey's horse.



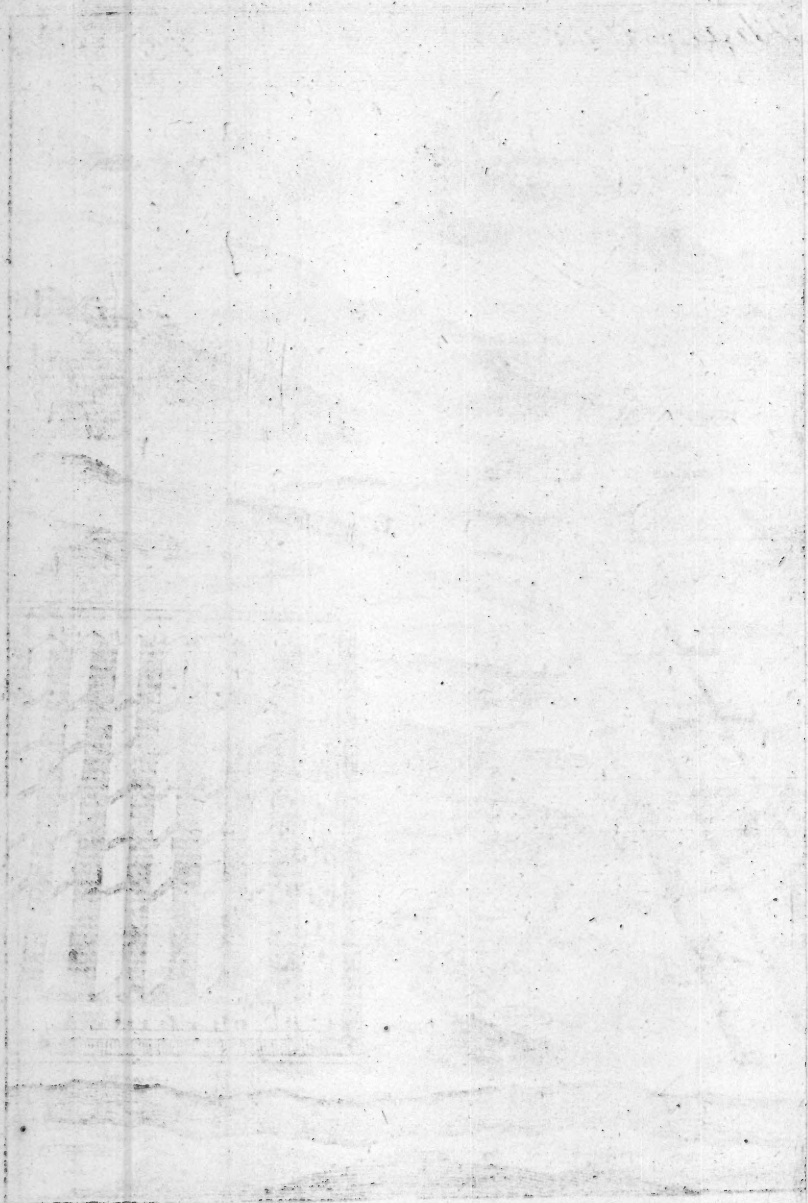
*of River. B. his Cavalry in the Left extending them-
ing. C. Caesar's army. D. his Cavalry. E. the six Cohorts*



A. Pompey's Army, with his Right wing towards the River. B. Caesar's Army, with his Right wing towards the River. C. Caesar's Cavalry, reserved to oppose Pompey's horse.



of River .B. his Cavalry in the Left extending them-
ing. C. Cesars army .D. his Cavalry .E. the six Cohorts



[Faint, illegible text, possibly a title or description, located below the main illustration.]

E
E
b
b
b
b

ri
d
V
v
n
I
u
P
v
d
h
t
f
C
e
c

re
V
v
th
re
re
re
n
S
h
h
fr
ta
a
H
S
a
te

ci
v

Example. Thus the Council broke up full of Joy, and big with Expectation; assuring themselves of Victory, because they thought so great a Captain would not speak, but upon very good Grounds, in so important an Affair. *War in Greece.*

C H A P. XXXI.

CÆSAR, approaching near *Pompey's* Camp, perceiv'd this to be the Disposition of his Forces: The first and third Legions which *Cæsar*, at the beginning of the Wars, in Obedience to the Senate's Decree, had deliver'd to *Pompey*, form'd the left, where he himself commanded: *Scipio* was in the middle, with the Syrian Legions; and *Afranius* in the Right, with the Cilicians, united to the Cohorts brought from Spain; which *Pompey* esteem'd his best Troops: The rest of his Forces were dispos'd between the two Wings, and middle Squadron; amounting to fifty five Thousand Men, or an hundred and ten Cohorts, besides two thousand Volunteers, which he had dispers'd amongst the whole Army; for he had left his other seven Cohorts, to secure his Camp and the adjoining Forts. His Right was defended by a River with steep Banks, wherefore he had plac'd all his Cavalry and Archers in the left. *The Disposition of Pompey's Army.*

Cæsar, observing his ancient Custom, dispos'd the tenth in the Right, and the ninth Legion in the Left Wing, tho' considerably weaken'd by the Action at *Durazzo*; but he join'd the eighth so very close to it, that they were almost united into one, and had Orders to relieve each other. His whole Army consisted of twenty two Thousand Men, or eighty Cohorts; for he left two behind to guard his Baggage. He gave the Command of the left Wing to *Antony*, of the Right to *P. Sylla*, and of the main Body to *Cn. Domitius*, posting himself directly over-against *Pompey*. Having drawn his Forces up in this Order, to prevent his Right Wing from being surrounded by the Enemy's Horse, he detach'd a Cohort from every Legion in the third Line, and of them compos'd a fourth, to engage the Cavalry: He gave 'em the necessary Orders; foretold that the Success of the Day would depend on their Courage; and commanded the whole Army not to begin the Battle, 'till he should see convenient to give 'em the Signal. *Of Cæsar's.*

After he had encourag'd his Soldiers, as Military Discipline requir'd, and reminded 'em of the many Favours they had from time to time receiv'd at his Hands; *Cæsar's Army drawn up; his Speech.* he

War in Greece. he told 'em, *They themselves could witness for him, how earnestly he had sought a Peace ; how he had employ'd Vatinus to demand a Conference, sent A. Clodius to treat with Scipio, and how eagerly he press'd Libo at Oricum, to grant his Lieutenant a Pass. For he had always been desirous to prevent the Effusion of his Soldiers Blood, and the Empire's being depriv'd of either of her Armies. Having ended this Speech, in Compliance to the ardent Desire of the Soldiers, he commanded the Trumpets to sound a Charge.*

C H A P. XXXII.

Crastinus's Character, and Courage.

IN Cæsar's Army was one *Crastinus*, a Volunteer, a Man of extraordinary Courage, who the Year before had been Primiple of the Tenth Legion. So soon as the Signal was given, Follow me, cry'd he, you that were formerly under my Command, and do your utmost for the Man you have chosen for your General: This Battel once decided, he shall recover his Dignity, and we our Freedom. Then looking back upon Cæsar, This Day, O Emperor, added he, I will so behave my self, that you shall return me Thanks, alive or dead. Having said this, immediately he rush'd out of the Right Wing, attended by an hundred and twenty select Men of the same Legion, who voluntarily follow'd him, and began the Fight.

The Sign of Battel given. Crastinus begins the Fight.

The Battel of Pharsalia. Pompey orders his Men to receive Cæsar's Charge without moving out of their Places.

Between the two Armies was Space enough for both to meet and attack each other; but Pompey had order'd his Men to receive our Onset, without stirring out of their Posts, 'till our Army should be disorder'd. This he did, upon C. *Triarius's* Advice, that the Force of our first Excursion being broken, and our Army dispers'd, they might attack us in good Order, to the greater Advantage: Besides they thought our Piles would do less Execution so, than if they advanc'd to meet 'em; flattering themselves with the hopes of our Soldiers being out of Breath, and weary'd with running twice as far as usual. But in my Opinion this was a very shallow Project, for there is a natural Ardor and Alacrity of Mind planted in every Man, that inflames him with the desire of fighting; which should not be suppress'd, but rather encourag'd by a General: Our Ancestors therefore wisely ordain'd, that Trumpets should sound on every side, and all the Soldiers raise a Shout,

Shout, as well to encourage their Companions, as daunt the Enemy.

War in
Greece.

On the Signal given, our Men rush'd forward with their Piles ready to be thrown ; but observing the Enemy did not advance to meet 'em, of their own accord halted about the middle of the way, lest they should spend their Vigour before they approach'd 'em ; for constant Practice and Experience had taught 'em what to do on all Emergencies : Having allow'd themselves Respite enough to take Breath, they renew'd their Course, cast their Piles, and immediately charg'd the Enemy Sword in Hand, as *Cæsar* had commanded 'em. Nor did *Pompey's* Men betray Want of Presence of Mind upon this Occasion, for they maintain'd their Ranks, sustain'd our Charge, receiv'd our Piles, and having cast their own, had quickly Recourse to their Swords.

The Battle
begins.

At the same Instant all *Pompey's* Cavalry sally'd from the Left, according to their Orders, attended by the Archers. Our Men, not being able to maintain their Ground, retreated a few Paces, which made the Enemy pursue more eagerly, divide themselves into several Squadrons, and endeavour to enclose that Part of our Army. Which *Cæsar* observing, gave the fourth Line, which consisted of six Cohorts, the appointed Signal : Upon which they charg'd *Pompey's* Horse so vigorously, that they routed, and oblig'd 'em to fly for Refuge to the highest Mountains. Their Retreat expos'd the Archers and Slingers to the Fury of our Soldiers ; who cut 'em to Pieces ; and pursuing their Success, surrounded *Pompey's* Left Wing, and attack'd his Army in the Rere, maugre all the Resistance he was able to make. At the same Instant *Cæsar* order'd the third Line to advance, which hitherto had no Share in the Action : Thus the Enemy were entirely routed ; for our Men being reliev'd by fresh Supplies, and their Army surrounded, they could no longer maintain the Dispute.

Pompey's
Cavalry broken.

His Left
Wing surrounded.

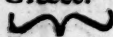
His whole
Army intirely routed.

Nor was *Cæsar* deceiv'd in his Opinion, that the Cohorts, which he dispos'd in the fourth Line, against the Enemy's Horse, must make the first Step towards the Victory, as he had publickly declar'd, to encourage the Soldiers ; for they repuls'd the Cavalry, cut the Archers and Slingers to pieces, surrounded the Enemy's Left Wing, and were the first that oblig'd 'em to fly. But *Pompey* perceiving his Horse were routed, and that Part of his Army which he most depended on disorder'd, despairing of the rest, forthwith retreated on Horseback

Pompey retreats into
the Camp.

into

War in
Greece.



into his Camp. As he enter'd the Prætorian Port, he spoke aloud to the Centurions who guarded it, that the Soldiers might hear, *To take particular Care to secure the Camp against all Accidents that might happen; and he would visit all the other Gates himself, to distribute the like Orders.* Having said this, he retir'd to his Pavilion, despairing of Success, yet attending Event.

C H A P. XXXIII.

P O M P E Y's Soldiers thus oblig'd to retreat within their Trenches, *Cæsar*, not allowing 'em Time to recover their Disorder, encourag'd his Men to push their Fortune, and storm the Camp: Tho' mightily fatigu'd with what they had already done, for the Fight continu'd almost 'till Noon, yet they chearfully obey'd his Orders. The Cohorts, who were left to guard the Camp, made a vigorous Resistance; but their *Thracians* and barbarous Allies did Wonders: For the greatest Part of those that had been engag'd in the Battel, being weary and frighten'd, laid down their Arms and Ensigns, meditating rather on their Escape, than the Defence of the Trenches. But at last being no longer able to stand the Showers of Darts our Soldiers pour'd upon 'em, after having receiv'd several Wounds, they quitted the Rampier, and under the Conduct of the Tribunes and Centurions, betook themselves to the highest Mountains adjoining to the Camp.

The Luxury
of Pompey's
Camp.

Having forc'd the Trenches, we found several Tables ready laid, Side-boards adorn'd with abundance of Plate, and the Tents strow'd with fresh Herbs; that of *L. Lentulus*, with some others, shaded with Ivy; several Proofs of their Luxury, and too great Assurance of Conquest, and besides these things, other: From whence we may conclude they little dream'd of such ill Success, having taken so much Care to indulge their Appetites. Yet notwithstanding they sav'd thus deliciously, they often upbraided *Cæsar's* Army with Excess, who always wanted even Necessaries.

Pompey escapes to the
Sea-side.

Pompey, when our Men had got over the Rampier mounted his Horse, having thrown away all Marks of Consular Dignity, went out of the *Decuman* Port, and gallop'd towards *Larissa*: Here he made no longer Stay than to take fresh Horses, and being attended only by thirty Followers that escap'd the Slaughter, posted Day and Night 'till he arriv'd at the Sea, where he embark'd

Complains of
his Cavalry
for deceiving
him

bark'd in a Tender ; often complaining how much he had *War in*
 been mistaken, in those he expected the Victory from, who *Greece.*
 beginning first to fly, almost persuaded him he had been *W*
 betray'd.

C H A P. XXXIV.

CÆSAR having render'd himself Master of *Pompey's* Camp, desir'd his Soldiers, they would not be so intent upon the Plunder, as to omit putting the last Hand to the Business : They granted his Request, and according to his Orders began to draw Lines about the Mountain, which *Pompey's* Forces had escap'd to. Which they perceiving, consider'd the Place wanted Water, therefore quitted it, and retir'd towards *Larissa*. Whereupon *Cæsar*, dividing his Army into three Squadrons, left one in *Pompey's* Camp, another in his own, and went with four Legions a nearer Way, to intercept the Enemy. Having march'd about six Miles, he drew his Forces up in Order of Battel ; which they observing, gain'd the nearest Hill, whose Foot was wash'd by a River. *Cæsar*, tho' his Men had been fatigu'd all the Day, and Night approach'd, encourag'd 'em to cut off the Enemy's Communication with the Water, that they might not have an Opportunity of Drinking in the Night. When our Works were perfected, they sent Deputies to treat of a Surrender : But some few Senators that were of their Parry, had escap'd by favour of the Night.

Early in the Morning *Cæsar* commanded 'em all to descend from the Hill, and deliver up their Arms. They immediately obey'd his Orders, and prostrating themselves at his Feet, with Tears in their Eyes, besought him to pardon their Lives. He comforted 'em, commanding they should rise, then speaking of his Mercy to alleviate their Fears, preserv'd 'em all ; ordering his Soldiers neither to plunder, nor do 'em any Injury. This Affair so happily dispatch'd, he sent for other Legions to relieve those he had with him, whom he order'd to return to the Camp for Refreshment, and arriv'd the same Day at *Larissa*.

In this Battel, on *Cæsar's* Side, fell only two hundred Soldiers, but he lost thirty Centurions, Men of singular Courage. Here *Crastinus* likewise fighting bravely, lost his Life, being run into the Mouth with a Sword ; nor did he falsify the Promise he made *Cæsar*, when

Cæsar having gain'd the Camp,

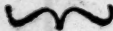
divides his Army into three Parts, one to pursue, and one to guard each Camp.

Some of the Enemy's Forces, that had attempted to escape, surrender.

Arrives at Larissa.

Cæsar lost only 200 in the Battel ; with 30 Centurions and Crastinus.

War in
Greece.



Domitius
kill'd.

when he rush'd into the Battel; for he certainly behav'd himself to Admiration, and deserv'd as much Applause as Man could do. On *Pompey's* Side were kill'd fifteen thousand, and above twenty four thousand taken Prisoners, for those that guarded the Forts surrender'd to *Sylla*; tho' many escaped into the adjacent Countries: A hundred and eighty Colours were brought to *Cæsar*, besides nine Eagles. And *L. Domitius*, who made his Escape to the Mountains, growing faint, was kill'd by our Cavalry.

C H A P. XXXV.

Lælius blockades *Brindisi*, as *Libo* had done,

Vatinius takes three of his Ships.

WHILST these Affairs were transacting, *D. Lælius* arriv'd with his Navy at *Brindisi*, and possess'd himself of the Island at the Mouth of the Haven, as *Libo* had formerly done. *Vatinius*, Governor of the Place, following *Antony's* Example, equipp'd several Boats, and having entic'd some of *Lælius's* Ships within the Haven, took a five-bank'd Gally, and two smaller Vessels that had ventur'd farthest within the Port: Then disposing his Cavalry along the Shore, prevented the Fleet from getting fresh Water. But *Lælius* having chosen a more convenient Season of the Year for Sailing, supply'd his Ships with Water from *Corfu* and *Durazzo*; nor could he be perswaded to quit the Blockade, by the Disgrace of losing his Ships, or want of Provisions, 'till he had notice of the Battel of *Pharsalia*.

Cassius with his Squadron comes to *Sicily*.

Burns thirty five of *Pomponius's* Ships at *Messina*.

Almost surprises the Town. From thence he goes to *Vibone*.

Burns five of *Sulpicius's* Gallies, but loses four of his own.

About the same time likewise *Cassius* came to *Sicily* with a Squadron of *Syrian*, *Phanician*, and *Cilician* Ships, where *Cæsar* had a Fleet commanded by *P. Sulpicius* the Prætor, and *M. Pomponius*; the first of these lay at *Vibone* in the Streights, the other at *Messina*, where *Cassius* arriv'd before *Pomponius* had notice of his coming: Having surpriz'd him in this Disorder without any Guards; he took the Opportunity of the Wind, and sent several Fire-ships into the Port of *Pomponius's* Fleet, which immediately consum'd 'em all: They were thirty five in Number, amongst which were twenty Men of War: This Action struck such a Terror into *Messina*, that tho' there was a Legion there in Garrison, the Place had certainly surrender'd, had not an Account of the Action in *Thessaly* opportunely arriv'd to encourage 'em. From hence *Cassius* went to *Vibone*, where finding *Sulpicius's* Fleet at Anchor, to infuse the like Terror, the Wind offering fair, he put the same Stratagem in Practice he had

had made use of at *Messina*, sent forty Fire-Ships into the Harbour, and the Flame catching hold on both sides, quickly reduc'd five Gallies to Ashes: The Wind had already began to disperse the Fire farther, when the Veteran Soldiers, who had been left in Garrison there, till they recover'd their Health, could no longer endure the Disgrace, but of their own Accord embark'd, weigh'd Anchor, and attack'd *Cassius's* Fleet so furiously, that they took two three-bank'd, and as many four-bank'd Gallies; in one of which latter was *Cassius* himself, but he made his Escape in the Boat. Not many Days after, the News of *Cæsar's* Victory was so strongly confirm'd, that it met with Credit, even amongst *Pompey's* Party; for before they believ'd it a false Report, spread abroad by *Cæsar's* Friends or Lieutenants; and upon this *Cassius* left *Vibone*.

War in
Greece.

On News of
Cæsar's Vi-
ctory, quits
the Place.

C H A P. XXXVI.

CÆSAR, laying all other Thoughts aside, resolv'd to pursue *Pompey* so close, where-ever he went, as not to allow him time to levy new Forces, and renew the War: He march'd, therefore, every Day as far as his Cavalry could hold out, commanding one Legion to follow after by lesser Journeys. *Pompey* issu'd a Proclamation at *Amphipolis*, for raising all the Grecians and Citizens of *Rome* that were able to bear Arms: But whether he did this the longer to conceal his Design of flying, or to attempt the keeping of *Macedonia* if no body pursu'd him, is hard to determine. One Night he laid at Anchor at *Amphipolis*, sent for his old Friends and Acquaintance; of whom he borrow'd Monies for his necessary Occasions; and on Notice of *Cæsar's* Approach hoisted Sail for *Mytelene*, where he arriv'd in a few Days after. Here the Wind detain'd him two Days; but having encreas'd his Fleet with a few Gallies, he sail'd to *Cilicia*, and from thence to *Cyprus*, where he had Notice that the Townsmen and Roman Citizens at *Antioch*, by general Consent, had seisd the Castle, resolv'd to shut the Gates of the Town against him, and sent Deputies to such of his Party as had taken Refuge in the neighbouring Countries, not to come near *Antioch* at their Peril. *L. Lentulus*, who had been Consul the Year before *Pub. Lentulus*, and some others of Consular Rank, met the like Reception at *Rhodes*, whither they follow'd *Pompey*; for they no sooner land-

Cæsar pur-
sues *Pompey*.

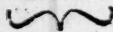
Pompey is-
sues a Pro-
clamation for
raising a libe-
rality in *Am-
phipolis*.

From whence
he sails to
Mytelene.

From thence
to *Cyprus*.

Lentulus
is sent out of
Rhodes.

War in
Greece.



ed, but the Gates of the Town were shut against 'em, and Messengers sent to bid 'em quit the Island ; which oblig'd 'em much against their Wills, to weigh Anchor : For by this time Cæsar's Pursuit was known amongst all the Countries round about.

Pompey
sails to Pelu-
sium.

Demands
Ptolemy's
Protection.
* Now called
Scandria.

Is invited
on Shore.

Pompey, on advice of these Affairs, altering his Design of going to *Syria*, seisd all the Money he found in the Publick Bank, borrow'd as much more as he could of his Acquaintance, sent great Quantities of Iron on board for Military Uses, and having rais'd two Thousand Soldiers amongst the Publick Officers of the Place, Merchants Servants, and such other Persons as he thought fit for his Purpose, went to *Pelusium*. Here, by accident, was King *Ptolemy*, a Youth under Age, with a considerable Army encamp'd near his Sister *Cleopatra*, whom, not many Months before, by the Assistance of his Friends and Relations, he had expell'd the Kingdom. *Pompey* sent to demand his Protection and Assistance, with leave to come to * *Alexandria*, upon the Score of the ancient Friendship, which had been between him and the young King's Father. But his Deputies having perform'd their Commission, began to discourse too freely with the King's Soldiers, advising 'em to assist their Master, notwithstanding the low Ebb Fortune had reduc'd him to ; for in *Ptolemy's* Army were several Men that had formerly serv'd under *Pompey*, whom *Gabinus* brought from *Syria* to *Alexandria*, and after the War was ended, left in the late King's Service.

Ptolemy's Friends, who were Protectors of the Kingdom during his Minority, having Notice of this, either out of Fear, as they afterwards declar'd, lest *Pompey* should corrupt the Army, and render himself Master of *Alexandria* and *Egypt* ; or despising his low Condition, (for generally Friends turn Enemies when Fortune frowns ;) gave the Deputies a grateful Answer in publick, ordering *Pompey* to attend the King : But privately contriv'd to send *Achillas*, Captain of the King's Guards, a Man of singular Boldness, with *Septimius*, Tribune of the Soldiers, to murder him. They spoke him very fair, and *Pompey* having formerly known *Septimius*, who commanded a Company under him in the Pirates War, was easily persuaded to go on board a small Vessel, with a slender Attendance, where he was kill'd by *Achillas* and *Septimius*. *L. Lentulus* likewise, being taken by the King's Command, was put to Death in Prison.

C H A P. XXXVII.

War in
Egypt.

ON *Cæsar's* Arrival in *Asia*, he found *T. Ampius* had summon'd all the Senators in the Province to attend him, that in their Presence he might take the Money out of the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*; but the News of *Cæsar's* Approach interrupted his Design, and oblig'd him to fly: Thus *Cæsar* twice preserv'd the Treasure of *Diana*. 'Twas remark'd in the Temple of *Minerva* at *Eli*, upon a just Calculation of the Time, that the very same Day *Cæsar* defeated *Pompey*, the Image of Victory, which fronted *Minerva*, turn'd her Face towards the Portal of the Temple. At the same Instant such a Noise of Fighting and Trumpets alarm'd the Inhabitants of *Antioch* in *Syria*, that they repair'd to their Arms, and mann'd the Walls. The like happen'd at *Ptolemais*: And at *Pergamus*, in the remote and hollow Places of the Temple, call'd by the *Grecians* *Adra*, where none, except the Priests, may enter, was heard the beating of Drums. But in the Temple of Victory in *Trallus*, where a Statue was consecrated to *Cæsar*, a Palm had sprouted between the joining of the Stones that pav'd the Floor.

Ampius prevented from taking the Treasure of Diana's Temple by Cæsar's Arrival. Strange Prodiges that happen'd the same Day Cæsar defeated Pompey.

Cæsar, having stay'd a few Days in *Asia*, on Advice that *Pompey* had been seen at *Cyprus*, imagining he might be gone from thence to *Egypt*, because of the Interest he had in that Kingdom, and the Advantage of the Place, resolv'd to go to *Alexandria* with two Legions; one brought from *Thessaly*, the other detach'd from Lieutenant *Fusus's* Army in *Achia*; eight Hundred Horse, ten *Rhodian* Gallies, and a few from *Asia*. In these Legions were not above three Thousand two Hundred Men, the rest were either disabled in their former Actions, or so fatigu'd with long Marches, they could not travel any farther. But *Cæsar* depending on the Fame of his former Exploits, made no scruple of embarking with so small an Army, believing every Place would gladly receive him. At *Alexandria* he had News of *Pompey's* Death; so soon as he landed, he heard a Noise amongst the Soldiers, whom *Ptolemy* had left to guard the Town, and found himself surrounded by a Concourse of People, who thought the King's Authority diminish'd, because *Cæsar* had the Consular Ax and Bundle of Rods carry'd before him. This Tumult was soon appeas'd; but there were Commotions a-

Cæsar follows Pompey to Alexandria.

Hears the News of his Death.

The Egyptian Priests had a Prophecy, that when the Ax and Bundle of Rods enter'd Alexandria, their King's Authority should cease.

War in
Egypt.

Insurrections
in Alexan-
dria.

* Called by
them Etesia.

mongst the People every Day after; and many of Cæsar's Soldiers were murder'd in several Parts of the City; which oblig'd him to send for those other Legions out of *Asia*, which he had levy'd amongst the Remainders of *Pompey's Army*. But he was prevent-ed sailing from *Alexandria* himself by * contrary Winds.

Cæsar sum-
mons Ptole-
my and Cle-
opatra to at-
tend him.

Pothinus
sends to Achil-
las to bring the Ar-
my to Alex-
andria.

The late
King's Will.

Achillas
arrives.

Dioscorides
and Serapion
sent to de-
mand his
Business.

In the mean while, considering the Dispute between the King and his Sister belong'd to the Jurisdiction of the People of *Rome*, and to him as Consul, especially since during his former Consulat, the Senate had enter'd into League with *Ptolemy* the Father: He gave the King and *Cleopatra* to understand, they ought both to disband their Armies, and submit their Cause to his Decision, rather than that of the Sword.

Pothinus the Eunuch, Governor to the Infant, was entrusted with the Administration of Affairs, during his Minority. He thinking it below the King to plead his Cause before *Cæsar*, first began to complain of the Order, and having rais'd a Faction amongst the Council, sent privately for the Army from *Pelusium* to *Alexandria*; and having constituted *Achillas*, whom we spoke of before, General of the Forces, prompted him to execute such Orders as he should receive from him; by Promises both from himself and the King. *Ptolemy* the Father, by his last Will, had divided his Kingdom between the Eldest of his two Sons and Daughters, and in the same Will conjur'd the People of *Rome*, by all the Gods, and by the League between 'em, to see his Testament perform'd. A Copy of his Will he sent his Embassadors with to *Rome*, to be recorded in the Treasury; but the Confusion of the Times preventing it, 'twas left with *Pompey*: The Original being seal'd up, was kept at *Alexandria*.

Whilst this Affair was depending before *Cæsar*, and he doing all he could to compose the Differences between the Two Antagonists; on a sudden he was inform'd the Army was arriv'd at *Alexandria*. *Cæsar's* Forces were so small, he could not run the hazard of a Battel without the Town; his Business therefore, was to contain himself within the Walls, to secure the most convenient Posts, and there get Intelligence of *Achillas's* Designs. However he commanded all the Soldiers to repair to their Arms; and desir'd the King to send some Persons of the greatest Authority about him, to demand what *Achillas* meant. *Dioscorides* and *Serapion*, who

who had both been Embassadors at *Rome*, and in great Credit with *Ptolemy* the Father, were employ'd in this *Egypt*.
 Affair. They no ſooner arriv'd in *Achillas's* Preſence, but, without ſtaying to hear their Buſineſs, he commanded 'em to be ſeiz'd and murder'd: One was kill'd upon the Spot, but the other having receiv'd a dangerous Wound, was carry'd off for Dead by his Attendants. Upon which *Cæſar* endeavour'd to get *Ptolemy* into his Hands, thinking his Name and Title might be of great Authority amongſt the People; and that the War would then appear the Contrivance of a few Villains and Male-contents, begun without the King's Knowledge or Approbation.

One kill'd,
the other
wounded.

*Cæſar gets
the young
King into his
Power.*

C H A P. XXXVIII.

THE Forces under *Achillas's* Command, were neither to be deſpis'd for want of Number, Courage, or Experience. He had twenty thouſand Men, part conſiſting of *Gabinus's* Troops, who by ſtaying ſo long in the Country, had forgot the *Roman* Name and Diſcipline: Moſt of 'em had marry'd Wives there, by whom they had Children, and were become perfect *Egyptians* in their Licentious way of living. To theſe were added many Buccaneers from *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and the neighbouring Countries, with ſeveral Outlaws and condemn'd Perſons. For all our Refugees were ſure of Reception, and enter'd into Pay at *Alexandria*, immediately upon giving in their Names. If any of their Companions chanc'd to be apprehended by his Maſter, all the reſt would reſcue him from Juſtice, knowing themſelves in the ſame Condition. Theſe would often take upon them to demand the Heads of Chief Miniſters, to plunder the Rich to encrease their Pay, to beſiege the King in his Palace, to baniſh ſome, and ſend for others home, which Liberties the *Alexandrian Army* claims by Preſcription. Beſides theſe Forces, he had likewiſe two thouſand Horſe, Veteran Troops, perpetually inur'd to War; who reſtored *Ptolemy* the Father to his Kingdom, killed *Bibulus's* two Sons, and put an end to the *Egyptian War*; ſufficient Proofs of their Experience.

An Account
of *Achillas's*
Forces.

The Licentious-
neſs of the
Alexandrian
Army.

Depending on this Army, and deſpiſing the ſmall Number of *Cæſar's* Troops: *Achillas* enter'd *Alexandria*, ſtorm'd that part of the City poſſeſs'd by *Cæſar*, and attempted to break into the Palace, where he had

Achillas
enters the
Town.

War in taken up his Quarters: But he, having dispos'd his
Egypt. Cohorts in the Streets and Avenues, prevented his De-

sign. At the same Instant *Achillas* likewise attack'd us
from that side next the Sea; where the Conflict was
long maintain'd with great Obstinacy. The Dispute
grew warm in several Places at once, for the Enemy

detach'd a strong Party to seize the fifty Gallies which
had been sent to *Pompey's* Assistance, and returned home
again after the Battel of *Pharsalia*: Most of these
were three and Five-bank'd Gallies well equipped:
Besides them were twenty others in the Port, which
served as a constant Guard to *Alexandria*; and had *A-*
chillas render'd himself Master of them and *Cæsar's*
Fleet, the Sea and Haven being entirely his, he might
have intercepted all our Supplies. These Motives in-
duced each Party to do their utmost, for as they fought
for Victory, so we contended for our Lives. But *Cæsar*
obtained the Point; and because he was not able to de-
fend so many Things with so inconsiderable a Number
of Forces, he set the Shipping on Fire, with all the
Vessels that rid at Anchor in the Road; then landed a
Party at *Pharus*, a wonderful Tower, built to a prodig-
ious height in an Island from whence it takes its
Name. This Isle, lying directly over-against *Alexan-*
dria, makes a Haven: Former Kings have enlarged it
nine hundred Paces in Length, by raising great Mounts
in the Sea, and brought it so near *Alexandria*, that they
are joined together by a Bridge. In this Island dwell
several *Egyptians*, who have built a Town, and
live by plundering the Ships that are so unfortunate
to be thrown upon their Coast, either by Mistake or
Tempest. For the Entrance into the Port is so narrow,
no Vessel can put in without leave from those that are
Masters of *Pharus*.

The Fight
warmly
maintain'd.
Cæsar burns
the *Alexan-*
drian Fleet.

Gains *Pha-*
rus: Its De-
scription.

Secures Ac-
cess by Sea,
and sends to
the adjacent
States for
supplies.

Maintains
his Ground.

Cæsar therefore considering the Importance of this
Place, whilst the Enemy were engaged in the Assault,
landed his Soldiers, took the Tower, and put a Garri-
son there: Thus he secured Access by Sea for Supplies
of Men and Corn, for he had dispatched Messengers
to all the adjacent States for Assistance. In some Parts
of the Town Victory inclined to neither side, both
Parties gave over with equal Loss, for the narrowness
of the Passes enabled our Men to maintain their
Ground: A few being killed on both sides, *Cæsar* se-
cured the most necessary Places, and fortify'd 'em in the
Night.

Night. In this Quarter was contain'd a small Part of *War in*
 the King's Palace, where *Caesar* had been lodg'd upon *Egypt.*
 his first Arrival, to which join'd the Theatre that
 serv'd instead of a Castle, commanding an Avenue to
 the Port and Arsenal. The following Days *Caesar* *and fortifies*
 employ'd in enlarging his Works, and building a Wall; *his Quarters.*
 that he might not be oblig'd to fight against his Will.

In the mean while, *Ptolemy's* youngest Daughter, *Ptolemy's*
 hoping the Throne would be vacant, escap'd out of *youngest*
 the Palace to the Army, where she join'd with *Daughter*
las; but they soon disagreed, which made well for *goes over to*
 the Soldiers, whose Affections were dearly bought by *Achillas, in*
 either Party. Whilst the Camp was employ'd in this *hopes of be-*
 Affair, *Pothinus*, the Infant's Governor, and Protector *ing Queen.*
 of the Kingdom, sent Messengers thro' *Caesar's* Part of *They say out.*
 the Town to advise *Achillas* to go on with his Enter-
 prize, and not despair of Success; but this Courier was
 surpris'd, confess'd the whole Matter; upon which *Cæ-*
sar put *Pothinus* to Death: And thus began the *Alex-*
andrian War. *Potiaus*
kill'd.

Hirtius Pansa, or Oppius's
COMMENTARY
 OF THE
Alexandrian War.

The CONTENTS.

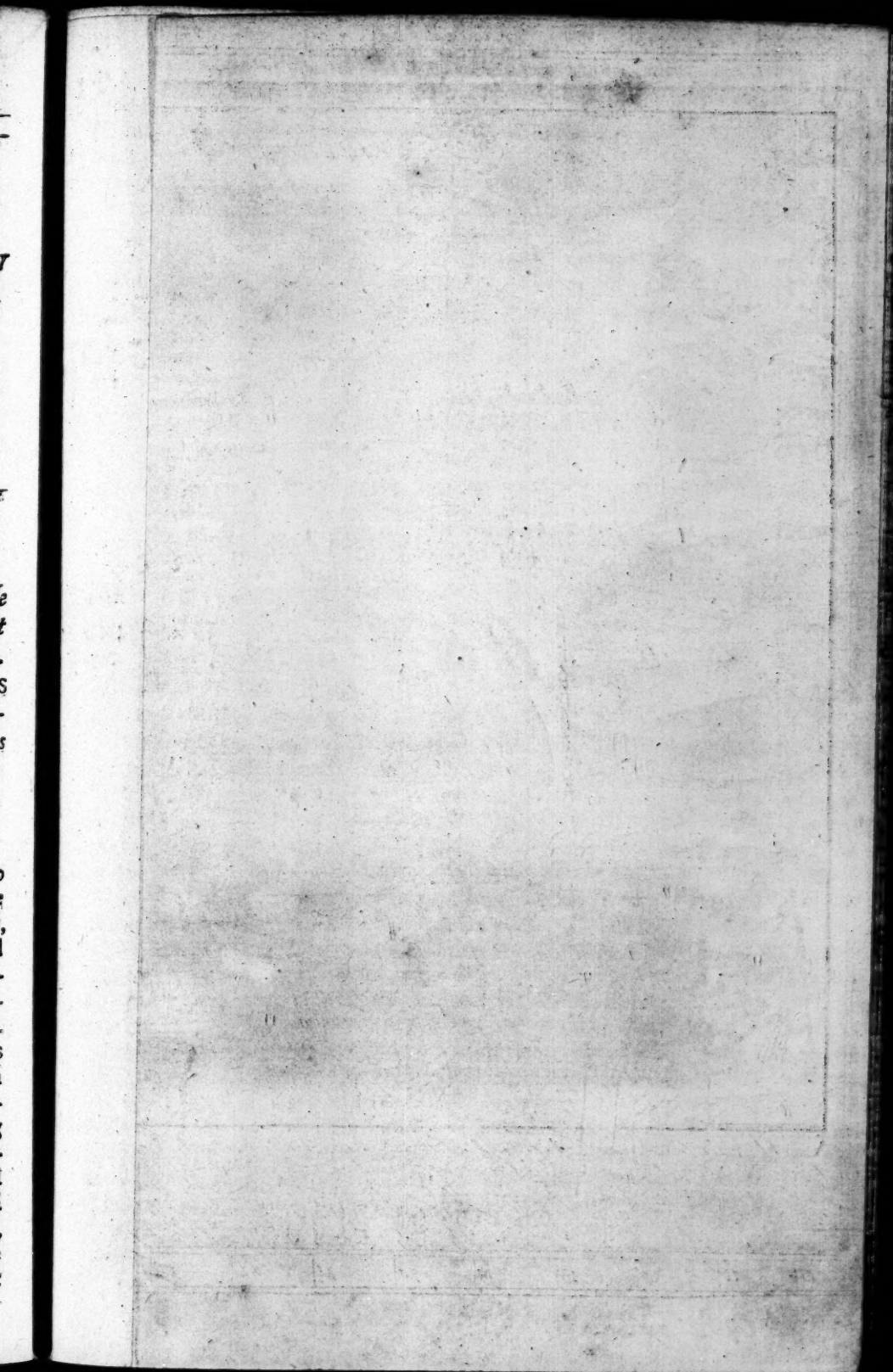
The War continu'd. Cæsar's Success at Sea. He narrowly escapes by Swimming. The King set at Liberty turns an Enemy. An End of the War. The Defeat of Domitius Calvinus. Cassius Longinus's Extortions in Spain occasion an Insurrection. The Defeat of Pharnaces; and Cæsar's Return to Italy.

CHAP. I.

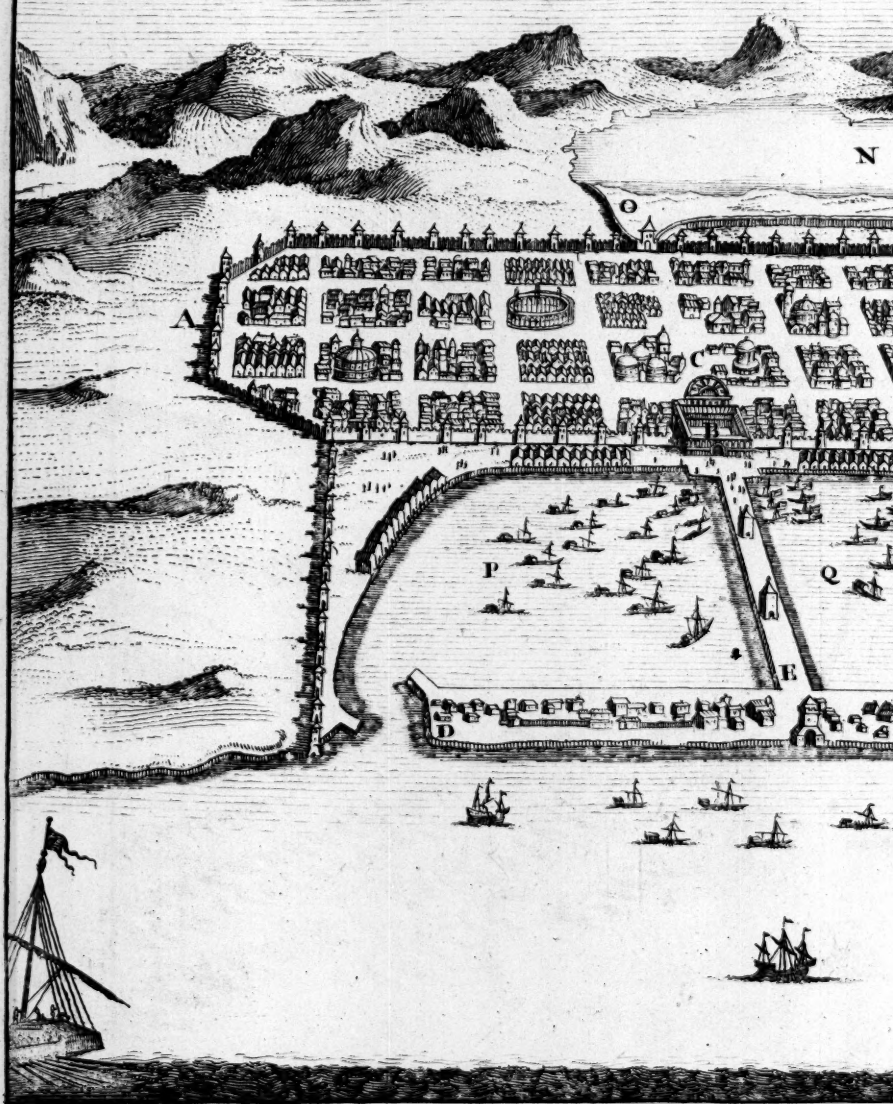
Cæsar's Preparations for the War.

Their Manner of Building in Alexandria.

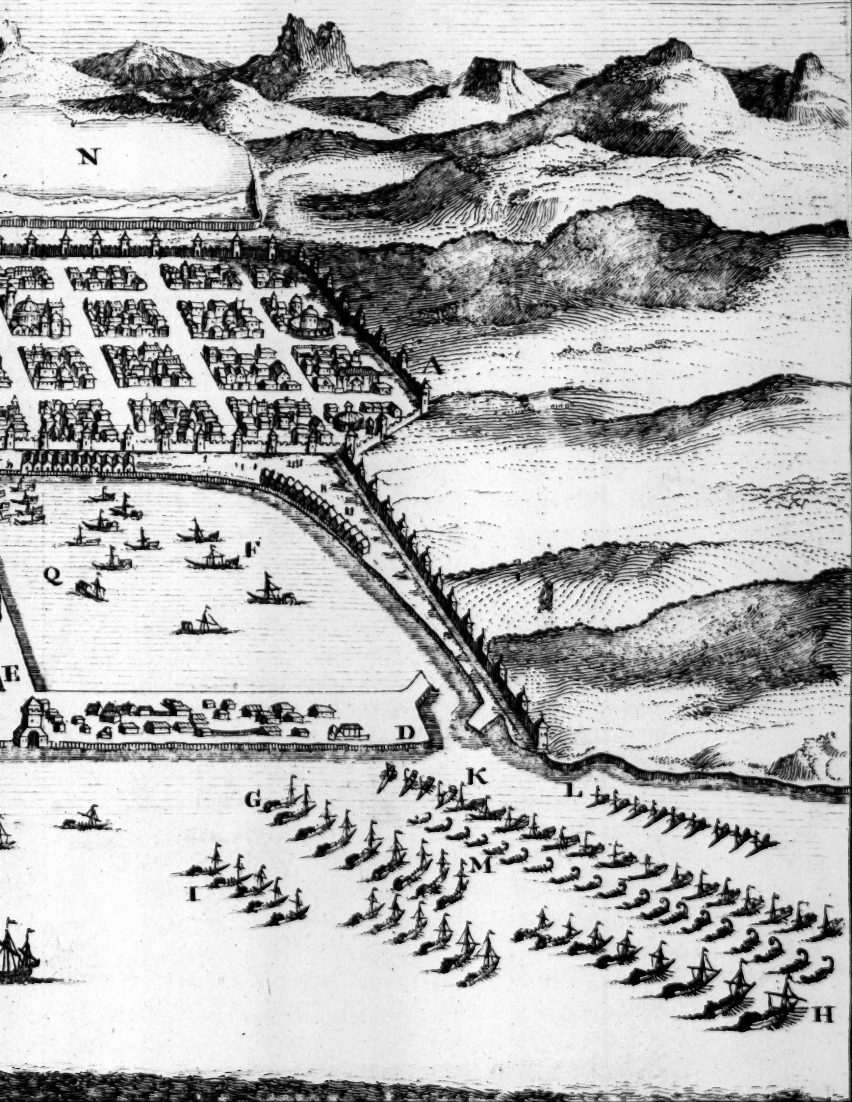
THE *Alexandrian War* declar'd, *Cæsar* sent to *Rhodes, Syria* and *Cilicia* for his Fleet; to *Crete* for Archers, and to *Malcus, King of Nabathæa*, for Cavalry; not omitting to get Engines, Corn, and all kind of Provisions. The Works were daily increas'd, and such Parts of the Town as appear'd less tenable, were strengthen'd with Testudo's and Mantlets. Holes were made in the Walls, to let the Bartering Rams thro'; and whatever Houses were demolish'd, or taken in by Force, he encompass'd within the Fortifications. *Alexandria* is almost Proof against Fire, the Houses being built without Wood, and standing at a moderate Distance from each other; for the Roofs are arch'd, and either til'd or plaister'd. *Cæsar* left nothing unattempted to enclose the smallest Part of the Town within his Lines, which is divided from the rest by a Morass towards the South:



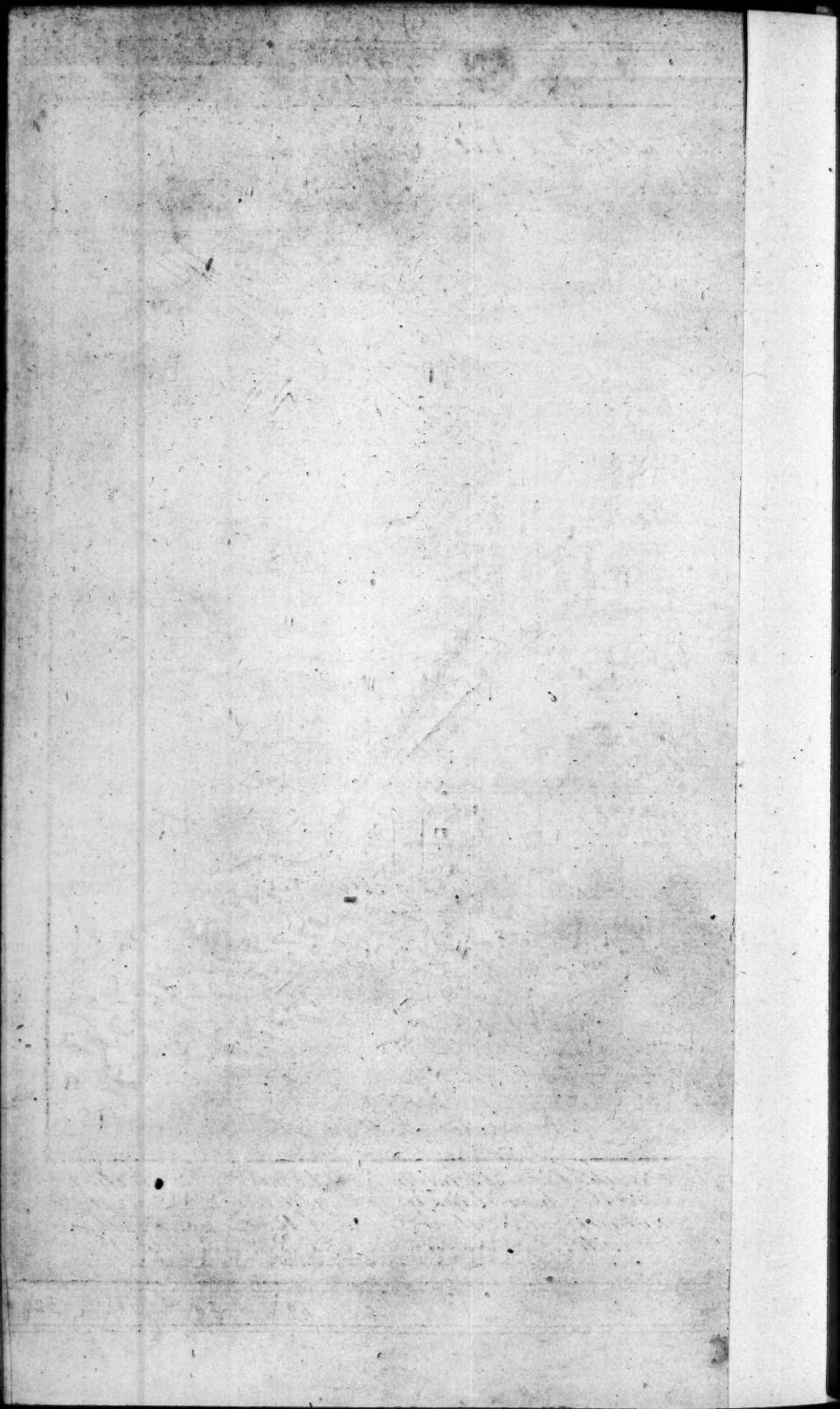
Alexandria now.



A. Alexandria B. the Kings Palace. C. the Theater adjoining to
 Joyns it to y^e Town F. Caesar saves his life by Swimming. G. The
 of Pontus in y^e Left. I. Caesar's line of Reserve. K. 22 Egyptian
 Lesser vessels and fire Ships. N. the Morass in the South of
 haven posses'd by Caesar. Q. that by the Alexandrians.



joining to it. D. the Island Pharos. E. The narrow way that
 g. G. The nine Rhodian ships in 6. Right wing. H. Eight
 Egyptian ships in front. L. their Ships of Reserve. M. their
 South of Alexandria. O. Caesars works. P. that side of the
 banks.



S
t
I
r
l
n
d
a
n
e
b
c
f
t
p
t
c
f
t
p
c
a
v
f
p
f
c
f
S
t
a
d
b
t
m
t
r
Y
c
t
v

South ; that his Forces might lie more compact together, relieve each other, when over-power'd by the Enemy, with greater Ease, and be supply'd with Water and Forage ; both which the Morass abounded with, and they wanted extremely, especially Water. Mean while, the *Alexandrians* were as busie as *Cæsar* ; for they sent Deputies to raise Forces in all Parts of *Egypt* and the neighbouring Countries ; prepar'd vast Quantities of Darts and Engines, with innumerable Troops of Soldiers : Their Magazines were plentifully stor'd, they arm'd all their Slaves that were fit for Service ; who were maintain'd at the richest Citizens Expence. These were employ'd to guard the remotest Parts of the Town ; but the Veteran Cohorts were quarter'd in the most spacious Places of the City ; that, whatever Side was storm'd, they might readily come to maintain it. All the Avenues and Gates they fortify'd with a triple Rampier, built of square Stones, and rais'd compleatly Forty Foot high. The lower Parts of the Town were secur'd with Turrets of ten Stories ; besides, they built several Castles upon Wheels, of an equal Height with the former, and where the Streets were even, drew up and down with Horses, to what Part they thought convenient.

Cæsar besieg'd.

The Alexandrians reparations.

Moving Towers.

The City being rich and populous, furnish'd 'em with all Materials they had occasion for : The Inhabitants were so ingenious and acute, they made whatever they saw us do, with so much Dispatch, that we rather appear'd to imitate them, than they to copy after us : Besides their own Fancy supply'd 'em with several Machines : So at once they defended their own, and assaulted our Fortifications. Their Noblemen were a Spur to their Industry, declaring at Council and in their Harangues, *That the Romans, according to their ancient Custom, were come to render themselves Masters by degrees of all Egypt : That Pompey retreated thither after his Defeat ; but Cæsar was come with his Forces ; nor return'd, tho' he heard of his Rival's Death ; therefore they might depend upon't, unless they immediately expell'd him their Country, from a Kingdom they would find themselves reduc'd to a Province : For nothing but the Season of the Year prevented his receiving Supplies from beyond Sea.*

The Industry and Ingenuity of the Egyptians.

The Noblemen's Arguments to prompt the People to be laborious.

In the mean time, the Misunderstanding between *Achillas*, who commanded the Veteran Army, and *Arfinoë*, the King's younger Sister, daily encreas'd ; each laid wait for the other, striving to engross the Supreme Authority ;

Achillas killed by Arfinoë.

Cæsar
besieg'd.

She makes
Ganymede
General in
his stead.

thority : But *Arfinoë*, by the Assistance of her Governour, the Eunuch *Ganymede*, prevail'd, and killed *Achillas*. After his Death she govern'd without a Partner, and conferr'd the Command of the Army upon *Ganymede*; who on his Entry into that Office encreas'd the Soldiers Pay, and discharg'd all other Parts of his Duty with equal Diligence.

CHAP. II.

The Aquæ-
ducts at A-
lexandria.
from the
Nile.

Ganymede
endeavours
to deprive
the Romans
of fresh Wa-
ter.

Brings Wa-
ter from the
Sea to cor-
rupt Cæsar's
Conduits.

The Romans
strangely
surpris'd.

Desires to
quit the
Place.

THE greatest Part of *Alexandria* is undermin'd, and has Aquæducts to the *Nile*, that furnish private Houses with Water, which after it has settled becomes very clear. This is preserv'd for the Use of the Master and his Relations; for, when the Water first comes in, 'tis so thick and muddy, it breeds several Distempers; however, the Servants, and meaner sort are forc'd to be contented with it, for there is not a Fountain in all the City. The River lay on the other side the Town, that was possess'd by the *Egyptians*; which *Ganymede* considering, hop'd to deprive our Army of fresh Water; who being distributed into several Streets, and quarter'd in private Houses, that they might the easilier defend the Works, made use of the Water they found in the Dreins and Cisterns.

His Project being approv'd, he began a very difficult and laborious Task; having stopp'd up all the Conduits that supply'd his Part of the City, he drew vast Quantities of Water out of the Sea, by the help of certain Engines, to the higher Ground; from whence he continually pour'd it down upon *Cæsar's* Aquæducts. This immediately made the Water salter than usual in the nearest Houses; occasion'd great Wonder amongst the Soldiers; who could not conceive the Reason of it, and could hardly believe their Senses, when they found the Cisterns something lower in the Town still tasted as usual; this caus'd perpetual Disputes, and the Difference between 'em was often compar'd. But not long after, the highest Cisterns became so very Salt, 'twas impossible to drink their Water, and the lower began to be infected with the same brackish Taste.

This immediately convinc'd 'em of the Occasion; and so surpris'd 'em all, they thought themselves reduc'd to the last Extremities. Some wonder'd why *Cæsar* delay'd going on Ship-board; and others apprehended something worse would follow, because 'twas impossible

to conceal their Retreat from the *Alexandrians* that were so nigh 'em, or to embark whilst they pursu'd. *Cæsar besieged.*
 For there were several of the Townsmen within *Cæsar's* Fortifications, whom he had permitted to stay in their Houses, because they openly pretended to be in his Interest, and desert their Fellow-Citizens. But I shall not throw away my Time in defending either their Integrity or their Conduct; since they who are acquainted with their Country and Temper, know 'em to be the fittest Instruments in the World for Treason.

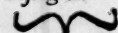
Cæsar took care to make his Soldiers easie, by comforting, and reasoning the Case with 'em. *He assur'd 'em they might find fresh Water any where but in the Aqueducts, for all Sea-coasts naturally abounded with pleasant Springs; but should the Soil of Egypt be different from all the World besides, they had no reason to despair, since the Sea was open; the Enemy had no Fleet to prevent their fetching Water either from Parætonium on the Left, or Pharos on the Right; which Places lying different Ways, the Wind would perpetually serve fair from one, or other of 'em. But as for retreating, that Thought should not find Entertainment with such as had Respect for their Lives, much less with those who preferr'd their Honour before any other Considerations: For if they perceived it so difficult to repulse the Enemy by the Assistance of their Works, those once deserted, they must not expect to be equal to them either in Place or Number. Besides, 'twould be as tedious as difficult to go on board, since they must be oblig'd to get into the Boats before they could embark: Whereas the Alexandrians were very nimble, understood the Nature of the Place and Buildings, and being flush'd with Success, would certainly possess themselves of the rising Ground, annoy them from the Tops of their Houses, and effectually prevent their Retreat. Wherefore they must lay aside all Designs of that Nature, and think of nothing but the Necessity of Conquering.*

Having encourag'd his Men by this Harangue, he commanded the Centurions to employ the Soldiers Day and Night in digging for Wells; laying aside all other Business. The Work begun, every one chearfully undertook his Share of the Labour, and in one Night's time was discover'd a Spring which furnish'd the Army with Plenty of fresh Water: So easily was the *Alexandrian* Project, with all their Labour and Machines, defeated.

Cæsar's speech; he persuades 'em to the contrary.

He commands 'em to dig for Wells, and they find Water.

Cæsar
besieg'd.



The Thirty
Seventh Li-
gion arrives
on the Coast
of Aitrick.

Sends Cæsar
word they
want Water,
and are de-
tain'd by
contrary
Winds.

Cæsar em-
barks to
meet 'em.

† This is
neither the
Taurica,
Cimbrica,
nor Græca
Chersonesus,
nor to be
found in any
Geographer
but Ptolemy.

The Enemy
having No-
tice of his
Voyage, re-
solve to in-
tercept him.

Cæsar de-
clines fight-
ing.

One Rhodian
Gally attac-
ked, but re-
sist'd.

C H A P. III.

TWO Days after, the thirty seventh Legion, Part of Pompey's Troops that had surrender'd themselves, arriv'd on the *African* Coasts, a little above *Alexandria*; whither being sent by *Domitius Calvinus*, with Corn, Arms, Darts and Engines, they were prevented from finishing their Voyage by an Easterly Wind, that had continu'd several Days together; but the Coasts thereabout are excellent good for riding at Anchor. They had now been detain'd a considerable Time, and fresh Water began to grow scarce, wherefore they sent a small Vessel to row against the Wind, and carry *Cæsar* Notice of their being there.

Without consulting any one but himself about this Affair, he immediately hoisted Sail, and commanded all the Fleet to follow him, leaving his Land Forces behind him; because he was not willing the Works should be naked, during so long an Absence. When he arriv'd at † *Chersonesus*, he sent his Sailors on Shore to get fresh Water; some of these venturing too far within the Land for Plunder, were taken by the Enemy's Horse; who from their Confession learn'd *Cæsar* was on board, without any Soldiers. On this Advice, they thought Fortune had bless'd 'em with a happy Opportunity; wherefore they mann'd all the Vessels they had ready equipp'd, and met *Cæsar* as he return'd. But he declin'd Fighting, because he had no Soldiers with him; 'twas already pass'd four in the Afternoon, and the approaching Night would make them fight more courageously, who were acquainted with the Place: Nor would it avail him any thing to encourage his Men, when neither Valour nor Cowardice could be observ'd. Wherefore he drew all his Ships to the Shore, where he imagin'd the Enemy would hardly follow him; but one *Rhodian* Gally of his Right Wing stood out at some Distance from the rest. The Enemy observing this, could not contain themselves any longer, but immediately detach'd four large Ships, with several smaller Vessels to attack her. Which oblig'd *Cæsar* to send her Assistance, to prevent so great a Disgrace, as the Loss of one of his Gallies within his own View; tho' whatever ill Consequences should happen upon it, he thought he deserv'd 'em for being so rash. Thus the Fight began, and the *Rhodians* bore briskly up to the Enemy;

for

for since they had already given so many Proofs of their Valour and Experience, now they willingly endur'd the Burthen of the Day, that it might not be reported the Romans had suffer'd by their Mismanagement. In fine, we got the better; took a four-bank'd Galley, and sunk another, after having kill'd all the Men on board : We made a great Slaughter likewise amongst the Soldiers that were in the other Gallies, and had not Night protected 'em, should have taken all their Fleet. Whilst the Enemy were surpris'd with this Disaster, the Wind blowing gently, *Cæsar* tow'd his Transports with his Gallies to *Alexandria*.

Cæsar

besieg'd.

*The Enemy
engag'd and
defeated.*

*Cæsar gets
safe with his
Transports to
Alexandria.*

CHAP. IV.

THE Egyptians were so terrify'd at this Defeat, to find themselves not only out-done in the Courage of their Soldiers, but Experience of their Pilots, * they immediately repair'd to the higher Ground, to the Tops of their Houses, and made Blockades to defend 'em; for they were apprehensive of being attack'd by our Fleet even at Land. But *Ganymede*, having encourag'd 'em, by promising in Council he would not only restore the Vessels they had lost, but increase their Number; they began with great Hope and Chearfulness to repair their old Ships, bestowing more Labour upon the Business than they at first design'd; not at all discourag'd with the Loss of above an Hundred and ten Gallies in their Ports and Arsenal. For they knew, if they became Masters of the Sea, they could easily intercept all *Cæsar's* Supplies. Seamen, wherewith *Alexandria* and the adjacent Coasts abound, who have been brought up to the Business from their Infancy, chearfully list'd themselves for their Country's Service : They remember'd what Exploits they had formerly done, even with their little Ships, and therefore set all Hands to work for equipping the Fleet.

*The Egyptians
repair
their Fleet.*

Their Industry.

* Here is something wanting in the Original, and to me the Text likewise appears corrupt : This I suppose to be the Meaning of the Author; but I leave every one to make use of his own Opinion.

All the Vessels that use to receive Toll at the seven Mouths of the Nile, were recall'd to *Alexandria*; the old Gallies, which had long been laid up in the King's private Arsenals, were refitted; and finding they wanted Oars, they made use of Planks, pull'd off from the Porti-

*Cæsar
besieg'd.
Their Expe-
dition, and
Number of
their Ships.*

*Cæsar's
Fleet.*

*Both Fleets
drawn up.*

Cæsar's.

*The Egyp-
tians Fleet.*

** Malleoli.*

*Euphranor's
Speech to
Cæsar.*

Portico's, Schools, and publick Buildings, to serve the present Occasion: For they knew they were not going a long Voyage, being to engage almost in the Haven. Thus their natural Genius supply'd their Necessities. In a very few Days, beyond Expectation, they had equipp'd Two and Twenty four-bank'd and five-bank'd Gallies, with several smaller Vessels. They try'd in the Haven how well they could row, and having put a sufficient Number of Marines on board, prepar'd themselves for the Engagement. Cæsar had nine *Rhodian* Gallies, (for of ten which the Islanders sent him, one founder'd on the *Egyptian* Coast;) eight from *Pontus*, five from *Lycia*, and twelve from *Asia*: But amongst these he had only five Gallies with five Banks of Oars, and ten with four; all the rest were smaller Ships, and most of 'em without Decks: However, depending on the Courage of his Soldiers, and having already try'd the Enemy's Forces, he resolv'd to give 'em Battel.

Thus both Navies, promising themselves Success, put out to Sea: Cæsar sailing round *Pharus*, drew his Gallies up over-against the Enemy in this Order; he plac'd the *Rhodian* Squadron in the Right, that of *Pontus* in the Left, about four Hundred Paces distant from the other, that they might have Room enough to tack about: In a second Line behind these he dispos'd the rest of the Ships for a Reserve, giving each of 'em Orders to attend and relieve such particular Gallies. The *Alexandrians*, who left the Port with no less Assurance, dispos'd two and twenty Gallies in the Line of Battel, placing the rest behind: But besides these, they had a great many Boats and smaller Vessels, that carry'd Fire and * Arrows loaden with combustible Matter, that burnt whate'er they fix'd to; designing by their Number, Noise, and Flames, to strike a Terror into our Gallies. Between both Navies on the *African* side, (for half of *Alexandria* is in *Africk*) were certain Flats, and each expected a considerable Time, whether should pass 'em first; because they who came over 'em, would find it a difficult Matter to retreat again when they desir'd it.

Euphranor was Admiral of the *Rhodian* Squadron, who for his Greatness of Mind, deserv'd rather to be rank'd amongst the *Romans* than *Grecians*; and had deservedly been constituted Admiral, for his Courage and Experience. He, perceiving Cæsar's Design, said; *You seem*

appre-

Cæsar
besieg'd.

apprehensive, Sir, of crossing the Shallows first, lest you should be oblig'd to engage the Enemy, before the rest of the Fleet comes up to your Assistance. Commit that Affair to my Charge, I will sustain their Attack 'till the other Gallies get over, and shew you my Countrymen deserve your good Opinion: For we can no longer endure the Disgrace, of being thus insulted by the Egyptians. Cæsar having applauded and encourag'd his Design, gave the Signal. Four Rhodian Gallies had no sooner pass'd the Flats, but they were surrounded by the Alexandrians; who attack'd 'em with great Fury; but they quickly extricated themselves, and were so very dexterous, that notwithstanding the Disparity of Number, they lost not an Oar, never gave the Enemy an Opportunity of coming upon their Broad-sides, but always receiv'd 'em on their Beaks: By this time the rest follow'd after, and the Place being narrow, Art was oblig'd to give Place to Courage. All the Alexandrians, and our Soldiers that were left behind to guard the Fortifications, attending with great Impatience the Success of the Day, mounted to the Tops of the highest Houses, that commanded the farthest Prospect, where both sides earnestly besought the Gods for Victory. But the Battel was very unequal, for a Defeat would have depriv'd us of all Hopes of retreating, either by Sea or Land; and Victory could secure us nothing. Whereas, had Success attended their Fleet, they had been intire Masters of all; and tho' they were defeated, might again try their Fortune. Add to this, the Hardship of so many Persons Safety depending on so few, whose want of Courage must have prov'd fatal to those, who had not the Liberty to fight for themselves. These Arguments Cæsar had urg'd some Days before, that they might maintain the Fight with greater Valour, since the Lives of their Companions were committed to their Charge: And each private Soldier, following his Example, conjur'd his Comrade to behave himself worthy of the Trust reposed in him, by those who ventur'd the Fate of a Battel upon his Courage. Spurr'd by these powerful Motives they laid about 'em so furiously, that neither the Enemy's Number nor Experience avail'd 'em any thing; nor could so vast a Multitude produce Men enough to equal ours in Valour. In this Battel we took a five-bank'd and a two-bank'd Gally, with all the Soldiers and Sailors on board, and sunk three others, without the Loss of a single Vessel.

He begins
the Fight.

The Dexterity of the
Rhodians.

Cæsar gets
the Victory,
takes Two
Ships, sinks
Three.

Cæsar
besieg'd.

The rest escap'd to the Town, being shelter'd by the Mole and Forts; which hinder'd our Pursuit.

C H A P. V.

Cæsar at-
sacks the
Mole.

TO prevent the like Inconvenience for the future, Cæsar thought it of great Importance to render himself Master both of the Mole and Island: Greatest part of his Works being already finish'd, he believ'd his Forces were sufficient to maintain their Ground, and assault the Isle. Having resolv'd upon the Attempt, he order'd ten Cohorts, with some select light-arm'd Cavalry of Gaul, to embark in Boats and small Vessels; and at the same time, to divide the Enemy's Forces, attack'd the Island on the other side with his Gallies; promising great Rewards to him that first obtain'd the Land. At first the *Egyptians* return'd our Assault with equal Fury, for the same Instant they cast Darts upon us from the tops of their Houses, they likewise maintain'd the Shore; which being steep, our Soldiers could not easily ascend. In the mean while they dexterously defended the Entrance of the Port, by the assistance of their Boats, and five Gallies. But the Coasts being fathom'd, and the Shallows discover'd, a few of our Men recover'd the Shore; they were immediately follow'd by others, who vigorously charg'd the Islanders that stood upon the higher Ground, and routed 'em. These being put to flight, the rest no longer troubled themselves to secure the Haven, but quitting their Gallies, hasten'd to the Town to defend their Houses.

Routs the
Pharians,
gains the
Island,

and the
Town.

Nor were they able long to secure their Fortifications, tho' their Turrets (if we may compare small Things with greater) resemble those of *Alexandria*, and being join'd together, supply'd the want of a Wall. Our Soldiers had neither Scaling-ladders, nor any other Things necessary for an Assault; but Fear, which often deprives Men both of their Senses and Limbs, so insatuated the Enemy, that they, who but the Moment before thought themselves an equal Match for us upon the even Ground, being terrify'd with their Flight, did not think themselves now secure on the tops of their Houses thirty Foot high; but descending to the Mole, plung'd into the Sea, and swam eight Hundred Paces to the Town. However several were taken and kill'd, but the Number of the Prisoners did not amount to above six Hundred.

Several
taken and
kill'd.

Cæsar,

Cæsar gave the Soldiers free Leave to plunder, commanded the Houses to be levell'd, but fortify'd the Castle at the Foot of the Bridge which was nearest *Pharus*, and plac'd a Garrison in it. Thus the *Pharians* deserted their Quarters; but the strongest Part of the Bridge was still possess'd by the *Alexandrians*. This *Cæsar* likewise assaulted the Day after, knowing when he had obtain'd 'em both, he should effectually prevent all Excursions and Surprises. He quickly clear'd the Shore of the Enemy, by the Darts and Engines from on board, oblig'd 'em to retreat into the Town; and having landed about three Cohorts, for the Place was so narrow 'twould contain no more, the rest were left behind to guard his Ships. Having gain'd the Shore, he commanded that Part of the Bridge towards the Enemy to be secur'd by a Rampier, and the Arch to be stopp'd up with Stones, where their Vessels usually got out. His Orders were so well perform'd, nor a Cock-boat could get thro', and the other Part of the Work was already begun, when all the *Alexandrian* Forces sally'd out of the Town, and posted themselves in an open Place opposite to the Bridge; attacking the Mole at the same Instant, from on board the Vessels which they usually sent thro' the Arches to burn our Transports. Thus they assaulted us in their Ships, and from the Platform; we from the Bridge and Mole return'd their Charge.

Whilst *Cæsar* was employ'd in encouraging his Men, and distributing the necessary Orders, several of the Rowers and Sailors leap'd on Shore, some out of Curiosity, others to defend the Place. At first they repuls'd the Enemy's Vessels from the Mole with Stones and Slings, doing great Execution at the same Instant with their Darts. But the *Alexandrians* having remov'd a small distance from that Post, and landed a few Soldiers on their Flank, upon which, as they made a disorderly Sally, observing neither Ranks nor Files, so they now began to retreat to their Gallies with the utmost Precipitation. Encourag'd by their Flight, the *Alexandrians* quitted their Ships, and closely pursu'd our Men whilst they were frighten'd and in disorder; which they that remain'd in the Gallies perceiving, haul'd up the Ladders, and immediately put off from the Shore, to prevent the Enemy's boarding 'em. The three Cohorts on the Bridge that first landed, finding all things in such Confusion, hearing a Noise behind 'em, seeing their Party routed, being ply'd with Showers of Darts, apprehending

Cæsar besieg'd.

Cæsar fortifies the Castle at the Foot of the Bridge nearest Pharus; attacks the other.

Gains the Shore, stops an Arch up under the Bridge, and begins to throw up a Rampier. All the Enemy's Forces sally from the Town, attack the Romans likewise from on board.

Several of Cæsar's Seamen come on Shore; at first make the Enemy retreat

but are routed, and occasion the Loss of the Place.

Cæsar's Soldiers fly with great Confusion.

*Cæsar
besieged.*

*Some Vessels
overloaden
and sunk.*

ing they should be surrounded, and have their Retreat cut off by the Departure of the Ships, quitted the Works, and retir'd as fast as they could towards the Gallies. Some getting on board the nearest Vessels, overloaded and sunk 'em; others disputing with themselves, whether they should maintain their Ground or no, were cut to pieces by the *Alexandrians*: Some had the good Fortune to preserve their Lives, by getting into empty Vessels that rode at Anchor, others taking abundance of Pains, by the Assistance of their Shields, reach'd the nearest Gallies.

*Cæsar
escapes by
swimming.*

*Cæsar lost
Eight Hun-
dred in this
Action.*

Cæsar, who shar'd with his Soldiers in the Danger of this Enterprize, did his utmost endeavour to stop their Flight from the Bridge and Fortifications; but finding the rest were gone, he likewise retreated to his Gally. He was follow'd by such a Crowd, the Sailors had neither room to work, nor thrust the Vessel off the Shore; whereupon *Cæsar*, suspecting what afterwards happen'd, flung himself into the Sea, and swam to another Ship further off: From thence he sent several Boats to the Assistance of his Men, preserv'd some, but the Vessel with most on board was sunk. In this Action we lost about four hundred legionary Soldiers, of Sailors and Rowers something above that Number. The *Alexandrians*, having gain'd their Point, fortify'd the Castle with strong Works and Engines, pull'd out the Stones from under the Arch, and made the Passage clear as formerly.

C H A P. VI.

*The Romans
Courage.*

** The Text
in this Place
is so corrupt,
all we can do
is to guess at
the Author's
meaning.*

*The Alexan-
drians desire
their King's
Liberty.*

O U R Soldiers were so far from being discourag'd by their late Misfortune, that it only serv'd 'em for a Spur to assault the Enemy's Works with greater Vigour; in their daily Skirmishes they were successful, and * took many of the *Alexandrians* Prisoners. In fine, they were so eager to regain their Credit, that *Cæsar's* Edict to the contrary could not put a stop to their Labour or Desire of fighting; whence it plainly appear'd, the Legions had more occasion to be restrain'd from, than prompted to embark in the most dangerous Enterprizes.

The *Alexandrians* perceiving nothing could daunt the Romans, that Success confirm'd, and ill Fortune made 'em more courageous than before, as we imagine, prompted by the King's Officers that were in *Cæsar's* Quarters, or their own Design, privately ratify'd by him, sent Embassadors to desire *Cæsar* would grant their King his Liberty,

Liberty, and suffer him to come to his People, for they were all ready to submit to his Royal Pleasure, being weary of a Girl's precarious Reign, and the insufferable Tyranny of *Ganymede*. Should his Majesty think fit to conclude a Peace with *Cæsar*, no Apprehensions whatever should prevent their submitting to his Commands.

Cæsar

besieg'd.

Their Dissimulation.

Tho' *Cæsar* knew the *Egyptians* to be a deceitful People, that always talk'd of one thing whilst they meant another; yet he thought it convenient to grant their Request. For if they design'd to perform their Promise, he believ'd the King would make 'em faithful to the *Romans*: But if they only wanted a Prince to head their Army, which seem'd more agreeable to their Temper, he esteem'd it abundantly more Glorious and Honourable to wage War against a Crown'd Head, than Vagabonds and Scoundrels. Having therefore advised the young Prince, To consult the Interest of his Hereditary Kingdom, to spare so famous a Country, which had already suffer'd too much by Fire and Ruin; to reduce his Subjects to Reason, protect them, and preserve his Faith with the People of Rome, since *Cæsar* had repos'd so entire a Confidence in him, as to deliver their Monarch to those that were actually in Arms against him; giving him his Hand, he dismiss'd the Youth now almost at Age. But he, whose Mind had already been imbu'd with fallacious Principles, that he might not degenerate from the Nature of his Country; With Tears in his Eyes desired he might not go, protesting Empire was not dearer to him than *Cæsar's* Presence: Who, being mov'd to behold the Boy's Concern, dry'd his Tears, telling him, If he design'd it, they might quickly meet again; and so sent him away. But *Ptolemy*, as if he had made his Escape out of Prison, soon began to wage War so furiously upon *Cæsar*, that it plainly appear'd the Tears he shed proceeded from a quite different Cause than he pretended. Several of *Cæsar's* Lieutenants, Friends, Centurions and Soldiers, were well enough pleas'd, that his easie Temper had been impos'd on by so early an Impostor: Not considering *Cæsar* had been induc'd to let him go, more by mature Consideration than good Nature.

Cæsar grants their Request, and why.

His Speech to Ptolemy at parting.

Ptolemy's Dissimulation.

He makes War upon Cæsar.

The *Alexandrians*, having now got the General they desir'd, found not their Affairs in a better Posture than before; contrary to their Expectations, they had the Misfortune to see nothing done, whilst the Soldiers despis'd the King's Age and Weakness; and News arriv'd of considerable Supplies, that were marching by

Cæsar
besieged.

The Egyptian
design to
intercept
Cæsar's Con-
voys.
Cæsar sends
his Fleet to
disappoint
them.

Euphranor
dies bravely.

Land from *Syria* and *Cilicia* to *Cæsar's* Assistance, which he himself as yet knew nothing of. In the mean while, they resolv'd to intercept those Provisions which were coming by Sea ; therefore, having equipp'd a Fleet for this purpose, they dispos'd their Ships in convenient Places, near *Canopus*, to attend the Arrival of our Convoys. *Cæsar*, having Notice of their Design, gave Orders his Fleet should immediately put out to Sea : He constituted *Tiberius Nero* Admiral, who was attended by *Euphranor* and his *Rhodian* Gallies, without whom was no Engagement, nor the least Success. But Fortune, who frequently reserves those to harder Destiny, on whom she has bestow'd many Favours, now forsook *Euphranor*. When our Fleet arriv'd at *Canopus*, and both Navies were drawn up in Order of Battel, according to his usual Custom, he began the Engagement, split and sunk a Three-banked Galley of the Enemy's ; but pursuing another too far, and the rest of his Squadron following but slowly, he was surrounded by the *Alexandrians*. No Galley came up to his Relief, either believing his Courage and good Fortune able to protect him, or fearing to venture so far themselves. Thus the only Man that behav'd himself well in this Action, perish'd with his victorious Galley.

C H A P. VII.

Mithridates
arriv'd at
Pelusium ;
which he
takes by
Storm.

Marches to-
wards Alex-
andria.

WHILST these Affairs were in Agitation, *Mithridates* of *Pergamus*, descended from a noble Family, equally renown'd for his Courage, Conduct, Fidelity, and Place he possess'd in *Cæsar's* Favour, who had been sent, at the beginning of the *Alexandrian* War, to raise Forces in *Syria* and *Cilicia*, was arrived by Land at *Pelusium*, where *Syria* and *Egypt* join, with a considerable Army, which his Diligence, and the Affection of the Country had quickly levy'd. In this Town *Achillas* had plac'd a strong Garrison, to secure a Place of so great Importance: For all *Egypt* towards the Sea is guarded by *Pharus*, and *Pelusium* by Land. However *Mithridates* storm'd the Place, and notwithstanding the Defence the Besieged could make, his Army was so great, he still detach'd fresh Men to relieve the faint and wounded : By continuing the Assault he carry'd the Place the same Day he sat down before it, and plac'd a Garrison of his own there. After this Success he march'd towards *Alexandria* to join *Cæsar*, taking in all the Coun-

Countries by the way, and making 'em declare for Cæ- ^{Cæsar}
sar, by Vertue of that Authority which generally attends ^{besieged.}
the Conqueror.

The most considerable Town in those Parts, at no
great distance from *Alexandria*, is *Delta*, which bor-
rows its Name from the Similitude its Form has to the
Grecian Letter. For here a Branch of the River *Nile*
divides its self into two several Streams, which separa-
ting by degrees, before they disembogue themselves in-
to the Sea, run at a considerable distance from each o-
ther. *Ptolemy* having notice of *Mithridates's* Approach ^{Ptolemy}
to this Place, and knowing he must of necessity pass ^{sends a Par-}
the River there, sent a considerable Army to oppose him, ^{ty to stop his}
hoping to defeat, or at least put a stop to his Journey : ^{Passage;}

The former of these would have compleated his Wishes;
but to prevent *Mithridates's* joining with *Cæsar* was e-
nough to secure him from Danger. Part of the King's
Forces having pass'd the River, made what haste they
could to engage him, that they might engross the Glory
of the Victory to themselves : But *Mithridates* wisely su-
stain'd their Charge by the Assistance of a Rampier, ha-
ving fortify'd his Camp after the *Roman* manner ; and
perceiving they assaulted his Works too rashly, sallying
out he made a great Slaughter amongst 'em. And had ^{but they are}
not their Knowledge of the Country, and the Vessels ^{put to flight.}
they cross'd the River in protected 'em, they had been
intirely defeated. However, having retreated a little
way, they join'd the rest of the Army, and began a se-
cond time to storm *Mithridates's* Trenches. ^{A second}
^{Attempt to}
^{storm his}
^{Trenches,}

Whereupon he dispatch'd a Courier to *Cæsar*, with an
Account of the Action : *Ptolemy* likewise had notice of
it from his Forces : So both he and *Cæsar* set out almost
the same Instant, one to surprise, the other to relieve
Mithridates. The King took the shorter Cut by the
River *Nile* ; on which he had a considerable Navy re-
ady fitted out. But *Cæsar*, to avoid engaging him in his
Passage, sail'd by the *African* Shore, and join'd the
victorious *Mithridates* before the King's Army arriv'd.

Ptolemy had encamp'd in a Place well fortify'd by ^{Ptolemy en-}
Nature ; 'twas a rising Ground surrounded by a Plain, ^{camp'd.}
and secur'd on three several sides by different Fences,
the *Nile*, a Mountain, and a Morass. Between this
Place and *Cæsar's* Rout, about seven Miles distance
from *Ptolemy's* Quarter, ran a narrow River with very
steep Banks, which discharg'd it self into the *Nile* : The
King, upon notice that *Cæsar* was marching that way,
derach'd

Caesar and
Mithridates.

He sends his
Cavalry to
oppose Caesar
passing a
Branch of
the Nile;

but Caesar
defeats 'em.
Marches to
Ptolemy's
Camp.

Storms a Ca-
stle with
great Loss on
his side.

Carfulenus
detach'd to
storm the
highest part
of the En-
emy's Camp;

Caesar detach'd all his Cavalry, with the choicest Light-arm'd Foot, to oppose his crossing the River, and engage him to advantage. Here Courage had no Opportunity to exert it self, nor did the cowardly run any Hazard; but our Men, no longer enduring to have their Passage stopp'd by the *Alexandrians*, whilst the *German* Horse were finding out Fords, a Party of our Cavalry swam cross the River, where the Banks were easiest of ascent; and the legionary Soldiers having cut down great Trees that extended from one side to the other, flung 'em into the Water, strow'd Fascines upon 'em, and cross'd the River. The Enemy were so much afraid of being charg'd by 'em, they immediately fled; but few escap'd the Slaughter to carry the King News of the Action.

This Business so luckily dispatch'd, *Caesar* believing his sudden Arrival might strike a Terror into the *Alexandrians*, push'd his Success, and march'd directly to *Ptolemy's* Camp. But perceiving the Place so well defended by Art and Nature, that the Enemy's Rampier was guarded by a numerous Party; his own Soldiers fatigu'd with their Journey and late Engagement, he did not think convenient to attempt their Trenches, but encamp'd at a moderate Distance. The Day after he assaulted one of the King's Castles in a Village not far off, from whence there was a Line of Communication to their Camp: This Place *Caesar* storm'd with all his Forces, not because he thought a less Number were not sufficient to accomplish the Business; but whilst the *Alexandrians* were frighten'd and in Confusion, he design'd from thence to march directly to force their Trenches. We had access to this Castle two Ways, one by the Plain mention'd before, the other by a narrow Pass between their Camp and the Nile. That side easiest to come at was defended by the Flower of the *Alexandrian* Army; but the Enemy wounded and repuls'd our Men with greatest Success on that part leading to the Nile. Here we were surrounded by Showers of Darts from every side; gall'd both from the Rampier and the River; where several Vessels lay with Slingers and Archers on Board.

Caesar perceiv'd his Soldiers did their utmost to no purpose, whilst they labour'd under so many Disadvantages; but observing the highest part of the Enemy's Camp was left unguarded, because they thought it sufficiently fortify'd by Nature; (for most of their Forces were come to the Place of Action, either to behold or share the Engagement;) he detach'd a Party under

the

the Command of *Carfulenus*, an Officer of equal Con-
 duct and Courage, with Orders to take a Circuit round *Mithrida-*
 and ascend the Hill. When our Men got thither, they
 found but few of the Enemy upon the Place, whom
 they attack'd very vigorously; the *Alexandrians*, sur-
 pris'd to hear the Noise of Fighting behind 'em, began
 to fly; so almost at the same Instant we forc'd their
 Camp on every side: But *Carfulenus's* Party enter'd
 first, and descending from the higher Ground, made a
 dreadful Slaughter amongst the Enemy. Others, to
 avoid the like Fate, flung themselves headlong in whole
 Troops together from the Rampier, to that Part of the
 Valley nearest the River; the foremost Ranks tumbled
 into the Ditch, and furnish'd an easy Passage for those
 that came after. The King, during this Confusion,
 got on Ship-board, but the Vessel, being over-loaden,
 was cast away.

which he
 forces.
 The Egypti-
 ans intirely
 routed.

Ptolemy
gets on
Board; but
the Vessel is
sunk.

Caesar
marches to
Alexandria,

After this Success, *Caesar*, depending on the Fame of
 his Victory, march'd the nearest way by Land to *Alex-*
andria with his Cavalry, and enter'd that Part of the
 Town which was in the Enemy's Possession. Nor did
 his Opinion deceive him, that on the News of this De-
 feat they would no longer think of War, for on his Ar-
 rival he receiv'd the Reward due to his Virtue and
 Grandeur of Mind. The *Alexandrians*, having quitted
 their Works, and thrown away their Arms, came out,
 array'd like Suppliants, to meet him, bringing along
 with 'em all those sacred Things, wherewith they us'd
 to appease their angry Monarchs, and deliver'd them-
 selves up to his Mercy. He forgave and comforted 'em;
 then enter'd thro' their Works into his own Quarters;
 where his Soldiers congratulated his safe Return, and
 happy Decision of the War.

The Towns-
 men come out
 to meet him
 like Suppli-
 ants.

Thus *Caesar*, having render'd himself Master of *Alex-*
andria and *Egypt*, took Care to perform *Ptolemy's* Will;
 who had conjur'd the *Romans* not to permit it to be al-
 ter'd; for the King being dead, he divided the King-
 dom between his younger Brother, and *Cleopatra* the el-
 dest Sister, who had continu'd faithful to the People of
Rome, and staid all the War in his Fortifications. But
 to prevent new Commotions, before these Princes should
 be settl'd in their Thrones, he banish'd *Arfinoë*, under
 whose Name *Ganymede* had so long bore Tyrannical
 Sway. He took the sixth Veteran Legion away with
 him, leaving the rest of his Forces to keep the Kingdom
 in Obedience to the Sharers of the Crown, who were

He performs
Ptolemy the
Father's
Will.

Cleopatra
 and her
 younger
 Brother con-
 stituted King
 and Queen.

Leaves an
 Army to
 protect 'em.

Domitius not belov'd by their Subjects, because they were Friends and Phar- to *Caesar*; nor could, in a few Days Reign, acquire the naces. same Authority with their Predecessors. 'Twas for our Advantage to protect 'em so long as they observ'd their League with the *Romans*; and the Soldiers left behind were able to restrain 'em from being ungrateful, if they design'd it. Thus having settled the Kingdom, *Caesar* march'd by Land to *Syria*.

and marches
to *Syria*.

C H A P. VIII.

Deiotarus
desires assistance from
Domitius against Pharnaces.

He sends
Embassadors
to bid Pharnaces quit
Cappadocia and Armenia.

He gets an
Army together, appoints 'em to meet him at Comana.
A Town in Cappadocia.
Pharnaces's Answer.

WHILST these Affairs were transacting in *Egypt*, King *Deiotarus*, to whom *Caesar* had committed the Government of *Asia*, with the neighbouring Provinces, came to beg *Domitius Calvinus's* Assistance for securing *Armenia* the Lesser, his Territories, and to prevent *Cappadocia*, *Ariobarzanes's* Kingdom, from being possessed and ravag'd by *Pharnaces*; which Misfortunes, unless they were freed from, they should not be able to pay *Caesar* the Tribute contracted for. *Domitius* not only considering how necessary Money was for paying the Soldiers, but likewise reflecting what a Disgrace it would be to the *Roman* Empire, to the victorious *Caesar* and himself, to suffer the Kingdoms of their Allies to be invaded by foreign Princes, immediately sent *Pharnaces* Word to quit *Armenia* and *Cappadocia*; not to provoke the Majesty of the *Roman* People, because they were engag'd in a Civil War. Believing this Message would have the greater Effect if he march'd that way with an Army, he went to his Legions, and took the thirty sixth along with him, for the other Two he sent into *Egypt* in Obedience to *Caesar's* Commands; but one of 'em arriv'd not at *Alexandria*, because 'twas sent by Land thro' *Syria*: Besides the Legion, *Domitius* had two others from *Deiotarus*, which had been instructed in the *Roman* Discipline, with one hundred Cavalry: *Ariobarzanes* likewise furnish'd him with the same Number. He sent *P. Sextius* to *C. Prætorius* the Treasurer, for the Legions which had been levy'd in haste in *Pontus*, and *Quintus Patissius* for other Forces out of *Cilicia*, which soon met at the general Rendezvous which *Domitius* had appointed 'em at **Comana*.

In the mean while *Pharnaces* sent Embassadors, who, in Answer to *Domitius's* Demands, were to acquaint him, their King had quitted *Cappadocia*, and retir'd to *Armenia* the Less, which he had a lawful Title to by

Inheri-

Inheritance. However, he would expect *Cæsar's* Arrival, and submit his Cause entirely to his Arbitration. But *Domitius* finding he had not quitted *Cappadocia* without Compulsion, because he could easilier defend *Armenia*, which lay nearer his Kingdom, and believ'd *Domitius* was marching against him with all the three Legions; whereas, being formerly advis'd, two were sent to *Cæsar*, he had maintain'd his Ground with greater Assurance: He resolv'd to oblige him to quit that Kingdom likewise, since he had no better Title to *Armenia* than *Cappadocia*: Nor was it reasonable for him to expect the Matter should be intirely referr'd to *Cæsar*; which could not be done'till Affairs were put in the very same Posture he found 'em, and *Deiotarus* again possess'd of his Dominions. Having made his Reply, he march'd with the Forces, I mention'd before, into *Armenia*, taking his Rout along the Hills. For from *Pontus* to *Armenia* the Less, by the way of *Comana*, runs a continu'd Ridge beset with Woods, which divides *Cappadocia* from *Armenia*. The Advantages he propos'd by marching this way, were effectually preventing all Surprizes, and an Assurance of Supplies from *Cappadocia*, which abounded with Corn.

Domitius's Reply.

He marches directly to Armenia.

Pharnaces in the mean while omitted not sending perpetual Embassies to treat of Peace, and offer *Domitius* Royal Presents, which he generously despis'd; answering, That nothing was of so great Value to him, as the Dignity of the *Roman* Empire, and the Satisfaction of regaining those Kingdoms that belong'd to her Allies. Having arriv'd, by long Marches, near *Nicopolis*, a Town of *Armenia*, situate in a Plain, but cover'd by high Mountains, at some distance, on two several sides; he encamp'd about seven Miles off the Place. Between his Quarters and *Nicopolis*, lay a difficult, and narrow Pass, where *Pharnaces* dispos'd an Ambuscade of his choicest Foot, and almost all his Cavalry. He gave Orders that plenty of Cattle should be dispers'd about the Entrance of the Avenue, and commanded several of the Townsmen and Peasants to shew themselves there, That in case *Domitius* came as a Friend, he might not suspect an Ambush, seeing both Men and Cattle in the Fields; if as an Enemy, his Soldiers might be attack'd, and cut to pieces, whilst the Design of Prey should have disorder'd 'em. Having form'd this Contrivance, he still continu'd his Embassies, hoping the easilier to deceive him: But as Fortune would have it, the Prospect of a Peace detain'd *Domitius* in his Camp on the other side the Mountains; wherefore having slipp'd the first Opportunity,

Pharnaces sends continual Embassies and Presents; which are refused.

He encamps within Seven Miles of Nicopolis,

Pharnaces's Ambuscade to no purpose.

Domitius tunity, lest *Domitius* should get Notice of his Design,
and *Pharnaces* recall'd his Forces into his Camp.

The Day after, *Domitius* march'd nearer, and encamp'd over-against *Nicopolis*: Whilst our Men were working at the Trenches, *Pharnaces* drew his Forces out in Order of Battel. According to the Custom of his Country, having first dispos'd his Front in a Line, he back'd the Wings and Middle, each with three Reserves; the rest between them two consisted only of a single Line: But *Domitius*, making part of his Forces attend in Arms before the Rampier, compleated his Works. The following Night, *Pharnaces* having intercepted one of our Couriers that came from *Alexandria*, from his Packet got Intelligence, what Difficulties *Cæsar* labour'd under, how earnestly he press'd *Domitius* to send him Supplies, and come nearer *Alexandria* by the way of *Syria*. Upon this, thinking himself as good as Victor, provided he could prolong the Time 'till *Domitius* should be oblig'd to quit the Country; he sunk two Ditches four Foot deep, not far distant from each other, on that side where there lay the easiest Access to the Town, and the most convenient Ground for our Army to engage on; resolving not to march his Forces beyond 'em. Between these he constantly drew out his Army, placing his Cavalry in each Wing without 'em; which were infinitely superior to ours in Numbers, and would otherwise have been useless.

Pharnaces intercepts a Courier with Notice of Cæsar's Straights.

Designs to prolong the Time 'till Domitius goes.

Domitius resolves to fight him.

Draws out his Army.

The Fight begins with various Success.

But *Domitius*, who was more uneasy for *Cæsar's* Danger than his own, considering he could not safely retreat, if he should now desire the Conditions he had rejected, or march away without having effected any thing; drew up his Forces in Order of Battel: The thirty sixth Legion he plac'd in the Right, that of *Pontus* in the Left, those of *Deiotarus* in the middle; contriving to make a very narrow Front, and disposing the rest of his Cohorts for a Reserve. Thus both Armies being drawn up, and the Sign of Battel given, the Action began with various Success; for the thirty sixth Legion, charging the Enemy's Cavalry on this side the Ditch, made so considerable a Progress, that they got over the Ditch, engaged them on the other side, and forc'd their Way to the Walls of *Nicopolis*. That of *Pontus*, in the other Wing, being first oblig'd to give Ground, endeavour'd a second time to pass the Ditch, and flank the Enemy, by taking a Circuit; but were cut to pieces in the Attempt: As for *Deiotarus's* Legions, they scarce

scarce were able to endure the first Charge. Thus the King's Forces being victorious in the Right Wing and Middle, fac'd about to attack the thirty sixth Legion; who bravely maintain'd their Ground against the conquering Enemy; and finding they were over-power'd by Numbers, with wonderful Presence of Mind cast themselves into an Orb, and retir'd to the Foot of a Mountain, whither *Pharnaces* did not think convenient to follow 'em, because of the Disadvantage of the Place. Thus a considerable Part of *Deiotarus's* Forces being put to the Sword, and the *Pontick* Legion almost intirely cut off, the thirty sixth gain'd the higher Ground, not having lost above two hundred and fifty Men. In this Action fell several Persons of Renown, with some Roman Knights; but after the Defeat, *Domitius* rallying the Remainder of his broken Army, retir'd a secure Way thro' *Cappadocia* into *Asia*.

Domitius
defeated.

He retreats
to Asia.

Flush'd with this Succels, *Pharnaces* enter'd *Pontus* with all his Forces, at a time when he might have obtain'd any thing from *Cesar* he could have desir'd. Here Victory having made him most inhumanly cruel, after he had regain'd what his Father lost, he sack'd several Towns, plunder'd the Natives and Roman Citizens, exercis'd such Barbarity on those, whose Age and Beauty render'd 'em lovely, as was more intolerable than Death; and no body opposing his Progress, boasted he had recover'd his Father's Kingdom.

Pharnaces
over-runs
Pontus; his
Barbarity.

CHAP. IX.

ABOUT the same time, we receiv'd another Loss in *Illyricum*, which Province for some Months before had not only been maintain'd without Disgrace, but with Honour. For *Q. Cornificius*, *Cesar's* Treasurer, being sent thither Proprætor in the Summer with Two Legions, tho' the Country was hardly able to maintain an Army in its happier Days, much less after it had been laid waste by intestine Broils; yet by his Prudence and Diligence, taking particular Care to do nothing rashly, reduc'd and kept the Province in Obedience. He demolish'd several Forts erected on rising Grounds; which furnish'd those that possess'd 'em with Opportunities of making Excursions, and waging War; these he gave the Soldiers free leave to plunder, and tho' the Spoil was insignificant, it satisfy'd 'em, being the Fruits of their Labour in so poor a Country. On Notice that

Octavius,

Vatinius's *Octavius*, who escap'd from the Slaughter of *Pharsalia*, *Exploits*.

Octavius comes to Illyricum.

Cornificius takes several of his Ships.

had put into Harbour in his Province with a considerable Fleet; he got together a small Number of Vessels from the *Judertini*, who were always faithful to the Commonwealth; and having defeated *Octavius*, took the greatest part of his Fleet; which, join'd to those of his Allies, made him powerful at Sea.

Whilst *Cæsar* was pursuing *Pompey* to the farthest Parts of the World, on Advice that several of the Enemy had retreated to *Illyricum*, because it lay so near *Macedonia*, he sent *Gabinus* Orders to march with the new rais'd Legion under his Command into *Illyricum*, and join *Cornificius*; to defend the Province from Danger: But if he found the Country could be secur'd by a small Number of Forces, to return with the Legions into *Macedonia*, for so long as *Pompey* liv'd he expected Commotions there.

Gabinus arrives in Illyricum.

Gabinus march'd to *Illyricum* in Winter-time, when all Provisions were scarce; either believing the Country to be more plentiful than it really was, depending on *Cæsar's* Fortune, or his own Conduct and Experience, which had often brought him out of the greatest Dangers with Success: But he could neither be supply'd by the Province, Part whereof had revolted, and Part was already drain'd; nor by Shipping from the Sea, the Winds standing contrary: So that he found himself oblig'd to make War, not as he design'd, but as Necessity directed. Thus when he was forc'd by Want to besiege Towns or Castles in the Depth of Winter, he met with many Inconveniences. In fine, he became so

He endeavours to retreat to Salona, his Rerect off.

contemptible in the Opinion of the Natives, that retiring to *Salona*, a Sea-Port Town, (faithfully defended by the *Roman* Citizens) they attack'd him upon his March; in this Action having lost above two thousand Soldiers, thirty eight Centurions, and four Tribunes, he retreated with the rest of the Forces to *Salona*; where suffering the least Extremities for Want of all kind of Provisions, he died within a few Months after. Whose Misfortune whilst alive, and sudden Death, put *Octavius* in great hopes of obtaining the Province: But Fortune, who has a peculiar Influence in War, joining with *Cornificius's* Diligence, and the Courage of *Vatinius*, soon eclips'd his Prosperity.

He dies

Vatinius fires out a Fleet.

Vatinius was at *Brindisi*, when this Action happen'd, and had notice of it from *Cornificius*; who frequently press'd him to come to the Assistance of the Province: Being likewise inform'd that *Octavius*, having made a League

League with the Natives, began to invest our Garrisons *Vatinius's* in several Places, partly by himself at Sea, partly by his *Exploits.* Allies at Land; tho' he found himself much indispos'd, and his Body was scarce able to keep pace with his Courage, yet Resolution overcame the Defects of Nature, the Hardships of the Weather, and speedy Preparations. For having but few Gallies himself, he had sent to *Kalenus* for a Fleet from *Achaia*; but finding they came not so soon as our Necessity requir'd, who were no longer able to hold out against *Octavius*, he fasten'd Beaks to a considerable Number of Vessels that lay in the Port, but were not large enough for an Engagement. Joyning these to his Gallies, and putting Veteran Soldiers on board, whereof he had many, who staid behind at *Brindisi* for the Recovery of their Health, when the Army went over to *Greece*; he hoisted Sail for *Illyricum*, taking in several Sea-port Towns by the way, that had revolted, and leaving those that were obstinate to persist in their Resolution, thinking nothing of so immediate consequence as pursuing *Octavius*, whom he found investing *Epidaurus*, where we had a Garrison, by Sea and Land; but oblig'd him to quit the Siege, and took the Garrison on Board his Fleet. But *Octavius* having notice that *Vatinius's* Squadron consisted most of small Vessels, depending on the Strength of his own, resolv'd to attend him at the Island *Tauris*. Hither *Vatinius* follow'd him, not that he believ'd *Octavius* staid there, but because he design'd, if he had quitted the Place, to pursue him farther. He no sooner approach'd *Tauris*, his Fleet being dispers'd by the Tempest, and little expecting an Enemy, but he discern'd a Galley, mann'd with Soldiers, making directly towards him extended Sails. Upon this he immediately gave Orders for furling up the Sails, lowering the Sail Yard, arming the Soldiers, and hoisting the Flag to give the Sign of Battel, that the Ships which came after might prepare for the Engagement. *Octavius's* Fleet came ready drawn up in Order out of the Port, *Vatinius's* had hardly time to put themselves in a Posture of Defence; but if the first had the Advantage in their Disposition, the latter had it in Courage.

Takes several Towns.

Raises the Siege of Epidaurus.

Engages Octavius's Fleet, and beats him.

Vatinius, finding himself unequally match'd with *Octavius*, as well in respect to the Size as Number of his Ships, resolv'd to commit the Affair to Fortune. Wherefore he began the Charge, by running against *Octavius's* Four-bank'd with his Five-bank'd Ship; this he did with

Vatinius's Exploits. with good Success, for he encounter'd him with such Violence, he broke the Beak of his Galley : The Engagement in the mean while was hotly maintain'd in all Places, tho' the greatest Concurrence was about the Admirals. Thus both Parties crouding to their Assistance, the Battel was fought in a very narrow Compass. The nearer they engag'd, the greater Advantage had *Vatinius's* Squadron ; for his Soldiers, leaping into the Enemy's Ships, gave wonderful Proof of their Courage ; thus the Fight becoming equal, the superior Virtue of our Men carry'd the Day. Their Admiral's Galley was sunk, several more endur'd the same Fate, and others were taken : Part of *Octavius's* Soldiers were cut to pieces, part plung'd into the Sea ; but he himself got into the Boat ; which being over-loaden was cast away ; however he sav'd his Life, tho' wounded, by swimming to his Brigantine. Being taken on Board, so soon as Night put an end to the Battel, the Wind blowing strong, he spread all his Sails to secure his Escape, attended only by a small number of Gallies, that had avoided the Danger of the Day.

Takes Eleven Gallies, other little Ships ; but Octavius escapes.

Vatinius takes Issa.

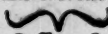
Here desists from the Pursuit, and returns to Brindisi.

Vatinius, after this Success sounded a Retreat, and enter'd Victor into the Port where *Octavius* came out, without the Loss of a single Vessel ; having taken one Five-bank'd, two Three-bank'd, and eight Two-bank'd Gallies, with several Rowers. Here he staid two Days to refit his own Ships, with those he had taken, and the third weigh'd Anchor for the Island *Issa*, because he had notice *Octavius* retir'd thither : This Place was of the greatest Importance of any in those Parts, and most firmly united to *Octavius's* Interest. But on *Vatinius's* Arrival there, the People surrender'd at Discretion, informing him that *Octavius*, with a few small Vessels, had sail'd with a fair Wind for Greece, from whence he design'd to pursue his Voyage to *Sicily*, so on to *Africk*. Thus having, in so short a space, happily accomplish'd this Affair, reduc'd the Province, deliver'd it into *Cornificius's* Charge, and defeated the Enemy's Fleet, *Vatinius* return'd Victorious to *Brindisi*, with his Army and Ships intire.

CHAP. X.

WHILST *Cesar* besieg'd *Pompey* at *Durazzo*, defeat-ed him at *Pharsalia*, and was engag'd in the dangerous War at *Alexandria*, tho' not equal to what Fame reported

ported it ; *Cassius Longinus* was left Proprætor in Spain, to reduce the farther Province. He, either prompted by his natural Temper, or the Hatred he bore the Country, ever since the Wounds he had treacherously received there, when Questor, gave evident Proofs of his Malice ; or perhaps believing the Province bore a mutual Hatred to him, (which was easily to be discern'd, by several Tokens, amongst a People who knew not how to dissemble their Minds) he resolv'd to recompence the Injury done the People by his Love to the Army. Wherefore having appointed the Soldiers a general Rendezvous, he promised every one of them a † hundred Sesterces. And not long after, having gain'd *Medobriga*, a Town in *Lusitania*, and Mount *Herminius*, where the People of *Medobriga* had taken Refuge, they gave him the Title of Emperor, he in Return presented them with a hundred more Sesterces each. Besides these, he bestowed considerable Gifts upon particular Persons, which for the present, made him mightily belov'd by the Army, yet severe and Military Discipline vanish'd by degrees.

Cassius's
Extortions.

Cassius, Governor of Spain.

His liberality to the Army.
† *In the Masculine Gender.*

Cassius, having dispos'd his Troops in Winter-Quarters, went to *Corduba* to determine Law Disputes: Here he was deeply in Debt, but resolv'd to pay it by laying heavy Impositions upon the Province. For they, who so prodigally bestow their Presents, always do it with a Design to gain more than they gave away. Money was extorted from the wealthy ; which *Cassius* did not only permit, but oblig'd 'em to spend upon him ; those that were rich were amerc'd for trifling Offences. In fine, no kind of Profit to be made by great and apparent Crimes, or the least and most insignificant were neglected, so the Emperor's House and Courts of Judicature were never empty. Those who had any thing to lose, were oblig'd to find Security for their good Behaviour, or go to Prison ; which Losses were attended with Danger and Disgrace. Thus it happen'd, that *Longinus*, doing the very same things, when Emperor, as he had formerly practis'd when Questor ; The Natives likewise again consulted how to Assassinate him. Some of his nearest Attendants further'd this Design, who, tho' they had shar'd with him in Rapine, yet hated the Man by whose Authority they had committed those Crimes ; restored what they had unjustly taken, and placed whatever they detained, or had lost, to his Account. He rais'd a new fifth Legion ; which added

He goes to Corduba; his Extortions.

His Fines.

A Plot to Assassinate him.

He raises a new Fifth Legion.

**Cassius's
Extortions.**

**Cassius re-
ceives Or-
ders to go to
Africk with
his Army.**

to the People's Hatred, because they found their Charges encreas'd : He compleated his Horse to three thousand, impos'd heavy Taxes, and allow'd not the Province a Moment's Respite.

In the mean while he receiv'd Orders from *Caesar* to cross the Sea with his Army for *Africk*, and march to *Numidia*, thro' the Confines of *Mauritania* ; because King *Juba* had sent considerable Supplies to *Pompey*, and design'd to send more. Immediately on Receipt of this Dispatch, prompted by the Hopes of gaining new Provinces, and so rich a Kingdom as *Numidia*, he march'd to *Portugal* to review his Forces, and levy more : He employ'd Commissioners to equip his Navy, and prepare Provisions ; that nothing might retard his Voyage at his Return, which was abundantly sooner than expected, for whenever Profit call'd, *Cassius* neither wanted Industry nor Vigilance.

**He makes a
Speech to the
Soldiers.**

Having got all his Army together, and encamp'd near *Cordova*, he made a Speech to the Soldiers, wherein he acquainted 'em with the Orders he had receiv'd from *Caesar* ; and promis'd, when they should arrive in *Mauritania*, to give each a hundred Sesterces. He told 'em, he design'd to leave the fifth Legion behind him in *Spain* ; and when he had finish'd his Oration went to *Cordova* : But the same Day, about Noon, entring the Judgment Hall, one *Minutius Silo*, a Client to *Racilius*, presented him with a Paper, in a Soldier's Habit, as if he had some Request to make ; then retir'd behind *Racilius*, for he walk'd close by *Cassius*, as if expecting an Answer : The Attendants made way for him, and when he was come up to the Governor, seizing him with his Left Hand, he wounded him twice with the Dagger he held in his Right ; then setting up a Shout, all the rest of the Conspirators immediately fell upon *Cassius's* Friends ; *Manutius Plancus* kill'd the next Lictor, then wounded *Q. Cassius* the Lieutenant : *T. Vassius* and *L. Mergili* seconded their Countryman *Plancus*, for they were all *Italians*. And *Licinius Squillus* gave the Governor several small Wounds whilst he lay upon the Ground.

**Manutius
Plancus kills
the Lictor.**

**Squillus
wounds Cas-
sius whilst he
lies upon the
Ground.**

**Cassius's
Guards
come up to
his Relief.**

By this time *Cassius's* Guards came up to his Assistance, (for he always had several Veteran Soldiers and select * *Spaniards* about him) who kept out the rest of the Assassines, in which Number were *Calpurnius Salvia*

* Barones, a People of the Provincia Bætica.

nut, and *Manilius Tuscus*. *Minutius* stumbling upon *Cassius's* a Stone that laid in his way, as he endeavour'd to make Extortions. his escape, was taken and brought to *Cassius*. *Racilius* hid himself in a Friend's House that lay nearest the Place, 'till he could get Information whether *Cassius* was dead. But *L. Laterensis*, not making the least Doubt of it, immediately ran with great Satisfaction to the Camp, to congratulate the **Spanish* and second Legion upon the News, who he was satisfy'd had a particular Hatred for *Cassius*. In return for his Intelligence, they immediately carry'd him into the Tribunal, and proclaim'd him Prætor. For there was not a Soldier that had been born in the Province, of the Second and *Spanish* Legion, or who, by long continuance in the Country, had been naturaliz'd, but join'd with the People in their Aversion to *Cassius*. But besides these *Cæsar* had likewise given him the thirtieth and twenty first Legions, rais'd some few Months before in *Italy*; as for the fifth Legion, he had lately levy'd that himself.

Minutius taken.

Laterensis, thinking Cassius dead, carries News of it to the Camp.

* *Legio Vernacula.*

Mean while *Laterensis* had Intelligence that *Cassius* was still alive: Upon which News being more troubled for the Disappointment, than uneasy for his own Safety, he immediately put himself in Order, and went to wait upon the Governor. The thirtieth Legion by this time having notice of what had pass'd, march'd to *Cordova* to their General's Assistance; the twenty first and fifth follow'd their Example, leaving only the other two behind 'em in the Camp: Whereupon the Second apprehending they should be left alone, and have their Inclinations discover'd, did the like. But no Apprehensions could make the *Legio Vernacula* move from the Place, or alter their Resolution.

But finding himself mistaken, goes to wait upon Cassius.

Every Legion, but that of the Natives, come to assist Cassius.

Cassius commanded the Assassines to be seiz'd, and sent the fifth Legion back again to the Camp, retaining thirty Cohorts for his Defence. By *Minutius's* Confession he learn'd that *L. Racilius*, *L. Laterensis*, and *Annius Scapula*, a *Spaniard* of great Quality and Interest, as familiar with him as either *Racilius* or *Laterensis*, was equally concern'd with them in the Conspiracy: Nor did he long defer his Revenge, before he caus'd them to be put to Death. He deliver'd up *Minutius* to be rack'd by his Freeman, and *Calpurnius Salvianus*, whose Confession, some affirm, justly encreas'd the Number of the Plotters, but others complain what he said was extorted from him by Pain. *L. Mergilius* likewise underwent the Question. And *Squillus* impeach'd several;

He causes all the Assassines to be seiz'd: Racilius, Laterensis and Scapula put to Death.

Minutius, Salvianus and Mergilio rack'd.

*Cassius's
Extortions.*

*Cassius com-
pounds the
Sentence of
Death for
Money with
som.*

*He receives
News of
Pompey's
being defeat-
ed.*

*He makes
the Natives
refund the
Money he
gave 'em,
imposes new
Taxes.*

*Makes those
that refuse
to go to A-
frick fine
for it.*

*At Sevil he
has News of
a Mutiny in
the thirtieth
Legion.*

** Yet there
is no notice
taken that
he had the
nineteenth
Legion,
which there-
fore in my
Opinion
should be the
twenty first.*

who were all condemn'd to die, except those that purchas'd their Pardons. For *Cassius* publickly remitted the Sentence of Death pass'd upon *Calpurnius* for ten Seftices, that on *Q. Sextius* for fifty; who, tho' deeply concern'd in the Assassination, were only Fin'd. Thus Money made him forget the Danger of his Life, and the Pains of his Wounds, whilst Avarice and Cruelty strove for the Victory.

Within a few Days after, he receiv'd another Packer from *Cesar*, with an Account of *Pompey's* Flight, and the Victory obtain'd over his Forces. This News equally affected him with Grief and Sorrow; for as he could not but rejoice at *Cesar's* Success, so on the other Hand he was uneasy to reflect the Decision of War, would put an end to his licentious Way of Governing. Thus he was in Dispute with himself whether he should sit down contented, without Fear of being call'd to Account for the Extortions he had already committed, or pursue the Dictates of his covetous Temper. At length his Wounds being cur'd, he sent for those whom he had formerly been liberal to, and commanded 'em to refund the Money they had receiv'd from him. As for them on whom he had hitherto impos'd lighter Burthens than usual, he order'd 'em now to pay larger Sums. With the like Justice he resolv'd to levy new Forces amongst all the Colonies and Societies of *Roman* Citizens thro'out the Country, and such as were afraid of a foreign Expedition, he oblig'd to redeem themselves from the Service by Amercements; which rais'd him vast Sums of Money, but encreas'd the Hatred of the Province. This Affair dispatch'd, he review'd the Army, sent the Legions he design'd to Ship for *Africk* to *Trajectum*, and went himself to *Sevil* to see the Fleet he had prepar'd; where he staid for some time, because he had publish'd a Proclamation, for such as had not pay'd the Monies demanded of 'em, to attend him there; which was look'd upon by all People as a very great Hardship.

About the same time *L. Titius*, who was then a Tribune of the *Legio Vernacula*, inform'd him there was a Report the thirtieth Legion, under the Command of *Quintus Cassius* the Lieutenant, being encamp'd at *Ilurgis*, had mutiny'd, kill'd some of the Centurions that oppos'd 'em, and were gone over to the second Legion, who march'd another way towards the Sea. On this Intelligence, *Cassius*, with five Cohorts of the * nineteenth, began his March, and arriv'd at *Ilurgis* the next

Morn-

Morning early ; where he stay'd a Day to consult what *Cassius's* was proper to be done, then went to *Carmona*. Here *Extortions*. the * twenty first and fifth Legions, with four Co-^{We are to suppose T. Thorsius's Report was false, but occasion'd by the Loss of the four Cohorts mention'd, else how came the thirtieth Legion to attend Cassius at Carmona?} horts and all the Cavalry attending him, he had notice that the *Legio Vernacula* having surpris'd four of his Cohorts near *Obucula*, had oblig'd 'em to march with them to the second Legion ; where, after their joining, they had unanimously chosen *T. Thorius*, an *Italian*, for their General. Whereupon *Cassius* immediately summon'd a Council, sent *Marcellus* to *Cordova* to secure that Town in his Interest, and *Q. Cassius* the Lieutenant to *Sevil*. But within a few Days after, he heard *Cordova* had revolted, and that *Marcellus*, either voluntarily, or out of necessity, (for the Business was variously reported) had join'd with them, as well as the two Cohorts of the fifth Legion, who lay there in Garrison. Provok'd by this Loss he decamp'd, and the Day after arriv'd at *Segovia*, upon the River *Silicentie*; where he made an Oration to sound the Soldiers Affections, whom he found to be sincerely true to him, not for his own, but for *Cesar's* Sake ; for they were ready to undertake any Dangers, so they might but recover the Province for *Cesar*,

Thorius, mean while, led his Veteran Legions to *Cordova* ; and that this Rebellion might not appear the Effect of his, and the Soldiers seditious Tempers, as likewise that he might have a Name of equal Credit to set up against *Cassius*, who, upon *Cesar's* account, was likely to gain more Assistants than himself ; he declar'd his Design was to recover the Province for *Cn. Pompey* ; which perhaps he was equally induc'd to by the Hatred he bore *Cesar*, and the Affection he had for *Pompey* ; whose Name had a wondrous Influence over those Legions that formerly serv'd under *Varro* : But whether this was really his Design or no, I shall not pretend to determine. However it was his Pretence, as the Soldiers confess'd ; who bore *Pompey's* Name engraven on their Shields. The Inhabitants of *Cordova*, Men, Women and Children, came out in a Body to meet him, begging he would not destroy their Town, for they had as strong an Aversion for *Cassius* as he, only they desir'd they might not be oblig'd to act against *Cesar*.

Thorius arrives at Cordova:

Has Pompey's Name engraven on his Soldiers shields.

The Army were mov'd by the Tears and Intreaties of so great a Multitude ; and finding there was no occasion for the Name or Memory of *Pompey* to persecute

Cassius,

Cassius's Extortions. *Cassius*, who was equally odious to both Parties; but that 'twas impossible either to persuade the People of *Cordova*, or *Marcellus* to declare against *Cesar*, eras'd *Pompey's* Name out of their Shields, chose *Marcellus*, who profess'd himself *Cesar's* Friend, their General, join'd with the Colony, and encamp'd near the Town.

The Soldiers erase Pompey's Name out of their Shields, chuse Marcellus their General.

** Baetis. Cassius arrives at the Guadalquivir; sends to Bogud and Lepidus for Assistance.*

He ravages the Country.

Marcellus's Army provok'd at it, desire to fight him.

Both Armies drawn out; but they do not engage.

Within two Days after, *Cassius* cross'd the ** Guadalquivir*, and encamp'd on a rising Ground within view of the Place, about four Miles distance from *Cordova*. From hence he dispatch'd Couriers to King *Bogud* in *Africk*, and *M. Lepidus*, Proconsul in the hither *Spain*, to send him and the Province Assistance, as soon as possible, for *Cesar's* sake: Not omitting in the mean while to destroy the Country and Buildings round about *Cordova*.

Fir'd with this Indignity, the Legions that had chosen *Marcellus* for their General, unanimously desir'd he would lead 'em out in Order of Battel, and rather engage the Enemy, than suffer the most noble and beloved Country of *Cordova* to be consum'd with Fire and Sword before their Eyes. *Marcellus* considering the fatal Consequences of a Fight to *Cesar*, let Victory incline which way she would, much against his Will, was oblig'd to cross the *Guadalquivir*, and dispose his Legions in Order of Battel. *Cassius* did the like upon a rising Ground, but *Marcellus* perceiving he would not descend from that Advantage, laid hold of the Reason to persuade his Soldiers to return again to their Camp. He had already began to retreat when *Cassius*, knowing himself to be stronger than he, fell upon *Marcellus's* Legions with his Cavalry, and made a considerable Slaughter amongst their Rere, upon the Banks of the River. But *Marcellus*, finding the Inconvenience he had met with in crossing the Water, remov'd his Camp to the other side the *Guadalquivir*, where both Armies frequently drew out, but did not engage because of the Inequality of Ground.

Marcellus was much superior to *Cassius* in Foot; for he had the Veteran Legions, that had learn'd Experience from the many Battels they had fought. But *Cassius* depended more upon the Fidelity than the Courage of his Soldiers; wherefore when both Armies were encamp'd over-against each other, and *Marcellus* had erected a Fort on a convenient Place, for preventing the Enemy from getting Water; *Longinus* apprehending he should be besieg'd in a Country that hated him, suddenly

lently decamp'd by Night and march'd towards *Ulla*, *Cassius's* which Place he believ'd firm to his Interest. Here he *Extortions.* encamp'd so near the Town, that the Nature of the Place and Walls of the Town might secure him from any Attempts of the Enemy. Hither *Marcellus* pursu'd him, and encamp'd as near *Ulla* as he could; having taken a View of the Place, he found himself reduc'd by Necessity to do what was very agreeable to his own Temper, not to engage *Cassius*; which he could not have avoided had there been a possibility of doing it; nor to suffer him to march farther, lest other Countries should suffer as much as *Cordova*. Wherefore having erected Castles in proper Places, he drew a Line of Circumvallation, wherein he enclos'd both *Cassius* and the Town. But before the Works were perfected, *Longinus* sent away all his Cavalry, who he imagin'd might do him considerable Service by intercepting *Marcellus's* Foragers and Convoys; but would only be an useless Clog upon him, to consume his Provisions, if he was once invested. *Cassius de-camps, marches to Ulla, encamps under the Walls.* *Marcellus pursues him,*

King *Bogud* having receiv'd *Cassius's* Letters, arriv'd in a few Days with his Forces, having join'd a Legion of *Cassius's* by the Way, with several auxiliary Cohorts of *Spain*; for as it always happens in Civil Wars, some Countries favour'd *Cassius*, but more *Marcellus*. *Bogud arriving at Marcellus's outward Works, there happen'd several sharp Disputes, wherein Fortune sometimes favour'd one, sometimes the other Party, but Marcellus still maintain'd his Lines.* *Bogud arrives with his Supplies.*

Mean while, *Lepidus*, from the hither Province, with thirty five legionary Cohorts, a great Number of Horse and Auxiliaries, came to *Ulla*, fully resolving to compose the Differences between the two Enemies. Upon his Arrival, *Marcellus* immediately deliver'd himself into his Power; but *Cassius* stay'd still in his Camp; either thinking there was more Respect due to him than to *Marcellus*, or fearing *Lepidus's* Mind had been prepossess'd against him. *Lepidus* encamp'd near the Town, kept a fair Correspondence with *Marcellus*, but commanded him not to fight; inviting *Cassius* at the same time to his Camp, and offering his Parole for his safe Return. *Cassius* having long consider'd on the Matter, still distrusting *Lepidus*, yet not foreseeing any prosperous Event from his Resolution, if he continu'd in it, at last desir'd *Marcellus's* Works should be demolish'd, that he might have free Liberty to march out. The *Cassius desires Marcellus's Works may be levelld; 'tis granted,*

*Cassius's
Extortions.*

*Bogud's
Breach of
the Truce.*

Truce was not only concluded on, but the Works almost levell'd, and the Sentinels drawn off from the Fortifications, when *Bogud's* Soldiers made a furious Attack upon one of *Marcellus's* Castles, which lay nearest their Camp, before any body was acquainted with their Design, except *Cassius*; for he was suspected not to be ignorant of it. Here they made a great Slaughter amongst our Soldiers; and had not *Lepidus*, provok'd with the Breach of Faith, interpos'd his Assistance to put an End to the Dispute, more fatal Consequences had ensu'd.

*Marcellus
and Lepidus
join Camps.
Cassius marches to Carmona.*

Cassius having now a free Passage, *Marcellus* join'd Camps with *Lepidus*, and both march'd together to *Cor-dova*; *Cassius* to *Carmona*. Mean while, *Trebonius* arriv'd to take Possession of the Province, as Proconsul: Upon which *Cassius*, having distributed his Legions into Winter-Quarters, immediately pack'd up his Goods and embark'd, pretending he durst not trust himself with *Lepidus*, *Marcellus* and *Trebonius*, his Friends reported, 'twas because he would not make a Tour thro' the Province in less Splendor than formerly, since Part had revolted from him: But others were of Opinion, he did it to prevent that Money from falling into other Peoples Hands, which he had scrap'd together by his innumerable Extortions. Having weigh'd Anchor, with as favourable a Gale as could be expected from the Season of the Year, to avoid sailing in the Night, he put into the *Ebro*; for tho' the Wind blew something stronger than before, yet he thought it not more dangerous; but his Vessel was cast away in the very Mouth of the River, the Sailors neither being able to tack about because of the rapid Stream, nor to keep the Ship steady against the Violence of the Waves.

*He embarks
for Italy;*

*But is cast a-
way in the
Mouth of the
Ebro.*

CHAP. XI.

*Caesar ar-
rives in Sy-
ria, has No-
tice of the
Disorders in
Italy.*

WHEN *Caesar* came to *Syria* from *Egypt*, he was inform'd, as well by Letters as several Persons who arriv'd there from *Rome* to attend him, that the City and Commonwealth labour'd under great Disorders; that dangerous Seditions were caus'd by the Disputes between the Tribunes of the People; that the Ambition of the Soldiers Tribunes, and those other Officers to whom the Command of Legions had been committed, had suffer'd the ancient and severe *Roman* Discipline to be corrupted; and that there was no Re-
dress

dress to be hop'd for, but from his Presence. However, before his Departure, he thought it absolutely necessary to compose the Dissentions in those Provinces where he then was, to restore the Laws to their ancient Current, and free 'em from all Apprehensions of foreign Enemies. This he hop'd quickly to effect in *Asia*, *Syria* and *Cilicia*, because they were not engag'd in any Wars; but expected to find the Business a little more difficult in *Bithynia* and *Pontus*: For he heard no News of *Pharnaces* quitting *Pontus*, nor believ'd he design'd it, being flush'd with his late Success over *Domitius Calvinus*. Having made a short Stay almost in every Country of Note, he distributed Rewards both publick and private to those that had deserv'd them, heard and adjusted their ancient Differences: Then having receiv'd all the Kings and Potentates, as well of the Provinces as of the neighbouring Countries into his Protection, and distributed the necessary Orders for defending the Country, he dismiss'd 'em all with Satisfaction.

But stays to settle the Affairs of those Provinces where he was.

Having stay'd a few Days there, he constituted his Friend and Relation *Sextus Caesar*, Governor of *Syria*; then sail'd, with the same Fleet he came thither in, for *Cilicia*. He gave Orders for all the People of the Province to attend him at *Tarsus*, one of the best and strongest Towns in their Territories. Here he stay'd no longer than was absolutely necessary to settle the publick Affairs, with those of the neighbouring States; for prompt'd by the Desire of beginning the * War, he march'd by long Journeys thro' *Cappadocia*, and arriv'd at *Mazaca*; from whence, after two Days Rest, he pursu'd his Journey to *Comana*, a Town of *Cappadocia*, renown'd for the most ancient and sacred Temple of *Bellona*; to whom the People pay so profound an Adoration, that her Priest possesses the second Post of Honour and Authority in their Country, being inferior only to the King. This Priesthood *Caesar* conferr'd upon *Nicomedes*, a *Bithynian*, of a most illustrious House, descended from the Royal Line of *Cappadocia*; whose Ancestors being reduc'd to a low Ebb of Fortune, since the Scepter pass'd out of their Line, by Vertue of an undoubted Law, which for some time had been neglected, he demanded the Office. As for his Competitor *Ariarates*, he deliver'd him into the Power and Protection of his Brother *Ariobarzanes*, for since both had well deserv'd from the Commonwealth, he

He makes S. Caesar Governor of Syria. Goes to Cilicia;

** With Pharnaces. From thence to Cappadocia.*

Makes Nicomedes Priest of Bellona.

Pharnaces was not willing Ambition should tempt one to rebel, or absolute Power the other to use his Brother too severely.

He argues near Pontus. Deiotarus comes to make his Submission.

This Affair compos'd, he pursu'd his Journey with the usual Dispatch: When he arriv'd near Pontus and the Confines of Galatia, Deiotarus, undoubted King of Armenia the Lesser, tho' his Title to the Tetrarchat of almost the whole Province of Galatia was disputed by the other Potentates of that Country; having laid aside not only all Regal Ornaments, but even the Habit of a Gentleman, attended Caesar in a Suppliant's Garb: Humbly begging Pardon, that since Fortune had plac'd him in a Country where Caesar had no Forces, he had assisted Pompey; for it did not belong to him to decide the Controversies of the Roman People, but obey the present Power.

Caesar's Answer.

To which Caesar, first reminding him of the many friendly Offices he had done him, during his Consulate; to convince him the Defence he made was no Excuse for what he had done; reply'd, 'Twas impossible for a Person of his Prudence and Experience to be ignorant who was Master of Rome and Italy, where the Senate, People and Republick were; or who was elected Consul after L. Lentulus and C. Marcellus: However, he forgave him, for the former Services he had done, the ancient Acquaintance there had been between 'em, the Suppliant's Dignity, his Age, and the Entreaties of Numbers of People, Deiotarus's Friends, who interceded in his Behalf. Having restor'd him his Kingly Apparel, he declar'd he would hereafter decide the Dispute about his Tetrarchat: But commanded Deiotarus to attend him to the War, with all his Cavalry and the Legion, which he had caus'd to be instructed in the Roman Discipline.

He pardons him.

When Caesar was arriv'd in Pontus, and had drawn all his Forces together, he found 'em but inconsiderable, as well in respect to their Number, as Want of Experience; for he had only two Legions, besides that of Deiotarus, and the sixth of Veteran Soldiers, brought from Alexandria; which was so diminish'd by the Fatigues and Dangers they had undergone, part being lost in the difficult Marches and Voyages they had made, others cut off in the frequent Engagements they had been in, that there were not a thousand Men of the Legion left. Here however he receiv'd an Embassage from Pharnaces; The Deputies in the first place, desir'd he would not enter the Country in hostile manner; for their King was ready to submit to whatever Caesar should

Pharnaces's Embassage to Caesar.

should

should think fit to command him. But they mightily in-
sisted on it, as a meritorious Act in their Master, that he defeated.
had never sent any Forces to the Assistance of Pompey ;
which Deiotarus had done, but was notwithstanding re-
ceiv'd into Favour.

To this Cæsar made Answer, If Pharnaces perform'd Cæsar's An-
his Promise, he should find Cæsar his Friend ; but he mild-
ly advis'd the Embassadors, not to value themselves so
much, because they had not done like Deiotarus, in send-
ing Supplies to Pompey ; for he always freely pardoned
private Injuries, but could never forgive those committed
against the Republick, even by the Persons that had done
him the most zealous Services. Besides, 'twas a greater
Advantage to Pharnaces that he had sent no Forces, since
he had thereby escap'd a Defeat, than to Cæsar, whom the
immortal Gods had made victorious. However, he was wil-
ling to forgive him the grievous Injuries he had done the
Roman Citizens in Pontus, because 'twas now too late to
think of Restitution ; for neither could those be brought to
Life again whom he had murder'd, nor they regain their
Virility on whom he had inflicted Punishments, more into-
lerable to Romans than Death. But let him immediate-
ly quit the Kingdom of Pontus, restore the general Recei-
vers their Servants, and return those Goods of private
Persons which were in his Custody : These Conditions once
perform'd, he would likewise send him those Presents, which
successful Generals usually receiv'd from their Friends : For
Pharnaces had presented Cæsar with a Golden Crown.

He sent the Embassadors back with this Answer ; but
Pharnaces, who had promis'd so liberally, hoping Cæsar
was in haste to be gone, and had given more Credit
to his Assurances than he really had, that he might the
sooner dispatch other Business of greater Importance,
(for every one knew Cæsar was recall'd by many Af-
fairs to Rome) began to perform but slowly, desiring a
longer Day, other Conditions, and endeavouring to
frustrate Cæsar's Design. But he perceiving Pharnaces's
Drift, was now oblig'd by Necessity to do that, which
at other times he had done by Inclination, to decide the
Dispute by a Battel sooner than was expected.

Pharnaces's
Shuffling.

Zeila is a Town of Pontus, well fortify'd considering
its Situation ; for tho' the Town stands upon a Plain,
yet the Walls round about are built upon Hills that
environ the Place, and look as if they had been con-
triv'd by Art. On every side of this Town lie many
Mountains, divided from each other by intervening

Cæsar ar-
rives near
Zeila.

Val-

Pharnaces Vallies ; the most remarkable of 'em is that which *Mithridates* defeated. *Mithridates*'s Victory, the Defeat of *Triarius*, and the Slaughter of our Army render'd famous ; which lies not above three Miles distant from *Zeila*, and has a Ridge that extends almost to the Town ; upon which *Pharnaces*, in Memory of the Success his Father formerly had, when encamp'd there, lodg'd himself with all his Forces.

Cesar lay about five Miles distant from the Enemy, and perceiving the same Valley which fortify'd the King's Camp, might be of the like Advantage to him, if he could possess the opposite Hill (which lay much nearer the Enemy's Camp than his) before 'em ; he commanded the Soldiers to furnish themselves with Fascines : These Orders perform'd, the next Morning about three a Clock, leaving all his Baggage behind him, he set forward with his Legions, and by Break of Day, before the Enemy had Notice of his Motions, possess'd himself of the very same Place where *Mithridates* lodg'd when he routed *Triarius*. Hither he commanded the Servants of the Army to bring all the Fascines, for he would not suffer one Soldier to be absent from the Works, since only a Vale, hardly a Mile over, divided the two Armies.

He gains a Summit opposite to that where *Pharnaces* was encamp'd.

Pharnaces draws out his Forces.

Early in the Morning, *Pharnaces* having Notice of this, drew all his Forces out before his Camp : But since the Disadvantage of the Place was so very considerable, *Cesar* at first believ'd he did it only to exercise the Soldiers, to retard the Progress of his Works, by obliging him to keep more Soldiers in Arms, or out of Ostentation, to shew *Cesar* he depended not more on the Advantage of his Post, than the Strength of his Army : Wherefore keeping only the first Line in Order of Battel, *Cesar* commanded the rest of his Forces to go on with the Fortifications. But *Pharnaces*, prompted either by the Omen of the Place, by religious Predictions, which we were afterwards inform'd, he was mightily rul'd by, the Contempt of our small Numbers in Arms, (for he believ'd all the Servants that daily carry'd Materials for the Works, to be Soldiers) or depending on the Experience of his Army, which his Lieutenants boasted had engag'd and defeated the twenty second Legion ; and despising our Forces which he had worsted when under the Command of *Domitius* ; he resolv'd to give us Battel, and therefore descended to the Bottom of the Valley. *Cesar* at first de-

derided his vain Attempt, in drawing his Army into so narrow a Place, whither no General in his right Sense would have ventur'd. But *Pharnaces*, in the mean while, having descended into the Vale, now began to ascend the steep Avenues of our Hill in Order of Battel. *Cesar*, mov'd at his wonderful Rashness, and finding himself attack'd before he was prepar'd to receive *Pharnaces*; in an Instant drew his Soldiers off from the Works, order'd 'em to repair to their Arms, sent a Party to oppose the Enemy's Ascent, and dispos'd his Army in Battel Array. However the Surprize occasion'd great Confusion amongst our Men; for before they could be rang'd according to Method, the King's Chariots broke in upon 'em and disorder'd their Ranks; but they were so warmly ply'd with our Darts, we soon put a Stop to their Career: They were follow'd by the whole Army of the Enemy; who setting up a Shout, began the Fight. The Advantage of the Place was of no small Service to us, tho' not so much as the Assistance of the immortal Gods, who as they have an Influence over all Battels, so they most conspicuously exert their Power, where Human Conduct is of no Service.

*Pharnaces
defeated.*

*The Battel
begins.*

The Conflict had been warmly maintain'd for some time, when the sixth Veteran Legion, that was dispos'd in the Right, made the first Step towards Victory, by forcing the Enemy to descend from the Hill; sometime after, by the same providential Assistance, the Left Wing and main Body likewise routed the King's Forces, who as they had easily gain'd the Summit, so they were now oblig'd to descend again with great Precipitation. Thus part being kill'd, part trodden under Foot, those who were nimble escap'd, having first flung away their Arms; nor was it possible for 'em to defend themselves even upon the higher Ground, whilst they had no Weapons. Our Soldiers, flush'd with Success, made no Scruple of ascending their Hill, and storming the Enemy's Works: The Cohorts which *Pharnaces* had left to secure his Camp made some small Resistance, but we quickly forc'd their Trenches. Thus all *Pharnaces's* Army being either kill'd or taken Prisoners, he made his Escape, attended only by a few Cavalry; but had not our Soldiers been amus'd by assaulting his Camp, he had certainly fallen alive into *Cesar's* Hands.

*Pharnaces
routed; his
Camp taken.*

*Pharnaces
narrowly es-
capes.*

Cesar,

Cæsar, tho' he had obtain'd many Victories before, yet was mightily pleas'd with this, which had so quickly put an End to an important War; nor did the Memory of his unexpected Danger a little add to his Satisfaction, when he reflected from how difficult a Beginning he had gain'd an easy Conquest. *Pontus* thus reduc'd, he distributed all the Spoil of the King's Army amongst his Soldiers, and the Day after set forward with a Guard of light-arm'd Cavalry, having first order'd the sixth Legion to return to *Italy*; where they should receive the Rewards and Honours they had merited; sent *Deiotarus* back his Auxiliaries, and left *Cælius Vincianus* with two Legions to protect the Kingdom.

Pontus quieted, Vincianus left Governor of the Place.

Thro' *Galatia* and *Bithynia* he travell'd to *Asia*, settling all the Controversies of the Countries he pass'd thro', and distributing equal Justice amongst the several Kings, States and Tetrarchs. *Mithridates* of *Pergamus* he made King of *Bosphorus*, as a Reward for the Service he had done him in *Egypt*: This General was descended from a Royal Family, and had been educated in Courts even from his Youth; for *Mithridates*, King of all *Asia*, in respect to his Birth, had taken him whilst a Boy from *Pergamus*, and kept him in his Camp for several Years. *Bosphorus* was formerly subject to *Pharnaces*, and surrounded by barbarous Kings, all Enemies to the Commonwealth; but *Cæsar* thought he had taken an effectual Method to secure it in the Roman Interest, by committing the Kingdom to the Charge of so faithful a Prince. As for the Tetrarchat of *Galatia*, which for some Years before had been possess'd by *Deiotarus*, he settled it according to the Custom of the Country, and Right of Descent; nor did he make a longer Stay any where, than the Necessity of his Return to compose the Disorders at *Rome* would allow of; but having quieted all Affairs, with equal Success and Dispatch, return'd to *Italy* before he was expected.

Cæsar settles the Dispute about the Tetrarchat of Galatia.

Hirtius

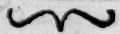
Hirtius Pansa, or Oppius's
COMMENTARY
 OF THE
African War.

The CONTENTS.

Cæsar, having compos'd the Troubles at Rome, sails for Africk, Gains Leptis. Has several Skirmishes with Labienus. Juba, going to join Scipio, is forced to return, on News that Bogud had enter'd his Country. The various Success of the War on both Sides. Towns lost and taken; Ships taken, but Fortune inclines to Cæsar. A set Bat-tel, and Scipio defeated. The Death of Cato, and several other Persons of Note. Juba's Kingdom reduc'd into a Province.

CHAP. I.

ON the * nineteenth of December, Cæsar having march'd every day, arriv'd by moderate Jour-nies at *Lilybeum*; desigining to go on board im-mediately, tho' he had only one Legion of new Le-vies, and hardly six hundred Cavalry. To take away all Thoughts of staying, and that his Men might be ready upon an Hour's Warning, he caus'd his Pavilion to be pitch'd so near the Sea, 'twas almost wash'd

Cæsar sails to Africk.

He arrives at Lilybeum.
 * Mr. D'Ab-lancourt, and the Gen-
 dileman that translated

this Book into English, render XIV. Kal. Jan. the 17th of December, and are Two Days earlier than me, at Cæsar's embarking: But I have follow'd Dr. Busby's and Dr. Kennet's Accounts of the Calends, Nones & Ides.

by

Cæsar sails by the Waves. The Wind happen'd to be contrary; *to Africk*. but however he permitted not the Sailors, or Rowers, to come on Shore, that he might not omit the first Opportunity for weighing Anchor; for tho' he receiv'd Intelligence from the Inhabitants of *Africk*, how considerable the Enemy's Forces were; that their Cavalry was very numerous; that they had six Legions belonging to King *Juba*, ten to *Scipio*, besides vast Numbers of light-arm'd Foot, an hundred and twenty Elephants, and several Squadrons of Ships; yet not in the least daunted at these mighty Preparations, he resolv'd to pursue his Enterprize. Mean while his Gallies, Transports and new Levies daily encreas'd; hither likewise came the fifth Veteran Legion, and two thousand Horse to attend him.

Orders part
of the Fleet
to sail to Pa-
conia.

† The Original is Ap-
oniana; but
there is no
such Place to
be found in
ancient Geo-
graphers;
therefore
Commenta-
tors have
thought fit
to make it
Paconia;
which qua-
drates with
the Descrip-
tion.

Having now got six Legions and two thousand Cavalry, so soon as any Foot arriv'd, he caus'd 'em forthwith to embark in the Gallies, and Horse in the Transports. Thus he commanded the greatest part of his Navy to sail before, to the Island † *Paconia*, that lies not far distant from *Lilybeum*; for he stay'd behind to expose some few Persons confiscated Goods to publick Sale. This Affair dispatch'd, he commanded *Allienus*, Prætor of *Sicily*, to send him all necessary Provisions, and see the rest of his Army go on board shortly after; then embark'd himself on the twenty seventh of *December*, and quickly overtook the rest of his Fleet. Thus having a fair Wind and quick Passage, he arriv'd, after four Days Sail, within sight of *Africk*, attended by a few Gallies; for most of his Transports, being dispers'd by the Tempest, put into several Ports. Having sail'd by *Clupea*, *Neapolis*, with divers other Towns and Castles upon the Sea-Coasts, he at last arriv'd at *Adrumetum*, where the Enemy had a Garrison commanded by *C. Confidius*; *Cn. Piso* likewise appear'd upon Shore towards *Clupea*, at the Head of the Cavalry of *Adrumetum*, and about three thousand *Moors*.

Cæsar lands
near *Adru-
metum*,
with 3000
Foot, and
150 Horse.

Cæsar laid at Anchor for some time, to expect the rest of his Transports; but at length landed his Army, which at present consisted only of three thousand Foot, with a hundred and fifty Horse, and encamp'd before the Town, without doing any Person an Injury; having strictly prohibited his Soldiers from plundering. Mean time, the Inhabitants mann'd the Walls, and plac'd themselves in considerable Numbers before the Gates, to defend the Place; for their Forces amounted

to two Legions : But *Caesar*, having taken a view of the Town, return'd again to his Camp. Many People reflected on his Conduct, that he had not appointed his Fleet a certain Place of Rendezvous ; nor according to his usual Custom, deliver'd 'em Orders seal'd up, to be open'd at some particular Place. But *Caesar* had very good Reason for what he did ; for he was apprehensive, no Part in *Africk* was so clear from the Enemy's Forces, as to afford 'em a safe landing Place : Wherefore he thought it best to rely intirely upon Fortune, and land where Occasion offer'd.

Caesar's Condition before the Arrival of his Troops.

L. Plancus, the Lieutenant, desir'd *Caesar* would give him leave to treat with *Confidius*, and try if 'twas possible to reduce him to Reason : His Request being granted, he writ a Letter, and sent it into the Town by a Prisoner. So soon as the Messenger arriv'd, and was going, according to his Orders, to deliver the Packet, *Confidius* demanded whence it came, before he would receive it ; the Messenger answer'd, from *Caesar* ; *Confidius* reply'd, he knew no General of the Roman Forces but *Scipio* ; then commanded the Messenger to be kill'd in his Peresence, and sent the Letter unopen'd to *Scipio*.

Confidius's Cruelty.

CH A P. II.

CÆSAR had now attended a Day and a Night before the Town, without receiving any Answer from *Confidius* ; and considering his Forces were not yet arriv'd ; that the Cavalry were but inconsiderable in Number ; that he had not an Army sufficient to invest the Town ; that it would discourage his raw Soldiers, to enter upon warm Service so quickly ; that the Place was well fortify'd ; and that the Enemy expected vast Supplies of Horse, he thought it not convenient to attempt a Siege, lest while he pursu'd that Design, he should be surrounded behind by their Cavalry. But when he was decamping, the Garrison made a vigorous Sally, being luckily join'd the same Instant by *Zuba's* Horse, who came thither to receive their Pay. They soon possess'd themselves of the Camp we had deserted, and began to pursue our Rere ; whereupon the Foot immediately halted, and our Cavalry, tho' few in Number, bravely charg'd so vast a Multitude. In this Action there happen'd a most wonderful Accident, for less than thirty *Gallick* Horse, broke two thousand of the

He quits Adrometum ; the Enemy sally to attack Cæsar's Rere, with ill Success.

Condition metum. Caesar's the Moors, and pursu'd 'em even to the Gates of Adra-
before the *March*; but observing they frequently fall'd, and re-
Arrival of *March*; but observing they frequently fall'd, and re-
his Troops. tir'd again when attack'd by our Horse, he dispos'd a
 few Veteran Cohorts, which he had along with him in

Caesar en-
 camps at
 Ruspina;
 which de-
 clares for
 him; so does
 Leptis.

Some few of
 his Tran-
 sports ar-
 rive.

He sends to
 Sardinia and
 Sicily, for
 Men and
 Corn.

Sends Sa-
 lult to Cer-
 cina.

the Rere, with a Party of Cavalry, and march'd for-
 ward slowly with the rest: Thus the farther he retir'd,
 so much the less eager were the Numidians to pursue
 him. Several Towns and Castles sent Deputies to meet
 him upon the Road, proffering to furnish him with Corn,
 and receive his Commands; wherefore he encamp'd
 that Evening, being the first of January, at Ruspina.
 From thence he arriv'd at Leptis, a free Town and
 Country: Embassadors from this Place came out to
 meet him, declaring how much their Country was at
 his Disposal; wherefore having plac'd Centurions with
 strong Guards at the Gates, to prevent any Soldiers
 from entring and committing Disorders in the Town;
 he himself encamp'd towards the Shore, not far distant
 from the Place. Hither by accident came his Tran-
 sports with some of the Gallies; for the rest, as they
 were inform'd, not knowing where to land, had been
 seen off of Utica. Mean while Caesar, finding himself
 oblig'd to continue near the Coasts, and not make any
 Expeditions higher up into the Land, for want of the
 rest of his Army, commanded all the Cavalry to remain
 on board; and sent 'em fresh Water thither; which I
 suppose he did to prevent the Country from being ra-
 vag'd: But the Rowers that came on Shore to fetch
 Water, were surpris'd by the Moors; who wounded se-
 veral with their Darts, and kill'd others before our Par-
 ty came up to their Assistance.

Whilst these Affairs were transacting, Caesar dispatch'd
 Couriers to Sardinia and the neighbouring Provinces,
 for Supplies of Men and Corn, which they were to send
 him immediately on Receipt of his Letters; and having
 empty'd part of his Gallies, detach'd Rabirius Posthumus
 for another Convoy to Sicily; not omitting at the same
 Instant to order ten other Gallies a cruising, to find out
 the rest of his scatter'd Fleet, and defend 'em from the
 Enemy. He likewise commanded C. Sallustius Crispus,
 the Prætor, to sail toward Cercina, an Island in the E-
 nemy's Hands, where he understood was Plenty of Corn,
 He distributed all these Orders so carefully, he left no
 room for Excuse or Delay. Mean while, having notice
 from the Prisoners and Deserters of the Posture of Scipio,
 and

and his Party's Affairs, he piry'd their Condition, that were so infatuated, chusing rather to be Vassals to a foreign Prince, than peaceably enjoy their own Fortunes at home with their Fellow-Citizens: For Scipio was forc'd to maintain King Juba's Cavalry.

Caesar's Condition before the Arrival of his Troops.

On the third of January Caesar decamp'd; and having left a Garrison of six Cohorts at *Lepris*, under the Command of *Saferna*, return'd again to *Ruspina* with the rest of his Forces; from whence he came the Day before. Here leaving his Baggage, he forag'd with a light-arm'd Party about the Villages, commanding the Boors to attend him with Horses and Carriages. Thus having got a sufficient Quantity of Corn, he return'd again to *Ruspina*; which I suppose he did, that he might the easilier cover the Sea-ports, and secure a Retreat upon Occasion to his Ships. Wherefore having left *P. Saferna* here with a Garrison, Brother to him whom he had made Governor of *Lepris*, he commanded store of Wood to be carry'd into the Town; then leaving the Place, attended by the seven Veteran Cohorts that had behav'd themselves so well under *Sulpicius* and *Vatinius*, he march'd to the Haven about Two Miles distant from *Ruspina*, where he embark'd with 'em in the Evening; which made the whole Army very inquisitive and uneasy, since no body was able to guess at the General's Design. Thus the new Levies, who were but inconsiderable, for 'all were not yet arriv'd, finding themselves expos'd to a numerous and crafty Enemy, had nothing to support 'em under their Afflictions, but the unusual Mirth and Gaiety they observ'd in their General's Countenance; for *Caesar* was a Man of an undaunted Spirit; from his Conduct therefore and Experience they promis'd themselves Success.

Caesar decamps, returns to *Ruspina*.

Goes a Foraging.

Embarks with Seven Cohorts; his Army very uneasy.

He continu'd all Night on board; but the next Morning early, just as he was about to weigh Anchor, most unexpectedly arriv'd that Part of his Navy that had lost their Way, which had given him so much Pain. Whereupon *Caesar* immediately commanded all his Soldiers to land again, and receive the rest when they came on Shore. So soon as his Infantry and Horse were landed, he receiv'd the Ships into the Haven, return'd again to *Ruspina*, encamp'd near the Town, and leaving the Baggage there, went to forage with thirty Cohorts. Now the Army perceiv'd *Caesar*'s Design was, privately to have sail'd to the Assistance of the Transports that were wanting, to prevent their being surpris'd

Another Part of his Army arrives.

He returns to *Ruspina*.

pris'd by the Enemy's Fleet. Nor would it have been convenient to have made the Soldiers he left behind in Garrison acquainted with his Design, lest they should have been frighten'd by considering how unequal their Number was, to that of the Enemy.

C H A P. III.

*Cæsar's
Engage-
ment with
Labienus.*

*Cæsar goes
a foraging.*

CÆSAR had not march'd above three Miles from his Camp, before his Scouts gave him Notice the Enemy was not far off; which Intelligence was soon confirm'd by the mighty Dust which appear'd. Whereupon he immediately recall'd the Horse and Archers; of the first he had but a small Number, and only brought an inconsiderable Parry of the latter along with him; these he order'd to follow after leisurely in good Order, whilst he went before with a slender Guard. He had only four hundred Horse, and some Archers, besides the thirty Cohorts; but however, so soon as he arriv'd within sight of the Enemy, he commanded his Soldiers to repair to their Arms, and make ready for the Battel.

*Meets La-
bienus; who
draws up in
Order of
Battel.*

*Cæsar does
the like.*

Mean while the Enemy, under the Command of *Labienus* and the two *Pacidii*, drew out their Forces in a prodigious long Front, consisting of Foot, Cavalry, light-arm'd *Numidians* and Archers, so closely rang'd, that at first *Cæsar's* Army mistook 'em all for Infantry; but in both their Wings were dispos'd several Squadrons of Horse. *Cæsar* likewise being oblig'd to't by the Smallness of his Numbers, rang'd his Army in a single Line, placing the Archers in the Front, and his Cavalry in either Wing; giving 'em particular Orders, to take care they were not surrounded by the Enemy's numerous Horse: For he design'd only to engage 'em with his Foot.

*Labienus's
Cavalry sur-
round Cæ-
sar's Army.*

Both Armies expected whether would begin the Charge; which *Cæsar* thought not his Business, for being so much inferior to them in Number, he had more Occasion to make use of Stratagem than Force. When on a sudden the Enemy's Horse began to stretch out upon the Hills on every side, in order to surround *Cæsar's* Cavalry, who could hardly maintain their Ground. Mean while both the main Bodies advancing to charge each other, the light-arm'd *Numidian* Foot, intermix'd with Horse, sally'd from their Line of Battel, and cast their Darts amongst our legionary Soldiers; but when

our

Cæsar's
Engage-
ment with
Labienus.

Caesar's Army cast into
an Orb.

Labiennus's
Discourse to
Cæsar's Sol-
diers.

He orders his Army to extend themselves in Length; they break the Enemy's Circle.

B b 2

food

Caesar's soon oblig'd the Enemy to fly : But pursu'd not far, because he was apprehensive of an Ambuscade. This Action over, the Enemy repuls'd and wounded, began to retreat towards his Camp, in Order of Battle.

Petereius and Piso arrive with a strong Party to Labienus's Assistance. They attack Caesar again, and are again repuls'd.

Mean while arriv'd *M. Petereius* and *Cn. Piso*, to the Assistance of the Enemy, with eleven hundred select *Numidian* Horse, and a considerable Number of Foot from the same Country. This Supply gave 'em fresh Vigour, and having recover'd their late Disorder, their Cavalry again began to attack our Legions in the Rere, endeavouring to stop their Retreat. Upon which *Caesar* caus'd his Forces to face about, and renew the Fight in the open Plain ; but perceiving the Enemy fought as they did before, avoiding a close Engagement, and considering his own Cavalry were but few in Number, that their Horses had not yet recover'd their Voyage, being dry, fatigu'd, and so disabled by the Wounds they had receiv'd, they could pursue but slowly, and that greatest part of the Day was already spent ; he order'd his Men to decide the Business at a Blow, nor to desist from pursuing the Enemy, 'till they had forc'd 'em to retreat beyond the farthest Hills, and lodg'd themselves there : Wherefore he gave the Signal. The Enemy fighting but faintly, he charg'd them with his Squadrons and Cohorts ; who without much Difficulty, in a Moment beat 'em out of the Field, and forc'd 'em to retreat beyond the Hills. Having possess'd themselves of the Place, and stay'd there a little while, according to their Orders, they retir'd leisurely to their Camp : The Enemy, having met with ill Success, did the like.

This Affair being over, and the Dispute at an end, *Caesar* was inform'd by Deserters of all kinds, who came over to him in great Numbers, as also from the Enemy's Cavalry he had taken, that their Design was to frighten his new Levies, and the few Veteran Soldiers he had with him, by that new and unusual way of Fighting ; then to have surrounded and cut 'em to pieces with their Horse, as they had formerly serv'd *Curio*. For *Labienus* in his Speech to the Soldiers declar'd, he would pour in so many fresh Supplies upon us, that being wearied with the Slaughter, we should be defeated even in the midst of Victory. He depended mightily upon his Numbers, because he heard the Veteran Legions had mutiny'd at *Rome*, and refus'd to go upon the

African

African Expedition; he thought three Years Service in the Country had confirm'd his own Soldiers in his Interest, who were reinforc'd by vast Numbers of *Numidian* Horse and light-arm'd Infantry, besides the *German* and *French* Cavalry, which after *Pompey's* Defeat he had brought along with him from * *Pharsalia*; the other Troops he had levy'd after his Arrival in *Africk*, amongst the Freed-men, Slaves, and such as were descended by the Father's Side from *Roman* Citizens; whom he taught the Use of † *Bridles*; and a hundred and twenty of *Juba's* Elephants, with innumerable other Squadrons of Horse. Big with these Expectations, at the Head of sixteen hundred *French* and *German* Horse, eight thousand *Numidians* without *Bridles*, eleven hundred other Cavalry commanded by *Petreius*, four times as many Infantry and light-arm'd Foot, besides considerable Numbers of Slingers and Archers, both Horse and Foot, did *Labienus* engage *Cæsar* in an open and spacious Plain, the fourth Day of *January*, being the Third after his Arrival in *Africk*: This Dispute continu'd from eleven a Clock 'till Sun-set; during which time, *Petreius*, being dangerously wounded, was oblig'd to quit the Battel.

* The Origin is from *Brundisium*; but that's a palpable Error, for *Brindisi* was in *Cæsar's* Custody long before the Battel of *Pharsalia*.
† For the *Numidians* us'd none.

C H A P. IV.

AFTER this, *Cæsar* began to fortify his Camp with greater Diligence, to encrease the Number of the Guards, whose Business was to defend the Works; and draw a Line of Communication on one side from *Ruspina* to the Sea, the like on the other from his Camp, to secure the safer Access for his Convoys backward and forward. He likewise gave Orders the Darts and Engines should be remov'd from on Ship-board to his Camp, with some of the *Rhodian* and *French* Rowers and Mariners; whom he furnish'd with Arms; that upon Occasion he might mix them among his Cavalry, as the Enemy did their light-arm'd Foot: Not omitting daily to encrease his Forces with strong Parties of Archers from the *Ityrean* and *Syrian* Fleets. For he had notice *Scipio* would come within three Days after the late Engagement, to join his Forces with those of *Labienus* and *Petreius*: His Army was reported to consist of eight Legions and four thousand Horse. Wherefore *Cæsar* took care to erect Forges to make Arms, to prepare plenty of Darts, Bullets, and sharp Stakes harden'd in the Fire; sending

Cæsar fortifies his Camp.

Prepares vast quantities of Arms.

Ityre, or *Itthyra*, a People of *Cælolyria*.

*Caesar's Messengers at the same time into Sicily for Hurdle
Preparati- with Timber for Battering Rams, (because there was
ons. but little proper for the purpose in Africk) with Lead
and Iron. He consider'd likewise the Country would
not be able to furnish him with Corn, for none had
been sown the Year before, the Peasants being oblig'd
to bear Arms; besides what Provisions there were in
Africk, the Enemy had secur'd in a few well fortify'd
Towns, demolishing such as were not tenable, forcing
the Inhabitants to retire within their Works, and leave
their Fields deserted. But Caesar, notwithstanding he
labour'd under these Difficulties, by his obliging Car-
riage, and the easy Access he granted all People, had got
a small quantity of Corn, which he husbanded to the
best Advantage. He daily visited the Works, reliev'd
the Cohorts that kept Guard by others, for he was ob-
lig'd constantly to keep a strong Party in Arms to pre-
vent Surprise; and Labienus about this time, sent his
Sick and Wounded, which were very numerous, in
Waggons to Adrumetum.*

*Caesar wants
Corn.*

*Several of
his Victuallers
burn'd.*

Mean while, Caesar's Victuallers being dispers'd, sail'd
up and down, not knowing the Coast, or where the
General was encamp'd; as they straggled from each o-
ther, the Enemy's Boats attack'd, and took or burn'd
'em. Wherefore Caesar order'd his Fleet to cruise about
the Ports and Islands, for their Security.

C H A P. V.

*Cato's
Advice to
young
Pompey.*

MEAN while Marcus Cato, who commanded in
Chief at Utica, was daily spurring young Pompey for-
ward to undertake some noble Enterprize. Your Fa-
ther, said he, when arriv'd at your Age, observing how the
Commonwealth was harass'd by impious and daring Citi-
zens, who had either banish'd, or put to Death the most wor-
thy of their Countrymen; prompted by Glory and the Great-
ness of his Mind, tho' only a private Man, and very young,
gather'd the small Remains of his Father's Army, restor'd
Rome and Italy, that were almost entirely ruin'd, to their
ancient Liberty, and with wondrous Dispatch reduc'd Sici-
ly, Africk, Numidia and Mauritania; by which Actions
he acquir'd a glorious Reputation throughout the Universe,
triumphing whilst he was a Youth, and only a Roman
Knight. Nor did he enter into the World with those Ad-
vantages you enjoy; his Father had not left such a Reputa-
tion behind him, his Ancestors were not of that Dignity,

he had not so many Clients, nor was of so considerable Quality as you. Will not you therefore, who inherit his Honour and Glory, who want neither Greatness of Mind, nor Industry, summon all his Friends together, make a vigorous Effort, and assert your own Liberty, with that of the Commonwealth and all faithful Citizens.

Mov'd with this Advice, which proceeded from so grave and austere a Person; young Pompey, with a Fleet of thirty Ships of several kinds, amongst which Number were only a few Galleys, sail'd from Utica to Mauritania, where he enter'd the Country of King Bogud. Leaving his Baggage behind him, with an Army of two thousand Men, compos'd of Freemen and Slaves, part with Arms, and part without, he march'd towards Ascurum, where the King had left a Garrison. The Inhabitants, having notice of Pompey's Arrival, suffer'd him to approach their Walls, then making an unexpected Sally, defeated his Forces, and oblig'd 'em to retire with Precipitation to their Ships. Upon this ill Success young Pompey weigh'd Anchor, and not thinking it convenient to touch again upon those Coasts, directed his Course towards * Majorca and Minorca.

Young Pompey's successless Attempt upon Ascurum.

* Balearis

CHAP. VI.

Scipio and Labienus

SCIPIO, in the mean while, having a strong Garrison in Utica, march'd with the Army we mention'd before to Adrumetum, where he encamp'd; but after a few Days continuance there, pursu'd his Journey in the Night, join'd Petreus and Labienus, lodging all their Forces in the same Camp, which extended three Miles in Length. Their Cavalry frequently came about our Works, intercepted those that straggld too far for Wood or Water, and oblig'd us to continue within their Fortifications. This reduc'd Caesar's Army to great Necessities, for the Convoys from Sicily and Sardinia were not yet arriv'd; the Season of the Year would not permit any Ship to put to Sea without eminent Danger; nor had Caesar above the space of six Miles every way in Africa, which made Forage very scarce. But the Veteran Soldiers and Cavalry, who had been engag'd in many Wars both by Sea and Land, who had frequently encounter'd the like Hardships and Dangers before, gather'd Weeds upon the Shore, wash'd 'em in fresh Water, and so preserv'd the Lives of the Horses and Cattle.

join'd.

Forage scarce with Caesar.

Scipio and
Labienus
join'd.

Juba mar-
ches to join
Scipio;

but, on notice
Bogud had
enter'd his
Kingdom,
returns.

Cæsar dis-
perses his
Circular Let-
ters to let
the Province
know he is
arriv'd.

Whilst Affairs were in this Posture, King *Juba*, understanding what Difficulties *Cæsar* had to struggle with, thought it not convenient to allow him Respite till he should receive fresh Supplies. Wherefore having gathered a considerable Number of Horse and Infantry, he resolv'd to leave his Country, and go to the Assistance of his Friends. But whilst he was upon his March, *P. Sirtius* and King *Bogud* joining Forces, advanc'd towards the Frontiers of his Kingdom: They set down before *Cirta*, the richest Town in his Territories, which they reduc'd in a few Days after their Arrival. The like Success they had over two other Towns of the *Getulians*, which they won by Storm, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword, having first offer'd 'em leave to quit the Place with their Effects, which they refus'd. After this Success they began to lay the Country waste on every side; upon notice whereof *Juba*, when he was already arriv'd within a small distance of *Scipio's* Camp, considering 'twas more necessary to defend his own Country, than assist his Neighbours; lest perhaps he might lose his Kingdom, and meet with as ill Success where he was going, desisted from his Journey, recall'd his Forces from *Scipio*, and apprehending the Event of Affairs at Home, left only thirty Elephants behind him; then return'd to preserve his Towns from falling into the Enemy's Hands.

Cæsar perceiving the Province still doubted of his Arrival, believing he had only sent one of his Lieutenants with those Forces to *Africk*, but was not there himself in Person, dispers'd his Circular Letters to take away this Error. Whereupon several Persons of the greatest Quality, from all the Towns round about, came to his Camp, giving him melancholy Accounts of the cruel Treatment they had met with from the Enemy. Mov'd by their Tears, *Cæsar* resolv'd, so soon as he receiv'd the rest of his Forces, and the Season would permit, to quit his Fortifications and rake the Field. Wherefore he immediately sent Orders to *Allienus* the Prætor, and *Rabirius Posthumus* at *Sicily*, which he dispatch'd in a small Pinnace, that they should forthwith, without any Excuse of the Winds or Season, cause the rest of his Army to be transported; otherwise *Africk* would be overrun by the Enemy; and if he did not quickly come to the Assistance of his Friends, *Scipio's* Cruelty would not leave 'em a single House to retire to. So impatient was he for the Arrival of his Forces, that the very Day after he

had

had dispatch'd this Racket, he complain'd they lost time; Scipio and still keeping his Eyes and Thoughts intent upon the Sea Labienus Day and Night without intermission. Nor without Reason; for every Moment brought him fresh Accounts of the burning of Villages, laying of Countries waste, killing and carrying off Cattle, sackings and deserting of Towns and Castles, imprisoning or massacring the chief Inhabitants, and making their Children Captives, under the Pretence of Hostages: But whilst his Army was so small, he was not able to deliver them from these Afflictions, who implor'd his Assistance. However, to keep his Soldiers employ'd, he commanded 'em to go on with the Fortifications, built Forts and Castles, and cast up a Mole into the Sea. Mean while Scipio was industrious in exercising his Elephants, which he perform'd by drawing two Parties up in Order of Battel, one of Slingers, which was to act the Enemy's part, and cast small Stones at the Elephants, behind whom he dispos'd his own Army, that when the unweildy Beasts, being frighten'd, should endeavour to turn upon their Friends, they might be driven back again by the Slingers, and oblig'd to face about towards the Enemy. But he found it a difficult matter to instruct such uncouth Animals; for Elephants, after many Years teaching, are never so expert at the Business, but he that brings 'em into the Field, runs the same Hazard with those against whom he produces 'em.

Caesar's Impatience for the Arrival of the rest of his Forces.

The way of Exercising Elephants.

CHAP. VII.

WHILST both Generals were thus employ'd near *Ruspina*, C. *Virgilius Prætorius*, who was Governor of *Thapsus*, a Sea-Port Town, on notice that several of *Caesar's* Transports straggled up and down the Sea, not knowing what Haven to put into, laid hold of the Opportunity, mann'd a Gally and some Pinnaces with Foot and Archers, resolving to pursue *Caesar's* Ships wherever he met 'em single. Several he attack'd with ill Success, being beaten and forc'd to fly, yet he did not desist from the Enterprize. At last, by accident, he came up with a Vessel, where the two *Titi*, young Spaniards, Tribunes of the fifth Legion, were on Board, whose Father *Caesar* had made a Senator. In their Company likewise was *T. Salienus*, who had besieg'd Lieutenant *M. Messala* at *Messina*, and making a virulent Speech against *Caesar*, had caus'd the Money and Ornaments,

Virgilius takes some of *Caesar's* straggling Ships. The Two *Titi* taken.

Scipio's ments, design'd for his Triumph to be stopp'd. Conscious therefore of his Guilt, and apprehending the Punishment his Crimes deserv'd, he perswaded the two Brothers to make no Resistance, but surrender to *Virgilius*. They were no sooner in his Custody, but he convey'd 'em to *Scipio*, who immediately sent 'em to Prison, and three Days after gave Orders for putting 'em to Death. 'Tis said, when the Centurion led 'em to Execution, the eldest desir'd the Favour to be first dispatch'd, which he obtain'd, and thus they ended their Lives.

Frequent Skirmishes between the Cavalry on both sides.

Labienus's vain Attempt upon *Leptis*.

Mean while the Out-guards of the Cavalry on both sides had frequent Skirmishes; but sometimes *Labienus's* French and German Horse, upon Parole given, convers'd with *Cæsar's*. About the same time *Labienus*, with a strong Party of Cavalry, went to storm *Leptis*, where *Saserna* commanded with three Cohorts, which the Besieg'd easily defended; for the Place was well fortify'd, and stor'd with Plenty of Engines. However the Enemy made frequent Attempts, 'till by chance the Captain of a strong Squadron, that had posted themselves before the Gates, was kill'd by a well-directed Shot from a Scorpion; whereupon the rest being frighten'd, immediately retir'd to their Camp, without ever daring to approach the Walls again.

Scipio's Bravado's.

Whilst this Affair was in Transaction, *Scipio* drew his Army out every Day, about three hundred Paces distance from his Camp; where having spent the greatest part of the Day, he return'd again at Night. This he did frequently, and observing none of *Cæsar's* Forces mov'd beyond their Trenches, or advanc'd towards his, despising his Enemy's Patience, he rang'd all his Troops in Battel Array, with his thirty Elephants that carry'd Castles on their Backs, then extending his Horse and Foot as wide as possible, led 'em almost up to *Cæsar's* Trenches.

What Orders *Cæsar* gave when *Scipio* drew out.

Whereupon *Cæsar* recall'd all his Soldiers that were gone to fetch Forage, Wood, or other Materials for the Works, commanding they should retire leisurely without Confusion, and ascend the Rampier: But he order'd the Out-guard of Horse to continue in their Post, 'till the Enemy should arrive almost within reach of their Javelins; if they came nearer, then to retire within the Works in as good Order as they could: He likewise instructed the rest of his Cavalry where they should repair

repair to their Arms, and attend his farther Commands. Nor did he trouble himself to mount the Rampier, or distribute these Orders publickly by Word of Mouth; but being extremely well skill'd in Art Military, settled the whole Affair in his Tent; sending his Adjutants to perform what he thought convenient. For he remember'd how often he had defeated, forgiven, and granted the Enemy Quarter, when they were infinitely superior to him in Number; therefore took it for granted, they never would be so hardy to attempt his Trenches, whilst his single Name and Authority was sufficient to daunt a considerable Part of their Army. Besides the strength of his Fortifications, the depth of the Ditch, the height of the Rampier, and the * sharp Spikes dispos'd in the Ground after a wonderful manner, were sufficient, without the Soldiers Assistance, to have prevented the Enemy's Access. He was likewise plentifully stor'd with all kinds of Darts, and † Engines necessary for a vigorous Defence. Nor had he made these Preparations for fear of the Enemy, tho' they believ'd the contrary, but because his own Forces were inconsiderable. Neither did the Smalness of his Numbers, their Want of Discipline, or Distrust of Victory, prevent his engaging 'em, *Acilla de- clares for* *Caesar. Two* but a Reflection on the Conquest he should obtain. † For *of his Legi- ons arrive.* he thought it below his Dignity to have it reported, he had won a bloody Victory over the poor Remains of his Enemy's defeated Troops, after having atchiev'd so many glorious Actions, and routed such mighty Armies. He resolv'd therefore to endure their Insolence, 'till some part of his Veteran Legions should arrive by the second Convoy. But *Scipio* having for some time continu'd in the Posture we mention'd, in contempt of *Caesar's* Forces, made his own file off by degrees to their Camp; where having assembled 'em, he made an Harangue, to inform 'em what a Terror they had struck into their Enemy, what a desperate Condition they were in, and encourag'd 'em by the Hopes of a speedy Victory. *Caesar*, on the other hand, commanded his Men to proceed with the Works, under which Pretence he kept the new Le- vies employ'd.

* Styli Caci, the same with the Stimuli at the Siege of A-lile.
† Scorpiones and Cata-pultæ.

Here our Author takes abundance of pains to complement *Caesar* at the Expence of his own Discretion. *Scipio* files off again to his Camp.

C H A P. VHI.

THE *Numidians* and *Getulians* daily deserted from *Scipio's* Camp, some returning home, others coming over to *Caesar* in whole Companies, because they and their ans.

Deserters come over to *Caesar* from the *Getuli-ans*.

Acilla declares for Caesar. Two of his Legions arrive. their Ancestors had been infinitely oblig'd to *C. Marius*, whose Kinsman they heard *Caesar* was. Having pitch'd upon some of these that were of best Quality, he sent 'em back to their own Country, with Letters to the several States where they liv'd, encouraging 'em to take Arms, defend their Liberties, and be no longer impos'd on by the Enemy's Speeches.

Acilla declares for Caesar.

Considius's Design upon Acilla dissipated.

Whilst Affairs at *Ruspina* were in this Posture, the free City of *Acilla*, and several other Places, sent Embassadors to *Caesar*, promising readily to submit to his Commands, provided he would send 'em Garrisons for their Security: Which Condition perform'd, for the Advantage of the Publick, they would supply him with Corn, and such other Provisions as their Countries afforded. Their Demands were readily agreed to; for *Caesar* immediately detach'd *C. Messius*, who had lately bore the Office of *Edile*, with the Forces desir'd to *Acilla*. *Considius Longus*, Governor of *Adrumetum*, who had two Legions and six hundred Horse under his Command, having Notice of this Affair, left Part of the Garrison behind to secure the Town, and set forward with twelve Cohorts for *Acilla*; but *Messius* marching with more Expedition, arriv'd there before him. *Considius* therefore, on his Approach to the Town, perceiving the Place was possess'd by a Garrison of *Caesar's*, thought it not convenient to attempt a Storm, so return'd again to *Adrumetum* without having effected any thing, considering the Number of Forces he had with him. Tho' some few Days after, receiving a Reinforcement of Horse from *Labienus*, he return'd again to *Acilla*, and began to invest it.

Some Supplies arrive at Caesar's Camp.

About the same time *C. Sallustius Crispus*, whom *Caesar* sent (as we have already remark'd) some few Days before with a Fleet to *Cercinna*, arriv'd there. Whereupon *C. Decimus* the Questor, who had been left with a strong Party, chiefly compos'd of his own Servants, to secure the Corn, got a small Vessel, embark'd and made his Escape. *Sallustius* was well receiv'd by the Natives, he found great Plenty of Corn, loaded his Ships, and return'd to *Caesar*. Mean while the Proconsul *Albius* had caus'd the twelfth and fifteenth Legions, with eight hundred French Cavalry, a thousand Archers and Slingers, to embark; whom he sent away to *Caesar* with a second Supply of Corn: This Fleet having a fair Wind, arriv'd safe at *Ruspina* in four Days time, where *Caesar* lay encamp'd. Thus receiving both Supplies

Supplies of Men and Corn, he enjoy'd at the same Instant a double Satisfaction: His Soldiers being encourag'd, and their Fears for want of Provisions alleviated, he receiv'd the Legions on Shore, order'd them and the Cavalry to refresh themselves after their Voyage, and when they had recover'd their Fatigue, distributed 'em into the Castles, and upon the Works.

Acilla declares for Caesar. Two of his Legions arrive.

Scipio and his Party, whilst Caesar was thus employ'd, were strangely surpris'd, and could not conceive the Reason, why he, who always us'd to be so ready to engage his Enemy, and offer Battel of his own accord, should now decline it; which they suspected not to be done without some deep Design. His Patience made 'em very uneasy; wherefore having chosen two Getulians, whom they thought firm to their Interest, they encourag'd 'em by considerable Rewards and Promises, to go over to the Enemy under pretence of Deserting, and bring Intelligence. But when they were brought before Caesar, they desir'd leave freely to declare their Minds without Offence, which being granted, thus

Scipio sends Spies into Caesar's Camp; but they betray him.

they began. *Several of our Countrymen, the Getulians, Noble Emperor, who are intirely devoted to the Family of the Marii, with almost all the Roman Citizens of the Fourth and Sixth Legions, would come over to your Camp, were they not prevented by the Guard of Numidian Horse. But we, who are sent by Scipio as Spies (to discover what Ditches or Traps you had dispos'd before your Trenches for his Elephants, and how you design'd to engage those Beasts, that having carefully made our Remarks, we might return an exact Account of the Posture of your Affairs,) gladly accepted of the Office, to gain an Opportunity of deserting. Caesar, having prais'd and rewarded their candid Dealing, sent 'em to the other Deserters, and quickly found the Truth of their Intelligence confirm'd; for the Day after, several Soldiers of the Legions they nam'd, came over to his Camp.*

The Deserters Speech to Caesar.

Thus stood Affairs at *Ruspina*, whilst *Marcus Cato*, who commanded at *Utica*, caus'd new Levies daily to be made amongst the Natives, Freeman, Slaves, and all sorts of People that were able to bear Arms; whom he had no sooner rais'd, but he sent 'em away to *Scipio*. Mean while arriv'd Deputies from *Tisdrum*, where the Italian Merchants and Peasants of the Country had laid up three thousand Bushels of Corn; the Design of their Embassy was to acquaint Caesar how well they were stor'd with Provisions, and desire he would send a Gar-

Cato's Diligence at Utica.

Tisdrum declares for Caesar.

rison

Sitius takes
a Magazine
of Juba's.

rison to defend 'em. He return'd 'em many Thanks for their Friendship, promis'd to grant their Demands very shortly, and having encourag'd 'em, sent 'em back again to their Countrymen. About the same time P. *Sitius* enter'd *Numidia*, and reduc'd a strong Fort, situate on a Hill, by Storm, where *Juba* had repos'd Plenty of Corn, and other Provisions for the War.

CHAP. IX.

Cæsar de-
camps, and
routs the
Enemy's
Horse.

Cæsar de-
camps.

CÆSAR having now augmented his Army with two Veteran Legions, besides the Horse and light-arm'd Infantry that arriv'd by the second Convoy; he sent six Transports to *Lilybæum* for the Remainder of his Forces. On the twenty seventh of *January*, he commanding his Scouts and Lictors to be ready to attend him by six that Evening, and without acquainting any body with his Design, left Orders the Legions should be drawn out about Three the next Morning, and follow him to *Ruspina*, the first Town that had declar'd for him in *Africk*, where he had a Garrison. Thence, having pass'd an easy Descent on the Left, he march'd towards the Sea. Here was a Valley wonderfully even, that extended fifteen Miles, half encompass'd by a Ridge of a moderate height, tho' very long, which resembled the form of a Theatre; on the Top of this Mountain were a few small Summits, on each whereof Forts and Watch-Towers had formerly been erected, and at the farthest of these were *Scipio's* Out-guards posted.

Gains a fa-
mous Ridge,
fortifies it.

So soon as Cæsar had render'd himself Master of this Ridge, he began to build Turrets on every one of the little Hills; which he effected in less than half an Hour. But when he approach'd the last Eminence, where, as I have already observ'd, lay a *Numidian* Guard, he made a Pause, to observe the Situation of the Place; then having caus'd his Cavalry to mount the Guard, he order'd the Foot to draw a Line of Communication along the middle of the Ridge to his Camp. Which *Scipio* and *Labienus* observing, they drew out all their Horse, dispos'd 'em in Order of Battle, and advanc'd about a Mile from their Fortifications, then rang'd their Infantry in a second Line, about four Hundred Paces off the Camp.

The Enemy
draw out
with a De-
sign to inter-
rupt his
Works.

Cæsar, not in the least surpris'd at their Numbers, commanded his Soldiers to proceed with the Lines: But being inform'd the Enemy, who were already arriv'd within

within a Mile and a half, still approach'd with a Design to interrupt and force his Soldiers from the Works; which would necessarily oblige him to draw off the Legions; he detach'd a Squadron of *Spanish* Horse, and some light-arm'd Infantry to support 'em, with Orders to attack the Enemy's Party on the nearest Hill immediately, and lodge themselves there. They made so vigorous a Charge, they quickly took or wounded part of the *Numidians* that guarded the Post, oblig'd the rest to fly, and carry'd the Place. *Labienus*, observing the Rout and Confusion of his Party, advanc'd with the greatest part of his Cavalry in the Right Wing to their Assistance: But *Cæsar* laying hold of the Occasion, when *Labienus* had march'd some Distance from his Army, detach'd his Left to surround, and cut him off.

Cæsar detaches a Party of *Spanish* Horse to gain a Post, which they do. *Labienus* advances to sustain his Party, but is surrounded, and his Men cut off by *Cæsar's* Left Wing.

He detaches a Party of Spanish Horse to gain a Post, which they do. Labienus advances to sustain his Party, but is surrounded, and his Men cut off by Cæsar's Left Wing.

In the Valley, where this Dispute happen'd, was a Village fortify'd with four Turrets, which prevented *Labienus* from discovering *Cæsar's* Motions; so he neither knew he was surrounded, nor saw our Horse, 'till he found himself attack'd in the Rere. The Surprise struck so great a Terror into the *Numidians*, they immediately fled, and made the best of their Way towards the Camp: But the *Gauls* and *Germans*, who endeavour'd to maintain their Ground, being charg'd on all sides, after a vigorous Resistance, were every man of 'em cut to pieces. Which *Scipio's* Legions, that were drawn out before their Works, perceiving, were so terrify'd, they immediately began to retire with great Precipitation into every Gate of their Camp. *Scipio* and his Forces thus oblig'd to quit the higher Ground, the Plain, and fly for Shelter to their Trenches; *Cæsar* sounded a Retreat. When the Field was empty, he beheld the prodigious Bodies of the *Gauls* and *Germans* who had follow'd *Labienus* out of *France*, part Volunteers, part induc'd by Money or Promises, and others out of Gratitude; who having obtain'd Quarter after *Cæsar's* Defeat, were resolv'd to return the Favour. The Carcasses of these Men, that lay dispers'd all over the Plain, were of a wonderful Shape and Size.

Cæsar draws out, marches towards U. ca.

The Day after this Action, *Cæsar* drew all his Forces out of the Castles, and dispos'd 'em in Order of Battel in the Field; but *Scipio* having had so many Men kill'd and wounded the Day before, did not think convenient to move beyond his Trenches. *Cæsar*, marching slowly by the Foot of the Mountain, approach'd nearer his Works. He was already arriv'd within less than a Mile

of

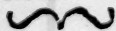
Scipio does
the like, but
no Engage-
ment hap-
pens.

of *Uxita*, a Town in the Enemy's Possession, when *Scipio*, apprehending the Loss of so important a Place, from whence his Army was supply'd with Water and many other Necessaries, drew out his Forces, and dispos'd 'em in four several Lines; the first, according to his usual Custom, was compos'd of Cavalry, and arm'd Elephants with Castles on their Backs: In this Order he march'd to relieve the Place; which *Cæsar* perceiving, believ'd *Scipio* was now resolv'd to give him Battel. But he found himself mistaken; for the Enemy, making a Halt, cover'd their main Body with the Town, leaving only the two Wings expos'd, where the Elephants were rang'd in full view of our Army.

Cæsar had now attended *Scipio*'s Motions 'till almost Sun-set, when observing he advanc'd no nearer him, designing rather to defend himself by the Advantage of his Post, if Occasion should be, than venture a Battel in the open Field; thought it not proper that Day to march nearer the Town, which cover'd the greatest part of the Enemy's Army, and wherein they had a strong Garrison of *Numidians*. For he judg'd it almost impracticable at once to assault *Uxita*, and engage both the Enemy's Wings in a disadvantageous Place; especially since his own Soldiers had continu'd in Arms all that Day without eating: Wherefore retiring to his Camp, the Day following he began to extend h's Lines nearer the Town.

The Siege
of *Acilla*
rais'd. *Cæsar*
loses
two Ships.

A great
Storm.



Two of *Cæsar*'s
Ships
taken.

CHAP. X.

MEAN while *Considius*, who had long besieg'd *Acilla* with eight Cohorts of mercenary *Getulians* and *Numidians*, where *C. Messius* commanded in Chief; having made many Efforts, and rais'd considerable Works, which were always destroy'd by the Besieged; finding he spent his Labour in vain, on Advice of the Engagement between the Horse of both Armies, was so disturb'd, that setting Fire to his Corn, whereof he had plenty, and destroying his Wine, Oil, and such other Provisions as he had in store, he quitted the Siege; then marching thro' *Numidia* divided his Forces with *Scipio*, and return'd to *Adrumetum*.

Whilst *Cæsar* was thus employ'd, one of the Transports, which *Allienus* had sent with the second Supply from *Sicily*, where *Q. Cominius*, and *L. Ticius*, a Roman Knight, were embark'd, being separated by foul Weather

ther from the rest of the Convoys, was forc'd into *Thapsus*, where *Virgilius*, having fitted out some Boats and small Vessels, took her, and sent all the Persons on Board to *Scipio*. A Three-bank'd Galley likewise straying from the Fleet, was driven by the Winds to *Agimurus*, so falling in with *Varus* and *Octavius's* Squadron, was taken. In this Vessel were some Veteran Soldiers, with a Centurion, and a few new Levies, whom *Varus*, without offering the least Injury, sent away to *Scipio*. So soon as they came into his Presence, and stood before his Chair of State, I am satisfy'd, said he, 'tis by the Instruction and Command of your impious General, you are compell'd to pursue the Lives of your best Countrymen, not of your own accord. But since Fortune has put you into our Power, if you will perform your Duty, and defend the Republick, in concert with the rest of her worthy Members, you shall not only have your Lives pardon'd, but receive Rewards for your Service; Speak therefore, what you resolve to do.

Caesar loses Two Ships.
Scipio's Speech to the Prisoners.

Scipio, having ended his gracious Speech, doubted not in the least they would return him many Thanks for his merciful Proffer: But receiv'd this Answer from the Centurion. *Scipio*, (for General I cannot call you) I thank you for proffering me Life and Liberty, tho' I am your Prisoner by right of War, and perhaps I might accept your Favour, could I do it without being guilty of the basest Crimes. Shall I draw my Sword against my Emperor *Cæsar*, and his Army, under whom I have had the Honour to command a Company, and to maintain whose Glory I have bore Arms above these sixteen Years? No! Far be it from me; and as a Friend, I would advise you to desist from the Enterprize: For if you are yet ignorant with whom you contend, I will acquaint you. Chuse the best Cohort in your Army, allow me only the Liberty to select Ten of my Fellow-Soldiers, we will engage 'em, and from our Courage you shall form a Judgment, what you may expect from that of your own Forces.

The brave Centurion's Answer.

The Centurion having thus boldly declar'd his Mind, *Scipio*, stung with the Affront, and enrag'd to the last degree, nodded to the Officers about him to perform his Orders, caus'd the Centurion to be kill'd at his Feet, and commanded the Veteran Soldiers to be separated from the new Levies. Carry away those harden'd Wretches, said he, whose Hands have been imbru'd in the Blood of their Fellow-Citizens. Accordingly they were carry'd out of the Camp and barbarously murder'd: As for the new rais'd Men, he distributed them amongst his own

Scipio puts him to Death.

A great
Storm.

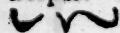


The great
Storm.

† Vergiliæ
or Pleiades,
the Seven
Stars, that
some place in
the Tail, o-
thers in the
Neck of the
Bull; which
the Poets
feign to be
the Daugh-
ters of Atlas
or Lyncurus.
The Edition
of the Dau-
phin's Edi-
tion produces
two or three
Manuscripts
to make this
Vigiliarum;
then the La-
tin will run
thus, Vigili-
arum con-
fecto Signo,
circiter vi-
gilia Secun-
da Noctis,
which is a
more Tauto-
logical way
of Expression
than Hirtius

is usually guilty of. Others again have found but many Difficulties in reconciling this Text to Astronomy. But for my part I cannot conceive why the Word Vergiliæ should be chang'd; nor in my Opinion, does it betray the Author's Ignorance of the Cause of the Stars, as Monsieur D'Ablancourt fancies, who from hence infers an Error in the Ancient Calendar. For the Vergiliæ set exactly at the Time mention'd by Hirtius in Africk, when Cæsar was alive: Viz. About Nine or Ten at Night, at the latter end of January, or beginning of February, when by Computation this Action happen'd, tho' now indeed they set some Hours later.

Juba joins
Scipio.



Troops, but would not suffer Cominius and Ticius to come into his Presence. Cæsar, mightily concern'd for this Accident, cashier'd, and publish'd a severe Edict against the Captains of that Squadron; which he order'd to cruise about Thapsus for the Security of his Transports and Gallies.

Much about the same time there happen'd a most incredible Accident to Cæsar's Army; the † Vergiliæ being set, about nine a Clock at Night rose a violent Tempest, attended by a dreadful Shower of Hail. Cæsar had not, like other Generals, dispos'd his Forces into Winter-quarters, but decamping every three or four Days, lodg'd himself in a different Post, nearer the Enemy, which render'd the Misfortune greater; for the Soldiers were so much employ'd about the Works, they had no leisure to take care of themselves. Besides, he was so eager to have all his Army transported out of Sicily, that he allow'd his Men to bring nothing over with 'em but their Armour, neither Slaves, Baggage, nor any thing that might have been serviceable to 'em: What little Provisions they had brought were already consum'd, nor could the Country, where they were, furnish 'em with more. Reduc'd to this Necessity, some few lay under Tents, others were oblig'd to erect little Huts of Reeds, which they cover'd with their Cloaks. Thus surpris'd by the Storm, beaten down by the weight of the Hail Stones, almost drown'd with Water, their Fires extinguish'd, and Victuals spoil'd, they wander'd up and down the Camp, defending their Heads with their Shields: This Night likewise the Tops of the fifth Legions Piles of their own accord took Fire.

C H A P. XI.

JUBA, having by this time had Advice of the Defeat lately receiv'd by Scipio's Horse, and being mightily press'd to come to his Assistance, left his General Sabura, with part of his Army, to act against Sittus, and

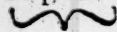
think-

thinking his Presence might free the Armies of his Al-Juba joins
 lies from the dread they had of *Caesar's*, march'd with *Scipio*.
 three Legions, eight hundred Horse with Bridles, some
Numidians without, a vast Number of light-arm'd
 Infantry, and thirty Elephants, to join 'em. When he
 arriv'd there, he pitch'd his own Camp, with the For-
 ces I mention'd, at no great distance from *Scipio's*.
Caesar's Soldiers had long been uneasy with the Appre-
 hension of *Zuba's* Army, and the nearer he approach'd,
 the more Pain they were in. But after he had taken
 up his Quarters close by 'em, their Fears immediately
 vanish'd, and they despis'd him. However, we plainly
 discover'd *Scipio* was not a little encourag'd by this Re-
 inforcement, for the Day after he drew out both Armies
 into the Field, with sixty Elephants, which he dispos'd
 to the best Advantage, then advancing several Paces
 before his Camp, staid in that Posture a little while,
 and retir'd again within his Trenches.

Caesar, considering *Scipio* had now receiv'd all the *Caesar* 22.
 Forces he expected, thought he would no longer refuse
 to give him Battel, therefore began to advance nearer
 him along the Ridge of the Mountain, extending his
 Lines and erecting Forts upon every Eminence he ren-
 der'd himself Master of. But the Enemy depending on
 their Numbers gain'd the next Hill, and prevented the
 Progress of our Works; this they did by *Labienus's* Ad-
 vice, who, lying nearest the Place, took care to see his
 own Design executed.

Before *Caesar* could arrive at this Mountain, which
 he desir'd to possess, he was oblig'd to pass a large Plain
 of deep Descent, wherein were several hollow Places
 much resembling Caves, beyond which was an Olive
 Wood. *Labienus* therefore considering *Caesar* must of
 necessity march this way, and being well acquainted
 with the Place, dispos'd an Ambush of Horse and light-
 arm'd Infantry there; placing at the same time a strong
 Party of Cavalry behind the Hills, that so soon as he
 attack'd *Caesar's* Foot, the Cavalry might advance from
 behind the Mountain; so being charg'd both in Front
 and Rere, and surrounded on all sides, the Enemy must
 of necessity be cut to pieces. *Caesar*, being ignorant of
 this Ambuscade, commanded his Horse to march before;
 and when they arriv'd at the Place, *Labienus's* Men,
 either having forgot, neglecting to perform their Orders,
 or apprehending they should be kill'd by our Soldiers, in
 the Disch, began to appear in small Parties, to quit
 their

Juba joins
Scipio.



Draws a
Line of Com-
munication
from his old
Camp to U-
zita.

their Holes, and ascend the Hill. But *Cæsar's* Horse pursuing, slew part, took others Prisoners; then making towards the Hill, beat the Enemy from their Post, and lodg'd themselves there. So *Labienus*, attended by a small Party of Cavalry, hardly made his Escape.

The Horse having so well perform'd their Parts, *Cæsar* distributed the Work amongst the Foot, commanding 'em to lay out a Camp there, and gave Orders for drawing two Lines of Communication cross the Plain to his former Camp over-against *Uzita*, which parted it from *Scipio's*; these Lines were so contriv'd as to meet at the Right and Left Angle of the Town. The Reason why he made these Works was, that when his Forces should approach the Walls, and begin the Storm, they might be secure from being surrounded by the Enemy's Horse, which would otherwise oblige 'em to quit the Assault. Besides, by this means his Soldiers had more frequent Opportunities of conferring with their Forces, and such as had a mind to desert, which they could not before without eminent Danger, might now do it with greater Security. Nor were these the only Reasons that induc'd him to take this Resolution; for he knew, being nearer the Enemy, he should now discover whether they design'd to fight him; and the Place he had taken up his Quarters in, lying much lower than that he lately came from, he might with greater Ease sink Wells there, whereas before, he was oblig'd to send a long and troublesome Way for Water. Whilst the Legions were employ'd about these Works, part of the Army stood in Order of Battel before the Trenches, Skirmishing with the *Numidian* Horse, and light-arm'd Infantry.

In the Evening, when *Cæsar* drew his Forces from the Works, designing to retire to his former Camp, *Juba*, *Scipio*, and *Labienus*, made an unexpected Charge upon 'em with all their Cavalry and light-arm'd Foot. Our Horse at first over-power'd with Numbers, began to give Ground, but the Affair fell out much contrary to what the Enemy expected. For *Cæsar* immediately halted, and advanc'd with the Legions to sustain his Cavalry; who, assuming fresh Courage upon his Arrival, fac'd about, and charg'd the *Numidians* with so much Vigour, whilst they were dispers'd with the pursuit, they kill'd great Numbers, wounded others, and oblig'd the whole Party to retreat in great Precipitation to their Camp: So had not the Night and Dust, which

which prevented our seeing, put an end to the Dispute, *Juba* with *Labienus* had certainly been taken, all their Horse and light-arm'd Infantry intirely cut off. Mean while *Scipio's* Men of the fourth and sixth Legions, daily came over to *Cesar* in great Numbers, some to his Camp, others to such Places as lay most convenient for 'em. *Curio's* Horse likewise, distrusting *Scipio's* Success, follow'd their Example.

C H A P. XII.

WHILST both Generals were thus employ'd at *Uxita*, the ninth and tenth Legions, who embark'd in the Transports at *Sicily*, were already arriv'd at the Harbour of *Ruspina*; when descrying *Cesar's* Ships that lay at Anchor about *Thapsus*, they mistook 'em for the Enemy's Fleet, so put out again to Sea, for fear of falling into their Hands, who they imagin'd lay there in order to surprize 'em. Many Days they were toss'd up and down by the Winds, 'till almost spent with Drought and Hunger, at last they arriv'd safe at the Camp. So soon as they landed, *Cesar*, remembring the Disorders in *Italy*, and Rapine committed by some particular Persons, was glad of the least occasion to punish 'em for it; wherefore because *C. Avienus*, a Tribune of the tenth Legion, had taken up one intire Vessel for the use of his Family and Equipage, without bringing a single Soldier along with him from *Sicily*, he summon'd all the Officers of the Army to attend him the Day after, and in their Presence from his Tribunal said, *I could heartily wish some Persons would at last have prescrib'd Bounds to their Insolence and ill Manners, that they would have no longer tempted my Patience and good Nature. But since they have not had the Prudence to correct their Irregularities, I shall my self do it for 'em, that they may serve for an Example to the rest of the Army. First, Caius Avienus, because you have instigated the Roman Soldiers against the Republick, plunder'd the Municipal Towns, and been unserviceable both to me and your Country, taking up whole Vessels for your Horses and Retinue, and depriv'd the Common-wealth of the use of those Soldiers she has occasion for; I disniss you with Ignominy from my Army, commanding you to quit Africk, and be gone as far to Day as possible. The like Sentence I pronounce upon you, Aulus Fonteius, because you have been a seditious Officer, and an ill Citizen. And as for you T. Salienus, M. Tiro*

Military
Chastise-
ment.

He breaks
several Offi-
cers.

His Speech.

Hirtius or Oppius's Commentary

and C. Clusinas, since you gain'd your Commands by Favour, not by Merit; since you have neither prov'd your selves good Soldiers in War, nor faithful Citizens in Peace, studying more how to incite the Soldiers to Mutiny against their General, than give Proofs of your Modesty; I hold you unworthy to bear Commissions in my Army, wherefore I cashier and command you immediately to leave Africk. Having ended his Speech, he deliver'd em to the Centurions, with Orders to see they immediately embark'd with only one Servant each.

The Getuli
and revolt
from Juba.

By this time the *Getulian* Deserters, whom *Caesar* sent with Letters and particular Instructions, arriv'd in their Country, where the People, equally induc'd by their Authority, and *Caesar's* Reputation, were soon prevail'd on to take Arms and revolt from *Juba*: Upon which, that Monarch, being now engag'd in three several Wars at once, found himself oblig'd to detach six Cohorts, to defend the Borders of his Kingdom against the Incursions of the *Getulians*.

C H A P. XIII.

The Disposi-
tion of both
Armies.

CÆSAR, having finish'd his Lines of Communication, and produc'd em almost within Javelin-shot of the Town, entrench'd himself there; drew five Legions out of his other Camp, and caus'd plenty of warlike Engines to be fix'd in the Front of his Works, directly over-against *Uzita*; whereby he perpetually kept the Enemy upon the Walls in Apprehensions. This Opportunity gave several Persons of Quality in both Armies, a desire to see their Friends and Relations, which occasion'd frequent Conferences, that *Caesar* was sensible would prove to his Advantage. For the Chief Officers of the *Getulian* Horse, with some others of Condition that serv'd under *Juba*, whose Ancestors had formerly been commanded by *Marius*, and from his Generosity obtain'd considerable Estates in their Country, but since *Sylla's* Victory, had been made Tributaries to King *Himempsal*, taking the Favour of the Evening, when the Fires were lighted, with their Horses and Servants, about a Thousand in Number, came over to *Caesar's* Camp, in the Plain near *Uzita*.

Aquinius
has a Confe-
rence with
Salerua, but
breaks it off

Whilst *Scipio*, and his Party were disturb'd at this Loss, they perceiv'd *M. Aquinius* was talking with *C. Salerna*, wherefore the General sent a Messenger to let

him

him know, he ought not to have Converse with an *The Dispo-*
 Enemy; which did not interrupt the Conference, till *sition of*
 one of *Juba's* Attendance acquainted him, 'twas his *both Ar-*
 Master's Pleasure he should hold no further Discourse, *mies.*
 whereupon he immediately return'd for fear of offend-
 ing the King. A most unaccountable thing, that a Ro-
 man Citizen, who had already been promoted to Ho-
 nours in the State, should rather submit to the Com-
 mands of a Foreign Prince, than those of *Scipio*, and
 desire to survive the Destruction of his Party. But *Ju-*
ba, not contented to have put this Affront upon *M. A-*
quinius, a Man of no Family, lately admitted to the
 Senatorian Order, gave *Scipio* a greater; who was no-
 bly born, and equally to be respected for the Dignity
 and Honours he possess'd. For 'tis reported, that *Sci-* *His Pride.*
pio, before the King's Arrival, always wore a Purple
 Robe; but upon *Juba's* saying, he ought not to wear
 the same Colour with him, chang'd it for a White one;
 submitting to the Caprice of so haughty and foolish a
 Monarch.

The Day after, the Enemy drawing out all their *Both Ar-*
 Forces, posted themselves upon a rising Ground, no great *mies drawn*
 Distance from *Cesar's* Camp. He did the like, and im- *out.*
 mediately dispos'd his Army in order of Battel before
 his Lines; taking it for granted, *Scipio*, who first drew
 out, and was so considerably reinforc'd by *Juba's* Arri-
 val, would immediately come to attack him. Where-
 fore having rode thro' the Ranks, encourag'd his Men,
 and given 'em the Sign of Battel, he staid to expect
 the Enemy's Charge, for he judg'd it not convenient to
 march far from his Trenches, because they had a strong
 Garrison in *Uzita*, that flank'd his Right; which made
 him apprehensive, if he advanc'd farther, their Forces
 might sally out of the Town, and fall upon his Flank.
 Besides, there was a very difficult Way to go over, be-
 fore he could arrive at *Scipio's* Army, which would
 have disorder'd his Men, when they went to make their
 Onset.

Nor must I here omit to give an Account what Order *Scipio's Di-*
 both Armies were dispos'd in: *Scipio* had rang'd his *sposition.*
 Legions with those of *Juba* in the Front, leaving a Par-
 ty of *Numidians* for a Reserve, in so very thin Ranks,
 and so far extended, our Soldiers believ'd, at some di-
 stance, his Wings alone had double Lines: His Ele-
 phants were plac'd in either Wing at equal Spaces, be-
 hind them the light-arm'd Infantry and Auxiliary *Numidians*;

The Disposition of both Armies.

* Those without Bridles, I suppose.

midians; all the Cavalry with Bridles were posted on the Right, for the Left was cover'd by *Uxita*, nor had he Room enough for his Cavalry there: About a thousand Paces distant from his Right, he had dispos'd all his * Numidian Horse and light-arm'd Infantry, at the Foot of a Mountain, the farthest distant both from the Enemy's and his own Army; designing they should take a Circuit when the Battel began, surround *Caesar's* Forces, and disorder 'em with their Darts.

Caesar's.

Such was *Scipio's* Disposition; but *Caesar's* Army was rang'd in this Order. I will begin with his Left, where-in were plac'd the ninth and seventh Legions, in his Right the twenty-ninth and thirtieth, in the middle the thirteenth, fourteenth, twenty-eighth and twenty-sixth:

† The Original is *Iplum autem dextrum Cornu, secundam aciem fere, in earum Legionum parte Cohortium collocaverat. Præterea ex Tironum Legionibus paucas adiecerat.* And I wonder the Criticks have not alter'd the Text, which is so

apparently corrupt; since a small Variation would make it Sense, tho' at present incomprehensible. *Rhelicanius* indeed has taken abundance of Pains to convince the World, that *dextrum Cornu* and *secunda Acies*, are two Names for the very same thing; so, says he, no doubt are *sinistrum Cornu* and *prima Acies*: What he would infer from hence, I cannot conceive, but 'tis certain his Hypothesis is false; else we should never be able to understand the next Sentence in *Hirtius*, which tells us, *Tertiam autem aciem in sinistrum cornu contulerat.* Might I take the Liberty of altering the Text, I would write it thus: *Iplius autem dextri Cornu secundam Aciem, fere ex earum Legionum parte Cohortium, collocaverat; præterea ex Tironum Legionibus paucas adiecerat.* And *Monsieur D'Ablancourt*, I perceive by his Version, seems to have been of the same Opinion.

No set Battel.

But when *Caesar* retreats, the Numidian Horse cut off part of his Forces.

Thus were both Armies drawn up, not above three hundred Paces distance from each other, and continu'd in that Posture 'till four in the Afternoon without fighting, an Accident never known before. But when *Caesar* began to retreat within his Lines, on a sudden all the Numidian and *Getulian* Horse without Bridles, who, as I have already remark'd, had been dispos'd at some Distance off, began to wheel about to the Right, and

make

make towards *Cæsar's* Camp upon the Hill. Mean while, *Labienus's* Cavalry, with Bridles, maintain'd their Post, and endeavour'd to stop the March of our Legions: Whereupon part of *Cæsar's* Horse and light-arm'd Infantry, on a sudden, without any Orders, rashly ventur'd too far against the *Getulians*: For having pass'd a Morass that lay between 'em, they found themselves not able to sustain the Charge of so vast a Multitude; and being forsaken by the Foot, were oblig'd to retreat in Disorder, after the Loss of twenty-six Infantry, one Trooper, and several Horses wounded. *Scipio*, proud of this Success, drew his Forces within his Lines again; but his Joy was soon interrupted, for the Day after, *Cæsar* having sent a Squadron of Horse to *Leptis*, to convoy some Provisions, they fell in by the way with a Party of the *Numidian* and *Getulian* Raparees, whom they charg'd so very briskly, they kill'd or took near a hundred Prisoners. *Cæsar* all this while omitted not advancing his Lines, and drawing out his Forces, to prevent the Enemy's IncurSIONS; Nor was *Scipio* idle, for he left nothing unattempted to prevent *Cæsar's* excluding him the Hill. Thus both Generals were employ'd about their Works, yet there frequently happen'd Skirmishes between their Cavalry.

C H A P. XIV.

WHILST Affairs were in this Posture, *Varus*, on Notice the seventh and eighth Legions had sail'd from *Sicily*, left *Utica*, where he had laid up his Squadron all Winter, and put out to Sea. He mann'd his Fleet with *Getulian* Rowers and Marines, then designing to lay wait for our Transports, hoisted Sail with sixty Ships for *Adrumetum*. *Cæsar*, being ignorant of his Arrival, sent *L. Cippius* with a Squadron of twenty-seven Sail to cruise about *Thapsus*, for the Security of his Convoy; and *Q. Aquila* with thirteen Gallies to *Adrumetum*, upon the same Errand. *Cippius* quickly arriv'd at the Place he was order'd to; but *Aquila*, being told'd by the Tempest, could not double the Promontory; so having found a convenient Creek to ride at Anchor in, was glad to shelter his Fleet there from the Fury of the Winds. Mean while some Vessels that lay at Anchor in the Road of *Leptis*, were forsaken by the Mariners, who went to the Town to buy Provisions, or were dispers'd about the Shore, and left without any body to defend

Some of
Cæsar's
Ships taken.

Some of
Cæsar's
Shipstaken.

Some Vessels
taken.

Cæsar puts
to Sea, and
recovers 'em.

defend 'em. *Varus* having Notice of this from the Deserters, about nine that Night left *Adrumetum*, and the next Morning early arriv'd with all his Fleet at *Leptis*; where he put Fire to the Transports that rode at Anchor without the Haven; and meeting with no manner of Opposition, took two five-bank'd Gallies that were empty.

Cæsar soon receiv'd Intelligence of this, whilst he was viewing his Works about six Miles distant from the Harbour; whereupon laying aside all other Affairs, he immediately posted to *Leptis*, where he made no longer Stay, than to allow the rest of his Fleet sufficient time to follow him; then embarking in a small Galley, himself led the way: He soon overtook *Aquila*, whom he found mightily surpris'd at the Number of the Enemy's Fleet, and having join'd him, pursu'd his Voyage. *Varus*, equally amaz'd at *Cæsar*'s Boldness and Dispatch, tack'd about, and made the best of his way for *Adrumetum*; but *Cæsar*, after a League's Sail, came up with him, retook one of his own Gallies with all her Men on board, a hundred and fifty Men more in it that were left by the Enemy to guard her, and another three-bank'd Galley, with her Rowers and Mariners; but the rest of the Enemy's Squadron, having doubled the Cape, made the Port of *Adrumetum*, which *Cæsar*, by the Assistance of the same Wind, was not able to do: Wherefore having laid that Night at Anchor, next Morning early he sail'd towards the Town, set fire to all the Transports that rode without the Haven, and waited there some time to expect whether the Enemy would give him Battel, but finding they would not, return'd again to his Camp.

P. Vestrius
and P. Ligarius taken,
the last put
to Death by
Cæsar.

In this Ship was taken *P. Vestrius*, a Roman Knight, and *P. Ligarius Afranianus*, whom *Cæsar* had taken in Spain, and dismiss'd with the rest of the Prisoners there; notwithstanding which Favour, he had again enter'd into *Pompey*'s Service, and having made his Escape from the Battel of *Pharsalia*, fled to *Varus* in *Africk*: Him therefore *Cæsar* put to Death for his Perjury. But as for *P. Vestrius*, because his Brother readily paid his Ransom at *Rome*, and he made it appear, that being taken by *Nasidius*'s Fleet, and condemn'd to die, *Varus* had procur'd his Pardon; since when he never had an Opportunity of making his Escape, *Cæsar* pardon'd him.

CHAP. XV.

Cæsar de-
camps.



Cæsar gets
a Booty of
Corn.

Labienus's
Ambush de-
feated by
Cæsar.

Cæsar
marches to
Agar.

THE Africans have a Custom of hiding their Corn in Caverns under Earth, especially in War-time, to prevent being surpris'd by the Enemy, and every Town has private Caves for this purpose. *Cæsar* having Intelligence of one of these Hoards from a Deserter, about Midnight drew out two Legions with a Party of Cavalry, sending em about ten Miles off; from whence they return'd loaden to the Camp with Corn. *Labienus*, on Notice of this, march'd about eight Miles from his Lines, thro' the Mountains *Cæsar* had pass'd the Day before, where he laid out a Camp large enough to contain two Legions; daily attending with a strong Party of Horse and light-arm'd Foot in Ambuscade, because he expected we should often pass the same for Provisions.

Mean while, *Cæsar* being inform'd of *Labienus*'s Design, rarry'd a few Days, to render the Enemy more negligent and remiss, by doing the same thing so often over; then unexpectedly, one Morning betimes, commanded eight Veteran Legions, with Part of his Cavalry, to follow him out of the *Decuman* Port. Having order'd his Horse to advance before, they surpris'd the Enemy who lay in Ambush for 'em, kill'd about five hundred, and routed the rest. Whereupon *Labienus* came up with all his Horse to sustain his Party; but *Cæsar*, perceiving his Cavalry could not maintain their Ground against so unequal a Number, advanc'd with his Legions to engage the Enemy, who being frighten'd at his Approach, desisted from the Pursuit, and secur'd their own Retreat. The Day after, *Juba* gave Orders all the *Numidians* who had deserted their Post, should be hang'd, for a Terror to the rest of his Army.

Cæsar, in the mean while, being streighten'd for Provisions, recall'd all his Forces into the Camp, and having left Garrisons at *Leptis*, *Ruspina*, and *Acilla*; order'd *Aquila* and *Cispius* to cruise with their several Fleets, one near *Adrumetum*, the other about *Thapsus*; set fire to his Works, and about three in the Morning drew out his Army, dispos'd his Baggage in the Left, march'd directly to *Agar*, a Town that had frequently been invested by the *Getulians*, and as often made a vigorous Defence. He encamp'd in the Plain near this Place, and went out to forage with part of his Forces about

Cæsar de- about the Country; where he met not only with a considerable Booty of Oyl, Wine, Figs and Barley, but also a little Wheat: Then having refresh'd his Soldiers, return'd again to his Quarters. *Scipio*, having Notice of *Cæsar's* Motions, follow'd him along the Ridge of the Hill, with all his Forces, and lodg'd his Army, in three several Bodies, about seven Miles from his Camp.

Cæsar takes
Zetta.

Zetta lay about ten Miles distant from *Scipio*, directly over-against the Post he possess'd, but above eighteen Miles from *Cæsar*. Hither the Enemy detach'd two Legions to forage, which *Cæsar* being inform'd of from a Defenter, remov'd his Camp from the Valley, to a safer Place upon the Hill, and having left a Guard there, about three the next Morning pass'd the Enemy's Camp, and gain'd the Town. When he arriv'd there, finding *Scipio's* Foragers were gone up farther into the Country, and that the Enemy advanc'd with their Legions to cover 'em, he desist'd from the Pursuit, and began to return to his Camp, after having taken *C. Mutius Reginus*, a Roman Knight, *Scipio's* familiar Friend, Governor of *Zetta*, with *P. Atrius*, another Roman Knight of *Utica*, surpris'd two and twenty of the King's Camels, and left Lieutenant † *Oppius* with a Garrison in the Place.

† This is the
Oppius some
suppose Au-
thor of this
Book.

Cæsar's
Rere attack-
ed.

Being now arriv'd near *Scipio's* Quarters, which he was oblig'd to pass, *Labienus* and *Afranius*, with all the Enemy's Horse and light-arm'd Infantry, rising from an Ambuscade, appear'd upon the Hills, and began to attack his Rere. Which *Cæsar* observing, first detach'd his Cavalry to receive their Charge, then order'd the Foot to dispose of their Baggage, and face about; nor did the Legions sooner begin their Attack, but with great Ease they forc'd 'em from the higher Ground. But when *Cæsar*, thinking the Enemy had been so warmly receiv'd, they would hardly give him any farther Trouble, began to pursue his Journey, they show'd themselves upon a neighbouring Hill; and the *Numidians*, with their light-arm'd Foot, who are wonderfully nimble, always mix'd amongst the Cavalry, (with whom they keep an equal Pace either in charging or retiring) fell a second time upon our Foot. Thus they frequently renew'd the Charge, still retiring when we endeavour'd to engage, and as we march'd forward, pressing upon the Rere. *Cæsar* plainly perceiv'd their Design was to oblige him to encamp in a Place where no Water was to be had, that his Soldiers, who had neither eat nor drank

drank from three in the Morning till four in the Afternoon, might perish with Thirst and Hunger.

Sun-set already approach'd, when *Cæsar*, finding he had not gain'd compleat an hudied Paces in four Hours March, drew his Cavalry off from the Rere; who had lost several Horses, causing the Legions by their Turns to secure his Retreat: Thus proceeding slowly, by the Assistance of his Foot he sustain'd the Enemy's Charges with greater Ease. Mean while, part of the *Numidian* Horse gallop'd to the Right and Left upon the Hills, endeavouring to surround our Army with their Number, whilst others kept our Rere employ'd: But if only two or three Veteran Soldiers chanc'd to face about, and cast their Piles with Vigour, two thousand of the Enemy would fly, then returning rally again, and following at some Distance, throw their Darts at the Legions. Thus *Cæsar*, one while marching forward, one while halting, and going on but slowly, arriv'd safe with all his Forces, by seven that Evening, at his Camp, having only ten Soldiers wounded: *Labienus* likewise having lost about three hundred, several being wounded, and all heartily fatigu'd, retreated to his Camp. And *Scipio* withdrew his Legions and Elephants, whom he had rang'd for the greater Terror within View of *Cæsar's* Army, before his own Lines.

But he secures his Retreat.

CH A P. XVI.

CÆSAR, having so subtil an Enemy to deal with, *Cæsar's* instructed his Soldiers, not like a General of a Veteran Army, who had achiev'd so many glorious Exploits, *Instructions* to his Soldiers. but as a Fencing-Master teaches his Scholars: How they should retreat from, how encounter the Enemy, how far advance, how far retreat, where, and in what manner cast their Piles. For the Enemy's light-arm'd Infantry gave us great Uneasiness, deterring our Troopers from meeting 'em, by killing their Horses with their Javelins; and wearying our Legions by their Swiftnefs: For when our heavy-arm'd Foot fac'd about and endeavour'd to return their Charge, they quickly avoided the Danger by Flight.

This was no small Vexation to *Cæsar*, for whenever he engag'd 'em without the Legions, his Horse were no equal Match for theirs mix'd with the light-arm'd Infantry. Nor was he less concern'd, because he had never yet try'd the Courage of their Legions, and knew

not

not how he should be able, even by the Assistance of his own, to sustain their Charge, with that of their Cavalry and light-arm'd Foot united. To add to these Grievances, his Men were frighten'd by the Number and Size of the Enemy's Elephants: However, to redress this Evil, he had caus'd some of those Animals to be transported from *Italy*, that his Soldiers might be better acquainted with the Nature and Strength of the Beast, what Part of his Body was easiliest pierc'd, and where their Furniture left room for casting in a Dart; that being perfectly acquainted with the Smell, Noise, and Species of the Animal, they might no longer be afraid of it. The Design succeeded to his Wish, for his Men quickly began to handle the Elephants, found out their Slowness, the Cavalry cast blunted Piles upon 'em, and by Degrees taught their Horses to endure their Presence.

For these Reasons *Caesar* became more slow and cautious, not waging War with the same Dispatch as formerly. For in *Gaul* his Soldiers us'd to fight in open Plains, and had a generous Enemy to engage, who was unacquainted with Design, and rely'd intirely upon Force, not on Artifice: But here he found himself oblig'd to prepare his Men for Deceit, Ambuscades, and Fraud; that they might know when to engage, when to avoid the Combat. That therefore they might the sooner learn this Lesson, he thought it not convenient to suffer his Legions to continue long in any Place, but, under Pretence of Foraging, made 'em march up and down the Country; for he was assur'd, go where-ever he pleas'd, the Enemy would follow him. About three Days after, he drew his Forces out carefully, and march'd by *Scipio's* Camp, to offer him Battel, but finding he declin'd it, in the Evening retreated again to his own Quarters.

The Moti-
ons of both
Armies till
the Action
at Thap-
sus.

Vacca, de-
signing to
surrender to
Caesar, is
sack'd by
Juba.

C H A P. XVII

MEAN while arriv'd Deputies from *Vacca*, a Town not far distant from *Zetta*, which *Caesar* lately surpris'd: Their Business was to desire he would send 'em a Garrison, for they had several sorts of warlike Provisions, which were at his Service. But before their Departure arriv'd a Deserter, (that wish'd as well as they to *Caesar*) to acquaint 'em, before the intended Garrison could arrive there, *Juba* had taken the Town by Assault, put

all

all the Inhabitants to the Sword, and order'd his Soldiers to sack and plunder the City.

Cæsar having review'd his Army, the Day after drew out, march'd about five Miles from his Camp, and dispos'd all his Forces in Order of Battel, about two Miles distant from *Scipio's*: But having long enough invited the Enemy to Battel, which they were averse to, retreated. The day following he decamp'd, and march'd towards *Sarsura*, where *Scipio* had a Numidian Garrison, and a Magazine of Corn: Which *Labienu*s perceiving, pursu'd our Rere with all his Cavalry and light-arm'd Foot; having surpris'd some Surlers Waggon, the Success inspir'd 'em with such Courage, they resolv'd to attack our Legions, who they thought would not be able to fight, whilst encumber'd with their Baggage. But *Cæsar* was prepar'd to receive 'em, for he had taken Care to make a Draught of three hundred Men out of every Legion, who had nothing to carry but their Arms, and these he detach'd to cover his Rere against the Insults of *Labienu*s's Cavalry; who, frightened at the Approach of our Ensigns, fac'd about, and began to make a dishonourable Flight, after several of his Party had been kill'd and wounded.

Cæsar's
Rere at-
tack'd, but
he secures
his Retreat,

When *Cæsar* arriv'd at *Sarsura*, after he had kill'd *P. Corneliu*s, who commanded there for *Scipio*, and taken the Town, he put the Garrison to the Sword, even in the Enemy's Presence, who durst not come to their Assistance. Having given his Army Corn, he march'd the Day after to *Tisdra*, where *Confidius* lay with a strong Garrison, and his Cohort of Gladiators. *Cæsar* having view'd the Place, and being deterr'd from undertaking a Siege by want of Provisions, proceeded without delay about four Miles further, and encamp'd near the River; from thence again, the fourth Day following, he return'd to his Camp at *Agar*: *Scipio* follow'd his Example, and retreated likewise to his former Quarters.

Cæsar takes
Sarsura.

Whilst these Affairs went forward, the *Thabenenses*, a People subject to *Juba*, whose Country lies near the Sea-Coasts, in the farthest Part of his Kingdom, having put the King's Garrison to the Sword, sent Messengers to *Cæsar*, acquainting him with what they had done. He, applauding the Action, sent 'em *M. Crispus*, the Tribune, with a Cohort, a Party of Archers, and store of warlike Engines. About this time all the Soldiers, who had either been detain'd by Sickness or any other Occasion from coming with the former Convoys

The *Tha-*
benenses de-
clare for
Cæsar.

to *Africk*, now arriv'd all together: They were four thousand Foot, four hundred Horse, and a thousand Slingers and Archers. Having therefore drawn out all these Forces, and the Legions he had before, he march'd about eight Miles from his Camp, and halted in a Plain about four Miles distant from *Scipio's*.

Both Armies drawn out near Teggæ. *Cæsar's* Cavalry engag'd with Success.

There was a Town below *Scipio's* Camp, call'd *Teggæ*, where he generally had a Garrison of about Four hundred Horse, here, having dispos'd his Cavalry on the Right and Left Sides of the Town, he drew out his Legions, posted 'em upon a Hill something lower than his Camp, and so stood in Order of Battel about a Mile before his Lines. But when *Scipio* had continu'd in this Posture a considerable time, and thrown away greatest part of the Day to no Purpose; *Cæsar* commanded his Horse to charge the Enemy's that was plac'd before the Town, sending a Party of light-arm'd Infantry, Archers and Slingers to assist 'em. Our Cavalry had no sooner clapp'd Spurs to their Horses, in order to make a vigorous Attack, but *Pacidius* extended his Troops, that they might at the same Instant surround, and warmly return our Onset: Which *Cæsar* observing, he detach'd three hundred Soldiers out of the next Legion to sustain his Party; whereupon *Labienus* sent more Cavalry to the Assistance of his, still ordering fresh Men to relieve the wounded and fatigu'd. Ours, who were only four hundred, finding themselves an unequal Match for as many thousands, and being wounded by the light-arm'd *Numidians*, began by Degrees to give Ground; which made *Cæsar* immediately dispatch another Wing to their Relief: Whereupon our Party assuming fresh Courage, charg'd the Enemy again, kill'd many, wounded others, and put 'em all intirely to the Rout. We pursu'd 'em three Miles, 'till we had driven 'em to the Hills, then return'd again to our Army. Thus *Cæsar* having stood in Order of Battel 'till four in the Afternoon, retreated to his Camp, without the Loss of a single Man. In this Action was *Pacidius* dangerously wounded with a Pile that pierc'd his Helmet, many more Officers underwent the like Fate, for none that endeavour'd to signalize himself escap'd without Death or Wounds.

Pacidius wounded.

C H A P. XVIII.

CÆSAR, at length perceiving he could not persuade the Enemy to quit the higher Ground, and engage him
with

with their Legions; and that 'twas impossible for him to encamp nearer 'em for Scarcity of Water, concluded they depended more on his want of Water, than their own Courage. Wherefore the fourth Day of April, about three in the Morning, leaving *Agar*, he march'd to *Thapsus*, * sixteen Miles distant off the Place he came from. Here *Vergilius* commanded with a strong Garrison; but *Cæsar* having encamp'd, began the same Day to invest the Town, and dispose Parties in several Places to prevent the Enemy from gaining any Place within the Compals of his Lines. *Scipio*, in the mean while, having Notice of *Cæsar*'s Design, found himself oblig'd to hazard a Battel, rather than suffer so signal a disgrace as the loss of *Thapsus*, and *Vergilius*, who had been so faithful to him; wherefore taking his Rout along the Hills, he immediately follow'd *Cæsar*, and dividing his Forces into two Parties, set down about eight Miles from *Thapsus*.

There was a salt Morass, between which and the Sea lay a narrow Passage, not above fifteen hundred Paces long; and *Scipio* design'd to March this way to the Assistance of the Town. But *Cæsar*, foreseeing his Attempt, had the Day before erected a Fort, and left a strong Garrison there; then with the rest of his Forces drew a Line of Circumvallation about *Thapsus*. Thus *Scipio* finding himself disappointed, spent a Day and a Night a little above the Morass; but the Morning after, so soon as 'twas Day-light, removing his Quarters about a Mile further distant from our Fort towards the Sea, there encamp'd. *Cæsar*, having Notice of this, drew off his Soldiers from the Works, and leaving the Proconsul *Asprenas*, with two Legions to secure his Camp and Baggage, march'd immediately with the rest of his Forces towards the Enemy; having first left part of his Fleet at *Thapsus*, and commanded the rest to make as near the Shore, towards the Enemy's Rere, as they could, observing the Signal he should give 'em; whereupon they were immediately to set up a Shout to surprise and frighten the Enemy, who would thereby be oblig'd to face about.

When *Cæsar* arriv'd at the Place, observing the Enemy had drawn out before their Rampier, dispos'd their Elephants in either Wing, and that notwithstanding part of their Soldiers were employ'd in fortifying their Camp: He likewise rang'd his Forces in Order of Battel in three several Places; the Tenth and Second

Cæsar besieges Thapsus.

* The Original is *Prid. Non. Apr. tertia Vigilia egressus, ab Agar XVI Milia passuum Nocte progressus, &c.* But that's impossible, therefore I have left out the Word *Nocte*.

Both Armies drawn up; a Battel; *Scipio* defeated.

† The Text
is Oppolitis
V. Legioni-
bus in Quar-
ta Acie, ante
ipsa Cornua
quinis Co-
hortibus
contra belli-
as collocatis:
But I believe
it should on-
ly be oppoli-
ta quinta Le-
gione.

One of Cæ-
sar's Trum-
peters founds
a Charge
without his
leave.

Cæsar gives
Good For-
tune for the
Word.

The Ele-
phants disor-
der'd, and
they rout
their own
Army.

Legion, he plac'd in the Right, the eighth and ninth in the Left; then forming a † fourth Body of the fifth Legion, he dispos'd five Cohorts on either side before the Wings, over-against the Elephants: To these he likewise added Archers, Slingers, and light-arm'd Foot intermingled with his Cavalry. Walking thro' all the Ranks on Foot, he spoke courteously to the Veteran Soldiers, inciting 'em to behave themselves worthy of their former Actions, and encourag'd the new Levies to rival their Example; that, the Victory obtain'd, they might possess their Place, and succeed to their Glory.

Whilst Cæsar was speaking to his Soldiers, he observ'd the Enemy were very uneasie, running up and down in great Confusion, one while retiring within their Trenches, another while coming out again with great Assurance. Several took notice of this as well as himself, wherefore the Lieutenants and Volunteers unanimously desir'd he would give 'em the Sign of Battel, for the Immortal Gods had certainly destin'd him the Victory. Whilst Cæsar was doubting with himself, striving to moderate their Desire, and restrain the Soldiers, because he thought it not convenient to attack the Enemy first; on a sudden, without his leave, a Trumpeter in the Right Wing, being compell'd to it by the Soldiers, founded a Charge; whereupon all the Cohorts march'd towards the Enemy, whilst the Centurions in vain interpos'd their Authority, to make the Men attend their General's Orders. Which Cæsar perceiving, found it now too late to recal those who were so eager for the Engagement; wherefore, having given *Good Fortune* for the Word, he clapp'd Spurs to his Horse, and charg'd the Enemy's Front.

Mean while the Archers and Slingers on the Right, ply'd the Elephants warmly with their Darts; whereupon the unruly Beasts, frighten'd with the Noise of the Slings and Stones, fac'd about, and forcing their way thro' the thickest Ranks behind 'em, endeavour'd to enter the Camp, where the Gates were not above half finish'd: The Officers of the *Moorish* Cavalry, finding themselves deserted by their Guard, did the like. Thus pursuing the Elephants, our Legions render'd themselves Masters of their Camp, after having kill'd some few that made a vigorous Resistance; for the rest, being beaten back, made the best of their way to the Place they were encamp'd in the Day before.

Here I must not omit recording the Virtue of a Veteran of the Fifth Legion; who, observing an Ele-
phant

phant that was enrag'd with a Wound he had receiv'd, fell upon a Suttler unarm'd, whom he had thrown under his Feet, and bending his Knee, lean'd upon him, till the Weight had forc'd his Soul to forsake his Body, making a dreadful Noise all the while, and brandishing his *Proboscis*; he could no longer contain himself from engaging the Beast. The Elephant, perceiving he advanc'd towards him, forsook the dead Body, catch'd his Enemy up in his Trunk, and wheel'd him about, Armour and all, in the Air: The Soldier, losing no presence of Mind, notwithstanding the Danger he was in, continually cut the Animal's *Proboscis* with his utmost Force, 'till he oblig'd him to forego his Prey, and retire with a hideous Noise to the rest of his Companions.

A Soldier taken up by an Elephant in his Trunk; wounds the Beast so, he obliges him to let him go again.

Whilst both Armies were thus engag'd, the Garrison of *Thapsus*, either designing to assist their Friends, or desert the Town, made a Sally thro' that Gate towards the Sea, and marching Navel deep thro' the Water, endeavour'd to gain the Land, but were repuls'd with Stones and Darts by the Boys and Servants in the Camp, who oblig'd 'em again to retire within their Walls.

The Garrison of Thapsus endeavour to get out of the Town; but are beaten back again.

Scipio's Forces thus routed and dispers'd about the Field, *Cæsar's* Legions resolv'd to pursue 'em so close they should have no time to rally. So soon as their broken Troops arriv'd at the Camp they design'd to fly to, where they would have repair'd the Works, and again defended themselves, they found no Commander there, whose Orders and Authority they should submit to. Observing likewise there was no Guard to defend 'em immediately, casting away their Arms, they fled into *Juba's* Quarters. These *Cæsar* had already possess'd; wherefore now, despairing of Safety, they retir'd to an adjacent Hill, humbly besought his Mercy, and saluted his Soldiers by the Name of Brethren. Nor could this mollify the Veteran Troops, who enrag'd with Grief and Anger, notwithstanding their Submission, granted no Quarter, killing or wounding several Persons of the most eminent Quality, whom they upbraided for having been the Authors of the War. Amongst this Number was *Tullius Rufus*, a Treasurer, who was transfix'd with a Pile, and *Pompeius Rufus*, who receiv'd a Wound in his Arm with a Sword, and had infallibly been kill'd, had he not immediately escap'd to *Cæsar*. Whereupon several Roman Knights and Senators, being frightened, fled away, lest they should have receiv'd the same Fate from the licentious Soldiers, who thought the

Scipio's Forces intirely routed. Juba's Camp taken. Cæsar's Soldiers grant no Quarter.

Services of the Day sufficient to atone for all their Excesses. Thus *Scipio's* Soldiers were put to the Sword, even in *Cæsar's* Presence, notwithstanding they implor'd his Compassion, and he endeavour'd to restrain the Fury of his Men.

Cæsar returns to Thapsus. Vergilius still holds out.

Cæsar, having now made himself Master of three several Camps, kill'd ten thousand of the Enemy, and routed the rest, only with the loss of fifty on his side, and a few wounded, retir'd to his former Quarters. Thence he immediately drew out before *Thapsus*, causing sixty-four Elephants he had taken, with all their Armour, Castles and Ornaments to pass by the Town, hoping thereby to reduce *Vergilius* and the Besieg'd to Reason, after the Defeat of their Party: He himself likewise call'd to *Vergilius*, inviting him to surrender in hopes of that Mercy he had shewn to his Enemies upon all Occasions: But perceiving the other return'd no Answer, he retreated from the Walls. The Day after having offer'd Sacrifice to the Gods, he summon'd the Soldiers to attend him, made an Oration, and within sight of the Town applauded their Courage, giving Rewards to the whole Veteran Army in general, not forgetting to recompence each private Man's Desert. Then immediately quitted the Place, after he had left the Proconsul, *C. Rebellus*, to continue the Siege with three Legions, detach'd *Cn. Domitius* with two others to *Tifdra*, where *Considius* commanded, and sent *M. Messala* before towards *Utica*, whom he follow'd himself with the Cavalry.

The Surrender of Utica, and Death of Cato.

Cæsar marches to Utica.

Scipio's Horse that escap'd the Slaughter, sack Parada,

Flunder Utica.

C H A P. XIX.

M E A N while *Scipio's* Horse that had escap'd the Slaughter, making the best of their way towards *Utica*, arriv'd at *Parada*; but the Inhabitants, having already receiv'd News of *Cæsar's* Victory, shut their Gates against 'em. Wherefore having taken the Town by Storm, they brought vast Piles of Wood into the Market-Place, flung all the People upon 'em, and after they had set Fire to 'em, bound the Besieg'd; and, without respect to Age or Dignity, compell'd 'em all to expire in so horrid a manner; which bloody Work effected, they march'd directly to *Utica*. *Cato*, finding the Common People stood ill affected to his Party, because of the *Julian* Law, from whence they had receiv'd signal Advantages, had expell'd 'em the Town some time before

fore without Arms, and oblig'd 'em to encamp before the *Warlike Gate*, where they had fortify'd themselves only with a small Ditch, whereon they dispos'd constant Guards, whilst the Senate alone were permitted to dwell within the Walls. *Scipio's* Cavalry therefore, knowing these People were Well-wishers to *Cesar*, assaulted their Camp, that they might satiate their Revenge by putting 'em to the Sword. But the *Uticans*, assuming Courage on the News of *Cesar's* Victory, repuls'd the Aggressors only by the help of Stones and Clubs: Finding therefore they could not force the Trenches, the Cavalry flung themselves into the Town, where they kill'd and plunder'd several of the Inhabitants. *Cato* finding all his Persuasions were not able to appease these Disorders, and bring them to join their Forces with his, for the common Defence of the Place; considering what they wanted, he gave each Soldier a hundred Sesterces to make 'em quiet: *Faustus Sylla* did the like out of his own Pocket, and leaving *Utica* with them march'd towards *Numidia*.

By this time several had fled to *Utica*; whom *Cato* having assembled with the three hundred Merchants that furnish'd *Scipio* with Money to carry on the War, advis'd to enfranchise their Slaves, and maintain the Town. But finding, whilst part were willing to agree to his Opinion, others were so frighten'd they could think of nothing but making their Escape, he furnish'd 'em with Vessels, giving 'em free leave to sail whither they pleas'd. After this having settl'd his own Affairs, and recommended his Children to the Care of *L. Cesar*, his Sub-Treasurer, without the least Suspicion, (for his Voice and Countenance were still the same as formerly) pretending to go sleep, he privately carry'd his Sword into his Bed-Chamber with him, and run himself thro' the Body. Before he expir'd, falling off the Bed, the Noise alarm'd his People, immediately his Friends and Physicians came to his Relief; but in vain they endeavour'd to stop his Wound, whilst forcing it open again with his own Hands, he died without the least Concern. Tho' hated by the *Uticans*, when alive, because of his different Party, yet now in Respect to his singular Integrity, and out of Gratitude for the wondrous Fortifications he had erected to defend their Town, they interred him honourably. *Cato* thus deceas'd, *L. Cesar*, to make the best use of this Occasion, having assembled the People, made a Speech, wherein he advis'd 'em to open

*Porta Belli-
ca.*

*Cato calls a
Council.*

*Furnishes
those that
are afraid,
with Ships.*

*Cato kills
himself.*

*He is honour-
ably bury'd
by the Uti-
cans.*

L. Caesar advises 'em to open their Gates to Julius Caesar. their Gates, and depend upon Caesar's Mercy. His Counsel being submitted to, he march'd to meet the Emperor Caesar. And Messala being now arriv'd at Utica, according to his Orders, dispos'd Guards at every Gate.

Caesar takes Utica by surrender.

He pardons several of the contrary Party.

Enters Utica.

Fines the 300 Merchants.

* His Millies H. S. supposing these to be Sesterces in the New Gender, they were worth 7l. 16 s. 3 d. a Sesterce, at Mr. Kennet's Computation.

Mean while Caesar, leaving Thapsus, arriv'd at Usceta, where Scipio had repos'd plenty of Corn, Arms, Darts, and other warlike Provisions; he soon carry'd the Place, and from thence pursu'd his Journey to Adrumetum, which immediately surrender'd at Discretion; wherefore, in Consideration of the Corn and Money he found there, he gave Quarter to Q. Ligarius, and C. Confidius the Son, who was Governor of the Place; then leaving Livineius Regulus there with a Legion, march'd directly for Utica. L. Caesar meeting him upon the Road, threw himself at his Feet, desiring nothing more but that he would vouchsafe to pardon his Life, a Request he easily obtain'd from Caesar's Nature and wonted Clemency. Carcina, C. Ateius, P. Atrius, the two L. Cellas's, Father and Son, M. Eppius, M. Aquinius, Cato's Son, and Damasippus's Children, obtain'd the like Favour: In the Evening by Torch-light, he arriv'd at Utica, but lodg'd that Night without the Town to prevent Disorders.

Next Morning early he enter'd the Town, and having summon'd all the Inhabitants to attend him, first return'd the Uticans Thanks for their Affection, then enlarg'd in a sharp Invective against those Roman Citizens, and the three hundred Merchants that had furnish'd Varus and Scipio with Money to carry on the War. But at last he order'd them to lay aside their Apprehensions, and appear before him, for he would pardon their Lives, but confiscate their Estates, allowing them Notice when their Goods should be sold, and their Liberty of Redemption on Payment of a Fine certain. The Merchants, who despairing of Life, were already half dead with Fear, joyfully embraced so grateful and unexpected a Proffer, unanimously desiring Caesar would please to impose an Amercement in gross upon 'em all. He therefore order'd 'em to pay two hundred thousand * Sesterces to the Republick, at six equal Payments, within the Space of three Years. Nor did any refuse the Conditions, but each esteeming it the Day of his Nativity, returned Caesar many Thanks for his Mercy.

C H A P. XX.

The Death
of Juba &
Petreius.

Zama, Capital of Numidia, refuses Juba Assistance.

MEAN while *Juba*, having escap'd with *Petreius* out of the Battel, hid himself always whilst it was Day, and travelling only in the Night, arriv'd in *Numidia*. But when he came to *Zama*, the usual Place of his Residence, which at the beginning of the War he had strongly fortify'd, because he lodg'd his Wives, Children, Riches, and most valuable Things there: The Inhabitants, having receiv'd the welcome News of *Cæsar's* Victory, refus'd to admit him into the Town, because, when he first declar'd War against the People of *Rome*, he made considerable Quantities of Wood to be carry'd into *Zama*, whereof he erected a lofty Pile in the middle of the Market-place, designing, if he met with ill Success, to kill the Citizens, fling their Bodies with all their Effects upon it, then set Fire to the Stack, which should consume him, his Wives, Children, Subjects, and all his Royal Treasure together. He waited a long time before the Gates, first making use of Threats, afterwards of Entreaties, but finding neither had any effect upon the People, he at last desir'd they would deliver him his Wives and Children, that they might share his Misfortune; but perceiving they return'd him no manner of Answer, without obtaining any thing, he left *Zama*, retiring with *Petreius* and a few Cavalry to his Country House. Soon after, the Inhabitants sent Embassadors to *Cæsar*; who was then at *Utica*, to acquaint him with what they had done, and desire he would send a Garrison to defend 'em, before *Juba* could gather Forces enough to assault the Town, tho' they were ready to maintain the Place for his Service, even to the last Man, being intirely devoted to his Interest. *Cæsar*, having given the Embassadors Thanks, he order'd 'em to return, and acquaint their Fellow-Citizens, he himself would quickly come to their Relief: Accordingly the Day after, leaving *Utica*, he began his March. Several of *Juba's* Officers met him upon the Road, and most humbly begg'd he would please to pardon 'em; which he did, and quickly arriv'd at *Zama*. The Fame of his Clemency being now divulg'd, almost all the Persons of Quality in the Kingdom attended him there, and were freed from their Apprehensions.

The Inhabitants send Embassadors to Cæsar.

Cæsar leaves Utica; marches to Zama.

Whilst Affairs were in this Posture, *Considius* who commanded at *Tisdræ*, with his own Retinue, a Com-

Considius deserts Tisdræ,

His Throat
cut by his
Guards for
the sake of
his Money.

Vergilius
surrenders
Thapsus.

Juba and
Petreius by
consent kill
each other.

Sitius de-
feats, and
kills Sabura.
Takes Afra-
nius and Syl-
la.

They are
killed by the
soldiers.

pany of Gladiators, and a Party of *Getulians*, having notice of *Scipio's* Defeat, and being frighten'd at *Domitius's* Approach with the Legions, despair'd of Safety, therefore abandon'd the Town: But endeavouring to make his Escape into *Numidia* with a few of the Barbarians, and a considerable Treasure; they cut his Throat upon the Road for the Lucre of his Money, then dispers'd themselves up and down the Country.

Mean while *C. Vergilius*, finding it was in vain to make any further Defence after he was invest'd by Sea and Land, considering all his Party were either kill'd or dispers'd; that *Cato* had laid violent Hands upon himself at *Utica*; that *Juba* wander'd up and down desert-ed and despis'd by his Subjects; that *Sabura's* Forces were routed by *Sitius*; that *Cesar* had been receiv'd without the least Opposition at *Utica*; and that of so vast an Army, there was not the least Remainder left, from whence he might expect Relief; capitulated with *Caninius Rebilus*, surrender'd himself, his Effects, and the Town to the Proconsul.

Juba, being refus'd Admittance by all his Cities, was reduc'd to Despair; wherefore he and *Petreius*, that they might make an honourable Exit, engag'd each other with their Swords; but *Juba*, being the stronger of the two, soon dispatch'd *Petreius*; afterwards attempting to run himself thro' the Body, and finding he was not able to do it, he entreated the Favour from one of his Servants, and obtain'd it.

Mean time *P. Sitius* having engag'd *Sabura*, defeated his Army, and kill'd him upon the Spot; afterwards marching thro' *Mauritania* to *Cesar*, by accident he fell in with *Faustus* and *Afranius*, at the Head of the Party that had plunder'd *Utica*; who now amounted to about fifteen hundred, and design'd to transport themselves for *Spain*. Wherefore having dispos'd an Ambuscade over Night, he sat upon 'em the next Morning early with such Success, that almost all were either kill'd or taken, except a few in the Rere that made their Escape. Amongst the Number of the Prisoners were *Afranius*, *Faustus Sylla*, his Wife and Children. Not many Days after, a Mutiny arising amongst the Soldiers, they cut *Afranius* and *Sylla* to pieces. But *Cesar* took care of *Pompeia*, *Sylla's* Wife, and his Children, restoring 'em to their Estates.

About the same time, *Scipio*, *Damasippus*, *Torquatus*, and *Platorius Rustianus*, long toss'd by adverse Winds upon

upon the Sea, instead of arriving at *Spain*, as they design'd, were obliged to put into the Haven of *Hippo*, where *Sitius's* Fleet rode at Anchor; whose larger Gallies soon sunk their smaller Ships; and thus *Scipio* with his Companions perish'd. *Cæsar*, after he had expos'd the Goods of King *Zuba*, and those Roman Citizens who had bore Arms against their Country, to publick Sale, gave great Rewards to the Inhabitants that had advis'd shutting the Gates of *Zama* against their King, freed the People from the heavy Imposts they laid under, changed the Kingdom into a Province, and leaving *Crispus Sallustius* Governor, returned again to *Utica*.

Scipio, with several others, forc'd into the Port of Hippo; their Ships are sunk there.

Here likewise he confiscated the Effects of those Officers that had served under *Zuba* and *Petreibus*, fin'd the People of *Thapsus* twenty thousand Sesterces, and the Company of Roman Merchants there thirty thousand; those of *Adrumetum* thirty thousand more, and their Company fifty thousand, but preserved them from being plunder'd. *Leptis*, which *Zuba* had some Years before ransack'd, and upon Complaint made to the Senate had Restitution made by Arbitrators, was ordered every Year to furnish the Republick with thirty thousand Pounds of Oil; because at the beginning of the War, by Seditious Advice, its chief Inhabitants had made an Alliance with the King of *Numidia*, whom they assist'd with Arms, Soldiers and Money: But the People of *Tifdra*, because of their extreme Poverty, were only condemn'd annually to pay a certain Quantity of Corn.

Cæsar fines the Cities that were in the Enemy's Interest.

The War thus decided, *Cæsar* embark'd at *Utica* the thirteenth of *June*, and arrived at *Carales* in *Sardinia* four Days after: Here he amerced the *Sulcitani*, for receiving and aiding *Nasidius's* Fleet, a hundred thousand Sesterces; and whereas they formerly us'd only to pay a Tenth, now he impos'd an Eighth upon them, order'd some few Persons Goods to be sold, and before the twenty ninth of *June* weighing Anchor at *Carales*, sail'd along the Coasts, and arriv'd within eight and twenty Days at *Rome*; after having been obliged to put into several Havens by contrary Winds.

Cæsar arrives in Sardinia, or Cagliari.

A

COMMENTARY

OF THE

Spanish War.

The CONTENTS.

Cæsar's Arrival in Spain. The Occasion of the War. The Battel of Munda. The Taking of Cordova and Sevil. The Death of Pompey's Eldest Son. The Taking of Munda. The Siege of Urfaon. And Cæsar's imperfect Speech.

C H A P. I.

Young Pompey, and his Party get Possession of the farther Spain.

PHARNACES defeated, and *Africa* reduc'd, those who with young *Cneius Pompey* had escap'd the Slaughter, got Possession of the farther *Spain*, whilst *Cæsar* was employ'd in distributing Rewards in *Italy*. *Pompey*, the better to strengthen his Party, began to insinuate himself into the Favour of every State ; thus partly by Entreaty, partly by Menaces, he soon levy'd a considerable Army, and began to lay the Province waste : Some Cities freely sent him Supplies, whilst others shut their Gates against him ; but if any of the latter happen'd to fall into his Hands by Assault, so little Regard did he shew, even to his Father's best Friends, that if they were accounted rich, he quickly found an Occasion to cut 'em off, and distribute their Effects amongst his licentious Followers. His Soldiers meeting so good Encouragement, their Number was soon encreas'd ; wherefore they that were in *Cæsar's* Interest



rest, dispatch'd frequent Couriers into *Italy*, to demand his Protection.

Cæsar's Arrival in Spain.

** Plutarch says, he was Consul, not Dictator, when he went into Spain.*

Cæsar had now compleated his third Dictatorship, was chosen a fourth time to the * same Office ; when making what haste he could to dispatch the War in *Spain*, after several Days Journey, he met the Deputies from *Cordova* upon the Road, who had deserted from *Cn. Pompey* : They inform'd him, he might easily surprise their Town by Night, for the Enemy, as yet, knew nothing of his Arrival in the Province, notwithstanding they had dispos'd Scouts in every Place, to bring 'em Notice of it. Many other things they likewise propos'd, which appear'd so feasible, that *Cæsar* immediately sent his Lieutenants *Q. Pedius* and *Q. Fabius Maximus* Advice of his coming, and commanded 'em to attend him with all the Cavalry in their Province. He finish'd his Journey much sooner than expected, and when he came to the Place of Rendezvous, found his Orders punctually perform'd.

Sextus Pompey now commanded in Chief at *Cordova*, with a strong Garrison, (for this they accounted the Capital of the Province ;) whilst his elder Brother invested *Ulla*, where he had been employ'd for some Months. The besieg'd having Notice of *Cæsar's* Arrival, contrived to send Messengers, to desire he would immediately come to their Assistance : *Cæsar* remembering how faithful the People of *Ulla* had always been to the Republick, about nine a Clock that Night detach'd Eleven Cohorts, with a proportionable Number of Horse, to their Relief, under the Command of *L. Julius Patience*, an experienc'd Officer, who was well acquainted with the Country. He happen'd to arrive at *Pompey's* Quarters, whilst it rain'd so violently, and the Wind blew so hard, 'twas difficult even to distinguish the next Person to you ; which was a very lucky Opportunity, and as well improv'd ; for *Patience*, disposing only two Soldiers in a Rank, made 'em march directly thro' the Enemy's Lines to the Town : When *Cæsar's* Party was in the middle of the Enemy's, and the Question ask'd, *Who went there ?* They made Answer, *They had taken that Occasion to approach the Walls and storm the Town, therefore bid 'em be silent.* Thus they got safe to the Gates, where, upon the Signal given, they were admitted ; for Part of *Scipio's* Guards were prevented from doing their Duty by the Tempest, and the rest were satisfy'd with the Answer *Patience's* Soldiers made 'em

Ulla besieg'd by young Pompey.

Cæsar throws Supplies into the Town.

'em. Having so luckily succeeded in this Attempt, both Horse and Infantry together, leaving a Party within the Town, made so vigorous a Sally upon the Enemy, who knew nothing of their Arrival, that the greatest part of Pompey's Forces had much to do to preserve themselves from being taken Prisoners.

Cæsar besieges Cordova, so obliges Pompey to quit Ulla.

This Supply thrown into Ulla, Cæsar, that he might oblige Pompey to quit the Siege, march'd directly for Cordova, sending a Squadron of Cavalry, and some select heavy-arm'd Foot before. So soon as this Party arriv'd within sight of the Town, the Infantry got up behind the Troopers; which the People of Cordova could not observe; but when the Enemy's Horse made a Sally to engage 'em, our Foot leaping off Horse-back, return'd their Charge so warmly, that out of a considerable Number, but few return'd again to the Town. Sextus Pompey was so frighten'd at this Action, that he immediately writ to his Brother for Relief, lest Cæsar should take the Place before he arriv'd. Thus Cn. Pompey, having almost render'd himself Master of Ulla, on Receipt of his Brother's Packet, was obliged to break up, and march with all his Forces to Cordova.

CHAP. II.

The Siege of Ategua.

† Bætis.
* The Text is, Ita insuper Ponte facto, copias ad Caltra tripartito transduxit. Tenebant adversus

WHEN Cæsar came to the Banks of the † Guadalquivir, finding the River too deep to be forded, he caus'd Baskets full of Stones to be sunk, * whereon he erected a Bridge over-against the Town; which was supported by double Beams, as we have already describ'd, and having pass'd his Army over it, divided 'em into three Parties. Pompey likewise arriving at the same Place, encamp'd directly opposite to him, disposing his Forces after the like manner.

Oppidum e regione Pontis trabes, ut supra scripsimus, bipartito. To me these Sentences do not only seem corrupt, but transpos'd; for the very next Period says, Huc quum Pompeius cum suis Copiis venisset, & ex adverso parti Ratione castra ponit; which appears to have a more immediate Connexion with the last Sentence but one, than the last; therefore I have taken the Liberty of translating 'em in that Order. I have likewise converted Pontis into Pontem, which, in my Opinion, is the more natural Construction of the Two; for tenebant and sustinebant signifie the same thing in some Places. That part, Ut supra scripsimus, probably may refer to Cæsar's Description of the Bridge over the Rhine: But I have already spoken more at large on that Subject in my Preface. Monsieur D'Ablancourt translates, Copias ad Caltra tripartito transduxit, Passa a trois fois tout son Armee. And had Cæsar pass'd his Army over in Ferry-Boats, that could only have held such a Number at a time, I should submit to his Opinion: But I cannot conceive the Necessity of making Three Passages when there was a Bridge, therefore have rather chose to apply the tripartito to Caltra, than transduxit.

Cæsar

Caesar, that he might cut off *Pompey's* Communication with the Town, and the easilier intercept his Convoys, began to draw a Line of Communication to the Bridge, and the Enemy did the like; which occasion'd frequent Skirmishes between the two Armies, and various Successes. At last greatest Part of each General's Forces being drawn out, whilst either endeavour'd to maintain his Post, the Dispute grew warm and dubious; for when the Combarants approach'd the Bridge, they wanted Room to bestir themselves, and considerable Numbers were thrown over into the River: Thus the Loss was equal on both Sides, for on both lay Mountains of the slain. *Caesar* however frequently essay'd all Methods to bring *Pompey* to an Engagement on equal Terms, that he might decidè the War as soon as possible.

The Siege of Ategua.

Skirmish's between the Two Armies.

But observing, tho' he had oblig'd the Enemy to remove, yet he could never persuade 'em to accept of Battle, he caus'd great Fires to be made in the Night, cross'd the River with all his Forces, and march'd to *Ategua*, one of their strongest Garrisons. *Pompey* having Notice of his decamping, from the Deferters, retir'd the same Day, with all his Baggage and Ensigns, thro' a narrow Road to *Cordova*: But on Advice that *Caesar* had began to invest *Ategua*, immediately march'd to relieve it. *Caesar*, mean while, to compleat his Lines, had erected several Forts, part whereof were possess'd by his Horse, part were to shelter his Infantry, when they watch'd upon an Out-guard. It happen'd, when *Pompey* arriv'd, to be a very cloudy Morning, which gave him an Opportunity of surrounding some of our Cavalry with a Party of Horse and Cohorts, who were cut almost every Man of 'em to pieces.

Caesar marches to invest Ategua.

Pompey arrives to relieve the Place.

The following Night, *Pompey* having put fire to his Camp, cross'd the River *Salsus*, and marching thro' the Valleys, encamp'd upon a Hill, between *Ategua* and *Ucubis*; whilst *Caesar* was employ'd in carrying on his Works, raising Mounts, Vines, and preparing all things necessary for the Siege. The Country hereabouts is mountainous, and proper to encamp in, for the River *Salsus* runs thro' the Plain, about two Miles distance from *Ategua*. *Pompey* therefore took up his Quarters between the two Towns; his Army consisted of twelve Legions, of which Number those he most depended on were, the two *Spanish* Legions that had deserted from *Trebonius*; one levy'd amongst the *Roman* Colonies; and another that had formerly serv'd under *Africanus*, which

Pompey encamps between Ategua and Ucubis.

The Siege which he brought along with him from *Africk*: As for
of Ategua. the rest, they were compos'd chiefly of Deserters or
 Auxiliaries. But we were far superior to him in light-
 arm'd Foot and Cavalry.

The Nature of the Place, the Plenty of Water and Provisions all the Province abounded with, enabled Pompey to prolong the War; nor were the numerous Forts, which had been erected in all Places remote from great Towns, to prevent the Excursions of the Natives, less assistant to him in this Design: For they were not cover'd with Tiles but Terras, as in *Africk*, and in them were Sentinels, which could descry any Party from a considerable Distance. Besides, most of the Cities in the farther *Spain* being built upon Hills, fortify'd by Nature, and difficult of Access, prevent an Enemy's Approaches, and could not easily be reduc'd; as plainly appear'd in this War.

Pompey
 attacks a
 Fort of Cæ-
 sars, with-
 out Success.

Whilst the Enemy lay between *Ategua* and *Ucubis*, within sight of both Places, *Cæsar* had possess'd himself of a certain Eminence, call'd *Posthumus's* Camp, about four Miles distant from his own Quarters, whereon he had built a Fortrefs. But Pompey, who lay nearer the Place, being cover'd by the very same Ridge, observing it was remote from *Cæsar's* Camp, who he believ'd would be prevented from sending Relief thither by the River *Salsus*; about twelve at Night began to invest the Fort, that he might deliver *Ategua* from so troublesome a Neighbour. * When his Party approach'd the Place, setting up a sudden Shout, they cast their Darts with such Success, they quickly wounded several of our Men.

* The Original indeed is, *Nostri cum appropinquassent clamore repentino, telorumque multitudine jactus facere coeperunt, &c.* but is palpably corrupt; for this Action, as appears by the following Sentence, relates to Pompey's Men, therefore it should either be *illi cum*, &c. or *nostris cum appropinquassent*.

But when we began to defend our selves, and *Cæsar*, on Notice of the Action, approach'd with three Legions to our Relief, the Enemy being surpris'd, many were kill'd or taken, others flung away their Arms, that they might easilier make their Escape; and when the Dispute was over, we found eighty Shields they had left behind 'em. The next Morning early arriv'd *Arguerius* with a Party of Cavalry, and five Colours he had taken from those of *Saguntum*; but was oblig'd to quit his Post by *Asprenas*, who came with another Body of Horse from thence to *Cæsar*. This Night Pompey decamp'd

decamp'd, and march'd towards *Cordova*; but King *Indus*, following their Rere with too much Ardor, was taken and kill'd by the *Spaniards*. The Day following, our Cavalry pursu'd a Convoy that brought Provisions from *Cordova* to *Pompey*, for a considerable Space, and took fifty Prisoners besides Horses: The same Day *Q. Marcius*, a Tribune in *Pompey's* Army, deserted to us; and that very Night, about twelve a Clock, † the Besieg'd began to storm our Lines with great Fury, casting plenty of combustible Matter within our Trenches, either fix'd to their Darts, or convey'd some other way.

The Siege of Ategua.

Pompey decamps; marches to Cordova.

† The Text does not exactly agree with this, but can't be understood any other way.

This Attempt being ended, *C. Fundanius*, a Roman Knight, came over to us; and the Day after, two Soldiers of the *Spanish* Legions, being taken by our Men, pretended themselves to be Servants, but were discover'd by those that had formerly serv'd under *Fabius* and *Pedius*, to be deserters from *Trebonius*, and were therefore put to Death. About the same time, the Couriers that were dispatch'd from *Cordova* to *Pompey*, mistaking our Camp for his, had their Right Hands cut off, and were dismiss'd. Mean while the Besieg'd, according to their usual Custom, about nine a Clock at Night, spent a considerable time in casting Darts and Fire upon our Soldiers; which wounded several of 'em; and by break of Day sally'd out upon the sixth Legion, whilst our Forces were busie about the Work, and began a sharp Dispute; but were repuls'd with many Wounds, by the Virtue of our Men, notwithstanding the Advantage of the higher * Ground.

The Besieg'd in vain attempt to force Cæsar's Lines.

The Day after, *Pompey* began to draw a Line of Communication from his Camp to the River *Salsus*, and surpris'd a small Party of our Horse, who were oblig'd, after the Death of three Troopers, to give way to his Superior Numbers. This Day *A. Valgius*, a Senator's Son, whose Brother was in *Pompey's* Camp, leaving all his Baggage behind him, mounted his Horse, and went over to the Enemy. One of *Pompey's* Spies, that belong'd to the second Legion, being taken, was put to the Sword: But about the same Instant *Pompey* shot a Bullet into *Ategua* with this Inscription, *The Moment Cæsar should endeavour to storm the Town, he would come to their Assistance*: Which put the Besieg'd in such hopes, they ascended their Walls with less Apprehensions than before, and began to flatter themselves, they might

* The next Sentence is exactly the same, only different in the manner of Expression; therefore I have left it out.

¶ hold

The Siege ¶ hold out. The Day after they overthrew a considerable part of the outward ¶ Rampier; the Garrison left

*¶ The Text is not Tene-
re, but Pa-
tisi, which
must of Ne-
cessity be a
Corruption:
But this
Book is so
full of Er-
rors, I shall
for the fu-
ture give the
Reader and
my self no
further trou-
ble, than to
mark such
Places thus
¶.*

*Pompey
builds a Fort
on the other
side the Sal-
sus.*

*A Skirmish,
where Pom-
pey has the
worst.*

by Pompey to defend the Place, took some of our Soldiers Prisoners, who had formerly deserted from them, yet dismiss'd 'em to desire leave they might march out with their Baggage: To which *Cesar* reply'd, 'Twas not his Custom to let the Enemy chuse their Conditions, but impose 'em himself. When the Besieged receiv'd this Answer, setting up a Shout, they began to cast Showers of Darts upon our Men, and attack us in our Trenches, which made most People believe they would attempt to make an Eruption: Wherefore surrounding the Town on every side, we engag'd 'em very briskly, plying 'em at the same Instant with our Engines, which kill'd five of their Men in one Turret, and a Boy, whose Business it was to observe our Battery.

Some time after Pompey erected a Fort on the other side the *Salsus*, without meeting any Opposition, and was not a little proud to think he had been able to effect such a Design, so near us: The Day after, endeavouring to carry on his Lines, some of his Cavalry and light-arm'd Foot, encounter'd another Party of our Horse, who were soon oblig'd to give Ground, being inferior to the Enemy in Number, and wanting Infantry to sustain 'em. This Action happen'd within view of both Camps, and Pompey seeing his Men pursue, was mightily puff'd up with the Success: But our Cavalry having retreated some Paces, and being reinforc'd by a Party of Foot, fac'd about and renew'd the Fight with equal Vigour. Such was the usual way of fighting amongst the Cavalry of both Armies; for whenever a Trooper dismounted to engage a Foot-man, he found himself unequally match'd, as appear'd in the late Action, when a select Number of light-arm'd Infantry, on a sudden attack'd our Horse, who alighted to sustain the Charge; thus, in a Moment, from a Horse it became a Foot Skirmish, and again, from a Foot a Horse Encounter. Not far off our Rampier, was a considerable Slaughter made; for on the Enemy's side fell an hundred twenty-three, several were disarm'd, and the rest oblig'd to fly to their Quarters; nor did we escape without Loss, for we lost a hundred and eleven Men upon the Spot, besides twelve Foot and five Troopers wounded.

The Remainder of the Day the Garrison found us *The Siege* Employment ; but having cast many Javelins, and *a of Ategua.* great deal of Fire upon our Men to no purpose, most inhumanly, before our Eyes, they began to murder the Townsmen, and cast them over the Walls like Barbarians ; such an Action as has not been heard of since the Memory of Man. In the Evening they privately sent an Incendiary to set Fire to our Turrets and Rampier, designing that Night, about twelve, to make an Eruption. Accordingly, having thrown plenty of Darts, and consum'd a considerable part of our Rampier, opening that Gate which fronted Pompey's Camp, they sal-ly'd out with all their Forces, bringing Fascines along with 'em to fill up the Ditches, Hooks to destroy the Barracks (which our Men had cover'd with Straw to defend 'em from the Cold) and Fire to reduce 'em to Ashes : So likewise to amuse our Soldiers, they brought all their Effects along with 'em, that whilst we should be employ'd in seizing the Plunder, they might fight their way thro', and escape to Pompey, who expecting their Arrival, watch'd with all his Forces, in Order of Battel, on the other side the *Salsus*, to favour their Retreat. But tho' they surpris'd us, yet depending on our Virtue, we drove 'em back again with many Wounds into the Town, made our selves Masters of the Spoil, their Arms, and some Prisoners, who were kill'd the Day after.

The next Day a Deserter that came from Ategua inform'd us, Junius was employ'd in the Mine, whilst the Massacre happen'd amongst the Inhabitants ; ¶ but upon his Return severely reprimanded the Soldiers for being guilty of so bloody, and ungrateful an Action, to those that had receiv'd 'em into their Houses, whereby they had violated the Laws of Hospitality ; adding many things more to the like purpose, which put a stop for the future to such inhuman Practices. The following Day Tullius, with Cato the Portuguese, were sent Embassadors to Cesar, who made him an Oration to der. this Effect : *We could heartily wish the Immortal Gods had so ordain'd, that we might have been your Soldiers rather than Pompey's ; that we had given these Proofs of our Constancy in obtaining Victories for you, rather than suffering for him, since being reduc'd to these Misfortunes, we can reap only doleful Applauses, for tho' Roman Citizens, yet being now no longer able to defend our selves, the Civil War will make us accounted Enemies to the Republick. It has been our hard Destiny to serve a Man, whose Prospe-*

The Garrison of Ategua put the Townsmen to the Sword.

Make another Sally to no purpose.

Deputies sent to treat of a Surrender. Their Speech.

The Siege rity we shav'd not, nor have been able to assist him in his of Ategua. Adversity: In fine, having long sustain'd the Attack of so many Legions, watching Night and Day to oppose your Designs; being deserted by Pompey, and overcome by your superior Virtue, we have nothing left to depend on but your Mercy; we conjure you therefore, not to shew less Compassion to surrendering Romans, than you have for Foreigners.

*Pompey's
Advice to
the Besieg'd.*

Cesar having dispatch'd the Embassadors, as *T. Tullius* enter'd the Town, he perceiv'd *C. Antonius* did not follow him, wherefore returning to the Gate, he caught hold of him, which *Tiberius* taking notice of, cut off *Tullius's* Hand, and so they both made their Escape to *Cesar*. About the same time a Standard-Bearer of the first Legion came over, who inform'd us the Day the Engagement happen'd between the Horse, thirty five of his Company were kill'd: But they were not permitted to say they had lost a single Man in *Pompey's* Camp. Not long after, a Person that had left his Wife and Children in the Town, and deserted to *Cesar*, was murder'd by his Slave, that made his Escape to *Pompey*; ¶ who, from his Information, gave the Besieg'd an Account by a Letter fasten'd to a Bullet, what Preparations *Cesar* was making to defend his Lines: The Persons, whose Business it was to attend the coming of such Bullets, had no sooner carry'd the Letter into the Town, but two Portuguese Brothers came over to *Cesar*, and gave him an Account ¶ what *Pompey's* Packet contain'd: That, since he could not relieve them, he advis'd the Besieg'd privately to withdraw in the Night towards the Sea; to which one made Answer, 'Twere more honourable to venture another Engagement, than appear to fly; for which he was immediately kill'd. About the same time we intercepted ¶ one of their Couriers that was carrying a Packet to the Town; *Cesar* deliver'd the Letters to the Inhabitants, and the Messenger begging his Life, had it granted, with Promise of further Reward, provided he set Fire to the Enemy's Wooden Turret; which could not be effected without eminent Danger. However he undertook the Enterprize, but going to execute the Design, was kill'd by the Besieg'd. The same Night a Deserter inform'd us, *Pompey* and *Labienus* were very angry to hear the Townsmen had been murder'd.

About

About nine a Clock at Night, the Enemy storm'd a wooden Turret of ours so vigorously, that the first, second and third Story began to fall: Whilst others, at the same Instant, attack'd our Trenches, and having a fair Wind, set Fire to the upper part of the same Tower. The next Morning a Matron cast her self over the Wall, and came to our Camp, reporting her whole Family had the same Design, but being apprehended, were put to Death. And not long after a Letter was found, wherein was thus written, *L. Minucius to Caesar: If you will pardon my Life, since I am deserted by Pompey, I will serve you with the same Sincerity I have done my Duty to him.* And at the same time the Town sent the former Embassadors again to *Caesar*, desiring only their Lives, and they would deliver the Place the next Day. To which he reply'd, *He was Caesar, and should perform his Word.* Thus *Ategua* surrender'd the nineteenth of February, and *Caesar* was saluted thereupon with the Name of Emperor.

The Siege of Ategua.
Another
ineff. Qual
Saty.

*L. Minuci-
us's Letter
to Caesar.*

*Deputies
sent again.*

*Caesar's
Answer:
The Town
surrenders.*

CHAP. III.

POMPEY having notice from some Deserters, that the Town had chang'd its Master, remov'd nearer *Ucubis*, where he began to build Fortresses, and contain himself within his Lines. *Caesar* likewise decamp'd and lodg'd as near as he could. About this time we were inform'd by a *Spanish* Legionary Soldier, who deserted to us, that *Pompey* had assembled the Inhabitants of *Ucubis*, and commanded 'em to make strict Enquiry after all Male-contents. Not long after the Slave that had murder'd his Master, being taken in a Mine, was burn'd alive. During this time eight more Soldiers of the *Spanish* Legion came over to us: But a Party of our Horse and light-arm'd Infantry encountring another of the Enemy, were worsted, and some of 'em wounded. This Evening our Scouts surpris'd three Servants and some *Spanish* Soldiers, the former were hang'd, and the latter beheaded.

*The Moti-
ons on both
sides, 'till
the Battel.*

*Pompey
removes
nearer U-
cubis.
Caesar fol-
lows him.*

The Day following, some of the Enemy's Cavalry and light-arm'd Foot deserted to us; at the same time about eleven of their Horse fell upon a Party of our Soldiers that were sent out to fetch Water, kill'd some, and took others Prisoners, amongst which Number

The Moti- ons on both sides, 'till the Battel. were eight Troopers. The next Morning *Pompey* condemn'd seventy four Persons to be beheaded for favouring *Cæsar's* Cause, and gave Orders for ¶ apprehending others, but a hundred and twenty made their Escape to *Cæsar*.

Pompey condemns several to Death, others escape to Cæsar. The Negotiation at Bursavola.

The Deputies murder'd.

The Towns- men sur- round the Governor ; he narrowly escapes. Returns and murders the Inhabitants.

Cæsar re- moves near- er to Pom- pey.

Some time after, the Deputies of *Bursavola*, whom *Cæsar* had taken Prisoners at *Ategua*, and sent to acquaint their Country what Usage they must expect from *Pompey*, whose Soldiers had Massacred the Inhabitants of *Ategua*, and committed several other outrages, in their Presence, arriv'd at the Town attended by some Roman Knights and Senators of our Party : But no Body durst enter, except those that were Natives of the Place. In fine, after many Messages carry'd backwards and forwards, as the Deputies were retiring to our Party, the Garrison pursu'd, and put 'em all to the Sword, except Two that made their Escape to *Cæsar*. ¶ However the Inhabitants having sent Spies to *Ategua*, to learn the Truth of the Deputies Report, and finding what they had told 'em confirm'd, rais'd a Tumult, and surrounding ¶ the Governor, resolv'd to stone him, for having caus'd the Embassadors to be murder'd ; but ¶ at length he obtain'd his Pardon, on Condition he would go himself and make his Peace with *Cæsar*. Upon this pretence he was dismiss'd, but having gather'd a strong Party, he was admitted into the Gates by Treachery in the Night ; made a dreadful Slaughter amongst the Townsmen, and having cut off the chief Men of the contrary Party, again reduc'd the Town into his Power. When this Affair was over, we were inform'd by some Servants that deserted, he had confiscated the Inhabitants Goods, and permitted no Body to stir out of the Place, but unarm'd ; for since *Ategua* was taken, several being frighten'd, and despairing of Success, had come over to ¶ us. But when any of ours deserted, ¶ they met not with equal Encouragement, for they were plac'd amongst the light-arm'd Infantry, and only receiv'd ¶ their Pay.

The Day following *Cæsar* remov'd his Camp nearer *Pompey's*, and began to draw a Line to the River *Sal- sus* : But whilst our Men were employ'd about the Works, a strong Party of the Enemy's Forces came pouring

pouring down from the higher Ground upon 'em, and ¶ wounded several. Whereupon, ¶ contrary to their usual Custom, they began to * retreat; which being observ'd, some Centurions of the fifth Legion cross'd the River to sustain 'em. The Dispute was carry'd on with great Vigour; but one of the Centurions, having receiv'd many Wounds from the Darts that fell from the higher Ground, expir'd: His Fellow Officer, after his Death, still endeavour'd to maintain his Ground, 'till finding himself surrounded on every side, he began to ¶ retreat; but stumbling, multitudes of the Enemy flock'd about him. Yet they were quickly repuls'd by our Horse, who oblig'd 'em to retreat to their Rampier; but persisting with too much Ardor, were intercepted by Pompey's Cavalry and light-arm'd Foot. So, had they not behav'd themselves with the utmost Gallantry, they had all been taken, for they were driven into so narrow a Compass, they had hardly room enough to move their Arms in. ¶ In this Action were wounded several Horse and Foot, amongst the rest *Clodius Aquitius*; but our Party came off victorious, having only lost the two Centurions.

The Motions on both sides, 'till the Battel.
 * Ut ait Ennius, Iostri cessere pa-rumper.

A Skirmish: Caesar's Party gets the better.

The Day after both Armies withdrawing from *Sarcaria*, we continu'd our Works: But Pompey perceiving his Communication with the Fort of *Aspavia* cut off, found himself oblig'd to fight: However he did not proffer us Battel upon equal Terms, but drew up upon a Hill, that he might have the Advantage of the upper Ground. Both Armies therefore endeavouring to render themselves Masters of a certain Eminence, our Men forc'd 'em to retire into the Plain; which gain'd us the Day: We made a dreadful Slaughter amongst 'em on every side, whilst they fled before us, and were oblig'd to the next rising Ground, not to their Courage for Preservation. But had not the Night befriended 'em, tho' inferior in Number, ¶ we had certainly cut 'em all to pieces; for three hundred twenty-four of their light-arm'd Infantry, and a hundred thirty-eight of their legionary Soldiers fell upon the Place, not computing those that were disarm'd. Thus the Loss of the two Centurions, but the Day before, was richly vindicated.

An Action: Caesar victorious.

The next Day Pompey's ¶ Horse, according to their usual Custom, came towards our Lines, for none but his Cavalry durst venture to draw up upon even Ground,

The Moti-
ons on both
sides, till
the Battel.

The Combat
between Tur-
pio and Ni-
ger.

Hither they flock'd in considerable Numbers, whilst our Men were employ'd about the Works, frequently calling upon our legionary Soldiers, and provoking 'em to an Engagement, ¶ designing, if we pursu'd, when they should have drawn us some distance from the Camp, to face about and give us Battel: Our Men having advanc'd some Paces beyond the Valley they were posted on, halted on a more ¶ equal Place; whereupon the Enemy did not think fitting to engage 'em. But *Antistius Turpio*, one of their Party, depending on his Strength, and thinking no Person able to encounter him, ¶ profess'd himself the Champion of the Cause; *Quintus Pompeius Niger*, a Roman Knight, born in Italy, soon accepted the Challenge, and their Meeting was not unlike that of * *Achilles* and *Memnon*.

* This Citation, tho' trifling for an Historian, is abundantly more pardonable than the former, where, in the midst of an important Description, he quotes Ennius's Authority for a common trifle, which I have remark'd in the side, Ut ait Ennius, noltri cessere parumper; a way of writing by no means agreeable to the State and Gravity requir'd in an Historick Style.

¶ Both Armies being drawn out, their Minds were wholly intent on the Success of the Combatants, each impatiently expecting the Fate of their Champion.

* But whether they got the Victory this careless Author, or his more negligent Transcribers, have left undetermin'd. Yet one would believe Niger had the better of it, because Caesar's Men prevented their being parted.
† According to Mr. Kennet's Computation, is 3d. for I cannot suppose 'em to be in the Neuter Gender.

* The ¶ Knights descended into the Field with equal Sprightliness, arm'd with resplendent Shields, and they had certainly been parted, but for our Soldiers, who had dispos'd themselves not far off to prevent the Designs of the Enemy's Horse and light-arm'd Infantry. When our Men were retreating towards the Lines, the Enemy fell upon their Rere with great Fury: But, facing about, we return'd their Charge with such Vigour, they were oblig'd to retire to their Camp, after having lost several of their Party. *Cassius's* Horse behav'd themselves so well on this Occasion, *Caesar* rewarded 'em with a Present of Thirteen Thousand † Sesterces; amongst the light-arm'd Foot he distributed Ten Thousand more, and gave the Captain of the Party Two Golden Chains. This Day likewise *A. Babius*, *C. Flavius*, and *A. Trebellius*, all Roman Knights of *Asta*, came over to *Caesar* laden with Treasure, reporting, all the Roman Knights in *Pompey's* Army had agreed to do the like, but their Design being discover'd by a Slave, were apprehended.

Not long after, we took a Courier with this Packet, Pompey's from Pompey to Urfaon. *Wishing you the same Health Letter to we at present enjoy ; This is to acquaint you, we have hitherto had all the Success we could desire over the Enemy, and should put an end to the War sooner than you could expect, provided they would but offer us Battel upon equal Terms. But they dare not bring their raw Army into the Plain, only prolong the War by the Assistance of those Forts they have surpris'd. For removing from one Country to another, they supply themselves with Corn. But we shall take care to cover those States under our Protection, and decide the War as soon as possible. We design to send you some Cohorts for your Defence, and doubt not, but when we shall have intercepted the Enemy's Supplies, they will find themselves oblig'd to fight.*

Some time after, our Men being carelessly dispers'd about the Works, a Party of our Cavalry, that went to fetch Wood, were kill'd by the Enemy in a Thicket of Olives. This Day came over several Slaves, who inform'd us, That ever since the Action on the Fifth of March at Soritia all Pompey's Army had been in continual Apprehensions, and Attius Varus had been appointed to survey their Lines. Immediately after, Pompey remov'd, and encamp'd in an Olive Wood near Seville. But Cesar did not follow him 'till 11 Midnight, giving Orders to the Garrison he had put into Ucubis, when it surrender'd, to set Fire to the Town, and afterwards join the rest of his Army. Ventisponte surrender'd to him by the way ; from thence he march'd to Carruca, and took up his Quarters over-against Pompey's : Who, 11 before his Arrival, had reduc'd the Town to Ashes, because the Inhabitants refus'd him Entrance. Here, apprehending a 11 Deserter from our Army, who had murder'd his Brother, we put him to Death. Then pursu'd Pompey to the Plains of Munda, where we lodg'd directly opposite to him.

Pompey de-camps ; marches towards Seville.

Cesar burns Ucubis, and follows him.

Pursues Pompey to the Plains of Munda.

The Battel
of Munda.

CHAP. IV.

THE Day following, as *Cæsar* design'd to march further, he had Notice brought him, that *Pompey's* Army had been drawn out in order of Battel a ¶ considerable time; for he intended to march towards *Urſaon*, to convince the Inhabitants, as raw as his Army was, he durst venture to descend into the Plains, notwithstanding *Pompey's* Letter, which had given 'em so great Hopes, and perswaded 'em he had so much the Advantage. However, so soon as he receiv'd this Intelligence, he immediately gave the Sign of Battel, tho' the Enemy had the Advantage of the Ground, and were defended by the Fortifications of *Munda*, near which they lay encamp'd; for, as we have already taken Notice, ¶ the farther Province is full of continu'd Hills.

A Description
of the
Place of
Action.

Here I must not omit to give an Account what happen'd at this Juncture. Between both Armies lay a Plain about five Miles over; but *Pompey* was defended as well by the Nature of the Place he possess'd, as the Town, at the Foot whereof began this Valley, thro' which ran a River, that serv'd as well as the rising Ground to prevent our Approach to the Enemy; for on the Right, overflowing its Banks, it made a Morass. *Cæsar* doubred not in the least but the Enemy would meet him half way, because the Plain was within view of ¶ *Munda*. Besides, having ¶ dispos'd their Cavalry on the lower Ground, the Day being serene, and Sun shining bright, our Soldiers began to rejoice, that the Immortal Gods had bless'd 'em with so happy an Opportunity; tho' some were uneasie to think, how soon the Fate of both Parties should be plac'd in the Ballance of Fortune. Thus we proceeded to give 'em Battel, expecting they would do the like: ¶ but when we arriv'd within a thousand Paces of the Town, the Enemy did not think fitting to advance towards us, still continuing close by the Walls. Wherefore we march'd so near, that the Equality of Ground might invite 'em to the Engagement; nor was this sufficient to entice 'em from the Mountains; where they continu'd 'till our Men, arriving at the River, made a Halt.

Their

Their Army consisted of Thirteen Legions, their Wings were lin'd with Cavalry and Six Thousand light-arm'd Foot, besides as many Auxiliaries. But we had only eighty Cohorts, and eight Thousand Horse. Thus when we arriv'd at the extream part of the Valley, the Enemy stood ready on the higher Ground, to prevent our further Progress. Which *Cæsar* observing, that his Rashness might not draw his Soldiers into an Inconvenience, he caus'd a Mark to be made, beyond which they were not permitted to pass; which Restraint render'd 'em more eager. This Pause likewise made the Enemy more inclinable to engage, whilst they fancy'd our Men were afraid of 'em: Wherefore ¶ descending a few Paces from the higher Ground, they gave us an Opportunity of coming at 'em, tho' not without Danger: However, our Men setting up a Shout, began the Charge.

The Battel of Munda.

The Disposition of both Armies.

The tenth Legion, according to *Cæsar's* usual Custom, was placed in the Right; the third and fifth, with the Auxiliaries and Horse, in the Left; the Dispute was maintain'd with great Obstinacy on both Sides; for tho' they had the Advantage of the Ground, yet we were superior in Virtue; however, so great was the Noise, so dreadful the Concourse, so thick flew the Darts, that our Soldiers began to despair of Victory; for the Enemy return'd our first Charge, which is usually of greatest Consequence in a Battel, with equal Vigour. ¶ The Fight had continu'd dubious for some time, when a Shower of Javelins, from our side, made a dreadful Slaughter amongst *Pompey's* Forces. Whereupon the tenth Legion, which we have already observed, were posted in the Right, put the ¶ Enemy's Left Wing into a great Disorder, and oblig'd 'em to give Ground, 'till another Legion detach'd from the ¶ Right of their Army, came to sustain 'em, and prevent their being surrounded. Mean while our Cavalry in the Left, laying hold of this Opportunity, charged the Enemy's Right so briskly, they left no Business on that Side for any Body else to do. The Shouting of the Soldiers, intermingled with Groans, and the clashing of Arms, did not a little terrify our new Levies; for here, as * *Ennius* says, they set Foot to Foot, and Arm to Arm. But at length, after a vigorous Resistance, the Enemy gave Ground, and ¶ retired to the Town: Thus the most courageous of their Men being broken and

The Battel begins.

* *The Second time he has cited Ennius.*

Pompey oblig'd defeated.

Plutarch
and Appian
give a different
Account
of this Battle,
and tell us, Caesar was
never before
engag'd in so
dangerous an
Action; here
he us'd to say
he fought for
Life, in other
Places for Victory.

oblig'd to fly, had not preserv'd themselves, but that they escap'd to the Place they came from. In this Action Pompey lost near thirty thousand Men, amongst which Number were *Labienus* and *Attilius Varus*, whose Funerals were celebrated after the Battel: Besides three thousand Roman Knights, part of Rome, part of the Province. We took all their Eagles, several other Ensigns, and Pompey's *Fasces*, with seventeen General Officers: Whereas on our Side were only a thousand, part Horse, part Infantry, kill'd, and five hundred wounded.

CHAP. V.

The taking
of Cordova
and Seville.

Munda invested.

SUCH was the Event of this Battel; they who escap'd retir'd into *Munda*, which oblig'd us to draw a Line of Circumnvallation about the Town. We made use of the Enemies dead Bodies instead of Turves, their Shields and Javelins heap'd supply'd the Place of a Rampier; round about were fix'd the Heads of the Deceas'd on Swords and Daggers, to strike the greater Terror into the Besieg'd, ¶ and let 'em see the Rewards they were to expect for their Obstinacy. ¶ The Management of this Siege was committed to the *Gauls*, who having thus compleated their Lines, began to assault the Town with Darts and Javelins.

Valerius
escapes to
Cordova, acquaints the
younger
Pompey with
the Defeat,
who thereupon
quits the
Town.

Young *Valerius*, having made his Escape with a few Cavalry, retired to *Cordova*; where he acquainted *Sex-tus Pompey* with the melancholy News: Who thereupon immediately divided what ready Money he had ¶ amongst the Horse, and pretending he was going to treat with *Caesar* concerning a Peace, about nine a Clock the same Night left *Cordova*. Mean while his Elder Brother, with a small Parry of Cavalry and Foot, made the best of his way towards his Navy, which lay at *Carteia*, a Town about a hundred and seventy Miles distant from *Cordova*. When he was arriv'd within eight Miles of the Place, he sent *P. Calpurnius*, the Marshal of his Camp, before, to fetch a Litter to carry him to the Town, because he found himself indisposed. His Orders were obey'd, and when he enter'd *Carteia*, several of his Friends attended him privately

The Elder
Pompey flies
to Carteia.

to enquire about the State of Affairs. But the whole Town soon flocking about him, ¶ he found himself oblig'd to acquaint 'em with the Truth of the Matter, and trust to their Fidelity.

The taking of Cordova, and Seville.

The Battel being over, and the Lines about Munda compleated, *Cæsar* march'd towards Cordova, where Part of the Enemy's Forces that escap'd the Slaughter, had possess'd themselves of a Bridge. When we arriv'd there, they mock'd us, because our Number was but inconsiderable; demanding, Whither we design'd to fly? As if we had been the Army defeated. Thus they began to oppose our Passage, but *Cæsar* having cross'd the River, encamp'd on the other Side. *Scapula*, who had levy'd the Freedmen and Seditious, escaping to Cordova, call'd his Followers about him, caus'd a Funeral Pile to be erected, and adorn'd with his richest Garments; then order'd a sumptuous Supper to be prepared: Which being ended in good time, he distributed what Money he had among his Attendants; and having plenty of Frankincense and Spikenard with him ¶ ascend'd the Pile, commanding a Freed-man, his Catamite, to dispatch him, and another to put Fire to the Stack.

Cæsar marches to Cordova.

Scapula's Death.

Mean while there arose so loud a Contention amongst the Besieg'd, whilst some were for *Pompey*, others for *Cæsar*, that the Noise was heard even into our Camp. Some of the Forces in Garrison, consisted of Vagabonds, and the Townsmen's Slaves, whom *Pompey* enfranchis'd; who immediately on *Cæsar's* Arrival, ¶ were for surrendring; but the Thirteenth Legion made a vigorous Defence, ¶ for part of their Turrets being beaten down, they still ascend'd the Walls. At length the Inhabitants sent to desire *Cæsar* would grant 'em a Party for the Defence of their Town, whereupon the Garrison began to set Fire to their Houses; but were beaten by our Men, and twelve Thousand of 'em kill'd upon the Spot, not computing those that fell without the Walls. Thus *Cæsar* render'd himself Master of Cordova; and whilst he was employ'd here, the Besieg'd at Munda made a vigorous Sally, but were repuls'd into the Town again with considerable Loss.

A Dissention in the Town.

The Inhabitants demand a Guard of Cæsar.

Cæsar gains the Town.

This Affair dispatch'd, *Cæsar* march'd towards Seville; but Deputies met him upon the Road, and humbly besought he would pardon the Town, which he condescended

Cæsar marches to Sevil; which surrenders.

The Town
recover'd by
a Plot.

Carteia
sends Deputies to acquaint Cæsar they had seiz'd Cn. Pompey.

Cæsar regains Seville.

Alta surrenders.

The Conspiracy of Pompey's Party at Munda detected.

scended to, and sent Lieutenant *Caninius* thither with a Garrison. *Pompey's* Forces within the Town, taking it ill that *Cæsar's* should be admitted, privately dispatch'd one *Philo*, a stanch Asserter of his Party's Interest, to *Portugal*, where he was well known, ¶ to pray Assistance from *Cæcilius Niger*, surnam'd the *Barbarous*, who lay encamp'd there, near *Lenius*, with a considerable Number of the Natives. Being privately receiv'd into the Town at his Return, he put the Sentinels and Garrison to the Sword, shut the Gates, and began to defend the Place.

Mean time arriv'd Deputies from *Carteia*, who to atone for having shut their Gates against *Cæsar*, now brought him Word they had secured *Pompey*. The *Portuguese*, all this while, obstinately ¶ held out; which *Cæsar* observing, lest Despair might make 'em set Fire to the City and demolish the Walls, if besieg'd too closely, held a Council that Night about the Matter; wherein 'twas resolv'd, the Garrison should be suffer'd to make an Eruption; yet the Business so order'd, it might not appear Design. Accordingly the *Portuguese*, having forc'd their Way to the River *Betis*, put Fire to our Ships that rode at Anchor there; and whilst we were employ'd in extinguishing the Flame, made their Escape; but were afterwards pursu'd by our Cavalry and cut to pieces. Thus *Cæsar*, having recover'd *Seville*; march'd towards *Alta*; which sent Embassadors to meet him, and deliver the Keys of their Town. Whilst these Affairs, were transacting, *Munda* having long been closely besieg'd, several who had escap'd thither out of the Battel, deserted to us, and were distributed amongst our Troops: But before they came over, the Besieg'd and they had agreed upon a certain Signal to be given in the Night, when they, within the Walls, were to make a vigorous Sally, whilst the Deserters did what Execution they could in the Camp. The Plot being discover'd, the next Night about twelve a Clock, the ¶ Soldiers were order'd to cast Lots for their Lives, and all the Officers were put to Death without the Rampier.

CHAP. VI.

CÆSAR took in all the Towns as he march'd along; which now deserted Pompey; who was employ'd at this time in quieting an Insurrection at *Carteia*, for only Part of the Town consented to the sending of Deputies to *Cæsar*, one half still remain'd in Pompey's Interest: After a warm Dispute he made himself Master of the Gate, and having receiv'd some Wounds, secur'd his Retreat to his thirty Gallies, so escap'd. But *Didius*, who commanded a Squadron of *Cæsar's* Ships at *Cales*, on Notice of his weighing Anchor, immediately put out to Sea after him; having first order'd several Horse and Foot to embark, in case there should be occasion to pursue by Land. He had already chas'd their Gallies four Days, when the Enemy, who hoisted Sail without necessary Provisions, found themselves oblig'd to put in to Land for fresh Water: Mean while arriv'd *Didius*, burn'd several of their Ships, and took the rest.

The Death
of Pompey.

A Sedition
at *Carteia*.
Pompey is
wounded,
and narrow-
ly escapes.
Is pursu'd
by *Didius*,
and kill'd.

Pompey
lands; his
Ships taken
and burn'd.

Pompey thus reduc'd, fled for Shelter to a Place fortify'd by Nature; but our Horse and Infantry, who were put on Board for that particular Service, having sent their Scouts before, pursu'd Day and Night without intermission. Pompey had been dangerously wounded at *Carteia* in his Shoulder and Left Leg; besides he had put his Ankle out of Joint, which prevented his making speedy Journeys; for he was forc'd to be carry'd in a Litter. However, the better to disguise himself, he had put on the Habit of a Portuguese Soldier, but being found out by *Cæsar's* Party, they quickly surrounded the Place where he was, with their Foot and Cavalry: The Post was difficult of Access, for the Moment he perceiv'd himself discover'd, he gain'd an Eminence, which a few Soldiers were able to defend against a more considerable Number; thus our Men were repuls'd by their Darts, and eagerly pursu'd by the Enemy when they endeavour'd to retreat. *Didius* perceiving his Party had frequently attempted the Hill to no purpose, resolv'd to draw a Line about the Place, that he might encounter them upon equal Terms: He had already began his Works, when they, perceiving his Design, betook themselves to Flight.

He is pur-
su'd.

Pompey,

Cn. Pompey
kill'd in a
Cave, his
Head sent to
Cæsar.

Pompey, as we have already observ'd, being lame and wounded, was not able to keep Pace with the rest, for the Descent was so steep, no Horse or Litter could carry him down. Our Forces, having driven the Enemy from the upper Ground, dealt Destruction on every side: *Cn. Pompey*, having descended into the Valley, had hid himself in a Cave, that he might be secure; but being betrayed by the Prisoners, our Soldiers put him to the Sword. His Head was presented to *Cæsar* on the twelfth of *April*, as he march'd to *Seville*, and there † expos'd to the View of the People.

† *Whieb*
does not well

agree with *Appian's Account*, who says, *Cæsar caus'd his Head to be bury'd*.

Didius's
Encounter
with the
Portuguese,
his Death.

The Ambus-
cade.

Didius being proud of this Success, retreated to a neighbouring Castle, causing some of his Vessels to be haul'd on Shore to be refitted. Mean while the *Portuguese*, who had escap'd from the Battel of *Munda*, rallying in a considerable Body, march'd against him. † Omitting nothing for the Preservation of his Fleet, he sometimes found himself oblig'd to sally from his Castle, to put a Stop to the Enemy's Excursions. This occasion'd daily Skirmishes between 'em; but at last the *Portuguese*, dividing their Forces into three Parts, order'd one to put Fire to the Ships, † another to receive our Charge, and dispos'd the Third in Ambuscade. When *Didius* march'd out with his Forces to engage 'em, immediately on a Signal given, the Gallies were set on Fire, and whilst our Men pursu'd the Enemy, they were attack'd from behind. Here *Didius* behav'd himself with signal Bravery, and was attended by the greatest Part of his Followers to the other World. Some few that had the good Fortune to escape the Slaughter, leap'd into the Boats that lay nearest the Shore, whilst others made to the Gallies by swimming, and weighing Anchor immediately put out to Sea; which preserv'd their Lives, but the *Portuguese* got all their Baggage.

C H A P. VII.

WHILST this Business was in Transaction, *Caesar* The taking
return'd from *Cales* to *Seville*. Mean while *Fabius Maxi-* of *Munda*.
mus, whom he had left to carry on the Siege of *Munda*,
having closely block'd up the Town, had frequent
Skirmishes with the Garrison; ¶ but at last attempting
to force their way thro' our Fortifications, many lost
their Lives, and the rest were taken Prisoners. Our
Men laid hold of this Occasion, to render themselves
Masters of the Town; from whence they march'd di-
rectly to *Ursaon*. This Place was equally fortify'd by
Art and Nature, and besides the Advantage of its Situ-
ation, no Water, except that within the Walls, was to
be had at less than Eight Miles Distance: Nor were
Materials to be met with for building Turrets nearer
than six Miles off; for * *Pompey*, to render the Place
more secure, had taken care to sell all the Timber
round the Country, which oblig'd our Men to supply
themselves with Necessaries of that kind from *Munda*.

*Fabius
Maximus
takes Mun-
da.*

*Thence
marches to
to Ursaon.*

* *The
Younger
Brother,
who, as I*

Thus stood Affairs at *Munda* and *Ursaon*, when *Ca-* suppose, was
esar, the Day after his Arrival at *Seville*, assembled the
Inhabitants, and made an Oration to this Effect: *Caesar at
Seville.*

When first I enter'd on the Office of Treasurer, yours
was the Province that determin'd my Choice; which I
oblig'd with all the friendly Services in my Power. When I
was chosen Prætor, I prevail'd with the Senate to remit
the Tribute *Marcellus* had impos'd upon you, undertook
your Protection, promoted several Laws for your Advan-
tage, and publickly asserted as well the Interest of your
Country in general, as all its Natives in particular;
which created me many Enemies: Nor did I forget to con-
tinue the same Favours, after my Election to the Consul-
at. But you, ungratefully forgetting all these Benefits, have
twice waged War against me and the Commonwealth.
Nay, tho' you were well acquainted with the Roman Cu-
stoms, have like Barbarians violat'd the Law of Nations,
by twice assassinating the sacred Person of a Magistrate,
and attempting to murder *Cassius* in the publick Market-
Place, even at Noon-Day. So rebellious have you always
been, that the Republick is continually forced to be at the
Expence of keeping an Army on Foot in your Country, to
keep

His Speech.

keep you in Obedience ; whilst you misconstrue good Turns for bad, ill Offices for good : Thus you have neither given Proofs of a quiet Temper in Peace, nor Constancy in War. Cneius Pompey, tho' a Youth, a private Gentleman, found Reception amongst you, and here usurp'd Imperial Pomp. After the Defeat of ¶ his Party in Africk, here he rais'd Recruits against the Commonwealth, and at your own Desire laid your Province waste. But suppose you had defeated me, what could that have avail'd you, whilst the Roman People had still Ten Legions left, who are not only able to subdue the farther Spain, but all the Earth beside ? Quorum Laudibus & Virtute.

Desunt Reliqua.

F I N I S.

T H E I N D E X.

A

- A**UTUN *laid waste by*
by the Swiss, Page 6
 Ariovistus's Answer to
 Cæsar's Embassy, 17
 — War with him, 19
 — His Answer to Cæsar's
 Speech, 23
 — He desires a Second Inter-
 view, which Cæsar deny'd,
 then puts the Roman Pleni-
 potentiaries in Irons, 25
 Armies of Cæsar and Ariovi-
 stus engage, 27
 Amiens surrenders, 36
 Ambiorix's Speech to the Ro-
 man Deputies, 91
 — His Management of Af-
 fairs, 94
 — Goes to Namur and Hai-
 nault, moves the Natives to
 rebel, 96
 Autunois take up Arms against
 Cæsar, 149
 Alife, a Description of its Si-
 tuation, 163
 Afranius draws out his Forces to
 divert Cæsar's Works; but to
 no purpose, 224
 — He marches to attack Cæ-
 sar's Recruits, 229
 Africk, War there, 259
 Antony's Success in attempting
 to defend Brindisi, 284
 — He and Calenus weigh
 Anchor, and arrive safe at
 Durazzo, 285

- Androsthenes shuts the Gates
 of Gomphos against Cæsar,
 311
 Alexandrian War, 328
 — Their manner of Building
 in Alexandria, *ibid.*
 Achilles kill'd by Arsinoë, 329
 Alexandrian Forces sally from
 the Town, attack the Ro-
 mans, who flew in great Con-
 fusion: Cæsar escap'd by swim-
 ming, but lost above 800 in
 this Action, 338
 African War, 365
 Ategua, the Siege of it, 412

B

- BESANCON describ'd, 19
 Belgæ enter into a Confederacy
 against the Romans, 29
 Brienne, the Siege of it rais'd
 by the Romans, 32
 Belgæ, endeavour to pass the
 Aifne; but are repuls'd with
 great Slaughter, 33
 — They decamp, and return
 home, 34
 Bridge built by Cæsar cross the
 Rhine; an exact Description
 of it; 68
 Brutus with the Roman Fleet
 engages the People of Mar-
 seilles, 231
 Bibulus's Fleet reduc'd to great
 Extremities, 279
 — His Death, 281

INDEX.

C

CÆSAR takes Post for Gaul,

— Falls upon the Swifs, 4

— His Answer to their Embassadors, 7

— He sends an Embassy to Ariovistus, 17

— Calls a Council of War: His Speech, 20

— Begins his March, 21

— His Speech to Ariovistus, 22

— His Reply to Ariovistus, 24

— His War with the Belgæ, 29

— He marches to Beauvois; which submits, 35

— His prodigious Slaughter of the Hainaultois, 42

— He builds a Navy, and marches into Gaul, 49

— He sends several Parties to different Places in Gaul, to cut off all Succours from the Enemy, 50

— He takes several Towns. *ibid.*

Coutances, War there, 53

Crassus's Expedition against the Gascoignes, 55

— He invests the Gaul's Capital, *ib.*

Cæsar routs the Gauls, but they rally, and send to Spain for more Succours, 56

— His Expedition to Terouënne and Guelders, 58

— His Progress stop'd by the great Rains, 59

— He marches to find out the Germans; his Answer to their Embassadors, 63

— He attacks 'em in their Camp, and routs 'em, 66

— He crosses the Rhine, and returns to Gaul, 68

— His Expedition into England describ'd, 69

— He refits his Navy, 74

— He comes to the Assistance of his Foragers, whom the English had fell on, and afterwards returns to Gaul, 75

— Gives Orders for building a Navy, 78

— His Preparations for a second Expedition into England, but first marches into the Country of Treves, to prevent a Rebellion, 79

— He marches to Boloign, and invites all the Princes of Gaul to meet him, 81

— He sets Sail for England, 82

— He describes the Country and Customs of the Inhabitants, 84

Cassivellaunus made Generalissimo of the English Army, *ibid.*

Cæsar fords the River Thames, and puts Cassivellaunus (Captain-General of the English Forces) to flight, 87

Chartres, a Rebellion there, 90

Cotta kill'd, and the whole Army defeated, 96

Cæsar routs the Hainaultois, 103

— His Speech on the Defeat of Sabinus, *ib.*

— His second Expedition into Germany, 112

Catuvulus poisons himself, 121

Cotuatius and Conerodunus massacre all the Roman Merchants at Orleans, 130

Cæsar crosses the Mountains of the Cevennes in the midst of Winter, and arrives at Auvergne; which submits, 133

— He takes and sacks Orleans, 135

— He takes Neuvye, and marches from thence to Bourges, 136

Convictolitanis persuades Litavicus and his Brothers to rebel, 148

Cæsar

I N D E X.

- Cæſar marches to intercept the Autunois,* 149
—His Works at Alife, 165
Crotognatus's Speech, 168
Cæſar marches into Berry, and lays the Country waſte, 178
Correus, with 6000 Foot, and 1000 Horſe, lies in Ambuſh for the Roman Foragers; he attacks the Roman Cavalry with a ſmall Party; is routed and killed, 185
Caninius arrives at Uffeldon, 191
Cæſar demands Guturvatus, who is deliver'd up, and put to Death, 193
—He marches to the Siege of Uffeldon, 194
—He cuts off the Beſieged's Hands of Uffeldon, 196
—He marches to Corfinium, and beſeges it, 211
—Which in a ſhort time ſurrender'd: He afterwards marches through Abruzzo, and great part of the Kingdom of Naples, 214
—His Arrival at Brundisium, and Blockade at the Haven of Brindifi, 215
Cato's Preparations for a War, his Cowardice, 218
Cæſar beſeges Marſeilles, 221
—His Expedition to Spain, 222
—His Speech to Afranius, 244
—He takes Oricum, 278
Cælius's Sedition; the Mob riſes, 283
—He is expell'd Rome, then joins with Milo, *ib.*
—He is kill'd, 284
Cæſar marches to Durazzo, to cut off Pompey's Communication with the Place, 293
—He ſends Canuleius into Epirus for Corn, *ib.*
—Beſeges Pompey in his Camp, his Reaſons for it, 294
—He encloſes Pompey's Works within his Fortifications; a Skirmiſh between em, 295
—His Army reduc'd to great Straits for want of Proviſions, 296
—He offers Pompey Battel; which he declines, 299
—Sends Clodius to Scipio to treat about a Peace, whoſe Endeavours prove ineffectual, 300
—He joins Domitius, ſtormed and took the Town of Gomphos in Theſſaly, in Four Hours time, 311
Craſſinus's Character and Courage at the Battel of Pharfalia: He is kill'd there, 316
Cæſar ſummons Ptolemy and Cleopatra to attend him, 324
—He burns the Alexandrian Fleet, 326
—He gets ſafe with his Treſſorts to Alexandria, 333
—He obtains a Victory, took Two Ships, and ſunk Three, 335
—Routs the Pharians, gains the Iſland and the Town, ſeveral taken and kill'd, then fortifies the Caſtle, gains the Shore, ſtops up an Arch under the Bridge, and begins to throw up a Rampier, 336
—He marches to Ptolemy's Camp, and defeats him, 342
Carſulenus detach'd to ſtorm the higheſt part of the Enemy's Camp; which he forces, 343
Cæſar marches to Alexandria, he performs Ptolemy the Father's Will. *ib.*
Cleopatra and her younger Brother conſtituted King and Queen of Egypt, *ib.*
Cæſſius, Governor of Spain, a Plot, to aſſaſſinate him, which was put in Execution at Cordova, *F f 2*

I N D E X.

*dova, he is wounded as he lay
on the Ground, by Squillus,*

352

— Upon his Recovery he causes
all the Assassins to be seiz'd,
puts several to Death, and
compounds with the rest for
Money,

354

— He is cast away in the Mouth
of the Ebro,

358

Cæsar besieges Thapsus,

401

*Caro kills himself, and is honour-
ably buried by the Uticans,*

405

*Cæsar besieges Cordova, and
obliges Pompey to quit Ul-
la,*

412

— He obtains a glorious Victo-
ry,

421

*Combat between Turpio and
Niger,*

422

Cæsar's last Speech,

431

D

DUMNORIX's Cha-
racter,

9

— He persuades the Noblemen
of Gaul not to go with Cæ-
sar into Britain. He deserts,
and is kill'd for his Obstina-
cy,

81

*Divitiacus intreats Cæsar to
pardon his Brother,*

10

Druids, an Account of 'em,

114

*Dumnacus besieges Duracius
in Poitiers,*

189

Drapes starved himself,

196

*Domitius writes to Pompey
for Assistance,*

211

— Comes into Macedonia,

289

— His Foragers rout Scipio's
Party,

291

*Deiotarus desires Assistance from
Domitius against Pharna-
ces: He sends Embassadors to
bid Pharnaces quit Cappa-
docia and Armenia,*

344

*Pidius's Encounter with the
Portuguese, his Death,*

439

E

ENGLISH Send Embassadors
to Cæsar in Gaul,

70

— Their War with Cæsar,

71

— They beat the Romans
back the first time, but at last
are forc'd to send Embassa-
dors to Cæsar to desire a Peace;
which they obtain'd on Deli-
very of Hostages,

73

— They break the Peace with
Cæsar, upon hearing he was
forced back by a Storm, and
set upon the Roman Foragers,

74

— The manner of their fight-
ing in Chariots; they fall
upon the Roman Camp, and
are routed a second time, and
petition again for Peace,
which Cæsar granted them,

75

— They attack the Romans
on their March, but are re-
puls'd; and rallying are re-
puls'd again,

85

— They attack the Roman
Foragers, but are routed with
considerable Loss,

86

— They are forced to retire to
the Woods, after their being
a third time routed,

87

— They surrender to Cæsar;
who impos'd a yearly Tribute
on them,

88

*Eporedorix acquaints Cæsar
with Litavicus's Design,*

149

Egypt, War there,

324

Euphranor's Speech to Cæsar,

334

— His Death,

340

*Egyptians design to intercept
Cæsar's Convoys,*

ib.

— They are intirely routed,

343

*Elephants, the way of exercising
them,*

377

INDEX.

F

FABIUS (L.) kill'd and
thrown over a Wall, 154
Fabius (Max.) takes Munda,
431

G

GAUL divided, 1
Germans, their Treachery, 24
— *Their way of fighting,* 25
— *They are routed, and Pro-*
cillus retaken, 28
Galba and his Romans jally
out of their Camp, put the
Enemy to flight, and entirely
defeat 'em, and after that re-
turn to Savoy, 47
Gauls imprison the Roman
Commissaries, 48
— *Their Preparations and Al-*
liances, 50
— *Description of their Ship-*
ping, 51
Gascoigne, War there, 55
— *They endeavour to attack*
the Romans, but are repuls'd
and routed; their Ambuscade,
ib.
Gascoigne submits, 58
Germans cross the Rhine, 60
— *War with Cæsar,* 62
— *They invade Guelders;*
the Temper of those People, ib.
— *Their Embassy to Cæsar,*
63
— *A second Embassy to Cæ-*
sar, 64
— *After a Truce made, they*
attack the Roman Cavalry,
65
— *Their Religion and Cu-*
stoms, 117
Gauls attack Cæsar's Camp, 102
— *They attempt a general Re-*
volt, 130
— *The manner of building*
their Walls, 141
— *New Commotions there,* 192
Greece, War there, 275

Ganymede made General; he
endeavours to deprive the Ro-
mans of fresh Water, brings
Water from the Sea to cor-
rupt Cæsar's Conduits, 330

H

HAINAULTOIS, their
Customs, 36
— *They force the the Roman*
Camp, 39

I

INTERVIEW between Cæ-
sar and Ariovistus, 22
Indutiomarus's politick Em-
bassy, 80
— *He sends to Germany for*
Assistance, but is refus'd, 105
— *He rebels, and calls a*
Council of War, ib.
Italy, War there, 210

L

LISCUS's Speech, in which
he discovers the Treachery of
Dumnorix, 9
Labienus gains the Enemy's
Camp, and sends Assistance to
Cæsar, 41
— *He marches against the*
Teroüennois, and lays their
Country waste, 77
Liege, a Rebellion there, 92
Labienus defeats Indutioma-
rus; his Head cut off, and
brought to the Roman Camp,
106
Litavicus made General of the
10000 Foot, and his Brothers
sent before to Cæsar; his
Treason and Dissimulation; he
persuades the Forces under his
Command to rebel, 148
Labienus detach'd to the Relief
of Antistius, 173
Luterius marches with a Con-
voy towards Usseldon, is in-
tercepted by Caninius, and
mass

INDEX.

most of the Cavalry kill'd and taken, 192
Lentulus the Consul, his Cowardice, 210
Libo blockades Brindisi, his Success and Vanity, 284

M

MOSE, Description of that River, 64
Marcus Petreius, his Death, 155
Marseilles besieg'd, 247
Milo kill'd, 284
Mithridates arriv'd at Pelusium, which he takes by Storm, 340
Manutius Plancus kills the Lictor, 352
Mithridates made King of Bosphorus, 364
Munda, Siege of it, 429
—The taking of it, 431

N

NOION besieg'd and taken, 35
Nasidius arrives with a Fleet to the Assistance of the People of Marseilles, 248
Nicomedes made Priest of Belyona, 359

O

ORGETORIX persuades the Swiss to invade Gaul, 2
—Is sent Ambassador to the States, ib.
—He kills himself to avoid Judgment, 3
Octavius comes to Illyricum, 348

P

PRINCES of Gaul, a general Assembly of them, and their Address to Cæsar, 15
Piso, an Account of the Death of him and his Brother, 65
Pirustæ submit to Cæsar, 79

Pompey's Faction at Rome, 202
—His Answer to Domitius's Letter, 212

—His Fleet returns to Brindisi, before Cæsar's Works are compleat, and blocks up all the Avenues, 216

People of Marseilles prepare a considerable Fleet, 231

—They are defeated, and lose Nine Ships, ib.

Pompey marches to Durazzo, 278

Pompey, (Junior) his Exploits; enters the Haven of Oricum, 291

—Carries off four of Cæsar's Gallies, burns the rest, and thirty Transports at Lissus, 292

—His Works within Cæsar's; he builds twenty-four Castles, includes fifteen Miles within his Lines, 294

—He is mightily incommoded for want of Room and Water, 297

—His Preparations for a Sally, 302

—He obtains the Title of Emperor, 306

—He marches to Macedonia, 310

—He arrives in Thessaly, and joins Scipio, 312

Ptolemy's young Daughter goes over to Achilles in hopes of being Queen; they fall out, Pothinus kill'd, 327

—His Dissimulation; he makes War upon Cæsar, 339

—He sends his Cavalry to oppose Cæsar's passing a Branch of the Nile, 342

—He gets on board, but the Vessel is sunk, 343

Pharnaces over-runs Pontus; his Barbarity, 347

Pompey decamps, and marches towards Seville, 423

He

I N D E X.

—He is kill'd in a Cave, and
his Head sent to Cæsar, 430

R

ROMANS fall on the Rere
of the Belgæ, 34
—Their Battel with the Hai-
naultois, 37
—Their Experience in the Art
of War, 38
—They give Ground to the
Enemy, which Cæsar perceiv-
ing snatch'd a Shield, and
plac'd himself in the Front of
the Battel to encourage 'em, 40
—They are assaulted in their
Camp, 47
—Their Navy arrives, enga-
ges the Enemy's Fleet, and
take and sink almost all their
Ships, and end the War, 52
—They offer the Gauls Bat-
tel, who refuse it, and then
attack their Camp, 57
—The Cavalry enter the De-
cuman Port of it, and en-
tirely rout 'em, 58
Rhine, Description of it, 64
Romans entirely rout the En-
glish, 73
—They are drove back on the
English Shore by a violent
Storm, ib.
—They land and rout the
English a second time, but
their Fleet is shatter'd with a
violent Storm, 83
—They are attack'd by the
Four Kings of Kent, whom
they repuls'd with Loss, 88
Rome, Factions there against
Cæsar, 199
—The Senate decree Pompey
and Cæsar shall each send a
Legion to the Parthian Wars,
200
Roman Tribunes fly to Cæsar
in a Cart, disguis'd like
Slaves, 205
Roscellus and Ægus cheat their

Countrymen the Savoyards
of their Pay; they attempt
the Murder of Volusenus;
they desert to Pompey, 301

S

SWISS, War with them, 4
—They have leave to pass
thro' Franchecombe, by the
Importunity of Dumnorix, 5
—They send Embassadors to
Cæsar to desire a Peace, 7
—They attack the Roman
Rere and engage, 12
—They are entirely routed,
and send a second Embassy
for Peace, 13
—The War ended with 'em,
14
Sabinus's Expedition to Cou-
tances, his Stratagem and
Success, 53
Suabians, their Customs, 60
Sicambri, their Answer to Cæ-
sar, 67
Soldiers seize Domitius, send
to Cæsar, and proffer to sur-
render at Discretion, 213
Salona besieg'd, 276
Scipio's Avarice and heavy Im-
positions, 288
—He gave Order for plun-
dering the Temple of Diana
at Ephesus, 289
—He marches towards Do-
mitius, but wheels about for
Thessaly; leaves his Bag-
gage at Haliacmon with Fa-
vonius, King of Thrace, but
in notice of his coming to be-
siege Favonius, returns, 290
—His disgraceful Retreat,
291
Scipio defeated, 403
Soldier taken up by an Elephant
en his Trunk, but wounds the
Beast so that he is oblig'd to
let him go again, ib.
Scapula's Death, 427

TE-

INDEX.

T

TEROUENNE and Guel-
 ders, *War in them,* 77
Tasgetius murder'd by his Sub-
 jects, 90
Theutomatus, King of the Ni-
 tiobriges, comes over to Ver-
 cingetorix's Assistance, 145
Thessaly and **Ætolia** declare
 for Cæsar, 289
Thorius arrives at Cordova,
 355
 — Causes Pompey's Name to
 be engraven on the Soldiers
 Shields, which they race out
 again, and chuse Marcellus
 their General, 356
Tisdrum declares for Cæsar,
 381

V

VALAIS, an Account of the
 War there, 46
 — They besiege Galba, ib.
Vannes, War with them and
 the Sea-Ports, 48
Vercingetorix takes Arms,
 is expell'd his Country, but

lifting an Army, he returns
 and drives out his Enemies,
 and is then proclaim'd King,

131

— An Account of his Wars
 with Cæsar, 133

— He is accus'd of Treason,
 but afterwards, on a right
 understanding, is acquitted
 and commended by the whole
 Army, 139

Virdumarus and **Eporedorix**
 seize Nevers, and put the
 Garrison to the Sword, 156

Vergasillaunus, with 55000
 chosen Men, goes to attack
 Antistius's Quarters, 172

— He is taken Prisoner, 174

Uffeldon surrenders, 195

Volusenus sent to pursue Co-
 mius, 197

Volcarius Tullus repulses a
 Legion of Pompey's, with
 Three Cohorts, 298

Vatinius fits out a Fleet, en-
 gages Octavius, and beats
 him, 349

Ulla besieg'd by Pompey, Ju-
 nior, 411



F I N I S.

uns
es,
ng,
31
ars
33
on,
he
ed
ole
9
ix
he
6
o
ck
2
4
5
-
7
a
b
8
-
s
2
t